World Journal of Gastroenterology®

Volume 12 Number 18
May 14, 2006

Supported by NSFC
2005-2006

National Journal Award
2005

The WJG Press

The WJG Press, Apartment 1066 Yishou Garden, 58 North Langxinzhuang Road, PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381901
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjg@wjgnet.com
http: //www.wjgnet.com

ISSN 1007-9327 CN 14-1219/R Local Post Offices Code No. 82-261

World Journal of Gastroenterology www.wjgnet.com Volume 12 Number 18 May 14 2006

ISSN 1007-9327
CN 14-1219/R

WJG

World Journal of Gastroenterology®

Indexed and Abstracted in:
Index Medicus, MEDLINE, PubMed, Chemical Abstracts, EMBASE/Excerpta Medica, Abstracts Journals, Nature Clinical Practice Gastroenterology and Hepatology, CAB Abstracts and Global Health.

Volume 12 Number 18
May 14, 2006

World J Gastroenterol
2006 May 14; 12(18): 2805-2968
Online Submissions
www.wjgnet.com/wjg/index.jsp
www.wjgnet.com
Printed on Acid-free Paper

A Weekly Journal of Gastroenterology and Hepatology

World Journal of
Gastroenterology®

National Journal Award 2005

Volume 12 Number 18
May 14, 2006

Supported by NSFC 2005-2006

Contents

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

2805 Perception of stimuli in the gastrointestinal physiology and new methods: From the editor
Gregersen H, Drewes AM

2806 Experimental human pain models in gastro-esophageal reflux disease and unexplained chest pain
Drewes AM, Arendt-Nielsen L, Funch-Jensen P, Gregersen H

2818 Functional oesophago-gastric junction imaging
McMahon BP, Drewes AM, Gregersen H

2825 Gastric accommodation assessed by ultrasonography
Gilja OH, Lunding J, Hausken T, Gregersen H

2830 Functional findings in irritable bowel syndrome
Posserud I, Ersryd A, Simrén M

2839 Evaluation of the biliary tract in patients with functional biliary symptoms
Funch-Jensen P, Drewes AM, Madácsy L

2846 Upper gastrointestinal sensory-motor dysfunction in diabetes mellitus
Zhao J, Frøkjær JB, Drewes AM, Ejskjaer N

2858 Morphology and motor function of the gastrointestinal tract examined with endosonography
Odegaard S, Nesje LB, Hoff DAL, Gilja OH, Gregersen H

2864 New perspectives of studying gastrointestinal muscle function
Gregersen H, Liao D

2870 Three-dimensional surface model analysis in the gastrointestinal tract
Liao D, Frøkjær JB, Yang J, Zhao J, Drewes AM, Gilja OH, Gregersen H

REVIEW

2876 Immune therapy including dendritic cell based therapy in chronic hepatitis B virus infection
Akbar SMF, Horiike N, Onji M

2884 Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in prevention of gastric cancer
Dai Y, Wang WH

GASTRIC CANCER

2890 Anticancer effect of Jinlongshe granules on *in situ*-transplanted human MKN-45 gastric cancer in nude mice and xenografted sarcoma 180 in Kunming mice and its mechanism
Yu ZH, Wei PK, Xu L, Qin ZF, Shi J

BASIC RESEARCH

2895 Partial Beclin 1 silencing aggravates doxorubicin- and Fas-induced apoptosis in HepG2 cells
Daniel F, Legrand A, Pessayre D, Vadrot N, Descatoire V, Bernuau D

World Journal of Gastroenterology
Volume 12 **Number** 18 **May** 14, 2006

Contents

2901 Down-regulation of survivin expression by small interfering RNA induces pancreatic cancer cell apoptosis and enhances its radiosensitivity
Guan HT, Xue XH, Dai ZJ, Wang XJ, Li A, Qin ZY

2908 Hyperlipidemia intensifies cerulein-induced acute pancreatitis associated with activation of protein kinase C in rats
Wang YJ, Sun JB, Li F, Zhang SW

RAPID COMMUNICATION

2914 Oxygen radical formation does not have an impact in the treatment of severe acute experimental pancreatitis using free cellular hemoglobin
Kleinhans H, Mann O, Schurr PG, Kaifi JT, Hansen B, Izbicki JR, Strate T

2919 MRCP and MRI findings in 9 patients with autoimmune pancreatitis
Kamisawa T, Chen PY, Tu Y, Nakajima H, Egawa N, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Kamata N

2923 Incidence and predictors of upper gastrointestinal bleeding in patients receiving low-dose aspirin for secondary prevention of cardiovascular events in patients with coronary artery disease
Ng W, Wong WM, Chen WH, Tse HF, Lee PY, Lai KC, Li SW, Ng M, Lam KF, Cheng X, Lau CP

2928 Relationship between IFN-γ gene polymorphism and susceptibility to intrauterine HBV infection
Yu H, Zhu QR, Gu SQ, Fei LE

2932 Diverticulitis in the young patient-Is it different?
Lahat A, Menachem Y, Avidan B, Yanai H, Sakhnini E, Bardan E, Bar-Meir S

2936 Effects of ischemic preconditioning on cyclinD_1 expression during early ischemic reperfusion in rats
Cai FG, Xiao JS, Ye QF

2941 Lymph node micrometastasis and its correlation with MMP-2 expression in gastric carcinoma
Wu ZY, Li JH, Zhan WH, He YL

2945 Clinical value of CT three-dimensional imaging in diagnosing gastrointestinal tract diseases
Duan SY, Zhang DT, Lin QC, Wu YH

CASE REPORTS

2949 Successful aspiration and ethanol sclerosis of a large, symptomatic, simple liver cyst: Case presentation and review of the literature
Blonski WC, Campbell MS, Faust T, Metz DC

2955 Autoimmune pancreatitis metachronously associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis with IgG4-positive plasma cell infiltration
Kamisawa T, Chen PY, Tu Y, Nakajima H, Egawa N

2958 Gastric signet-ring adenocarcinoma presenting with breast metastasis
Boutis AL, Andreadis C, Patakiouta F, Mouratidou D

2962 Multiple pyogenic liver abscess
Bahloul M, Chaari A, Bouaziz-Khlaf N, Kallel H, Herguefi L, Chelly H, Ben Hamida C, Bouaziz M

2964 Acknowledgments to Reviewers of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

2965 Meetings

APPENDIX

2966 Instructions to authors

2968 *World Journal of Gastroenterology* standard of quantities and units

World Journal of Gastroenterology
Volume 12 **Number** 18 **May** 14, 2006

Contents

FLYLEAF	I-V	Editorial Board
INSIDE FRONT COVER		Online Submissions
INSIDE BACK COVER		International Subscription
RESPONSIBLE EDITOR FOR THIS ISSUE		Gianfranco Alpini, PhD

World Journal of Gastroenterology (*World J Gastroenterol* , *WJG*), a leading international journal in gastroenterology and hepatology, has an established reputation for publishing first class research on esophageal cancer, gastric cancer, liver cancer, viral hepatitis, colorectal cancer, and *Helicobacter pylori* infection, providing a forum for both clinicians and scientists, and has been indexed and abstracted in *Index Medicus*, MEDLINE, PubMed, Chemical Abstracts, EMBASE, Abstracts Journals, Nature Clinical Practice Gastroenterology and Hepatology, CAB Abstracts and Global Health. *WJG* is a weekly journal published by The *WJG* Press. The publication date is on 7th, 14th, 21st, and 28th every month. The *WJG* is supported by The National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801 and No.30424812, which was founded with a name of *China National Journal of New Gastroenterology* on October 1,1995, and renamed as *WJG* on January 25, 1998.

HONORARY EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Ke-Ji Chen, *Beijing*
Li-Fang Chou, *Taipei*
Dai-Ming Fan, *Xi'an*
Zhi-Qiang Huang, *Beijing*
Shinn-Jang Hwang, *Taipei*
Min-Liang Kuo, *Taipei*
Nicholas F LaRusso, *Rochester*
Jie-Shou Li, *Nanjing*
Geng-Tao Liu, *Beijing*
Lein-Ray Mo, *Tainan*
Fa-Zu Qiu, *Wuhan*
Eamonn M Quigley, *Cork*
David S Rampton, *London*
Rudi Schmid, *California*
Nicholas J Talley, *Rochester*
Guido NJ Tytgat, *Amsterdam*
Jaw-Ching Wu, *Taipei*
Meng-Chao Wu, *Shanghai*
Ming-Shiang Wu, *Taipei*
Jia-Yu Xu, *Shanghai*
Hui Zhuang, *Beijing*

PRESIDENT AND EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Lian-Sheng Ma, *Beijing*

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF
Bo-Rong Pan, *Xi'an*

ASSOCIATE EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Gianfranco D Alpini, *Temple*
Bruno Annibale, *Roma*
Jordi Bruix, *Barcelona*
Roger William Chapman, *Oxford*
Alexander L Gerbes, *Munich*
Shou-Dong Lee, *Taipei*
Walter Edwin Longo, *New Haven*
You-Yong Lu, *Beijing*
Masao Omata, *Tokyo*
Harry H-X Xia, *Hong Kong*

SCIENCE EDITORS
Director: Jing Wang, *Beijing*
Deputy Director: Jian-Zhong Zhang, *Beijing*

LANGUAGE EDITORS
Director: Jing-Yun Ma, *Beijing*
Deputy Director: Xian-Lin Wang, *Beijing*

MEMBERS
Gianfranco D Alpini, *Temple*
Kim Elaine Barrett, *San Diego*
Yogesh K Chawla, *Chandigarh*
Zong-Jie Cui, *Beijing*
Atif Iqbal, *Omaha*
Sherif M Karam, *Al-Ain*
Manoj Kumar, *Kathmandu*
Peter Laszlo Lakatos, *Budapest*
Patricia F Lalor, *Birmingham*
Sabine Mihm, *Göttingen*
Sri Prakash Misra, *Allahabad*
Chris JJ Mulder, *Amsterdam*
Samuel Babafemi Olaleye, *Ibadan*
Bernardino Rampone, *Siena*
Richard Rippe, *Chapel Hill*
Manuel Romero-Gómez, *Sevilla*
Andreas G Schreyer, *Regensburg*
Francis Seow-Choen, *Singapore*
Daniel Lindsay Worthley, *Bedford*
Jing-Bo Zhao, *Aalborg*
Li-Hong Zhu, *Beijing*

ELECTRONICAL EDITORS
Director: Ming Zhang, *Beijing*
Executive E-editor for this issue: Shao-Hua Bai

COPY EDITORS
Gary A Abrams, *Birmingham*
Kim Elaine Barrett, *San Diego*
Filip Braet, *Sydney*
Mairi Brittan, *London*
Jiande Chen, *Galveston*
Wang-Xue Chen, *Ottawa*
Gérard Feldmann, *Paris*
Ignacio Gil-Bazo, *New York*
Hans Gregersen, *Aalborg*
Mario Guslandi, *Milano*
Atif Iqbal, *Omaha*
Ali Keshavarzian, *Chicago*
Shiu-Ming Kuo, *Buffalo*
Patricia F Lalor, *Birmingham*
James David Luketich, *Pittsburgh*
John Frank Di Mari, *Texas*
Satdarshan Singh Monga, *Pittsburgh*
Giuseppe Montalto, *Palermo*
Richard Rippe, *Chapel Hill*
Andreas G Schreyer, *Regensburg*
Simon D Taylor-Robinson, *London*
George Y Wu, *Farmington*

EDITORIAL ASSISTANT
Yan Jiang, *Beijing*

PUBLISHED BY
The WJG Press

PRINTED BY
Printed in Beijing on acid-free paper by Beijing Kexin Printing House

COPYRIGHT
© 2006 Published by The WJG Press. All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior permission of The *WJG* Press. Authors are required to grant *WJG* an exclusive licence to publish. Print ISSN 1007-9327
CN 14-1219/R.

SPECIAL STATEMENT
All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

EDITORIAL OFFICE
World Journal of Gastroenterology,
The WJG Press, Apartment 1066 Yishou Garden, 58 North Langxinzhuang Road, PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381901
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: wjg@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

SUBSCRIPTION AND AUTHOR REPRINTS
Jing Wang
The WJG Press, Apartment 1066 Yishou Garden, 58 North Langxinzhuang Road, PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
Telephone: +86-10-85381901
Fax: +86-10-85381893
E-mail: j.wang@wjgnet.com
http://www.wjgnet.com

Institutional Rates
2006 rates: USD 1500.00

Personal Rates
2006 rates: USD 700.00

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/instructions.jsp. If you do not have web access please contact the editorial office.

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2805
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHTS

Hans Gregersen, MD, Asbjorn Mohr Drewes, MD, *Series Editor*

Perception of stimuli in the gastrointestinal physiology and new methods: From the editor

This special issue of *World Journal of Gastroenterology* contains a number of reviews on physiology and perception of stimuli in the gastrointestinal tract. Pain is probably the most prevalent symptom in medicine and characterization of pain is of major importance in the diagnosis and choice of treatment. Consequently, understanding and characterization of the physiology behind gut pain is one of the most important issues in the diagnosis and assessment of organ dysfunction. Research leading to a better insight into pain mechanisms in the gastrointestinal tract will invariably improve the treatment of the patients. Experimental pain models have been used frequently in animal studies. However, animal experiments can only to some degree reflect the experience of clinical pain in humans. Because of these factors, experimental human pain models are advantageous to assess basic pain mechanisms and to investigate abnormal pain responses in functional and organic diseases of the GI system. Using these models, the investigator can control the experimentally induced pain and provide quantitative measures of the responses. Recently, techniques to assess the gastrointestinal anatomy and function have improved dramatically. Imaging with ultrasound combined with endoscope, functional luminal imaging and advanced modeling of the luminal structures with assessment of the mechanical properties of the tissues may be a new cornerstone in experimental and clinical gastroenterology. The key to the progress in these developments have been the interdisciplinary collaboration between doctors, biomedical engineers and mathematicians. In the future the new methods will undoubtedly lead us into a new area bridging the understanding of basic physiology, symptom assessment and daily clinical practice. The reader is referred to the papers in this issue of WJG for information on these important aspects of gastrointestinal function.

2806 Experimental human pain models in gastro-esophageal reflux disease and unexplained chest pain
Drewes AM, Arendt-Nielsen L, Funch-Jensen P, Gregersen H

2818 Functional oesophago-gastric junction imaging
McMahon BP, Drewes AM, Gregersen H

2825 Gastric accommodation assessed by ultrasonography
Gilja OH, Lunding J, Hausken T, Gregersen H

2830 Functional findings in irritable bowel syndrome
Posserud I, Ersryd A, Simrén M

2839 Evaluation of the biliary tract in patients with functional biliary symptoms
Funch-Jensen P, Drewes AM, Madácsy L

2846 Upper gastrointestinal sensory-motor dysfunction in diabetes mellitus
Zhao J, Frøkjær JB, Drewes AM, Ejskjaer N

2858 Morphology and motor function of the gastrointestinal tract examined with endosonography
Odegaard S, Nesje LB, Hoff DAL, Gilja OH, Gregersen H

2864 New perspectives of studying gastrointestinal muscle function
Gregersen H, Liao D

2870 Three-dimensional surface model analysis in the gastrointestinal tract
Liao D, Frøkjær JB, Yang J, Zhao J, Drewes AM, Gilja OH, Gregersen H

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2806-2817
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, Asbjorn Mohr Drewes, MD, *Series Editor*

Experimental human pain models in gastro-esophageal reflux disease and unexplained chest pain

Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, Lars Arendt-Nielsen, Peter Funch-Jensen, Hans Gregersen

Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, Hans Gregersen, Lars Arendt-Nielsen, Center for Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, Department of Gastroenterology, Aalborg Hospital, and Center for Sensory-Motor Interactions, Department of Health Science and Technology, Aalborg University, Denmark
Peter Funch-Jensen, Department of Surgical Gastroenterology L, Aarhus Hospital, Denmark
Supported by Det Obelske Familiefond and Spar Nord Fonden
Correspondence to: Professor Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, MD, PhD, DMSc, Center for Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, Department of Medical Gastroenterology, Aalborg University Hospital, DK-9000 Aalborg, Denmark. drewes@smi.auc.dk
Telephone: +45-99326228 Fax: +45-99326507
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

Methods related to experimental human pain research aim at activating different nociceptors, evoke pain from different organs and activate specific pathways and mechanisms. The different possibilities for using mechanical, electrical, thermal and chemical methods in visceral pain research are discussed with emphasis of combinations (e.g., the multimodal approach). The methods have been used widely in assessment of pain mechanisms in the esophagus and have contributed to our understanding of the symptoms reported in these patients. Hence abnormal activation and plastic changes of central pain pathways seem to play a major role in the symptoms in some patients with gastro-esophageal reflux disease and in patients with functional chest pain of esophageal origin. These findings may lead to an alternative approach for treatment in patients that does not respond to conventional medical or surgical therapy.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Pain; Gut; Experimental; Chest pain; Esophagitis

Drewes AM, Arendt-Nielsen L, Funch-Jensen P, Gregersen H. Experimental human pain models in gastro-esophageal reflux disease and unexplained chest pain. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2806-2817

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2806.asp

INTRODUCTION

Pain is probably the most prevalent symptom in medicine and characterization of pain is of major importance in the diagnosis and choice of treatment[1]. Abdominal pain is frequently occurring, even in the normal population[2], and abdominal discomfort and pain are among the most common symptoms responsible for patients consulting the health care system[3]. Consequently, understanding and characterization of gut pain is an important issue in the diagnosis and assessment of organ dysfunction. Research leading to a better insight into pain mechanisms in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract will invariably improve the treatment of the patients[1]. However, in practice, assessment of clinical pain is difficult as the symptoms of the underlying diseases confound the description of pain. These confounders may include complaints relating to psychological, cognitive and social aspects of the illness, as well as systemic reactions such as fever and general malaise[4]. Treatment with analgesics may also cause sedation and other side effects. Finally, abdominal pain is much more diffuse than somatic pain with autonomic symptoms, referred pain and hyperalgesia in remote somatic tissues. These factors will invariable bias the clinical evaluation. For example in the evaluation of analgesics the patients often tend to interpret other effects of the medication-such as an effect on the anxiety and depression relating to the disease-as a relief of pain[5]. To encompass these bias experimental pain models are increasingly used, especially in animal studies. In these experiments, the neuronal nociceptive activity can be recorded or behavior can be assessed[6]. However, neuronal recordings or reactions do not reveal all aspects of pain being the net effect of complex multidimensional mechanisms that involve most parts of the central nervous system[7]. Furthermore, major species differences in pain mechanisms often influence the findings. Therefore, although nociceptive reflexes or electrophysiological recordings from selected pathways in the animal nervous system are important in basic research, the central pain mechanisms and associated complex reactions are typically suppressed. Thus, animal experiments can only to some degree reflect the experience of clinical pain in humans. Because of these factors, experimental human pain models are advantageous to assess basic pain mechanisms and to investigate abnormal pain responses in functional and organic diseases of the GI system. Methods related to

experimental human pain research aim to activate different nociceptors, evoke pain from different organs and activate specific pathways and mechanisms. Assessment of the output from these pain models can be based on psychophysical or neurophysiologic methods[8]. Using these models, the investigator can control the experimentally induced pain (including the nature, localization, intensity, frequency and duration of the stimulus), and provide quantitative measures of the psychophysical, behavioral, or neurophysiologic responses. Methods for imaging can also be added and some studies used a combination of these assessments. In this paper, however, the focus will be the methods for pain induction. The reader is referred to[4] for further detail regarding assessment of GI pain

EXPERIMENTAL PAIN MODELS

The ultimate goal of advanced human experimental pain research is to obtain a better understanding of the mechanisms involved in pain transduction, transmission, and perception under normal and pathophysiological conditions. Experimental approaches can be applied in the laboratory for basic studies and in the clinic to characterize patients with sensory dysfunction and/or pain in organic and functional diseases[4,9]. Depending on the experimental model, different central mechanisms and conditions mimicking pathological pain such as increased sensation to normal physiologic/non-painful and painful stimuli (allodynia and hyperalgesia) can be studied. However, most previous studies have relied on relatively simple mechanical or electrical stimuli. These methods are easy to apply but as discussed below they have special considerations and limitations. Therefore, new controlled and reproducible models and protocols are highly warranted.

The ideal experimental stimulus to elicit gut pain in man should be natural, minimally invasive, reliable in test-retest experiments and quantifiable. Preferably the pain should mimic the observations in diseased organs by evoking phenomena such as allodynia and hyperalgesia[10,11]. The different methods for pain stimulation of the human GI tract are described below and in Table 1. Some of the existing stimulation methods seem to fulfill the above requirements but most laboratories use their own stimulation paradigms, often without the necessary standardization.

Table 1 The different methods for pain stimulation of the human GI tract

Stimulation modality	Stimulated structures	Advantages	Limitations
Electrical	Nerve fibers primarily in mucosa and muscle layers dependent of the stimulation intensity (not a specific activation of the nociceptors)	Excellent for repeated stimulation, suitable for neurophysiologic assessments of the pain	The electrical threshold depends on the fiber diameter, i.e. small-diameter nerves cannot be excited without exciting others. May induce arrhythmias in areas near the heart
Mechanical	Mechanoreceptors located in different layers	Imitates a bolus, reproducible stimulus	Problems with estimating the transmural pressure and change in circumference
Thermal	Thermal sensitive receptors preferentially in the luminal layers	Activation of unmyelinated afferents in the mucosa selectively	Temperature stimuli in the range that can be felt are normally only relevant for sensation in the upper GI tract.
Chemical	Chemo-sensitive receptors, primarily in the mucosa	Resembles clinical inflammation, chemical stimuli activate predominantly unmyelinated C-fibres	Require a relative long latency time to the onset of effects, and that they are often not reproducible when repeated

Electrical stimulation

Depolarization of the nerve afferents by electrical current has been widely used as an experimental stimulus in humans for many years-for review see[9]. The electrical stimuli have proved to be safe in all parts of the gastrointestinal system[12-15].Various electrical stimulator devices connected to electrodes applied to the mucosa of the gut can evoke electrical stimulation. Stimulator devices can deliver different stimulation patterns, e.g., different waveforms, frequencies, and duration of the stimulus. This activates with some selectivity different afferents and nervous structures, and hence evokes different kinds of pain[7]. The electrical stimulus intensity to evoke pain as well as the size of the referred pain area is reliable and reproducible[12,13,16,17]. The well defined onset and offset of the stimulation eliminates the latency to stimulation of the afferents seen with other methods[7] and makes it suitable to study pain mechanisms related to time[16,18]. Thus, the method is very suitable for neurophysiologic assessments of the pain[18-20]. Furthermore, the stimulation field is usually not as large as in other models, and diseases with localized pathology such as ulcers may better be mimicked[13,18]. Central integration or temporal summation, being a human correlate to the initial phase of "wind-up", is a potent mechanism for generation of referred visceral pain and can easily be evoked by electrical stimulation[16,18]. The major shortcomings are that electrical stimulation bypasses the receptors and activates the nerve fibres directly, and the method is not a specific activation of the nociceptors. The electrical threshold is related to the fiber diameter and one cannot usually excite small-diameter nerves without additionally exciting others. Furthermore, electrical stimuli may induce arrhythmias when areas near the heart are stimulated[18,21] and therefore bipolar stimulation where the electrical field is more localized may be recommended.

Previous methods have suffered from problems with insufficient contact between the electrodes and the gut, and in some studies pain was not evoked in all

subjects. We have improved the method by integrating the electrodes on the biopsy forceps for the endoscopes, which makes it possible to stimulate well defined areas in the esophagus, stomach, duodenum, terminal ileum and colon[13,14,16,18]. Recently we used a 6 mm nasal endoscope for the stimulations. Apart from a little unpleasantness associated with the intubations, all subjects were able to lie comfortably and none complained of unpleasantness due to the endoscope for up to 4 h. An example of stimulation of the esophagus is shown in Figure 1. The advantage of this modification is that the position of the electrodes is controllable and can be changed in case of stimulation of nearby somatic structures and nerves. The contact with the organ wall is secured and evoked motor phenomena such as secondary contractions can be studied. However, endoscopic stimulation demands special equipment and facilities and improvement of methods for "blind stimulation" is highly warranted.

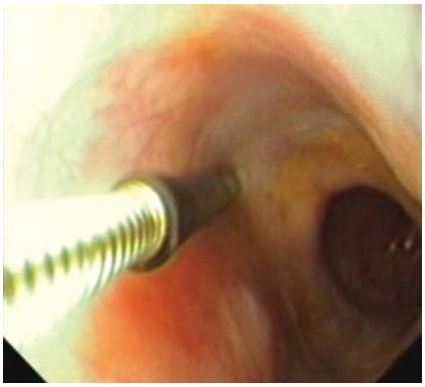


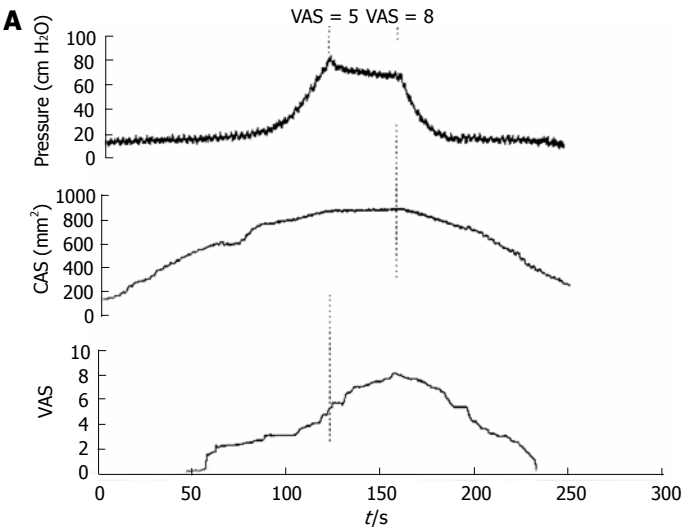
Figure 1 The stimulation electrode visualized in the distal esophagus using the nasal endoscope.

Mechanical stimulation

In the last decade several studies have addressed the mechanical and sensory function of the GI tract by means of mechanical distension. The mechanical properties of the GI tract are important for its function as a digestive organ and the gut contains mechanoreceptors at various locations in the wall, mainly in the muscle layers[6]. Mechanical GI tract stimulation, in particular balloon distension, has been widely used also to study GI smooth muscle tone[22-24], distensibility[22,25,26], peristaltic reflex responses[27], functional and organic disorders[28-32], referred pain and cerebral activation patterns[33] and the screening of new analgesics in healthy subjects and in patients with gut disorders[30,34-37]. There are several ways to stimulate the GI tract mechanically. Simple and physiological methods for distension of the gut such as ingestion of well-defined meals may be useful in clinical studies[38]. Balloon distension is, however, much more used than ingestion as mechanical stimulation method and easier to control. Therefore, the following sections will focus on controlled balloon distension methods used to evoke non-painful sensations and pain in the gut.

Most recent studies have used a method of measuring changes in volume of air in a balloon at constant pressure levels named "the Barostat". Several protocols and stimulation paradigms have been recommended for the Barostat, such as for example "phasic and tonic distensions". The stimulation paradigms have been thoroughly discussed recently and will not be described here-for review see[30,39]. The great advantage of the Barostat system and similar pressure-volume based methods are the relatively low cost, especially if the system is self-made. Furthermore, they are easy to use for routine purposes. Such systems have been used for determination of sensory and pain thresholds, and under different conditions attempts have been done to calculate the compliance and tension of the organs[26,30,39,40]. However, there are drawbacks with these simple methods. For example using the Barostat device, the data must be corrected for compressibility of air. The four major concerns, however, relate to (1) elongation of the balloon during distension; (2) the use of very long balloons; (3) the use of erroneous assumptions; and (4) the improper use of distension protocols. In more detail: (1) Balloon distension in a tube will cause the balloon to elongate to some degree due to the resistance to deformation in radial direction[41]. Volume is therefore not an accurate measure for the distension of the organ; (2) The use of long balloons is problematic because phasic contractions can be misinterpreted as muscle tone[42]. In addition relaxation in one end of the balloon and simultaneous contraction in the other end may not be registered as a change in volume at all; (3) Most previous studies have not validated the assumptions the data were based on. The most obvious and common mistake is to consider the fundus of the stomach to be spherical. From an anatomical and geometric point of view the stomach is not spherical and the wall structure with muscle layers in various directions indicates complex (anisotropic) properties. Distending a balloon in the fundus will deform the balloon into the corpus and antrum, resulting in a highly complex geometry; (4) No previous pressure-volume studies have considered the strain softening effect[43] and therefore it is highly questionable whether the results are reproducible. The tissue needs to be preconditioned before proper testing

The first three of the points mentioned above makes it impossible to compute the radius from the measured volumes. Consequently, estimation of wall tension using Laplace's law and computation of deformation in terms of strain measures will be invalid. It has also been a common mistake in gastrointestinal distension studies to consider the mechanoreceptors to be pressure receptors, volume receptors or tension receptors. Circumferential strain or stress are more likely candidates as the direct receptor stimulus, because the tensile stress and strain in distensible biological tubes are largest in the circumferential direction during distension[44]. Considering mechanical and receptor kinematic properties, strain is a more relevant parameter than stress (and tension). This is partly due to the fact that strain is a non-dimensional parameter that is independent of the original size of the organ and directly associated with tissue deformation. Recent studies clearly demonstrated that circumferential strain is an important determinant of mechanoreceptor mediated responses[45-48]. Correspondingly, studies providing tension calculations from Barostat studies have shown conflicting results, e.g.



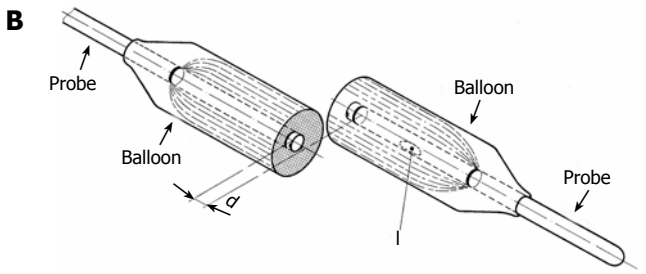


Figure 2 Top corner: The impedance planimetric probe for mechanical stimulation of the gastrointestinal tract. l and d denote infusion side for filling the balloon and the distance between two detection electrodes. Left: Recordings in the small intestine using the impedance planimetric probe with pressure, cross-sectional area (CSA) and VAS response as function of time during a ramp distension of the balloon up to the pain threshold where the bag volume is kept constant. It appears that the pressure decreased, the CSA was constant whereas the pain continued to increase.

in a recent study of the stomach the estimated tension seemed to correlate with the sensation[26,49], whereas another study[35] showed a highly inter-individual variability in the sensation score to the applied tension, suggesting that other factors than wall tension influence the sensation. However, uncertainties in the assumptions given above, and lack of proper geometric and biomechanical considerations can also explain these findings[41].

Newer methods based on impedance planimetry (Figure 2) allows recording of the luminal cross-sectional area directly and estimation of the radius in the distended segment of the esophagus or intestine[17,45,47,48,50,51]. From the radius it is possible to compute the circumferential wall tension and strain with more accuracy than from volume measurements[44]. Circularity must be assumed but this assumption has often been validated[44]. Finally, mechanical distension combined with ultrasound methods may offer the possibility for a better anatomical characterization and computation of stress in the GI tract[52]. For the stomach and other organs with complex geometry, imaging methods that provides data on the surface curvatures (3D-ultrasound, multislice CT-scanning or MR-scanning) in the whole organ may be used together with numerical mechanical analysis such as finite element analysis.

Thermal stimulation

In the skin rapid heating activates first myelinated Aδ-fiber, where the evoked sensation corresponds to the "first pain felt within 0.4 s after the heat stimulus. The first pain is followed by a C-fiber mediated second pain which is less well localized and of longer duration, being described as 'throbbing, burning or swelling'[53]. Slow heating gives a preferential activation of the unmyelinated C-fibers and the best evaluation of second pain[54]. Short lasting thermal stimuli have also been used in the human GI tract. Here they are believed to activate unmyelinated afferents in the mucosa selectively as opposed to mechanical and electrical stimuli, which activate afferents in both the superficial and deeper layers[6]. Thermosensitive mucosal afferents throughout the gut have been demonstrated in animal studies[6], and in the human esophagus, stomach and rectum[6,17,55-57]. The major limitation of these models is that temperature stimuli in the range that can be felt are normally only relevant for sensation in the upper GI tract. On the other hand, although temperature receptors may have less clinical relevance, characterization of the response to stimuli in the most superficial layers of the gut may be of major importance to develop a comprehensive sensory evaluation[4]. In recent studies the temperature of re-circulating water was continuously measured inside a balloon positioned in the esophagus[17,58]. The temperature stimuli showed a nearly linear stimulus-response relationship, demonstrating the validity of the receptor activation.

Chemical stimulation

Chemical stimulation of the GI tract more closely resembles clinical inflammation and is believed to approach the ideal experimental visceral pain stimulus[9]. Such stimuli have successfully been applied to the skin and muscles[11,59,60]. In contrast to electrical stimuli, chemical stimuli activate predominantly unmyelinated C-fibres[61] and this may be an advantage in basic studies of differentiated nerve populations. Acid stimulation of the esophagus is the most used method to sensitise the gut[59,62-65] but chemical stimulation of the gut with alcohol, bradykinin, glycerol, capsaicin and hypertonic saline were also done in humans[18,55,58,66-69]. For details see[4]. The major disadvantage of chemical stimuli is that they require a relative long latency time to the onset of effects, and that they are often not reproducible when repeated[9]. Thus, although chemical stimulation may evoke pain, the major relevance of the model is in sensitization of the visceral afferents to subsequent experimental stimulation.

Ischemic stimulation

Ischemia has been widely used for induction of muscle pain. Ischemia is important in many diseases such as mesenteric ischemia and ischemic colitis. Ischemia has been used in animal models of visceral pain[9]. Such studies are not acceptable in humans and unfortunately no human experimental gut models exist. However, distension of the gut may result in diminished blood flow. Accordingly, Öhman *et al*[70] observed a significant drop in blood supply during distension of balloons in the small intestine in rats.

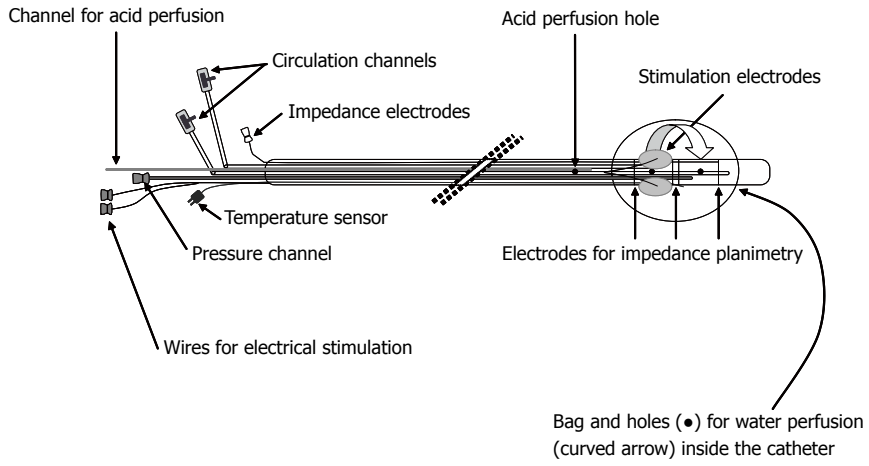


Figure 3 Schematic illustration of the probe used for multi-modal (electrical, mechanical, cold and warmth stimuli) of the esophagus. The stimulations can be combined with sensitization using acid perfusion of the distal esophagus.

Very recently, Hoff and coworkers presented a multimodal probe that selectively was developed for differentiation between mechanical and ischemic pain mechanism[71].

Multimodal stimulation of the GI tract

As pain is a multidimensional perception it is obvious that the reaction to a single stimulus of a given modality can represent only a limited fraction of the entire pain experience. The possibility for combining different methods for stimulation and assessment will approximate the clinical situation where many different nerves and pathways are activated. Thus, the method will give a more comprehensive and differentiated information about the nociceptive system compared to stimuli using single or a few modalities[72]. For comprehensive experimental studies mimicking the clinical situation, a multimodal testing approach must therefore be used, where the test battery will increase the probability for activation of a range of relevant nervous mechanisms. Such sophisticated methods will be able to select the best test procedures to explore different basic aspects of pain as well as pharmacological modulations. Multimodal models have shown their value in somatic pain models, where single modality models have been inadequate to test for example pathophysiological changes and effects of specific drugs[73,74]. Especially if the stimulation includes modalities known to evoke peripheral as well as central sensitization, the likelihood that a model will mimic clinical pain is high despite the non-harmful nature of the stimulation[73,75]. In somatic models it is possible to give many different stimuli and evoke central phenomena (e.g. central integration of summated stimuli) of clinical relevance (for review see[11,59]). In the GI tract, however, difficulties with access to the organs and technical limitations of the currently available models have until now made such a multimodal stimulation approach difficult. Some authors have combined mechanical and electrical stimuli[12,75,76] or mechanical and chemical stimuli[77,78], and in a recent study in the esophagus mechanical and electrical stimuli were combined with sensitization to acid[79]. We recently introduced a multimodal model with combined mechanical, electrical, cold and warmth stimuli of the esophagus together with acid sensitization[17,58] (Figure 3). The multimodal approach gives the possibility for a differentiated stimulation of receptors in the superficial and deep layers of the gut. The possibility for induction of hyperalgesia with e.g., acid perfusion and evoking central phenomena such as summation, allodynia and referred pain makes the model clinically relevant with respect to increase the knowledge of peripheral and central pain mechanisms[64,65,80]. The pain assessment should ideally also be multimodal and for example include quantitative and qualitative sensation, assessment of referred pain and neurophysiologic measurements. For details see[4]. However, is will typically not be feasible with too many stimulation and assessment parameters.

METHODS FOR AMPLIFICATION OF THE CENTRAL NEURONAL RESPONSE

Chronic pain is characterized by modifications of the central nervous system such as central sensitization[81]. Hence, decreased thresholds to normal stimuli such as stools and air in the GI tract seem to contribute to many of the symptoms reported by patients with inflammatory and functional diseases in the gut[82,83]. Phenomena relating to sensitization of the central nervous system (CNS) are enhanced responses to repeated stimulation, allodynia/hyperalgesia and increase in the referred pain area[4]. Repeated electrical or mechanical stimuli to the small and large intestine[16,84,85] may cause integration of the neuronal response and thus pain, and this may be used as a model for enhanced central gain (Figure 4). Munakata *et al* showed the importance of central mechanisms in functional gut disorders[86]. In their study the patients developed rectal hyperalgesia following repetitive sigmoid distensions. Induction of hyperalgesia in one area of the GI tract following conditioning of the more proximal parts most probably results from central sensitization. Chemical stimulation may also evoke sensitization. Acid stimulation of the esophagus has been used as a chemogenic stimulus by several authors[76-79,87]. Increased response to mechanical, electrical and thermal stimuli after the chemical sensitization have been demonstrated[58,76,78,79], although previous studies using latex balloons were not as consistent. This may be related to methodological problems using latex balloons, where the distension data need to be corrected for the balloons intrinsic mechanical properties *etc*.[44,78]. Sarkar *et al*[79] demonstrated the relevance

of central mechanisms in the gut, as acid exposed to the esophagus not only resulted in local allodynia, but also sensitized the proximal, non-acid exposed part of the organ to electrical stimuli. Capsaicin also increases the sensation in the esophagus to acid reflux[88,89] and when capsaicin was applied to the small intestine, consistent hyperalgesia to mechanical stimuli was seen[18]. Lipid infusion in the duodenum has also been shown to induce allodynia and increase the referred pain area to distension in functional disorders[90,91]. As fat is a natural stimulus to the gut, such studies may increase the understanding of the postprandial symptoms in these patients.

EXPERIMENTAL PAIN AND GASTRO-ESOPHAGEAL REFLUX DISEASE

Gastro-esophageal reflux disease (GERD) is defined as chronic mucosal damage or typical symptoms, which reduce quality of life by the abnormal reflux of gastric contents into the esophagus. GERD is very common in the population with up to 30% of the European population reporting heartburn and/or acid regurgitation during the previous 12 mo[92]. Recent studies revealed that up to 70% of the GERD patients have non-erosive reflux disease (NERD) according to endoscopy, 24-h pH profile and symptom-reflux association indices. However, in patients with NERD, the quality of life impairment is comparable to that in patients with erosive esophagitis[93]. The symptoms in reflux disease are highly variable and poorly understood. Thus, in patients with GERD no simple relation seems to exist between the symptoms and severity of the disease[94-96]. Although treatment with proton pump inhibitors (PPI) is very effective, many patients continue to have symptoms despite treatment[97,98], and in a recent study 50% of the patients continue to have pathologic reflux despite effective symptom control with PPI[99]. Furthermore, it is estimated that 30%-60% of patients with NERD will have normal ambulatory 24-h esophageal pH monitoring and thus no effect of PPI treatment[93]. Although some of these patients may have reflux of non-acid gastric contents, it is still not clear what causes the symptoms in many patients.

Experimental pain methods have contributed to the understanding of the symptoms in reflux disease. In an animal study Garrison *et al*[100] demonstrated that spinal neurons in the cat receiving input from the distal esophagus also received convergent input from the thoracic wall and the heart. When the esophagus was sensitized with turpentine, the neurons responded to a smaller mechanical stimulus from the different sites. Such data gives evidence that central mechanisms may explain the symptoms in a substantial proportion of the patients. In humans, however, relative few studies have been done to explore the pain mechanisms in reflux disease.

Non-erosive reflux disease

Peripheral pain mechanisms: Assessment of mechanosensitivity using intra-esophageal balloon distension has yielded contradictory results. In NERD patients Rodriguez-Stanley *et al*[101] reported a decrease in sensation and pain thresholds to distension compared with a historic control group. Trimble *et al*[102] studied NERD patients without excessive reflux and found that these patients were most sensitive to esophageal balloon distension, whereas patients with excessive reflux had a level of sensitivity similar to that of healthy control subjects. In another study using esophageal balloon distension delivered by an electronic barostat, patients with NERD and patients with erosive esophagitis did not demonstrate an increase in mechanosensitivity when compared to normal controls[87]. The previous experimental pain studies used mechanical stimulations based on recording of volume and pressure. As stated above these studies may lead to errors relating to the deformation field and erroneous conclusions[47]. Is has been suggested that chronic esophageal exposure to excess acid affects chemosensitive but not mechanosensitive afferent pathways[87] and that the key abnormality in NERD patients is that they are hypersensitive to acid reflux. Recently we conducted a study in patients with NERD where 50% had a positive 24-h pH measurement. Furthermore a multimodal approach was used. Our data showed that the patients had hyperalgesia to heat stimulation, whereas they were hyposensitive to mechanical stimulations. There was a difference in the NERD subgroups as patients with a pathological pH profile exhibited hyposensitivity to mechanical stimulations compared to both controls and patients with normal pH monitoring (Figure 5). Taken together with the above findings the results reflect that patients with pathological acid reflux may be less sensitive to mechanical stimulation and more sensitive to heat. The selective sensitization to heat may be related to specific receptor activation. Recently, we showed that acid perfusion of the esophagus in healthy subjects differentially sensitizes the esophagus to heat, but not cold stimuli[80]. The VRI receptor may be important for our findings. The receptor can be activated by a variety of stimuli, including acid (protons) and increases in temperature that reach the noxious range. Thus, it can be hypothesized that in patients with NERD the acid reflux and resulting peripheral sensitization

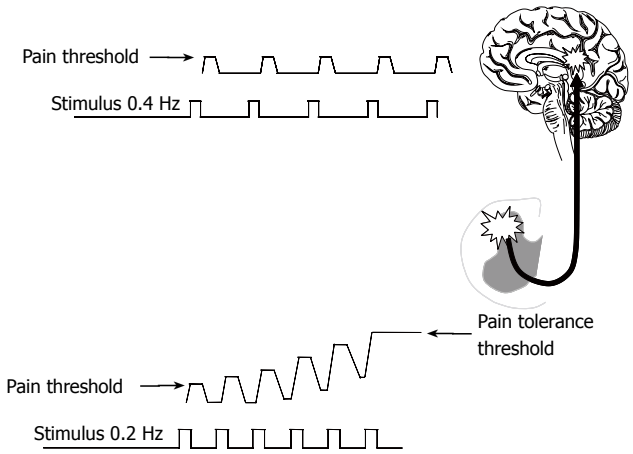


Figure 4 Central integration of repeated stimulation is seen when the stimulation frequency exceeds 0.3 Hz (bottom picture), whereas slower stimulation does not change the central gain (top picture).

results in a significant change in the sensation to heat stimuli working on the same receptor as the acid. Further studies need to explore whether the VRI receptors are up-regulated as seen in patients with erosive disease of the esophagus[103]-see below.

Central pain mechanisms: In the studies described above we also found an increase in the referred pain areas for both mechanical and heat stimulation in NERD patients. Previously we showed that acid perfusion of the distal esophagus in healthy subjects resulted in an increase in the referred pain area to differentiated esophageal stimuli[58]. This is most likely related to central neuronal hyperexcitability after acid perfusion, and subsequent opening of latent connections between converging neurons from visceral and somatic structures in the CNS[81]. Thus, the larger and widespread localization of the referred pain area is thought to represent central hyperexcitability. Consistent with these findings Penagini *et al*[104] showed that patients with NERD had increased sensitivity to distension of the proximal stomach. This viscero-visceral hyperalgesia is also considered a central phenomenon[105]. Experimental acid perfusion of the esophagus in healthy subjects has also been shown to increase the amplitude of the polysynaptic nociceptive reflex working at the spinal level[58]. Sarkar *et al*[79,106] demonstrated that acid perfusion of the distal esophagus resulted in allodynia and shorter latencies of the evoked brain potentials to electrical stimulation of a more proximal segment of the esophagus. Accordingly, we recently found a backward shift of the early activity in the cingulate gyrus to esophageal pain stimuli after acid perfusion of the organ[107]. Thus, there is substantial evidence that exposure of acid in the esophagus such as in some NERD patients may result in central neuroplastic changes at spinal and supraspinal levels.

Erosive GERD

Peripheral pain mechanisms: Patients with erosive disease of the esophagus may have a more severe disease than NERD patients, although erosive disease may also be a distinct entity[108]. In a study comparing patients with esophagitis with controls, Fass *et al*[87] demonstrated enhanced perception to acid perfusion, but the response to mechanical stimulation was normal. Such findings may point towards a differential effect on mechano-sensitive and chemo-sensitive pathways in esophagitis. Recently, we compared the sensory response in patients with grade B esophagitis and healthy controls using the multimodal approach described above. The patients had hyposensitivity to the mechanical stimulations, but had hyperalgesia to heat. These findings were comparable to those in NERD patients with abnormal pH profile and indicate that the pain mechanisms may be the same whenever erosions occur or not. A recent paper suggested that abnormal tissue resistance to acid may explain both the hyperalgesia and motor abnormalities seen in many patients with GERD and NERD[109]. In our studies the patients showed hyperalgesia to heat (but not cold) stimuli[110]. We believe that VR1 receptors sensitized by the acid reflux are important, and VR1 receptors have recently been shown to be up-regulated in esophagitis[103].

Central pain mechanisms: Central changes are also

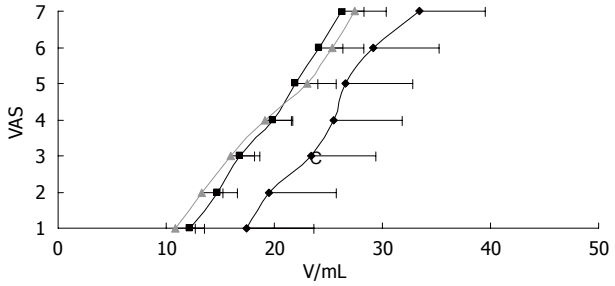


Figure 5 Stimulus-response function (mean ± SEM) to mechanical stimulation in patients with non-erosive gastro-esophageal reflux disease (NERD). The controls (■, *n* = 15) and patients with a normal 24-h pH-profile (▲, *n* = 7) had similar response to the mechanical stimulation, whereas patients with pathological pH-profile (◊, *n* = 6) showed hypoalgesia to the stimulations. The x-axis shows the volume of the balloon in the distal esophagus and the y-axis denotes the pain response on a visual analogue scale (VAS) with 5 as the pain threshold.

believed to be important in erosive disease. Although Fass *et al*[87] found a normal location of the referred pain we recently showed that the size of the referred pain area was larger than in controls. Thus, there is substantial evidence that exposition of acid in the esophagus in patients with esophagitis results in central neuroplastic changes. One can speculate that the reason for specific hyposensitivity to mechanical stimulations in patients with erosive disease may be related to well functioning counter-regulatory neural mechanisms acting from the brain stem at the spinal cord level. These may prevent the development of long-lasting sensitization of mechanosenstive afferent pathways[111]. The central pain modulating systems rely on a balance between facilitatory and inhibitory descending pathways and intrinsic spinal circuits and is not predictable in the individual patient[112,113]. Studies on animals have shown that the system is an important mechanism in the modulation of visceral stimuli[114] and these neuroplastic changes may result in increased referred pain on the one hand and dampening of the activity from mechanosensitive pathways on the other. In general chronic tissue injury and pain has been associated with higher thresholds to mechanical stimulation in different regions of the gastrointestinal tract. For example, chronic inflammation of the small bowel[115] in patients with inflammatory bowel disease is not associated with mechanical hyperalgesia of the rectum. This is contrasted by the pain in functional visceral disorders where hyperalgesia and allodynia to mechanical stimuli of the gut are typically found[86,115-118]. Hence, it can be speculated that a difference in the balance between noxious control systems arising in the brainstem may explain the findings in the different patient groups.

Non-cardiac chest pain

Non-cardiac chest pain (NCCP) was a term invented by the cardiologists. It was defined as "angina-like" chest pain without demonstrable abnormalities in the coronary vasculature. The more broad term "unexplained esophageal chest pain" is probably a better definition in gastroenterology, and may be defined as chronic chest pain, which is most likely of esophageal origin, but where

conventional tests for cardiac, esophageal, pulmonary (pain can be evoked from the pleura only) and musculoskeletal disorders are negative. The pain can be angina-like, but can also mimic other chest pain disorders such as gastro-esophageal reflux disease and musculoskeletal disorders. However, in the following the term NCCP will be used as it is the most common description of the syndrome. NCCP is very common especially in the younger age groups and the prevalence ranged from 22%-30% in the general population[119,120]. However, many persons have only modest and intermittent complaints and such cases must be classified as intermittent chest pain that is of no major burden, and a rough estimate would be that severe symptoms are seen in 2%-3% of the population.

If the patients describe "heartburn" and "acid regurgitation" they are typically classified as having GERD. However, burning pain may also be evoked by e.g., experimentally distension or electrical stimulation of the stomach[121] and the value of the subjective description of chest pain is up to discussion. GERD is also the most frequent cause of NCCP[122,123]. In this case the chest pain is no longer unexplained and the overlap invalids the diagnostic criteria for NCCP. The reason for heartburn in GERD is also up to discussion. Fass *et al*, have demonstrated that acid is not the only visceral stimulus that leads to heartburn[87], and recently Balaban *et al*, suggested that longitudinal muscle contractions of the esophagus as detected by high frequency intraluminal ultrasound, may be the motor equivalent of heartburn sensation[124]. Thus there is major overlap between the symptoms relating to the different chest structures.

The origin of chest pain

The symptom description is consistent with the organization of the nerves supplying the esophagus and the chest. The visceral afferents converge on a large scale with neurons that receive input from superficial and deep somatic tissue as well as other viscera[105]. Accordingly, in the thoracic spinal cord more that 75% of all neurons receive both somatic and visceral information, being contrasted by the actual number of visceral afferents (5%-15% of the inflow) entering the dorsal roots[6,125]. The visceral afferent terminals are widely distributed in the spinal cord and some organs have a wide spinal representation spreading to several segmental levels. For example the esophagus is innervated craniocaudally from the mid-cervical to the second lumbar segments[6]. Therefore a few visceral afferent fibers can activate many central neurons. Through the extensive functional convergence of somatic and visceral nerves on the same central neurons this wide activation of the CNS may explain the diffuse and unpleasant nature of visceral pain together with referred pain to somatic structures and other viscera[126]. In the clinic the above considerations typically leads to a very diffuse and heterogeneous description of the symptoms and experimental pain models may shed light over the pathogenesis of NCCP and related symptoms.

Peripheral pain mechanisms

Experimental pain studies in patients as outlined in the Introduction section have the possibility to control the stimulus and assessment parameters, and thus explore the abnormal pain system in further detail. Most studies found that the sensation and pain detection thresholds to distension, electrical and acid stimuli of the esophagus were lower in NCCP patients compared with thresholds found in healthy subjects[76,79,127-132]. However, the reliability of the test for diagnosing NCCP has been questioned[4], and in some experiments only few patients had abnormal sensation[133]. There are, however, severe methodological problems relating to these studies. Early balloon distension studies were based on simple volume and pressure measurements using latex balloons. As stated in the section above "Mechanical stimulations" this caused large errors due to the deformability of latex and lack of control of the stimulation field. There are also limitations and sources of error with the systems based on volume and pressure. The use of methods based on impedance planimetry has encompassed many of these limitations. Rao *et al*[134] used impedance planimetry and showed that patients with NCCP suffered from esophageal hyperalgesia. Furthermore the esophagus was more "irritable" than in controls, as the distensions resulted in more vigorous contractions at lower pressures. In more recent studies hyperalgesia was also found after relaxation of the smooth muscle with atropin[135], and there was evidence that the lower segments of the esophagus exhibited a higher level of sensory dysfunction compared to higher segments[136]. These studies were based on phasic distensions, which did not take the strain softening effect into account. Hence, we recommend to preconditioning the tissue by several distensions until the stress-strain relationship becomes reproducible[17,45,47].

Central pain mechanisms

Paterson *et al*[137] showed that repeated distensions conditioned the esophagus in NCCP resulting in higher pain scores. The effect of repeating stimulations has also been demonstrated in patients with irritable bowel syndrome, and probably this is a phenomenon relating to central hyperexcitability[86]. In a recent study we used a ramp distension protocol to distend the distal esophagus in patients with NCCP before and after sensitization with acid[138]. Patients with NCCP did not seem to be more vulnerable to develop esophageal hyperalgesia to the slowly increasing mechanical distensions as compared to controls. However, there was evidence for abnormal central pain processing as there was an increased and widespread referred pain area to the mechanical stimulations (Figure 6) and the patients were sensitive to repeated mechanical stimulation. Furthermore, after acid perfusion (believed to evoke hyperexcitability of central pathways mainly) there was a major sensitization to the distensions. Thus, it was concluded that NCCP patients showed facilitated central pain mechanisms, which may explain the character of their symptoms. This may have important implications for the diagnosis and treatment in these patients, where drugs with central effects should be used in the treatment.

Several studies have focused on brain activation to experimental pain stimuli in NCCP. The

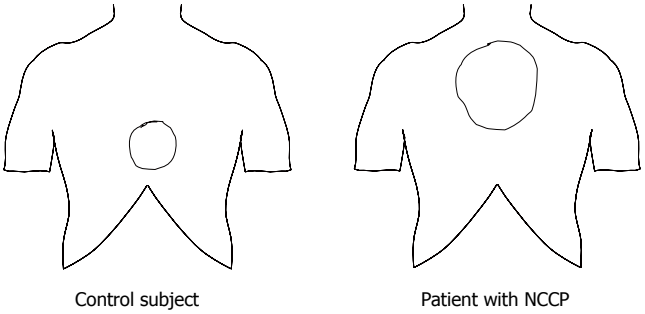


Figure 6 The localization and size of the referred pain area to mechanical stimulations of the distal esophagus in a typical control subject and a patient with non-cardiac chest pain (NCCP). The patient had and increased size and abnormal localization of the referred pain.

electroencephalography monitors the brain activity to external stimuli directly in real time. When a repetitive stimulus is applied and the cortical electrical activity is averaged (time-locked to the stimulus), the stimulus evoked cortical potential (EP) can be extracted from the background electrical activity and is shown in shape of a waveform with different peaks. Each peak in the EP represents a synaptic event associated with the transmission of afferent information from one group of neurons to another. The early peaks are supposed only to be influenced by the stimulation rate, intensity and localization, and they reflect to a major degree the brain loci that process the pain intensity and localization[139,140]. Three studies showed lower EP amplitudes to esophageal electrical and distension stimuli in patients with NCCP compared with healthy subjects[127-129]. Furthermore, Hollerbach *et al*[128] found shorter latencies of the EP peaks to electrical esophageal stimulation and more pronounced changes of the outflow of the autonomic nervous system in NCCP patients. Frobert *et al*[141] stimulated additionally the sternal skin (referred pain area) and showed shorter latencies and lower amplitudes of the EP to skin stimulation in NCCP patients. These findings suggest an increased central nervous system response to visceral stimuli in patients with NCCP comparable to those found in other groups with functional bowel disorders, e.g. patients with irritable bowel syndrome. Recently, Hobson and Aziz [142] suggested that different subgroups of patients with NCCP may exist: (1) Those with short latency of the early EP components having sensitization of gastrointestinal afferent pathways, and (2) those with long latencies and enhanced late responses reflecting hypervigilance and increased affective processing.

CONCLUSION

Pain is the most prevalent symptom in gastroenterology but yet poorly understood. This is reflected in the treatment of visceral pain that is often very difficult and highly challenging. Methods to evoke and assess experimental pain in the GI tract have recently been improved and used to explain the pain mechanisms in health and disease. In diseases relating to the esophagus these methods have contributed to our understanding of the symptoms reported in these patients. Especially does abnormal activation and plastic changes of central pain pathways seem to play a major role. These findings may lead to an alternative approach for treatment in patients that does not respond to conventional medical or surgical therapy, and probably analgesics with effect on the central nervous system such as tricyclic antidepressives, serotonin reuptake inhibitors, ion-channel blockers or opioids with additional effect on the N-methyle-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor or kappa- opioids receptors should be used. Phase II trials where the experimental methods are used to evaluate these drugs will be a feasible way to obtain more knowledge, before more expensive large scale phase III studies in the clinic are initiated.

REFERENCES

1 **Bochus HL.** Abdominal Pain. In: Berk JE, editor. Gastroenterology. Philidelphia: WB Saunders, 1985: 22-47
2 **Sandler RS**, Stewart WF, Liberman JN, Ricci JA, Zorich NL. Abdominal pain, bloating, and diarrhea in the United States: prevalence and impact. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45:** 1166-1171
3 **Russo MW**, Wei JT, Thiny MT, Gangarosa LM, Brown A, Ringel Y, Shaheen NJ, Sandler RS. Digestive and liver diseases statistics, 2004. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126:** 1448-1453
4 **Drewes AM**, Gregersen H, Arendt-Nielsen L. Experimental pain in gastroenterology: a reappraisal of human studies. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38:** 1115-1130
5 **Staahl C**, Drewes AM. Experimental human pain models: a review of standardised methods for preclinical testing of analgesics. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol* 2004; **95:** 97-111
6 **Sengupta JN**., Gebhart GF. Gastrointestinal afferent fibers and sensation. In: Johnson L, editor. Physiology of the Gastrointestinal Tract. Third ed. New York: Raven Press, 1994: 484-519
7 **Le Bars D**, Gozariu M, Cadden SW. Animal models of nociception. *Pharmacol Rev* 2001; **53:** 597-652
8 **Gracely RH**. Pain measurement. *Acta Anaesthesiol Scand* 1999; **43:** 897-908
9 **Ness TJ**, Gebhart GF. Visceral pain: a review of experimental studies. *Pain* 1990; **41:** 167-234
10 **Gebhart GF**, Meller ST, Euchner-Wamser I, Sengupta JN. Modelling visceral pain. In: Vecchiet L, Albe-Fessard D, Lindblom U, Giamberardino MA, editors. New trends in Referred Pain and Hyperalgesia. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1993: 129-148
11 **Curatolo M**, Petersen-Felix S, Arendt-Nielsen L. Sensory assessment of regional analgesia in humans: a review of methods and applications. *Anesthesiology* 2000; **93:** 1517-1530
12 **Accarino AM**, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Symptomatic responses to stimulation of sensory pathways in the jejunum. *Am J Physiol* 1992; **263:** G673-G677
13 **Drewes AM**, Arendt-Nielsen L, Jensen JH, Hansen JB, Krarup HB, Tage-Jensen U. Experimental pain in the stomach: a model based on electrical stimulation guided by gastroscopy. *Gut* 1997; **41:** 753-757
14 **Drewes AM**, Petersen P, Qvist P, Nielsen J, Arendt-Nielsen L. An experimental pain model based on electric stimulations of the colon mucosa. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1999; **34:** 765-771
15 **Loening-Baucke V**, Read NW, Yamada T. Further evaluation of the afferent nervous pathways from the rectum. *Am J Physiol* 1992; **262:** G927-G933
16 **Arendt-Nielsen L**, Drewes AM, Hansen JB, Tage-Jensen U. Gut pain reactions in man: an experimental investigation using short and long duration transmucosal electrical stimulation. *Pain* 1997; **69:** 255-262
17 **Drewes AM**, Schipper KP, Dimcevski G, Petersen P, Andersen OK, Gregersen H, Arendt-Nielsen L. Multimodal assessment of pain in the esophagus: a new experimental model. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283:** G95-103
18 **Drewes AM**, Schipper KP, Dimcevski G, Petersen P, Gregersen H, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L. Gut pain and

hyperalgesia induced by capsaicin: a human experimental model. *Pain* 2003; **104:** 333-341
19 **Chen AC**. Human brain measures of clinical pain: a review. II. Tomographic imagings. *Pain* 1993; **54:** 133-144
20 **Hollerbach S**, Tougas G, Frieling T, Enck P, Fitzpatrick D, Upton AR, Kamath MV. Cerebral evoked responses to gastrointestinal stimulation in humans. *Crit Rev Biomed Eng* 1997; **25:** 203-242
21 **Frøbert O**, Arendt-Nielsen L, Bak P, Andersen OK, Funch-Jensen P, Bagger JP. Electric stimulation of the esophageal mucosa. Perception and brain-evoked potentials. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1994; **29:** 776-781
22 **Gregersen H**, Kraglund K, Djurhuus JC. Variations in duodenal cross-sectional area during the interdigestive migrating motility complex. *Am J Physiol* 1990; **259:** G26-G31
23 **Mayrand S**, Diamant NE. Measurement of human esophageal tone in vivo. *Gastroenterology* 1993; **105:** 1411-1420
24 **Rouillon JM**, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Reflex changes in intestinal tone: relationship to perception. *Am J Physiol* 1991; **261:** G280-G286
25 **Gregersen H**, Andersen MB. Impedance measuring system for quantification of cross-sectional area in the gastrointestinal tract. *Med Biol Eng Comput* 1991; **29:** 108-110.
26 **Distrutti E**, Azpiroz F, Soldevilla A, Malagelada JR. Gastric wall tension determines perception of gastric distention. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116:** 1035-1042
27 **Gregersen H**, Orvar K, Christensen J. Biomechanical properties of duodenal wall and duodenal tone during phase I and phase II of the MMC. *Am J Physiol* 1992; **263:** G795-G801
28 **Mertz H**, Naliboff B, Munakata J, Niazi N, Mayer EA. Altered rectal perception is a biological marker of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109:** 40-52
29 **Kellow JE**, Delvaux M, Azpiroz F, Camilleri M, Quigley EM, Thompson DG. Principles of applied neurogastroenterology: physiology/motility-sensation. *Gut* 1999; **45 Suppl 2:** II17-II24
30 **van der Schaar PJ**, Lamers CB, Masclee AA. The role of the barostat in human research and clinical practice. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl* 1999; **230:** 52-63
31 **Drewes AM**, Petersen P, Rössel P, Gao C, Hansen JB, Arendt-Nielsen L. Sensitivity and distensibility of the rectum and sigmoid colon in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2001; **36:** 827-832
32 **Pedersen J**, Gao C, Egekvist H, Bjerring P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Pain and biomechanical responses to distention of the duodenum in patients with systemic sclerosis. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124:** 1230-1239
33 **Silverman DH**, Munakata JA, Ennes H, Mandelkern MA, Hoh CK, Mayer EA. Regional cerebral activity in normal and pathological perception of visceral pain. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112:** 64-72
34 **Delvaux M**, Louvel D, Lagier E, Scherrer B, Abitbol JL, Frexinos J. The kappa agonist fedotozine relieves hypersensitivity to colonic distention in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116:** 38-45
35 **Thumshirn M**, Camilleri M, Choi MG, Zinsmeister AR. Modulation of gastric sensory and motor functions by nitrergic and alpha2-adrenergic agents in humans. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116:** 573-585
36 **Zighelboim J**, Talley NJ, Phillips SF, Harmsen WS, Zinsmeister AR. Visceral perception in irritable bowel syndrome. Rectal and gastric responses to distension and serotonin type 3 antagonism. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40:** 819-827
37 **Bueno L**, Fioramonti J, Delvaux M, Frexinos J. Mediators and pharmacology of visceral sensitivity: from basic to clinical investigations. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112:** 1714-1743
38 **Hjelland IE**, Hausken T, Svebak S, Olafsson S, Berstad A. Vagal tone and meal-induced abdominal symptoms in healthy subjects. *Digestion* 2002; **65:** 172-176
39 **Whitehead WE**, Delvaux M. Standardization of barostat procedures for testing smooth muscle tone and sensory thresholds in the gastrointestinal tract. The Working Team of Glaxo-Wellcome Research, UK. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42:** 223-241
40 **Camilleri M**. Testing the sensitivity hypothesis in practice: tools and methods, assumptions and pitfalls. *Gut* 2002; **51 Suppl 1:** i34-i40
41 **Gregersen H**, Christensen J. Gastrointestinal tone. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2000; **12:** 501-508
42 **Gregersen H**. Standardization of barostat procedures. *Dig Dis Sci* 1998; **43:** 1416-1420
43 **Gregersen H**, Emery JL, McCulloch AD. History-dependent mechanical behavior of guinea-pig small intestine. *Ann Biomed Eng* 1998; **26:** 850-858
44 **Gregersen H**, Kassab G. Biomechanics of the gastrointestinal tract. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1996; **8:** 277-297
45 **Gao C**, Arendt-Nielsen L, Liu W, Petersen P, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. Sensory and biomechanical responses to ramp-controlled distension of the human duodenum. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2003; **284:** G461-G471
46 **Barlow JD**, Gregersen H, Thompson DG. Identification of the biomechanical factors associated with the perception of distension in the human esophagus. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **282:** G683-G689
47 **Drewes AM**, Pedersen J, Liu W, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H. Controlled mechanical distension of the human oesophagus: sensory and biomechanical findings. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38:** 27-35
48 **Petersen P**, Gao C, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Pain intensity and biomechanical responses during ramp-controlled distension of the human rectum. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48:** 1310-1316
49 **Piessevaux H**, Tack J, Wilmer A, Coulie B, Geubel A, Janssens J. Perception of changes in wall tension of the proximal stomach in humans. *Gut* 2001; **49:** 203-208
50 **Gregersen H**, Stodkilde-Jorgensen H, Djurhuus JC, Mortensen SO. The four-electrode impedance technique: a method for investigation of compliance in luminal organs. *Clin Phys Physiol Meas* 1988; **9 Suppl A:** 61-64
51 **Gregersen H**, Barlow J, Thompson D. Development of a computer-controlled tensiometer for real-time measurements of tension in tubular organs. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1999; **11:** 109-118
52 **Gregersen H**, Gilja OH, Hausken T, Heimdal A, Gao C, Matre K, Ødegaard S, Berstad A. Mechanical properties in the human gastric antrum using B-mode ultrasonography and antral distension. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283:** G368-G375
53 **Bonica JJ.** Anatomic and physiologic basis of nociception and pain. In: Bonica JJ, editor. The management of pain. Philidelphia: Lea and Febiger, 1990: 1186-1213
54 **Handwerker HO**, Kobal G. Psychophysiology of experimentally induced pain. *Physiol Rev* 1993; **73:** 639-671
55 **Stürup GK.** Visceral Pain. London: HK Lewis and Co. Ltd., 1940
56 **Miller R**, Bartolo DC, Cervero F, Mortensen NJ. Anorectal temperature sensation: a comparison of normal and incontinent patients. *Br J Surg* 1987; **74:** 511-515
57 **Villanova N**, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Perception and gut reflexes induced by stimulation of gastrointestinal thermoreceptors in humans. *J Physiol* 1997; **502 (Pt 1):** 215-222
58 **Drewes AM**, Schipper KP, Dimcevski G, Petersen P, Andersen OK, Gregersen H, Arendt-Nielsen L. Multi-modal induction and assessment of allodynia and hyperalgesia in the human oesophagus. *Eur J Pain* 2003; **7:** 539-549
59 **Arendt-Nielsen L.** Induction and assessment of experimental pain from human skin, muscle, and viscera. In: Jensen TS, Turner JA, Wiesenfeld-Hallin Z, editors. Proceedings of the 8th World Congress of Pain, Progress in Pain Research and Management. Seattle: ISAP Press, 1997: 393-425
60 **Babenko V**, Graven-Nielsen T, Svensson P, Drewes AM, Jensen TS, Arendt-Nielsen L. Experimental human muscle pain induced by intramuscular injections of bradykinin, serotonin, and substance P. *Eur J Pain* 1999; **3:** 93-102
61 **Longhurst JC.** Chemosensitive abdominal visceral afferent. In: Gebhart GF, editor. Visceral Pain. Seattle: IASP Press, 1995: 99-132
62 **Bernstein LM**, Baker LA. A clinical test for esophagitis. *Gas-*

troenterology 1958; **34:** 760-781
63 **Tack JF.** Chest pain of oesophageal origin. In: Corazziari E, editor. Approach to the patient with chronic gastrointestinal disorders. first ed. Milano: Messaggi, 1999: 153-170
64 **Drewes AM**, Reddy H, Staahl C, Pedersen J, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H. Sensory-motor responses to mechanical stimulation of the esophagus after sensitization with acid. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11:** 4367-4374
65 **Reddy H**, Arendt-Nielsen L, Staahl C, Pedersen J, Funch-Jensen P, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Gender differences in pain and biomechanical responses after acid sensitization of the human esophagus. *Dig Dis Sci* 2005; **50:** 2050-2058
66 **Louvel D**, Delvaux M, Staumont G, Camman F, Fioramonti J, Bueno L, Frexinos J. Intracolonic injection of glycerol: a model for abdominal pain in irritable bowel syndrome? *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110:** 351-361
67 **Lim RK**, Miller DG, Guzman F, Rodgers DW, Rogers RW, Wang SK, Chao PY, Shih TY. Pain and analgesia evaluated by the intraperitoneal bradykinin-evoked pain method in man. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1967; **8:** 521-542
68 **Maggi CA.** The dual, sensory and "efferent" function of the capsaicin-sensitive primary sensory neurons in the urinary bladder and uretra. In: Maggi CA, editor. Nervous control of the urogenital system. Chur: Harwood Academic Publishers, 1993: 382-422
69 **Drewes AM**, Babenko L, Birket-Smith L, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L. Induction of non-painful and painful intestinal sensations by hypertonic saline: a new human experimental model. *Eur J Pain* 2003; **7:** 81-91
70 **Ohman U**. Studies on small intestinal obstruction. *Acta Chir Scand Suppl* 1975; **452:** 1-41
71 **Hoff DA**, Gregersen H, Odegaard S, Nesje LB, Oevreboe K, Hausken T, Gilja OH, Matre K, Hatlebakk JG. A multimodal laser Doppler and endosonographic distension device for studying mechanosensation and mucosal blood flow in the oesophagus. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2006; **18:** 243-248
72 **Drewes AM.** Experimentally evoked pain in the human gastrointestinal tract: Sensory manifestations to painful electrical stimuli. Thesis. Aalborg University, 1998
73 **Enggaard TP**, Poulsen L, Arendt-Nielsen L, Hansen SH, Bjørnsdottir I, Gram LF, Sindrup SH. The analgesic effect of codeine as compared to imipramine in different human experimental pain models. *Pain* 2001; **92:** 277-282
74 **Arendt-Nielsen L**, Petersen-Felix S, Fischer M, Bak P, Bjerring P, Zbinden AM. The effect of N-methyl-D-aspartate antagonist (ketamine) on single and repeated nociceptive stimuli: a placebo-controlled experimental human study. *Anesth Analg* 1995; **81:** 63-68
75 **Hollerbach S**, Hudoba P, Fitzpatrick D, Hunt R, Upton AR, Tougas G. Cortical evoked responses following esophageal balloon distension and electrical stimulation in healthy volunteers. *Dig Dis Sci* 1998; **43:** 2558-2566
76 **Mehta AJ**, De Caestecker JS, Camm AJ, Northfield TC. Sensitization to painful distention and abnormal sensory perception in the esophagus. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108:** 311-319
77 **DeVault KR**. Acid infusion does not affect intraesophageal balloon distention-induced sensory and pain thresholds. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1997; **92:** 947-949
78 **Hu WH**, Martin CJ, Talley NJ. Intraesophageal acid perfusion sensitizes the esophagus to mechanical distension: a Barostat study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95:** 2189-2194
79 **Sarkar S**, Aziz Q, Woolf CJ, Hobson AR, Thompson DG. Contribution of central sensitisation to the development of non-cardiac chest pain. *Lancet* 2000; **356:** 1154-1159
80 **Pedersen J**, Reddy H, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Cold and heat pain assessment of the human oesophagus after experimental sensitisation with acid. *Pain* 2004; **110:** 393-399
81 **Arendt-Nielsen L**, Laursen RJ, Drewes AM. Referred pain as an indicator for neural plasticity. *Prog Brain Res* 2000; **129:** 343-356
82 **Mayer EA**, Munakata J, Mertz H, Lembo T, Bernstein CN. Visceral hyperalgesia and irritable bowel syndrome. In: Gebhart GF, editor. Visceral pain, Progress in Pain Research and Management. Seattle: IASP Press, 1995: 429-68
83 **Yaksh TL**. Spinal systems and pain processing: development of novel analgesic drugs with mechanistically defined models. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 1999; **20:** 329-337
84 **Ness TJ**, Metcalf AM, Gebhart GF. A psychophysiological study in humans using phasic colonic distension as a noxious visceral stimulus. *Pain* 1990; **43:** 377-386
85 **Ness TJ**, Richter HE, Varner RE, Fillingim RB. A psychophysical study of discomfort produced by repeated filling of the urinary bladder. *Pain* 1998; **76:** 61-69
86 **Munakata J**, Naliboff B, Harraf F, Kodner A, Lembo T, Chang L, Silverman DH, Mayer EA. Repetitive sigmoid stimulation induces rectal hyperalgesia in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112:** 55-63
87 **Fass R**, Naliboff B, Higa L, Johnson C, Kodner A, Munakata J, Ngo J, Mayer EA. Differential effect of long-term esophageal acid exposure on mechanosensitivity and chemosensitivity in humans. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **115:** 1363-1373
88 **Gonzalez R**, Dunkel R, Koletzko B, Schusdziarra V, Allescher HD. Effect of capsaicin-containing red pepper sauce suspension on upper gastrointestinal motility in healthy volunteers. *Dig Dis Sci* 1998; **43:** 1165-1171
89 **Rodriguez-Stanley S**, Collings KL, Robinson M, Owen W, Miner PB Jr. The effects of capsaicin on reflux, gastric emptying and dyspepsia. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14:** 129-134
90 **Barbera R**, Feinle C, Read NW. Abnormal sensitivity to duodenal lipid infusion in patients with functional dyspepsia. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1995; **7:** 1051-1057
91 **Simrén M**, Abrahamsson H, Björnsson ES. An exaggerated sensory component of the gastrocolonic response in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2001; **48:** 20-27
92 **Mahmood Z**, McNamara D. Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease and ulcer disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **18 Suppl 3:** 31-37
93 **Labenz J**, Malfertheiner P. Treatment of uncomplicated reflux disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11:** 4291-4299
94 **Carlsson R**, Frison L, Lundell L, Dent J. Relationship between symptoms, endoscopic findings and treatment outcome in reflux esophagitis. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110:** A77
95 **Fass R**, Tougas G. Functional heartburn: the stimulus, the pain, and the brain. *Gut* 2002; **51:** 885-892
96 **Okamoto K**, Iwakiri R, Mori M, Hara M, Oda K, Danjo A, Ootani A, Sakata H, Fujimoto K. Clinical symptoms in endoscopic reflux esophagitis: evaluation in 8031 adult subjects. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48:** 2237-2241
97 **Carlsson R**, Dent J, Bolling-Sternevald E, Johnsson F, Junghard O, Lauritsen K, Riley S, Lundell L. The usefulness of a structured questionnaire in the assessment of symptomatic gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1998; **33:** 1023-1029
98 **Bytzer P**. Goals of therapy and guidelines for treatment success in symptomatic gastroesophageal reflux disease patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98:** S31-S39
99 **Milkes D**, Gerson LB, Triadafilopoulos G. Complete elimination of reflux symptoms does not guarantee normalization of intraesophageal and intragastric pH in patients with gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD). *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99:** 991-996
100 **Garrison DW**, Chandler MJ, Foreman RD. Viscerosomatic convergence onto feline spinal neurons from esophagus, heart and somatic fields: effects of inflammation. *Pain* 1992; **49:** 373-382
101 **Rodriguez-Stanley S**, Robinson M, Earnest DL, Greenwood-Van Meerveld B, Miner PB Jr. Esophageal hypersensitivity may be a major cause of heartburn. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94:** 628-631
102 **Trimble KC**, Pryde A, Heading RC. Lowered oesophageal sensory thresholds in patients with symptomatic but not excess gastro-oesophageal reflux: evidence for a spectrum of visceral sensitivity in GORD. *Gut* 1995; **37:** 7-12
103 **Matthews PJ**, Aziz Q, Facer P, Davis JB, Thompson DG,

Anand P. Increased capsaicin receptor TRPV1 nerve fibres in the inflamed human oesophagus. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **16:** 897-902
104 **Penagini R**, Hebbard G, Horowitz M, Dent J, Bermingham H, Jones K, Holloway RH. Motor function of the proximal stomach and visceral perception in gastro-oesophageal reflux disease. *Gut* 1998; **42:** 251-257
105 **Giamberardino MA**. Recent and forgotten aspects of visceral pain. *Eur J Pain* 1999; **3:** 77-92
106 **Sarkar S**, Hobson AR, Furlong PL, Woolf CJ, Thompson DG, Aziz Q. Central neural mechanisms mediating human visceral hypersensitivity. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **281:** G1196-G1202
107 **Sami SA,** Rössel P, Dimcevski G, Nielsen KD, Funch-Jensen P, Valeriani M, Arendt-Nielsen L, Drewes AM. Cortical changes to experimental sensitization of the human esophagus. *Neuroscience* 2006; **140**: 269-279
108 **Fass R**. Epidemiology and pathophysiology of symptomatic gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98:** S2-S7
109 **Barlow WJ**, Orlando RC. The pathogenesis of heartburn in nonerosive reflux disease: a unifying hypothesis. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128:** 771-778
110 **Drewes AM**, Reddy H, Pedersen J, Funch-Jensen P, Gregersen H, Arendt-Nielsen L. Multimodal pain stimulations in patients with grade B oesophagitis. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 926-932
111 **Mayer EA**, Gebhart GF. Basic and clinical aspects of visceral hyperalgesia. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107:** 271-293
112 **Le Bars D**, Dickenson AH, Besson JM. Diffuse noxious inhibitory controls (DNIC). I. Effects on dorsal horn convergent neurones in the rat. *Pain* 1979; **6:** 283-304
113 **Suzuki R**, Morcuende S, Webber M, Hunt SP, Dickenson AH. What the brain tells the spinal cord: Lamina I/III NK1-expressing neurons control spinal activity via descending pathways. In: Dostrovsky JO, Carr DB, Koltzenburg M, editors. Proceedings of the 10th World Congress on Pain, Progress in Pain Research and Management. Seattle: IASP Press, 2003: 337-344
114 **Roza C**, Laird JM, Cervero F. Spinal mechanisms underlying persistent pain and referred hyperalgesia in rats with an experimental ureteric stone. *J Neurophysiol* 1998; **79:** 1603-1612
115 **Bernstein CN**, Niazi N, Robert M, Mertz H, Kodner A, Munakata J, Naliboff B, Mayer EA. Rectal afferent function in patients with inflammatory and functional intestinal disorders. *Pain* 1996; **66:** 151-161
116 **Mertz H**, Fullerton S, Naliboff B, Mayer EA. Symptoms and visceral perception in severe functional and organic dyspepsia. *Gut* 1998; **42:** 814-822
117 **Rössel P**, Drewes AM, Petersen P, Nielsen J, Arendt-Nielsen L. Pain produced by electric stimulation of the rectum in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: further evidence of visceral hyperalgesia. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1999; **34:** 1001-1006
118 **Schmulson M**, Chang L, Naliboff B, Lee OY, Mayer EA. Correlation of symptom criteria with perception thresholds during rectosigmoid distension in irritable bowel syndrome patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95:** 152-156
119 **Eslick GD**, Coulshed DS, Talley NJ. Review article: the burden of illness of non-cardiac chest pain. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16:** 1217-1223
120 **Eslick GD**, Jones MP, Talley NJ. Non-cardiac chest pain: prevalence, risk factors, impact and consulting--a population-based study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **17:** 1115-1124
121 **Drewes AM**, Arendt-Nielsen L, Krarup HB, Hansen JB, Tage-Jensen U. Pain evoked by electrical stimulation of the prepyloric region of the stomach: cutaneous sensibility changes in the referred pain area. *Pain Res Manag* 1999; **4:** 131-137
122 **Wong WM**, Lai KC, Lam KF, Hui WM, Hu WH, Lam CL, Xia HH, Huang JQ, Chan CK, Lam SK, Wong BC. Prevalence, clinical spectrum and health care utilization of gastro-oesophageal reflux disease in a Chinese population: a population-based study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2003; **18:** 595-604
123 **Kahrilas PJ**. Gastroesophageal reflux disease. *JAMA* 1996; **276:** 983-988
124 **Balaban DH**, Yamamoto Y, Liu J, Pehlivanov N, Wisniewski R, DeSilvey D, Mittal RK. Sustained esophageal contraction: a marker of esophageal chest pain identified by intraluminal ultrasonography. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116:** 29-37
125 **Cervero F**. Visceral pain. In: Dubner R, Gebhart GF, Bond MR, editors. Pain Research and Clinical Management, Proceedings of the 5th World Congress on Pain. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1988: 216-226
126 **Giamberardino MA**, Vecchiet L. Pathophysiology of visceral pain. *Curr Rev Pain* 1996; **1:** 23-33
127 **Frøbert O**, Arendt-Nielsen L, Bak P, Funch-Jensen P, Peder Bagger J. Pain perception and brain evoked potentials in patients with angina despite normal coronary angiograms. *Heart* 1996; **75:** 436-441
128 **Hollerbach S**, Bulat R, May A, Kamath MV, Upton AR, Fallen EL, Tougas G. Abnormal cerebral processing of oesophageal stimuli in patients with noncardiac chest pain (NCCP). *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2000; **12:** 555-565
129 **Smout AJ**, DeVore MS, Dalton CB, Castell DO. Cerebral potentials evoked by oesophageal distension in patients with non-cardiac chest pain. *Gut* 1992; **33:** 298-302
130 **Richter JE**, Barish CF, Castell DO. Abnormal sensory perception in patients with esophageal chest pain. *Gastroenterology* 1986; **91:** 845-852
131 **Cannon RO 3rd**, Benjamin SB. Chest pain as a consequence of abnormal visceral nociception. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38:** 193-196
132 **Barish CF**, Castell DO, Richter JE. Graded esophageal balloon distention. A new provocative test for noncardiac chest pain. *Dig Dis Sci* 1986; **31:** 1292-1298
133 **Nevens F**, Janssens J, Piessens J, Ghillebert G, De Geest H, Vantrappen G. Prospective study on prevalence of esophageal chest pain in patients referred on an elective basis to a cardiac unit for suspected myocardial ischemia. *Dig Dis Sci* 1991; **36:** 229-235
134 **Rao SS**, Gregersen H, Hayek B, Summers RW, Christensen J. Unexplained chest pain: the hypersensitive, hyperreactive, and poorly compliant esophagus. *Ann Intern Med* 1996; **124:** 950-958
135 **Rao SS**, Hayek B, Summers RW. Functional chest pain of esophageal origin: hyperalgesia or motor dysfunction. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96:** 2584-2589
136 **Rao SS**, Hayek B, Mudipalli R, Gregersen H. Does esophageal function vary at the striated and smooth muscle segments in functional chest pain? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97:** 2201-2207
137 **Paterson WG**, Wang H, Vanner SJ. Increasing pain sensation to repeated esophageal balloon distension in patients with chest pain of undetermined etiology. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40:** 1325-1331
138 **Drewes AM,** Pedersen J, Reddy H, Rasmussen K, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H. Central sensitization in patients with non-cardiac chest pain: a clinical experimental study. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2006; **41**: 640-649
139 **Chen AC**. Human brain measures of clinical pain: a review. I. Topographic mappings. *Pain* 1993; **54:** 115-132
140 **Enck P**, Frieling T. Human gut-brain interactions. *J Gastrointest Mot* 1993; **5:** 77-87
141 **Frøbert O**, Arendt-Nielsen L, Bak P, Funch-Jensen P, Bagger JP. Oesophageal sensation assessed by electrical stimuli and brain evoked potentials--a new model for visceral nociception. *Gut* 1995; **37:** 603-609
142 **Hobson AR**, Aziz Q. Brain imaging and functional gastrointestinal disorders: has it helped our understanding? *Gut* 2004; **53:** 1198-1206

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Bai SH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2818-2824
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, Asbjorn Mohr Drewes, MD, *Series Editor*

Functional oesophago-gastric junction imaging

Barry P McMahon, Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, Hans Gregersen

Barry P McMahon, Department of Medical Physics and Clinical Engineering, Adelaide and Meath Hospital Dublin, Incorporating the National Children's Hospital, Tallaght, Dublin 24, Ireland
Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, Hans Gregersen, Centre for Visceral Biomechanics & Pain, Aalborg Hospital, Aalborg, Denmark
Correspondence to: Dr. Barry P McMahon, Department of Medical Physics & Clinical Engineering, Adelaide & Meath Hospital, Tallaght, Dublin 24, Ireland. barry@mech-sense.com
Telephone: +353-1-4145898 Fax: +353-1-4142501
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

Despite its role in disease there is still no definitive method to assess oesophago-gastric junction competence (OGJ). Traditionally the OGJ has been assessed using manometry with lower oesophageal sphincter pressure as the indicator. More recently this has been shown not to be a very reliable marker of sphincter function and competence against reflux. Disorders such as gastro-oesophageal reflux disease and to a lesser extend achalasia still effects a significant number of patients. This review looks at using a new technique known as impedance planimetry to profile the geometry and pressure in the OGJ during distension of a bag. The data gathered can be reconstructed into a dynamic representation of OGJ action. This has been shown to provide a useful representation of the OGJ and to show changes to the competence of the OGJ in terms of compliance and distensibility as a result of endoluminal therapy.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Oesophagogastric junction; Lower oesophageal sphincter; Competence; Distensibility; Functional imaging

McMahon BP, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. Functional oesophago-gastric junction imaging. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2818-2824

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2818.asp

INTRODUCTION

The oesophago-gastric junction (OGJ) is located between the oesophagus and the stomach. Its dynamic action is dependant upon the intrinsic and extrinsic effects of its own anatomical structure and its position with respect to the surrounding organs in this region of the body. Despite its relationship to diseased states of the oesophagus, no objective measurement technique has been developed to quantify the normal or abnormal functioning of the OGJ. It is generally accepted that sphincters divide the gut into functional segments. They are characterized by a resting tension, generally known as muscle tone which is greater than in the two adjacent segments. It is common nowadays to give the term sphincter a functional meaning rather than its original anatomical meaning[1]. The sphincter at the lower end of the oesophagus, the lower oesophageal sphincter (LOS), forms part of the OGJ structure. At the OGJ the oesophagus opens into the stomach at the cardia. It is important that backflow of stomach secretions into the oesophagus is controlled at the OGJ. The OGJ guards against gastric acid moving up into the oesophagus, opening only transiently to allow passage of the swallowed food into the stomach. Swallowing is a demanding reflex activity[2]. The diaphragmatic hiatus, through which the oesophagus passes just at the OGJ, has a role in this valvular mechanism[3].

Several other structures are important in maintaining a barrier in the OGJ against the back flow of food and the stomach acids into the oesophagus, known as the anti-reflux barrier. The intrinsic muscles of the distal oesophagus and the sling fibres of the proximal stomach make up the internal mechanism of the LOS[4]. The muscles of the diaphragm that connect to the OGJ make up the crural diaphragm and this constitutes the external LOS mechanism. The tissue that connects the distal oesophagus to the crural diaphragm is known as the phreno-oesophageal ligament[5].

The OGJ can be distinguished from the body of the oesophagus by its behaviour pattern characteristics. There is an increase in the tone of the circular muscle in this region. The sphincter relaxes in response to a swallow and this usually precedes the arrival of a contraction wave travelling down the oesophagus. This phase of relaxation is followed by a short-lasting elevation of pressure above resting values[6]. In recent years it has been identified that the sphincter sometimes relaxes even when a swallow does not occur. These relaxations are know as transient lower oesophageal sphincter relaxations (tLOSRs)[7]. Other factors contribute to the role of the OGJ in controlling the flow of solids, liquids and gases between the oesophagus and the stomach. Pressures in the abdominal and thoracic cavities are involved as well as the exact intra-abdominal

location of the junction. Time and posture are also important factors.

THE ROLE OF THE OGJ IN DISEASE

Disorders of the OGJ in general relate to two diseased states. Conditions where the disease may be related to an OGJ not closing normally are generally referred to as gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GORD) and conditions where the OGJ fails to relax or open, which is referred to as achalasia.

Gastro-oesophageal reflux disease

GORD symptoms are very common in the general population affecting up to 44% of the US population at least once a month and 20% of the population once a week[8,9]. It has been shown that patients suffering from GORD have a lower health related quality of life than patients with angina and mild heart failure[10]. There is solid evidence that incompetence or dysfunction of the OGJ is a primary determinant of GORD. Three mechanisms at the OGJ lead to an increased number of acid reflux events associated with GORD: tLOSRs, free reflux during periods of low LOS pressure or deglutitive relaxation of the LOS[7,11-13]. Much more needs to be learned about the dynamic action of the OGJ if we are to fully understand its role in GORD. Current treatment of GORD is with acid suppressing drugs such as proton pump inhibitors but for those refractory to pharmacological treatment surgery is often recommended. The surgery of choice for GORD is the laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication[14].

Achalasia

Achalasia is an oesophageal disorder of unknown cause characterized by aperistalsis of the oesophageal body and impaired relaxation of the lower oesophageal sphincter[2,15]. It is a relatively rare disease and in Western countries the annual incidence is in the range 0.5 to 8 cases per 100 000 people[16]. It can be difficult to make a diagnosis in some patients because of vague symptoms. Symptoms can emerge slowly and patients adapt. The diagnosis can be confirmed by endoscopy and manometry[17]. Developing a device that can profile the OGJ will contribute greatly to the understanding of this disorder, which often manifests as a permanently constricted or toned sphincter. Surgical performance of an oesophageal myotomy is the treatment of choice for some severe cases of achalasia[18]. Currently the laparoscopic oesophageal Heller-Nissen procedure is commonly used[19].

BIOMECHANICS OF THE OGJ

Biomechanics are the laws of mechanics applied to biology[20]. There is an increasing recognition of the importance of tissue biomechanical properties for function, e.g. organ geometry, resting conditions and elasticity is determinants of flow in the organ and sensory responses in the neural circuits. When dealing with biological tissues, solid mechanical parameters such as the relation between forces (membrane stress resultant, tension) and deformation (often expressed as a strain) are important to evaluate. The mechanical properties of the OGJ are important determinants of its distensibility and competence. In vitro studies have shown potential in measuring biomechanical parameters in the OGJ[21-25]. Very few methods exist for assessment of mechanical properties in the GI tract *in vivo*. One method is impedance planimetry from where the cross-sectional area (CSA) and pressure data can be gathered and the wall tension and strain in the organ can be estimated[26]. Other methods rely on the combination of bag distension and manometry with high resolution imaging techniques such as 3D-ultrasound of the gastric antrum[27] or MRI of the rectum[28]. Manometry is of course a simple biomechanical measurement. Its use will be mentioned again later.

METHODS OF EVALUATING OGJ FUNCTION

In 1964 Mann *et al*[6] suggested that the zone separating the lower end of the oesophagus from the stomach can be recognized in two different ways, by its distinguishing anatomic features and its unique patterns of behaviour. A huge amount of knowledge about the anatomy of the OGJ has been assembled over the last 40 years, but much of our limited understanding of the behaviour has been related to manometric studies using single or multiple pressure recordings or a sleeve placed in the OGJ. While manometry provides useful information on motility within the lumens of the digestive tract, it may be more restrictive in what it can tell us about sphincteric regions such as the OGJ and their dynamics. Harris and Pope found that sphincters do not necessarily need to squeeze or contract tightly to be competent and therefore resistance to distension by measurement of radial force should be the prime determinant of sphincteric strength[29]. Measurement of luminal pressure, however, is not a direct measure of muscle tone and tension. It is merely a proxy of changes in force generated by the surrounding tissues[27,30].

No clinically acceptable quantitative method exists to directly measure OGJ mechanical function. Intraluminal pressure recordings is the only objective measurement technique for determining the competence of the LOS, but it is usually the more indirect method of measuring acid reflux in the oesophagus which is the key determinant of failure of the OGJ to inhibit flow. Thus, pH-metry rather than manometry is the recommended test for GORD[31].

Usually in medicine dynamic diagnostic imaging methods can be used to visualize and evaluate anatomical structures similar to the OGJ. Currently none of these methods give sufficient dynamic detail to contribute to the routine diagnosis and treatment of diseases of the OGJ. Recent developments in material sciences and technology have allowed the OGJ's resistance to distension to be studied using parameters such as distensibility, opening patterns and dimensions and flow rate[32-34]. It is becoming apparent that these measurements may be useful in determining the success of therapeutic interventions such as surgery[35]. However what is needed is a technique with high spatial and temporal resolution for determination of sphincter geometry and mechanical factors.

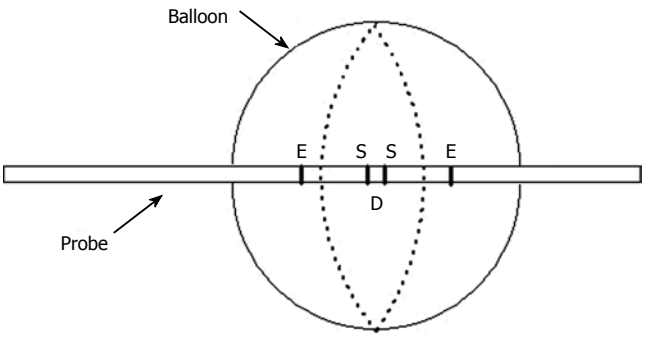


Figure 1 Sketch of a conventional impedance planimetry probe with a single set of excitation (E) and sensing (S) electrodes for the measurement of cross-sectional area in the middle of the bag. D is the distance between the sensing electrodes.

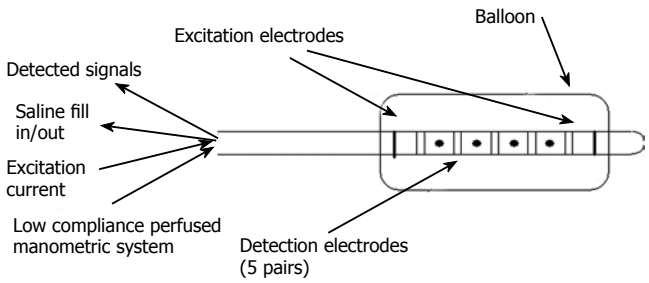


Figure 2 Diagram showing multi-electrode probe by Andersen et al for measuring 5 CSAs in the porcine rectum.

Impedance planimetry

Principle of Impedance Planimetry: Impedance planimetry (IP) is a technique established by Gregersen and coworkers for performing bag distensions in the GI tract (Figure 1). It has been used extensively to provide a single measure of CSA together with bag pressure in animal and human studies using electrical measurements inside the liquid filled bag[36]. Hence the term impedance planimetry. If we fill a polyurethane bag with saline and pass a constant current through it, the CSA is inversely proportional to the voltage across the sensing electrodes. If all other parameters are kept constant then the impedance becomes related to the CSA of the bag between the sensing electrodes.

$$V \propto \frac{1}{CSA},$$

Many studies have shown the usefulness and reliability of IP in the oesophagus of healthy volunteers and patients[37-54]. Rather than analyzing distension data based on pressure-volume relationships as is the case with the "Barostat", IP enables data on the CSA of the bag during distension to be gathered. CSA shows a better relationship to the diametrical changes in the alimentary lumen than volume[27]. However, by far most studies have been done using a single CSA recording inside the bag rather than obtaining a series of CSAs. Due to previous limitations, it has only been used in a few studies in sphincter regions[55,56]. These limitations related to the difficulties placing the measurement electrodes at the point of most interest and the fact that distending a bag in a high-pressure zone tends to displace the bag during the measurements.

Multiple measurements: A recent pilot study in the porcine rectum demonstrates how an IP probe placed in the rectum with 5 sensing electrode pairs with 2mm between pairs and 2cms between sets can detect contractile events at different levels along the longitudinal axis of the gut (Figure 2)[39,57]. This multi-electrode technique demonstrated how a balloon with a conducting liquid and a constant current source set up across two excitation electrodes can measure multiple CSAs by measuring the voltage across multiple electrode pairs within the electric field.

There are a number of potential sources of error in multiple measurement IP systems. Electrodes placed too close together will interfere with each other. The number of wires required to make the electrical connections goes up and therefore the potential for interference, liquid leaking into the probe and bad electrical connections is much.

Manometry

Manometry has been used for more than 50 years to monitor motility in the gastrointestinal tract. Since 1977 reliable methods have been available to obtain accurate measurements of force of closure of the lumens of the intestine when contracting. These system often use reliable perfused hydraulic-capillary systems where pressure at a sensor outside the body can be used to accurately measure pressure at a point along a catheter via a low flow rate perfused channel[58]. This system has been used extensively to measure force via a pressure measurement in lumens and in liquid filled balloons. Errors in manometric readings can be caused by air bubbles in the capillary lines, occlusion of the measurement site and the compliance of the recording system but in general if well set up they produce accurate readings. In more recent years catheters with solid state transducers are becoming more popular for pressure reading and these overcome some of the measurement problems.

Using manometry to determine the competence of sphincteric or valvular regions in the lumens of the digestive tract is however dubious. Dent recognized the problem of positioning the measurement point 30 years ago and proposed a solution[59] and others tried to follow suit[60]. But pressure is a measurement of force over area and this may not be a proper measure of the function of a valvular region. As suggested by Pope and Harris we cannot assume that just because a sphincter is closed that it has a contract force or in the terminology of manometry that if it has a high lower oesophageal pressure it is deemed to be competent.

Calculation of wall tension

Law of laplace: For a membraneous cylinder with transmural pressure P and radius r the circumferential tension T can be given by :

$$Pr = T$$

Use of Laplace's law is based on the assumption that the geometry of the segment is circular and cylindrical and that the wall thickness is very small.

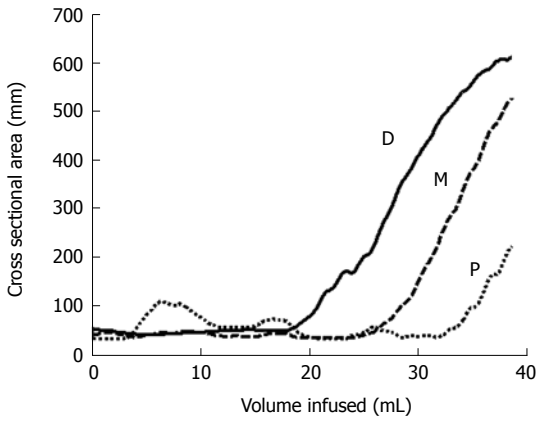


Figure 3 Plot showing the changes in the CSAs at the proximal (P), middle (M) and distal (D) electrode pairs as the balloon is distended at a constant flow rate indicated by the increase in volume.

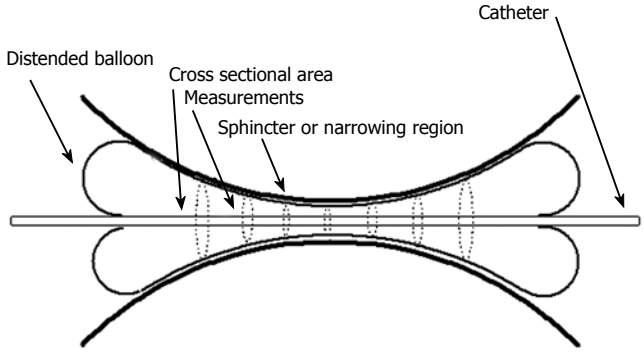


Figure 4 An example of how a probe which can measure 8 CSAs could profile the geometry of the narrowing region of a bodily sphincter.

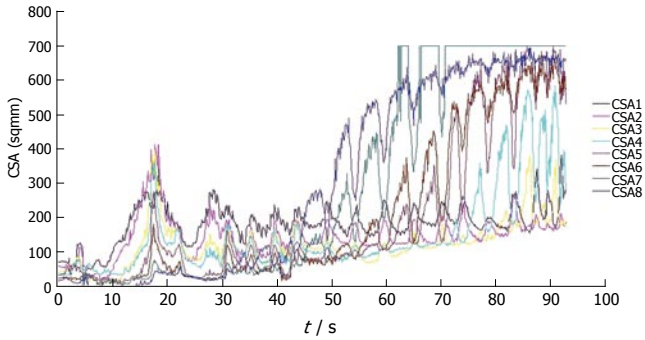


Figure 5 Plot showing changes in the 8 measured CSAs during bag distension at 40 mL/min. CSA1 is the most distal and CSA8 is the most proximal.

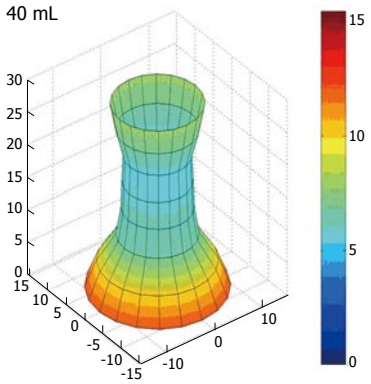


Figure 6 Three dimensional reconstruction of the OGJ geometry in a human volunteer after distension in to a volume of 40 mL. All dimensions are in millimeters. Colour change is indicating increased radius.

Measurements using multi-electrode Impedance planimetry in the oesophagogastric junction

We have demonstrated that a multi-electrode probe with a cylindrical bag mounted and filled with saline can be placed in the OGJ and that data on a number of CSAs in this area can be measured[49]. Figure 3 shows results of 3 CSA measurements 8 mm apart measured from distension of a bag in the OGJ of a healthy volunteer. The plot shows how the most distal CSA (D) measurement increases more rapidly than the middle CSA (M) as a constant volume of saline is filled in to the bag. For the most proximal CSA (P) the converse is true. This suggests that distally the OGJ is more compliant than proximally. This work also demonstrated for the first time how wall tension in the OGJ can be estimated from simple distension measurements. This preliminary version of the multi-electrode technique demonstrated that a probe can be placed in the OGJ and that data can be successfully collected. However, there were limitations such as the fact that there were only three measurements made. A narrowing region such a sphincter can not be profiled very well with three CSA measurements unless the exact position of the sphincter is located and maintained. Another limitation is the outer diameter of the catheter on which the bag is mounted. In this case it was 4.5 mm. If the sphincter is to be distended from as close to the closed position as possible then a smaller catheter needs to be used.

Figure 4 shows how a probe capable of measuring 8 CSAs could be used to profile a sphincter region. It is quite obvious that a larger number of sensing pairs could be more useful in providing a geometric profile. Consequently a more elaborate probe for measurement of up to 8 CSAs in the region of the oesophago-gastric junction was developed. This probe can measure CSAs at 4 mm intervals through the OGJ thus spanning a measurement range of 28 mm.

Figure 5 shows the data from the 8 CSAs during a bag distension at a fixed flow rate of 40 mL/min to a volume of 60 mL. The information in this format can be difficult to decipher. A probe to make these measurements has been validated and test in a healthy control subject[57]. Since the OGJ is such a dynamic organ it is its functional activity which can be more of interest. Hence it is possible to generate an illustration of the geometric changes in the OGJ.

If we introduce the idea of demonstrating the CSA changes dynamically as reconstructed data we introduce a new concept known as the functional lumen imaging probe (FLIP). The concept suggests that by gathering data on the dynamic changes in the geometry of the OGJ during normal physiological changes we can represent these changes by recreating the geometry in a three-dimensional image. The FLIP technique can be used to monitor geometric changes in the behaviour of the OGJ during bag distension as can be seen in Figure 6. Here the dynamic data is reconstructed demonstrating the effect of the balloon distension on the amount of OGJ opening.

FLIP can quantify changes in compliance of the OGJ after endoscopic suturing at the OGJ in a pig model[61]. Figure 7 indicates how the geometric reconstruction can be used to indicate changes in the profile of the OGJ after endoscopic plication. The pressure is higher, the CSA is smaller and subsequently the wall tension has increased after the plications are inserted. These measurements indicate that the OGJ becomes less compliant after plication. No direct measure of the effects of these therapies on the OGJ has been demonstrated before. Recent studies have expressed concerns about the efficacy and durability of these procedures[62-65]. FLIP may in fact reveal new information on the mechanism of action behind these new reflux therapies. In effect it suggests that endoscopic suturing augments the compliance of the OGJ to make it less compliant. Perhaps patients could now be selected better for these procedures if their compliance can be confirmed to be abnormal in the first place and maybe the success of the procedure could be determined directly at the time of the procedure so for example more stitches can be added if necessary.

Since GORD patients are such a large group perhaps this is the most important area for FLIP to be developed. The probe can distinguish between patients for reflux surgery and normal controls. These are of course the extreme group of patients. Further studies are of course necessary on larger cohorts of patients and controls.

We have recorded with the FLIP the compliance of the OGJ intra-operatively during oesophageal myotomy for achalasia (as yet unpublished findings by the authors). FLIP offers a more sensitive and possibly a better tool than manometry and may be used for evaluating effects of surgery during the procedure as opposed to using manometry more as a blunt instrument before and after as used by Arain *et al*[66]. FLIP could provide a valuable new tool for the oesophageal surgeon.

Summary

Work already carried out shows for the first time that CSA and pressure measurements in the OGJ can be used to measure distensibility by an entirely new technique. It demonstrates how the already established technique of impedance planimetry can be used to measure geometry in vivo in the human oesophagus. It also shows that there is validity of these new measurements, their appropriateness for use in sphincteric regions in the body and their comparable accuracy has been shown with ultrasound. It has been indicated how the measurement could be used practically. Safety and efficacy has been demonstrated. The work also demonstrates how this new measure could be used as a functional imaging technique. Preliminary studies have shown potential applications of the probe. It could prove to be a very valuable tool in endoscopic therapies. It can distinguish between normal and a stitched OGJs in live pigs.

As a resistance to distension test this better describes the sphincteric action of the OGJ than tonic contraction. Even advanced manometry uses such as volume vector analysis, the Dent Sleeve or the Sphinctometer all rely on the principal that there is a force of contraction always present when the sphincter is closed[59,60,67-70]. With FLIP this assumption is not made and it presents more of a challenge test to the sphincter. The technique also represents a more direct technique to evaluate the OGJ using opening patterns with manometry and intraluminal impedance[71].

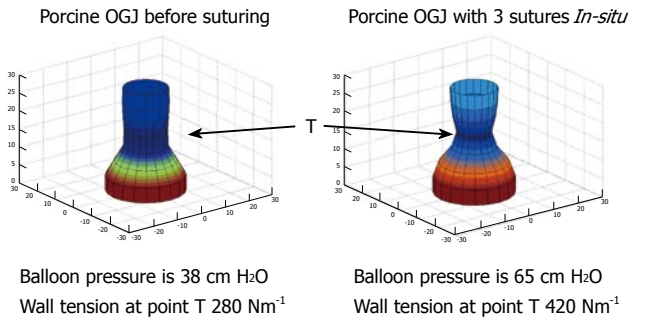


Figure 7 Geometric profile of the porcine OGJ before and after the placement of 3 sutures in the OGJ. T indicates the point where wall tension was measured.

Some other techniques for measurement of resistance to distension by other investigators are promising and confirm that the principals describe here have great potential for merit. However these other approaches are limited in a number of ways. The technique described by Pandolfino, although it is similar in its measurement design to FLIP, it requires fluoroscopic imaging[32,33,35]. It also depends on the pressure being controlled. Pressure control is difficult to achieve by increasing and reducing volume through a narrow catheter. Using pressure-volume data from the barostat to quantify distensibility does not a good basis in the application of the physical sciences. The bag on a barostat can expand in all directions we cannot be sure that an increase in the volume is reflected by a change in the geometry of the OGJ. This suggest that using this technique is of limited use[34]. Our findings in patients with achalasia confirmed this.

Perspectives

FLIP represents the first validated data on a probe capable of measuring OGJ compliance in a simple and time-saving procedure. It represents the opportunity to define the exact role of the OGJ in dysmotility and disease. As a new technique rather than representing a completed work it opens up a new door and perspectives on the junction whose function has been the subject of debate for many years. Future work and improvements in electronics and material sciences will mean that the resolution of the FLIP can be increased dramatically. Design materials have been carefully chosen to minimize signal error. The lower oesophageal sphincter or the oesophagogastric junction are often cited as being the prime causes of reflux disease, yet despite this very few research groups are investigating new ways to evaluate this dynamic structure in the gastrointestinal tract[32,34].

Much work has been done in extending manometric measurements enhancing pH measurement techniques to further evaluate the effects of acid in the oesophagus[72] and developing new techniques for measuring bolus transit

both down to the stomach and back up into the oesophagus using intra-luminal impedance[71]. However, none of these techniques have overcome the fundamental question of how the OGJ function can be quantified.

FLIP may provide the answer to this question. In a way trialing the probe in the OGJ was probably the most challenging and perhaps experiments in another sphincteric region would have been more straight-forward where the dynamic activity would be slower. FLIP may have a role in determining biomechanically the root cause of diseases. It can be used for evaluating therapy for example endoscopic and surgical therapy for reflux. It may be possible to use it intra-operatively during Nissen fundoplication, for example where the tension of the wrap is extremely important. It may also be possible to explore other sphincters in the body with FLIP so that the relationship between their biomechanical properties and their relationship to disease can be further defined.

REFERENCES

1 **Liebermann-Meffert D.** What anatomic structures are undoubtedly responsible for gastroesophageal competence? In: Guili R, Galmiche J, Jamieson G, Scarpignato C, eds. The esophagogastric junction. London: John Libbey Eurotext, 1998: 3-6

2 **Goyal RK,** Prasad M, Chang HY. Functional anatomy and physiology of swallowing and esophageal motility. In: The Esophagus. Castell DO, Richter JE eds. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004: 1-36

3 **Boyle JT,** Altschuler SM, Nixon TE, Tuchman DN, Pack AI, Cohen S. Role of the diaphragm in the genesis of lower esophageal sphincter pressure in the cat. *Gastroenterology* 1985; **88**: 723-730

4 **Liebermann-Meffert D,** Allgöwer M, Schmid P, Blum AL. Muscular equivalent of the lower esophageal sphincter. *Gastroenterology* 1979; **76**: 31-38

5 **Mittal RK,** Balaban DH. The esophagogastric junction. *N Engl J Med* 1997; **336**: 924-932

6 **Mann CV,** Greenwood RK, Ellis FH Jr. The Esophagogastric Junction. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1964; **118**: 853-862

7 **Mittal RK,** Holloway RH, Penagini R, Blackshaw LA, Dent J. Transient lower esophageal sphincter relaxation. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 601-610

8 **Locke GR 3rd,** Talley NJ, Fett SL, Zinsmeister AR, Melton LJ 3rd. Prevalence and clinical spectrum of gastroesophageal reflux: a population-based study in Olmsted County, Minnesota. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 1448-1456

9 The Gallup Organisation. A Gallup Survey on Heartburn Across America Princeton. NJ: 1988

10 **Dimenäs E.** Methodological aspects of evaluation of Quality of Life in upper gastrointestinal diseases. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl* 1993; **199**: 18-21

11 **Dent J,** Dodds WJ, Friedman RH, Sekiguchi T, Hogan WJ, Arndorfer RC, Petrie DJ. Mechanism of gastroesophageal reflux in recumbent asymptomatic human subjects. *J Clin Invest* 1980; **65**: 256-267

12 **Dodds WJ,** Dent J, Hogan WJ, Helm JF, Hauser R, Patel GK, Egide MS. Mechanisms of gastroesophageal reflux in patients with reflux esophagitis. *N Engl J Med* 1982; **307**: 1547-1552

13 **Barham CP,** Gotley DC, Mills A, Alderson D. Precipitating causes of acid reflux episodes in ambulant patients with gastro-oesophageal reflux disease. *Gut* 1995; **36**: 505-510

14 **Ozmen V,** Oran ES, Gorgun E, Asoglu O, Igci A, Kecer M, Dizdaroglu F. Histologic and clinical outcome after laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication for gastroesophageal reflux disease and Barrett's esophagus. *Surg Endosc* 2006; **20**: 226-229

15 **Jenkinson AD,** Scott SM, Yazaki E, Fusai G, Walker SM, Kadirkamanathan SS, Evans DF. Compliance measurement of lower esophageal sphincter and esophageal body in achalasia and gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 2001; **46**: 1937-1942

16 **St Peter SD,** Swain JM. Achalasia: a comprehensive review. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2003; **13**: 227-240

17 **Richter J.** Achalasia. In: Castell D, Richter J, eds. The Esophagus. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004: 221-261

18 **Ramacciato G,** D'Angelo FA, Aurello P, Del Gaudio M, Varotti G, Mercantini P, Bellagamba R, Ercolani G. Laparoscopic Heller myotomy with or without partial fundoplication: a matter of debate. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 1558-1561

19 **Patti MG,** Fisichella PM, Perretta S, Galvani C, Gorodner MV, Robinson T, Way LW. Impact of minimally invasive surgery on the treatment of esophageal achalasia: a decade of change. *J Am Coll Surg* 2003; **196**: 698-703; discussion 703-705

20 **Fung YC.** Biomechanical aspects of growth and tissue engineering. In: Biomechanics Motion, Flow, Stress amd Growth New York: Springer-Verlag, 1990: 499-500

21 **Gregersen H,** Giversen IM, Rasmussen LM, Tøttrup A. Biomechanical wall properties and collagen content in the partially obstructed opossum esophagus. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **103**: 1547-1551

22 **Madsen G,** Tøttrup A, Andersson KE, Forman A. Mechanical effects of some prostanoids on isolated human oesophageal submucosal veins. *Pharmacol Toxicol* 1992; **71**: 330-334

23 **Biancani P,** Barwick K, Selling J, McCallum R. Effects of acute experimental esophagitis on mechanical properties of the lower esophageal sphincter. *Gastroenterology* 1984; **87**: 8-16

24 **Uc A,** Murray JA, Conklin JL. Effects of calcitonin gene-related peptide on opossum esophageal smooth muscle. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 514-520

25 **Leichus LS,** Thomas RM, Murray JA, Conklin JL. Effects of oxygen radicals and radical scavenging on opossum lower esophageal sphincter. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 592-596

26 **Gregersen H,** Barlow J, Thompson D. Development of a computer-controlled tensiometer for real-time measurements of tension in tubular organs. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1999; **11**: 109-118

27 **Gregersen H,** Gilja OH, Hausken T, Heimdal A, Gao C, Matre K, Ødegaard S, Berstad A. Mechanical properties in the human gastric antrum using B-mode ultrasonography and antral distension. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283**: G368-G375

28 **Frokjaer JB,** McMahon BP, Liao DH, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. Modelling of the 3D geometry in the human rectum based on magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126:** A202-A203

29 **Harris LD,** Pope CE 2nd. "Squeeze" Vs. Resistance: An Evaluation of the Mechanism of Sphincter Competence. *J Clin Invest* 1964; **43**: 2272-2278

30 **Gregersen H,** Christensen J. Gastrointestinal tone. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2000; **12**: 501-508

31 **Pandolfino JE,** Kahrilas PJ. AGA technical review on the clinical use of esophageal manometry. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 209-224

32 **Pandolfino JE,** Shi G, Curry J, Joehl RJ, Brasseur JG, Kahrilas PJ. Esophagogastric junction distensibility: a factor contributing to sphincter incompetence. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **282**: G1052-G1058

33 **Pandolfino JE,** Shi G, Trueworthy B, Kahrilas PJ. Esophagogastric junction opening during relaxation distinguishes nonhernia reflux patients, hernia patients, and normal subjects. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1018-1024

34 **Shaker R,** Bardan E, Gu C, Massey BT, Sanders T, Kern MK, Hoffmann RG, Hogan WJ. Effect of lower esophageal sphincter tone and crural diaphragm contraction on distensibility of the gastroesophageal junction in humans. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **287**: G815-G821

35 **Pandolfino JE,** Curry J, Shi G, Joehl RJ, Brasseur JG, Kahrilas PJ. Restoration of normal distensive characteristics of the esophagogastric junction after fundoplication. *Ann Surg* 2005; **242**: 43-48

36 **Gregersen H.** Biomechanics of the Gastrointestinal Tract. Lon-

don: Springer-Verlag, 2003: 80-91
37 **Rao SS,** Hayek B, Summers RW. Impedance planimetry: an integrated approach for assessing sensory, active, and passive biomechanical properties of the human esophagus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1995; **90**: 431-438
38 **Pedersen J,** Reddy H, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Cold and heat pain assessment of the human oesophagus after experimental sensitisation with acid. *Pain* 2004; **110**: 393-399
39 **Andersen IS,** Gregersen H, Buntzen S, Djurhuus JC, Laurberg S. New probe for the measurement of dynamic changes in the rectum. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 99-105
40 **Assentoft JE,** Gregersen H, O'Brien WD Jr. Determination of biomechanical properties in guinea pig esophagus by means of high frequency ultrasound and impedance planimetry. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 1260-1266
41 **Barlow JD,** Gregersen H, Thompson DG. Identification of the biomechanical factors associated with the perception of distension in the human esophagus. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **282**: G683-G689
42 **Drewes AM,** Reddy H, Staahl C, Pedersen J, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H. Sensory-motor responses to mechanical stimulation of the esophagus after sensitization with acid. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11**: 4367-4374
43 **Gregersen H,** Djurhuus JC. Impedance planimetry: a new approach to biomechanical intestinal wall properties. *Dig Dis* 1991; **9**: 332-340
44 **Gregersen H,** Orvar K, Christensen J. Biomechanical properties of duodenal wall and duodenal tone during phase I and phase II of the MMC. *Am J Physiol* 1992; **263**: G795-G801
45 **Gregersen H,** Christensen LL. Pressure-cross-sectional area relations and elasticity in the rabbit oesophagus in vivo. *Digestion* 1996; **57**: 174-179
46 **Gregersen H,** Vinter-Jensen L, Juhl CO, Dajani EZ. Impedance planimetric characterization of the distal oesophagus in the Goettingen minipig. *J Biomech* 1996; **29**: 63-68
47 **Jørgensen CS,** Dall FH, Storkholm J, Jensen SL, Gregersen H. Elastic properties of the isolated perfused porcine duodenum. *Dig Dis* 1991; **9**: 401-407
48 **Juhl CO,** Vinter-Jensen L, Djurhuus JC, Gregersen H, Dajani EZ. Biomechanical properties of the oesophagus damaged by endoscopic sclerotherapy. An impedance planimetric study in minipigs. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1994; **29**: 867-873
49 **McMahon BP,** Frøkjaer JB, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. A new measurement of oesophago-gastric junction competence. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 543-546
50 **Petersen JA,** Djurhuus C, Koff J, Vinter-Jensen L, Gregersen H. Endoscopic sclerotherapy in porcine esophagus changes luminal cross-sectional area and wall distensibility dose- and time-dependently. *Dig Dis Sci* 1998; **43**: 521-528
51 **Rao SS,** Gregersen H, Hayek B, Summers RW, Christensen J. Unexplained chest pain: the hypersensitive, hyperreactive, and poorly compliant esophagus. *Ann Intern Med* 1996; **124**: 950-958
52 **Rao SS,** Hayek B, Mudipalli R, Gregersen H. Does esophageal function vary at the striated and smooth muscle segments in functional chest pain? *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 2201-2207
53 **Villadsen GE.** Impedance planimetry characteritics of the normal and diseased oesophagus. *Surg Res Comm* 1995; **17**: 225-242
54 **Villadsen GE,** Storkholm J, Zachariae H, Hendel L, Bendtsen F, Gregersen H. Oesophageal pressure-cross-sectional area distributions and secondary peristalsis in relation to subclassification of systemic sclerosis. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2001; **13**: 199-210
55 **Patel RS,** Rao SS. Biomechanical and sensory parameters of the human esophagus at four levels. *Am J Physiol* 1998; **275**: G187-G191
56 **Sørensen SM,** Gregersen H, Sørensen S, Djurhuus JC. Spontaneous anorectal pressure activity. Evidence of internal anal sphincter contractions in response to rectal pressure waves. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1989; **24**: 115-200
57 **McMahon BP,** Frøkjaer JB, Liao D, Kunwald P, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. A new technique for evaluating sphincter function in visceral organs: application of the functional lumen imaging probe (FLIP) for the evaluation of the oesophago-gastric junction. *Physiol Meas* 2005; **26**: 823-836
58 **Arndorfer RC,** Stef JJ, Dodds WJ, Linehan JH, Hogan WJ. Improved infusion system for intraluminal esophageal manometry. *Gastroenterology* 1977; **73**: 23-27
59 **Dent J.** A new technique for continuous sphincter pressure measurement. *Gastroenterology* 1976; **71**: 263-267
60 **Gotley DC,** Barham CP, Miller R, Arnold R, Alderson D. The sphinctometer: a new device for measurement of lower oesophageal sphincter function. *Br J Surg* 1991; **78**: 933-935
61 **McMahon BP,** Bergstrom M, Frokjaer JB, Hansson L, Drewes AM, Gregersen H, Park PO. Use of FLIP in determining changes in the geometry of the oesophago-gastric junction with endoscopic suturing in a procine model. *Gut* 2005; **54**(Suppl VII): A104
62 **Schiefke I,** Zabel-Langhennig A, Neumann S, Feisthammel J, Moessner J, Caca K. Long term failure of endoscopic gastroplication (EndoCinch). *Gut* 2005; **54**: 752-758
63 **Arts J,** Lerut T, Rutgeerts P, Sifrim D, Janssens J, Tack J. A one-year follow-up study of endoluminal gastroplication (Endocinch) in GERD patients refractory to proton pump inhibitor therapy. *Dig Dis Sci* 2005; **50**: 351-356
64 **Schiefke I,** Soeder H, Zabel-Langhennig A, Teich N, Neumann S, Borte G, Mössner J, Caca K. Endoluminal gastroplication: what are the predictors of outcome? *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2004; **39**: 1296-1303
65 **Mahmood Z,** McMahon BP, Arfin Q, Byrne PJ, Reynolds JV, Murphy EM, Weir DG. Endocinch therapy for gastro-oesophageal reflux disease: a one year prospective follow up. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 34-39
66 **Arain MA,** Peters JH, Tamhankar AP, Portale G, Almogy G, DeMeester SR, Crookes PF, Hagen JA, Bremner CG, DeMeester TR. Preoperative lower esophageal sphincter pressure affects outcome of laparoscopic esophageal myotomy for achalasia. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2004; **8**: 328-334
67 **Kahrilas PJ,** Lin S, Chen J, Manka M. The effect of hiatus hernia on gastro-oesophageal junction pressure. *Gut* 1999; **44**: 476-482
68 **Straathof JW,** Lüchtenborg M, Masclee AA. Comparison of two techniques for lower oesophageal sphincter manometry: sleeve and sphinctometer. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 265-268
69 **Pehlivanov N,** Liu J, Arora T, Yamamoto Y, Mittal RK. Lower esophageal sphincter monitoring with sphinctometer: in vitro and in vivo studies. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **277**: G577-G584
70 **Trudgill NJ,** Riley SA. Monitoring the lower oesophageal sphincter: sphinctometer or sleeve? *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1999; **11**: 173-178
71 **Pandolfino JE,** Shi G, Zhang Q, Ghosh S, Brasseur JG, Kahrilas PJ. Measuring EGJ opening patterns using high resolution intraluminal impedance. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2005; **17**: 200-206
72 **Pandolfino JE,** Richter JE, Ours T, Guardino JM, Chapman J, Kahrilas PJ. Ambulatory esophageal pH monitoring using a wireless system. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 740-749

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Ma WH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2825-2829
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, Asbjorn Mohr Drewes, MD, *Series Editor*

Gastric accommodation assessed by ultrasonography

Odd Helge Gilja, Johan Lunding, Trygve Hausken, Hans Gregersen

Odd Helge Gilja, Johan Lunding, Trygve Hausken, National Centre for Ultrasound in Gastroenterology, Haukeland University Hospital, Institute of Medicine, University of Bergen, Bergen, Norway
Hans Gregersen, Center for Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, Aalborg Hospital, and Center for Sensory-motor Interaction, Aalborg University, Denmark
Correspondence to: Professor Odd Helge Gilja, National Centre for Ultrasound in Gastroenterology Department of Medicine, Haukeland University Hospital, N-5021 Bergen, Norway. odd.gilja@uib.no
Telephone: +47-55972872 Fax: +47-55972950
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

Gastric accommodation is important for the understanding of the pathophysiology in functional dyspepsia and is also relevant for symptom generation in other disorders. The term gastric accommodation has at least three different meanings: The accommodation *process*, the accommodation *reflex*, and the accommodation *response*. The gastric accommodation *process* is a complex phenomenon that describes how the size of the gastric compartment changes in response to a meal. The electronic barostat is considered the gold standard in assessing gastric accommodation. Imaging methods, including MRI, SPECT, and ultrasonography may also be used, particularly in patients who are stress-responsive, e.g. functional dyspepsia patients, as a non-invasive and less stress-inducing method is favourable. Ultrasonography satisfies these criteria as it does not by itself distort the physiological response in stress-responsive individuals.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Ultrasonography; Gastric accommodation; Stomach; Barostat; Gastric relaxation; 3D ultrasound

Gilja OH, Lunding J, Hausken T, Gregersen H. Gastric accommodation assessed by ultrasonography. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2825-2829

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2825.asp

INTRODUCTION

Gastric accommodation has become a key mechanism for the understanding of the pathophysiology in functional dyspepsia[1,2] and may also be relevant for symptom generation in other disorders[3-6]. Several methods can be used to assess gastric accommodation[7]. The electronic barostat is considered to be the gold standard method for measuring proximal gastric accommodation[8,9]. By applying the barostat, gastric tone is estimated by recording variations in the volume of air within an intragastric bag that is maintained at a constant pressure by the instrument. Accommodation of the proximal stomach is supposed to be reflected in changes of gastric tone. However, the method is invasive, bothersome and affects normal gastric motility[10]. The bag may also alter intragastric distribution and emptying of the meal the direct stimulus imposed by the bag itself on the stomach wall results in increased antral distension[11]. Therefore, non-invasive methods as MRI, SPECT, and ultrasonography are warranted for the study of gastric accommodation.

MRI is a safe and accurate technique to image the entire stomach with detail[12]. After ingestion of a test meal labelled with gadolinium as an MRI marker, images of the gastric region are acquired, typically using a Spin Echo T1-weighted sequence. The MRI technique permits three-dimensional reconstruction of the stomach, enabling total gastric volume measurements during fasting and postprandially. The ratio of these measurements is used to quantify the accommodation response. Single Photon Emission Computed Tomography (SPECT) uses ^{99m}Tc uptake into the gastric mucosa for visualisation and volume estimation of the gastric compartment[13]. Comparison of SPECT data with barostat measurements showed that SPECT is able to detect changes in intragastric volume but unable to detect changes in gastric tone and hence accommodation[14].

GASTRIC ACCOMMODATION

Conceptually, the process of gastric accommodation has been explored for over 100 years, evaluating relaxation of the proximal stomach[15]. Receptive relaxation has been defined as a vagal reflex, which dilates the corpus-fundus region of the stomach in response to swallowing, oesophageal stimulation, or vomitation[16-18]. Adaptive relaxation is a intrinsic vagovagal reflex that enables the stomach to increase its volume markedly without a corresponding increase in pressure[19,20]. Adaptive relaxation enables the stomach to maintain a low balanced pressure and to continuously adapt its volume to its content.

However, the term gastric accommodation is too

complex to embrace in one definition, mainly because it is utilized in at least three different meanings in the literature: The accommodation *process*, the accommodation *reflex*, and the accommodation *response*. In addition, the term is often used in an everyday language expressing that "the stomach accommodates a meal". Similarly, it was also used by Paton and Vane in 1963 to describe gastric "expansion to accommodate the fluid"[21]. The gastric accommodation *process* is a complex phenomenon that describes how the size of the gastric compartment changes in response to a meal[22]. It involves both intra- and extragastric reflexes. The extragastric reflexes comprises both receptive relaxation and intestino-gastric reflexes elicited by balloon distension or nutrient infusion in the duodenum[8,23]. The intragastric reflexes embrace at least adaptive relaxation and relaxation of the proximal stomach induced from antral reflexes[24-26].

Kelly[27] described the accommodation *reflex* when he demonstrated how intragastric pressure was regulated by gastric "accommodation to distension". The accommodation reflex is elicited when continuous volume expansion of the proximal stomach reaches a certain level, thus inducing relaxation of smooth muscles of the gastric wall in order to prevent further increase in pressure. This physiological phenomenon is a reflex arc consisting of a mechanoreceptor in the gastrointestinal wall, a neuro-muscular pathway through ENS with a reflex centre, and a well-defined response in the effective organ. The reflex is probably vagally mediated but local axon reflexes may also be involved[20]. The term accommodation *response* is the effect of the *reflex* or the result of the *process* and this is a precise notion for what we intend to measure with different methods.

IMAGING METHODS

A crucial question is whether imaging methods, as MRI, SPECT or ultrasonography, actually can be compared to the measurements made by the barostat. In our opinion, imaging methods and the invasive barostat method do not measure the same aspects of the gastric accommodation *process*. Thanks to its close contact with the gastric wall the barostat bag adjusts to changes in proximal gastric pressure by changing the intrabag volume. Thus, changes in volume are believed to reflect changes in muscle tone of the wall. However, the quantitative change in volume seen during barostat examinations is only valid during barostat studies using exactly the same equipment and positioning technique. Imaging methods, however, visualize directly the size of the gastric compartments, thus giving an indirect measure of relaxation and contraction. The volume change seen using imaging can thus be explained by additional secretion, air retention or most probable changes in gastric emptying.

The gastric meal accommodation *process* has two components: Passive meal distension of the gastric compartments and active muscle relaxation of the gastric wall. The first component is best measured with imaging methods whereas the barostat is best suited for studying the second component. Imaging methods at this stage, do not distinguish between enlargements of the stomach due to reflex relaxation or due to meal-induced distension; it just measures the totally accommodated volume. Accordingly, it may not be adequate to compare imaging methods to the barostat for validation of gastric accommodation. Gastric accommodation depends on neuromuscular factors and hence it is also a matter of evaluation of the mechanical properties of the stomach. In this sense the barostat merely detects the existence of change in wall tone, but cannot as the imaging methods, provide data on the distribution of the volume and the normal behaviour of the gastric wall. In biomechanics, it is essential to understand the geometry of the organ and the forces and deformation in different directions in order to better understand the active-passive muscle function and mechano-sensation in health and in diseases such as the functional disorders. This warrants 2D and 3D image analysis of the gastric compartments.

The different imaging methods exhibit different spatial and temporal image resolution, and these factors strongly influence accuracy in volume calculation. MRI and in particular SPECT imaging have poor spatial and temporal resolution compared to ultrasonography. Ultrasonography can provide temporal resolution above 100 fps, if necessary, and a spatial resolution on sub-millimetre level. Also, the "stress-factor" of the imaging methods should be considered in this context because dyspeptic patients in general and vagal reflexes in particular are very sensitive to psychological stress. Everyone who has been inside a narrow, noisy MR scanner knows how frightening this can be. Naturally, the stress-factor is also substantially involved in studies using the barostat. Simply because functional disorders are so strongly associated to psychological factors, the examination should be performed in a quiet and relaxing atmosphere with a minimum of distress. Ultrasonography satisfies these criteria as it is non-invasive and does not by itself distort the physiological response in stress-responsive individuals. Moreover, due to gravity playing a central role in the propulsion of gastric content, the study of meal accommodation should preferably be performed in a "natural position" such as sitting in a chair. Therefore, methods that enable patients to be seated have an advantage over methods requiring patients to be in supine position during the examination.

Ultrasonography

Ultrasonography, a clinical method that is widely available, has shown applicability and validity for the study of gastric accommodation[28]. The 2D method developed by Gilja *et al*[29] has been used to study gastric accommodation in functional dyspepsia[1,30], diabetes[4], in patients with reflux oesophagitis[5], in liver cirrhosis[31], and in children with recurrent abdominal pain[6]. This 2D method has also been applied to study pharmacological intervention[32] and the effect of a barostat bag in the stomach[11]. Another advantage with 2D ultrasonography is its clinical applicability; it can easily be performed bedside and repeated numerous times in the same subject. At Haukeland University Hospital we have for 20 years used The Ultrasound Meal Accommodation Test (U-MAT) for the work-up of patients with dyspepsia (Table 1). Our mainstream clinical protocol consists of a standard soup meal (500 mL), ultrasound

Table 1 The ultrasound meal accommodation test

Time	Protocol
Fasting	Ordinary ultrasound examination of the liver, gallbladder, biliary tract, spleen, pancreas, kidneys, and large vessels.
Fasting	Evaluation of symptoms by VAS.
Fasting	Assessment of motility pattern (phase 1-3) by observing the pattern of contractility in the antrum.
Fasting	Measurement of area of the distal stomach (AA).
Fasting	Visualisation of the proximal stomach to explore whether it has content.
Meal ingestion	500 mL of preheated meat soup is ingested in 4 min at a constant speed.
2 min pp.	Measurement of the sagittal area (SA), the oblique frontal diameter (OFD), and the antral area (AA).
5 min pp.	Postprandial symptom evaluation.
10 min pp.	SA, OFD, and AA measurement.
20 min pp.	SA, OFD, and AA measurement.
30 min pp.	SA, OFD, and AA measurement.

The ultrasound meal accommodation test (UMAT) was developed at Haukeland University Hospital on the basis of close interaction between scientific and clinical work in patients with dyspepsia. Before entering the protocol, the patients have been carefully worked-up with history, physical examination, blood tests, testing for H pylori, and upper endoscopy. In some cases, additional examinations are performed to rule out organic causes for their symptoms. The protocol presented here is the mainstream clinical protocol. In scientific studies other elements are often added. A 500 mL liquid meal of commercial meat soup (Toro × clear meat soup, Rieber & Søn A/S, Bergen, Norway) containing 1.8 g protein, 0.9 g bovine fat, and 1.1 g carbohydrate (83.68 kJ) is ingested over a period of 4 min. The soup is preheated and then cooled to 37 ℃ to improve imaging quality by reducing the amount of air bubbles. Psychometric evaluation is also performed.

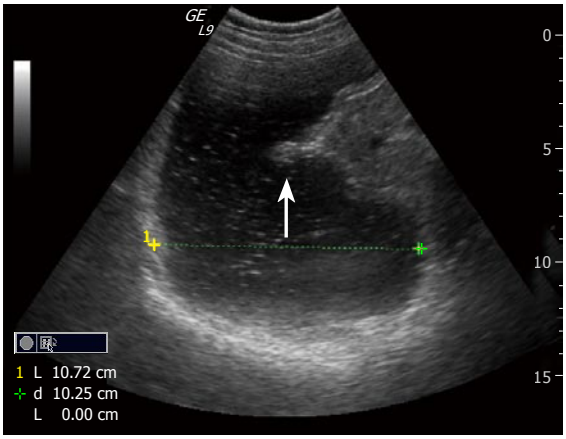


Figure 1 Ultrasonogram showing an oblique frontal section of the proximal stomach in a patient with dyspepsia referred for Ultrasound Meal Accommodation Test (UMAT). The transversal diameter is measured indicating the size of the postprandial proximal stomach and hence indirectly degree of accommodation. Interestingly, one can also observe a gastric contraction (white arrow) in the posterior angular part and progressing towards the antrum.

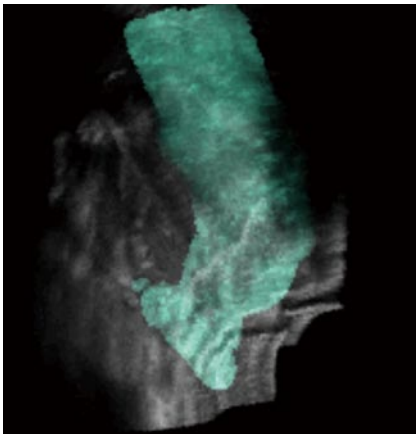


Figure 2 3D image reconstruction based on ultrasound acquisition with a magneto-based position- and orientation measurement system (POM) using GE Logiq 9. The 3D image is overlayed the ordinary gray scale values of ultrasonograms.

scanning of the proximal and distal stomach using predefined scan sections (Figure 1), calculation of size and volumes of the gastric compartments, evaluation of symptoms and psychological assessment. In our experience, ultrasonography used in this context adds valuable clinical information to the management of these patients.

There are few methods that are capable of measuring all parameters of gastric motility simultaneously. However, many authors have demonstrated that ultrasonography can be used to study not only gastric accommodation, but also gastric emptying[33-39], gastric configuration[40-42], intragastric distribution[43], antral motility[44-46] and distensibility[47,48], transpyloric flow[44,49-51] and strain of the gastric wall[42,52,53]. Of the present available methods, we would argue that ultrasonography is the method that has been shown to estimate most parameters of gastric motility, many of these also simultaneously. Furthermore, we claim that ultrasonography has the strongest potential as a clinical tool compared to MRI, SPECT, and scintigraphy, and particularly in patients with functional disorders.

3D ultrasound

For better visualization of the total stomach and improved calculation of gastric volumes, 3D ultrasound imaging of the gastric compartments was developed[43,54,55] It is important that validation of an imaging method to study gastric accommodation also include evaluation of its accuracy and precision in volume estimation. In our lab, we have utilized two different systems for acquisition of 3D ultrasound images and both systems have been validated *in vitro* and *in vivo*. First, we developed a mechanical system with the advantage of an accurate motorized movement of the ultrasound transducer in a tilting fashion. This 3D system demonstrated excellent accuracy and precision *in vitro*[56,57] and good agreement with MRI *in vivo*[58]. Subsequently, we applied a magneto-based system (Bird sensor, Ascension Technology Corp., Burlington, VT, USA) that enabled greater flexibility during scanning and larger volumes like the total gastric compartment to be captured (Figure 2). The Bird system also showed excellent accuracy *in vitro*[43,59-61] and in volume measurement of a thin-walled fluid filled bag in the human stomach the agreement with true volumes was excellent[62]. Accordingly, 3D ultrasonography delivers high resolution, is accurate in volume estimation and is a well-suited tool to monitor volume changes of the stomach during the *process* of accommodation. However, we acknowledge its limitations: impairment of image quality with air in the GI tract, mainly for use with liquid meals, and scanning of very obese subjects (fortunately dyspeptics are not often obese).

Abnormalities of gastric accommodation are a significant finding in several patients groups, not only in patients with functional disorders. Comprehension of gastric geometry, the forces and deformation during meal accommodation, and the active-passive muscle function is important in functional diseases[63]. Of the present available methods, we would argue that ultrasonography is the method that has been shown to estimate most parameters of gastric motility, many of these also simultaneously[64]. Furthermore, we suggest that ultrasonography has the strongest potential as a clinical tool, particularly in patients with functional disorders.

REFERENCES

1 **Gilja OH,** Hausken T, Wilhelmsen I, Berstad A. Impaired accommodation of proximal stomach to a meal in functional dyspepsia. *Dig Dis Sci* 1996; **41**: 689-696
2 **Tack J,** Piessevaux H, Coulie B, Caenepeel P, Janssens J. Role of impaired gastric accommodation to a meal in functional dyspepsia. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **115**: 1346-1352
3 **Oliveira RB,** Troncon LE, Meneghelli UG, Padovan W, Dantas RO, de Godoy RA. Impaired gastric accommodation to distension and rapid gastric emptying in patients with Chagas' disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 1980; **25**: 790-794
4 **Undeland KA,** Hausken T, Gilja OH, Aanderud S, Berstad A. Gastric meal accommodation studied by ultrasound in diabetes. Relation to vagal tone. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1998; **33**: 236-241
5 **Tefera S,** Gilja OH, Hatlebakk JG, Berstad A. Gastric accommodation studied by ultrasonography in patients with reflux esophagitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 2001; **46**: 618-625
6 **Olafsdottir E,** Gilja OH, Aslaksen A, Berstad A, Fluge G. Impaired accommodation of the proximal stomach in children with recurrent abdominal pain. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2000; **30**: 157-163
7 **De Schepper HU,** Cremonini F, Chitkara D, Camilleri M. Assessment of gastric accommodation: overview and evaluation of current methods. Neurogastroenterol *Motil* 2004; **16**: 275-285
8 **Azpiroz F,** Malagelada JR. Abdominal bloating. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 1060-1078
9 **Tack J,** Caenepeel P, Fischler B, Piessevaux H, Janssens J. Symptoms associated with hypersensitivity to gastric distention in functional dyspepsia. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 526-535
10 **Ropert A,** des Varannes SB, Bizais Y, Rozé C, Galmiche JP. Simultaneous assessment of liquid emptying and proximal gastric tone in humans. *Gastroenterology* 1993; **105**: 667-674
11 **Mundt MW,** Hausken T, Samsom M. Effect of intragastric barostat bag on proximal and distal gastric accommodation in response to liquid meal. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283**: G681-G686
12 **Schwizer W,** Steingötter A, Fox M, Zur T, Thumshirn M, Bösiger P, Fried M. Non-invasive measurement of gastric accommodation in humans. *Gut* 2002; **51 Suppl 1**: i59-i62
13 **Kuiken SD,** Samsom M, Camilleri M, Mullan BP, Burton DD, Kost LJ, Hardyman TJ, Brinkmann BH, O'Connor MK. Development of a test to measure gastric accommodation in humans. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **277**: G1217-G1221
14 **van den Elzen BD,** Bennink RJ, Wieringa RE, Tytgat GN, Boeckxstaens GE. Fundic accommodation assessed by SPECT scanning: comparison with the gastric barostat. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 1548-1554
15 **Moritz F.** Studien uber die motorische Thatigkeit des Magens. *Zeitschr fur Biol* 1895; **32**: 313-369
16 **Cannon WB,** Lieb CW. The receptive relaxation of the stomach. *Am J Physiol* 1911; **29**: 267-273
17 **Grey EG.** Observations on the postural activity of the stomach. *Am J Physiol* 1918; **45**: 272-285
18 **Azpiroz F,** Malagelada JR. Physiological variations in canine gastric tone measured by an electronic barostat. *Am J Physiol* 1985; **248**: G229-G237
19 **Jahnberg T,** Abrahamsson H, Jansson G, Martinson J. Gastric relaxatory response to feeding before and after vagotomy. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1977; **12**: 225-228
20 **Desai KM,** Sessa WC, Vane JR. Involvement of nitric oxide in the reflex relaxation of the stomach to accommodate food or fluid. *Nature* 1991; **351**: 477-479
21 **Paton WD,** Vane JR. Analysis of he responses of the isolated stomach to electrical stimulation and to drugs. *J Physiol* 1963; **165**: 10-46
22 **Gilja OH.** Ultrasonography for surgeons. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2005; **40**: 615-616
23 **Azpiroz F,** Malagelada JR. Isobaric intestinal distension in humans: sensorial relay and reflex gastric relaxation. *Am J Physiol* 1990; **258**: G202-G207
24 **Abrahamsson H.** Vagal relaxation of the stomach induced from the gastric antrum. *Acta Physiol Scand* 1973; **89**: 406-414
25 **Caldarella MP,** Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Antro-fundic dysfunctions in functional dyspepsia. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 1220-1229
26 **Lunding JA,** Tefera S, Bayati A, Gilja OH, Mattsson H, Hausken T, Berstad A. Pressure-induced gastric accommodation studied with a new distension paradigm. Abnormally low accommodation rate in patients with functional dyspepsia. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2006; **41**: 544-552
27 **Kelly KA.** Gastric motility after gastric operations. *Surg Annu* 1974; **6**: 103-123
28 **Odegaard S,** Gilja OH, Gregersen H. Basic and new aspects of gastrointestinal ultrasonography. 1sted. Singapore, *World Sci* 2005; 1-502
29 **Gilja OH,** Hausken T, Odegaard S, Berstad A. Monitoring postprandial size of the proximal stomach by ultrasonography. *J Ultrasound Med* 1995; **14**: 81-89
30 **Gilja OH,** Hausken T, Bang CJ, Berstad A. Effect of glyceryl trinitrate on gastric accommodation and symptoms in functional dyspepsia. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 2124-2131
31 **Izbéki F,** Kiss I, Wittmann T, Várkonyi TT, Légrády P, Lonovics J. Impaired accommodation of proximal stomach in patients with alcoholic liver cirrhosis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2002; **37**: 1403-1410
32 **Vingerhagen S,** Hausken T, Gilja OH, Berstad A. Influence of a 5HT1 receptor agonist on gastric accommodation and initial transpyloric flow in healthy subjects. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2000; **12**: 95-101
33 **Bateman DN,** Whittingham TA. Measurement of gastric emptying by real-time ultrasound. *Gut* 1982; **23**: 524-527
34 **Bolondi L,** Bortolotti M, Santi V, Calletti T, Gaiani S, Labò G. Measurement of gastric emptying time by real-time ultrasonography. *Gastroenterology* 1985; **89**: 752-759
35 **Holt S,** Cervantes J, Wilkinson AA, Wallace JH. Measurement of gastric emptying rate in humans by real-time ultrasound. *Gastroenterology* 1986; **90**: 918-923
36 **Duan LP,** Zheng ZT, Li YN. A study of gastric emptying in non-ulcer dyspepsia using a new ultrasonographic method. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1993; **28**: 355-360
37 **Ricci R,** Bontempo I, Corazziari E, La Bella A, Torsoli A. Real time ultrasonography of the gastric antrum. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 173-176
38 **Marzio L,** Giacobbe A, Conoscitore P, Facciorusso D, Frusciante V, Modoni S. Evaluation of the use of ultrasonography in the study of liquid gastric emptying. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1989; **84**: 496-500
39 **Hveem K,** Jones KL, Chatterton BE, Horowitz M. Scintigraphic measurement of gastric emptying and ultrasonographic assessment of antral area: relation to appetite. *Gut* 1996; **38**: 816-821
40 **Stein WW,** Brettel HF, Garten T. [Stomach volume determination using the ultrasonic B picture method]. *Munch Med Wochenschr* 1972; **114**: 1871-1873
41 **Whittingham TA,** Bateman DN. Measurement of stomach volume by real-time ultrasound. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 1983; **Suppl 2**:

459-463
42 **Liao D,** Gregersen H, Hausken T, Gilja OH, Mundt M, Kassab G. Analysis of surface geometry of the human stomach using real-time 3-D ultrasonography in vivo. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 315-324
43 **Gilja OH,** Detmer PR, Jong JM, Leotta DF, Li XN, Beach KW, Martin R, Strandness DE Jr. Intragastric distribution and gastric emptying assessed by three-dimensional ultrasonography. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **113**: 38-49
44 **King PM,** Adam RD, Pryde A, McDicken WN, Heading RC. Relationships of human antroduodenal motility and transpyloric fluid movement: non-invasive observations with real-time ultrasound. *Gut* 1984; **25**: 1384-1391
45 **Hausken T,** Odegaard S, Berstad A. Antroduodenal motility studied by real-time ultrasonography. Effect of enprostil. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **100**: 59-63
46 **Hveem K,** Hausken T, Svebak S, Berstad A. Gastric antral motility in functional dyspepsia. Effect of mental stress and cisapride. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1996; **31**: 452-457
47 **Hausken T,** Berstad A. Wide gastric antrum in patients with non-ulcer dyspepsia. Effect of cisapride. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1992; **27**: 427-432
48 **Gregersen H,** Gilja OH, Hausken T, Heimdal A, Gao C, Matre K, Ødegaard S, Berstad A. Mechanical properties in the human gastric antrum using B-mode ultrasonography and antral distension. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283**: G368-G375
49 **Hausken T,** Odegaard S, Matre K, Berstad A. Antroduodenal motility and movements of luminal contents studied by duplex sonography. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 1583-1590
50 **Fujimura J,** Haruma K, Hata J, Yamanaka H, Sumii K, Kajiyama G. Quantitation of duodenogastric reflux and antral motility by color Doppler ultrasonography. Study in healthy volunteers and patients with gastric ulcer. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1994; **29**: 897-902
51 **Hausken T,** Gilja OH, Undeland KA, Berstad A. Timing of postprandial dyspeptic symptoms and transpyloric passage of gastric contents. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1998; **33**: 822-827
52 **Gilja OH,** Heimdal A, Hausken T, Gregersen H, Matre K, Berstad A, Ødegaard S. Strain during gastric contractions can be measured using Doppler ultrasonography. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 2002; **28**: 1457-1465
53 **Matre K,** Ahmed AB, Gregersen H, Heimdal A, Hausken T, Ødegaard S, Gilja OH. In vitro evaluation of ultrasound Doppler strain rate imaging: modification for measurement in a slowly moving tissue phantom. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 2003; **29**: 1725-1734
54 **Hausken T,** Thune N, Matre K, Gilja OH, Odegaard S, Berstad A. Volume estimation of the gastric antrum and the gallbladder in patients with non-ulcer dyspepsia and erosive prepyloric changes, using three-dimensional ultrasonography. *Neurogastroenterol Mot* 1994; **6**: 263-270
55 **Gilja OH,** Hausken T, Odegaard S, Berstad A. Three-dimensional ultrasonography of the gastric antrum in patients with functional dyspepsia. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1996; **31**: 847-855
56 **Thune N,** Hausken T, Gilja OH, Matre K. A practical method for estimating enclosed volumes using 3D ultrasound. *Eur J Ultrasound* 1996; **3**: 83-92
57 **Gilja OH,** Thune N, Matre K, Hausken T, Odegaard S, Berstad A. *In vitro* evaluation of three-dimensional ultrasonography in volume estimation of abdominal organs. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 1994; **20**: 157-165
58 **Gilja OH,** Smievoll AI, Thune N, Matre K, Hausken T, Odegaard S, Berstad A. In vivo comparison of 3D ultrasonography and magnetic resonance imaging in volume estimation of human kidneys. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 1995; **21**: 25-32
59 **Detmer PR,** Bashein G, Hodges T, Beach KW, Filer EP, Burns DH, Strandness DE Jr. 3D ultrasonic image feature localization based on magnetic scanhead tracking: in vitro calibration and validation. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 1994; **20**: 923-936
60 **Leotta DF,** Detmer PR, Gilja OH, Jong JM, Martin RW, Primozich JF. Three-dimensional ultrasound imaging using multiple magnetic tracking systems and miniature magnetic sensors. *Proc IEEE Int Ultrasonics Symp Seattle WA USA* 1995; 1415-1418
61 **Gilja OH,** Hausken T, Olafsson S, Matre K, Odegaard S. *In vitro* evaluation of three-dimensional ultrasonography based on magnetic scanhead tracking. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 1998; **24**: 1161-1167
62 **Tefera S,** Gilja OH, Olafsdottir E, Hausken T, Hatlebakk JG, Berstad A. Intragastric maldistribution of a liquid meal in patients with reflux oesophagitis assessed by three dimensional ultrasonography. *Gut* 2002; **50**: 153-158
63 **Gregersen H,** Kassab G. Biomechanics of the gastrointestinal tract. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1996; **8**: 277-297
64 **Berstad A,** Gilja OH. Ultrasonographic alterations in functional dyspepsia. In: Odegaard S, Gilja OH, Gregersen H, eds. Basic and new aspects of gastrointestinal ultrasonography. 1st ed. *World Sci* 2005; 395-420

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Ma WH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2830-2838
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, Asbjorn Mohr Drewes, MD, *Series Editor*

Functional findings in irritable bowel syndrome

Iris Posserud, Amanda Ersryd, Magnus Simrén

Iris Posserud, Amanda Ersryd, Magnus Simrén, Department of Internal Medicine, Sahlgrenska University Hospital, Göteborg, Sweden
Correspondence to: Magnus Simrén, Section of Gastroenterology & Hepatology, Department of Internal Medicine, Sahlgrenska University Hospital S-41345 Gothenburg, Sweden. magnus.simren@medicine.gu.se
Telephone: +46-31-3421000 Fax: +46-31-822152
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

The pathophysiology of IBS is complex and still incompletely known. Both central and peripheral factors, including psychosocial factors, abnormal GI motility and secretion, and visceral hypersensitivity, are thought to contribute to the symptoms of IBS. Several studies have demonstrated altered GI motor function in IBS patients and the pattern differs between IBS subgroups based on the predominant bowel pattern. Few studies have so far addressed GI secretion in IBS, but there are some evidence supporting altered secretion in the small intestine of IBS patients. Visceral hypersensitivity is currently considered to be perhaps the most important pathophysiological factor in IBS. Importantly, several external and internal factors can modulate visceral sensitivity, as well as GI motility, and enhanced responsiveness within the GI tract to for instance stress and nutrients has been demonstrated in IBS patients. Today IBS is viewed upon as a disorder of dysregulation of the so-called brain-gut axis, involving abnormal function in the enteric, autonomic and/or central nervous systems, with peripheral alterations probably dominating in some patients and disturbed central processing of signals from the periphery in others.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: IBS; Gastrointestinal motility; Visceral hypersensitivity; Gastrointestinal secretion; Intestinal gas; Brain-gut axis; Brain imaging; Autonomic nervous system

Posserud I, Ersryd A, Simrén M. Functional findings in irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2830-2838

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2830.asp

INTRODUCTION

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is characterized by abdominal pain and/or discomfort related to abnormal bowel habits[1]. It is probably the most common disorder encountered by gastroenterologists[2] and also the most common gastrointestinal disorder seen in primary care[3]. A problem in the management of IBS is that there are no structural or biochemical disease markers for these patients. Therefore, various diagnostic criteria have been used to define IBS in clinical practice and, more importantly, in research settings[1]. In the Western world, IBS appears to affect up to 20% of the population at any given time[4-6], although the prevalence figures vary substantially depending on the definition of IBS[7,8]. Due to its high prevalence and, for many patients, chronic nature and incapacitating symptoms the cost of IBS to society is substantial[9].

Despite being very common, the pathophysiology of IBS is far from understood. IBS has for a long time been considered a disorder of disturbed gastrointestinal motility, although uniform motility patterns in IBS have been hard to define. Moreover, motility findings have been difficult to relate to symptoms, especially abdominal pain[10,11]. Beginning in the early 1970s, but progressing rapidly in the 1990s were theories that visceral hyperalgesia independent of enhanced motility could explain the painful symptoms of IBS[12]. More recently, a more integrated model of brain-gut interactions proposes that the central and enteric nervous systems interact and modulate enhanced motility, abnormal sensation and autonomic reactivity: the brain-gut axis. In context with this model, psychosocial factors, rather than being a cause of IBS, are regarded as contributing to the predisposition, precipitation and perpetuation of IBS symptoms, and affect the clinical outcome[13]. However, despite the increasing knowledge of the pathophysiological and clinical aspects of IBS, there are a substantial number of unresolved issues.

During recent years the interest in finding relevant alterations in patients with IBS in the function of the gastrointestinal tract, as well as in the central and autonomic nervous system has increased. The trend is now that there is less focus on pure gastrointestinal alterations and instead more focus on interactions between exacerbating factors and gastrointestinal function, as well as on interaction between different parts of our nervous system and the gastrointestinal tract. This article will review the literature

on findings in IBS patients supporting disturbed function in the gastrointestinal tract as well as its interaction with the central and autonomic nervous systems.

ALTERED GASTROINTESTINAL MOTILITY

Esophageal and gastric motility

Most studies of motility in functional bowel disorders have focused on the large and small bowel, although there are also reports on disturbed motility in the esophagus and the stomach. Patients with IBS demonstrate, for instance, lower pressure in the lower esophageal sphincter and more esophageal contraction abnormalities than healthy subjects[14]. Furthermore, patients with contraction abnormalities in the esophagus often report symptoms compatible with IBS[15]. There are several studies of gastric emptying in patients with IBS. These have come to somewhat different conclusions, with some of the older studies being unable to detect an abnormality[16-18], whereas some of the more recent studies found abnormal gastric emptying in at least a subset of IBS patients[19-22]. Moreover, the presence of gastroparesis in IBS was found to be related to small bowel dysmotility[23]. In a recent large-scale study, delayed gastric emptying was found in IBS patients with overlapping dyspepsia, but not in those without dyspeptic symptoms[24]. Some studies have also used electrogastrography (EGG) in patients with IBS finding a nice correlation between lack of increased postprandial EGG amplitude and delayed gastric emptying in a subset of IBS patients[25], whereas another study found EGG abnormalities only in IBS patients with concurrent dyspeptic symptoms[26]. The conclusion of these studies seems to be that altered esophageal and gastric motor function is more related to the presence of upper GI symptoms than to IBS per se, even though a significant overlap between upper GI symptoms and IBS exists[27].

Small intestinal motility

The motor patterns of the small bowel in man are rather well characterized[28], but marked inter- and intraindividual variations make interpretation difficult[29,30]. In the late 1970s technological advances made it possible to accurately record small bowel motility in man. Thompson and co-workers, using a radiotelemetry capsule system, reported abnormal small-bowel motility in a patient with "irritable colon"[31], but a follow-up study using a similar recording system failed to confirm this[32]. Subsequent studies have focused on the periodicity of the migrating motor complex (MMC) (i.e. the interval between successive MMC cycles), as well as finding specific motor patterns in IBS and relating these patterns to symptoms. In diarrhea prone subjects, the periodicity of the MMC during daytime has been found to be shorter[33,34], but longer in IBS patients with predominant constipation[35], although these are not consistent findings[36,37]. Increased frequency of clustered activity has been found in some[33,34,38], but not all studies[36,37,39]. Of more interest perhaps, are correlations between symptoms in IBS patients and certain motility patterns, such as clustered activity (e.g. "discrete clustered contractions") and prolonged propagated contractions[33,34], but likewise, these findings have been partly[37] or totally[36] rejected by others. Furthermore, IBS patients have been found to have enhanced perception of physiological intestinal motility, such as the activity front[40]. There also appears to be a relationship between heightened sensitivity to distension of the small intestine and postprandial jejunal motor abnormalities in IBS patients[41]. An increased contraction frequency postprandially has been demonstrated in diarrhea and constipation predominant IBS[42], and in a study by Schmidt et al diarrhea prone IBS patients had more aborally propagated contractions in phase II and postprandially than the controls[37]. The contraction amplitude has, if anything, been shown to be increased in IBS patients with diarrhea[37] and reduced in those with constipation[35,42]. Our group has used high-resolution manometry in the small intestine with closely spaced recording points to evaluate the propagation pattern of individual pressure waves[43]. A study in IBS patients and healthy controls disclosed a higher proportion of duodenal individual pressure waves that propagated in a retrograde direction in IBS, especially in the postprandial phase. Moreover, when combining this high-resolution analysis with more conventional manometry analysis, abnormal findings were found in the majority of IBS patients[38].

Motility disturbances of the small bowel have also been demonstrated indirectly in transit studies, with rather uniform findings of accelerated transit through the small bowel in diarrhea predominant IBS[44,45] and delayed transit in constipation predominant IBS[18,44]. Small intestinal bacterial overgrowth (SIBO) is a condition caused by an abnormal number of bacteria in the small intestine, which is a common complication of severe small intestinal motor dysfunction[46,47]. Recently, provocative studies, using the lactulose hydrogen breath test[48], have proposed that SIBO is present in approximately 80% of IBS patients[49] and that this alteration responds favourably to antibiotic treatment with symptom improvement[50]. Moreover, the presence of SIBO in IBS patients has been proposed to be related to small intestinal motor abnormalities[51]. However, contradictory results exist and the relevance of SIBO in IBS is still open to debate[52-54].

To conclude, there is evidence of disturbed small bowel motility in IBS patients as a group, but no uniform motility pattern has been found and a consistent correlation between motility findings and symptoms has been difficult to demonstrate. Whether the observed motility abnormalities of the small intestine in IBS are due to factors related to the enteric or the central nervous system is not clear, but there is evidence to suggest that both may be true[35,39,55].

Colonic motility

Considerable effort has been made to find a specific abnormality in the myoelectrical and/or motor patterns of colon in IBS. However, a primary role for colonic dysmotility in the pathophysiology of IBS has been hard to demonstrate. Some of these difficulties may be explained by the fact that myoelectrical and motor events from the colon are less predictable and less well studied than corresponding events elsewhere in the gastrointestinal tract[56,57]. In the 1970s Snape and colleagues reported on

abnormal colonic myoelectrical activity in IBS (3 cycle/min pattern)[58,59], but subsequent studies failed to confirm this pattern to be specific for IBS[60,61]. Instead, since this pattern was demonstrated to be equally common among psychoneurotics without gastrointestinal symptoms it was suggested that this abnormality represented a colonic response to stress rather than being related to IBS[62]. Other techniques have focused on colonic spike patterns and demonstrated variations in the incidence of these[63], but whether these findings simply represent a non-specific response to diarrhea is not clear, since appropriate non-IBS controls have not been studied.

Several studies of basal colonic motility with intraluminal pressure recordings have not been able to demonstrate an abnormal pattern in IBS as compared to appropriate controls or differences between IBS patients with different symptomatology[17,64], but this has to some extent been contradicted in recent studies of colonic motility[65,66]. Some of the earlier studies were, however, able to detect frequent sigmoid contractions with high amplitude in association with pain reports from some of the IBS patients studied ("spastic colon"), although no group differences in rectosigmoid motility between IBS patients and controls could be detected[67]. Also, some recent studies have found an increased frequency of high-amplitude propagating contractions (HAPC) in the colon in non-constipated IBS patients[65,68,69], and more interestingly an association between pain episodes and HAPCs[65,70], possibly related to the presence of visceral hypersensitivity in IBS. Somewhat more consistent has been the finding that IBS patients seem to have an exaggerated and prolonged postprandial myoelectrical and motor response than healthy volunteers[17,65,71,72], even though negative studies also exist[66,73].

The normal motor response in the colon after nutrient administration is an increase in phasic motor activity and a progressive increase in tone as well[74]. At least two studies have failed to detect an abnormal colonic tone response after meal intake in IBS patients[66,75]. However, there are some recent data supporting altered gastrointestinal reflex activity in IBS patients, by demonstrating abnormal rectosigmoid tone response following a low-caloric meal[76], or as an attenuated rectal tone response to colonic distension ("the colorectal tonic reflex")[77,78]. Hopefully these interesting studies will be followed by other investigations evaluating gastrointestinal reflex activity within the gastrointestinal tract, thereby providing new important information regarding neuromuscular function within the gastrointestinal tract in IBS patients. As in the small intestine motility alterations have also been demonstrated using transit studies. Transit through the colon influences the bowel habit of the patient[79,80], and differences exist in colon transit between IBS subgroups based on the predominant bowel habit[44,81].

To conclude, there is some evidence to suggest a disordered colonic motility in IBS, even though no uniform colonic motor pattern of this patient group is evident. Of great relevance to the symptomatology is probably the exaggerated colonic motor response to physiological stimuli such as food and, perhaps also stress and emotions in IBS[61,82], which together with an enhanced visceral sensitivity might be deleterious for these patients. Alterations in gastrointestinal reflex activity in IBS patients seem plausible, but follow-up studies are needed.

ABNORMAL GAS HANDLING

In patients with IBS complaints of "too much gas" causing abdominal pain and bloating is very common, and this has been proposed to be secondary to disordered intestinal motility in combination with an abnormal GI sensitivity, rather than caused by abnormal volume or composition of intestinal gas[83]. However, an abnormal colonic fermentation in IBS has been demonstrated in one study[84], but needs to be repeated by other groups. Of great interest, patients with IBS complaining of bloating has been found to have impaired transit of exogenous gas loads, and the following gas retention reproduced their symptoms[85]. Importantly, this abnormality can be modulated by nutrients[86, 87], physical activity[88] and body posture[89]. In follow-up studies using scintigraphy the small intestine seemed to be responsible for the ineffective gas propulsion in patients complaining of bloating[90], and altered gastrointestinal reflex activity in IBS patients might also be involved in the abnormal gas handling[91].

These findings tell us that IBS patients do not necessarily need to produce more gas in order to have gas related symptoms, but these may instead be due to motor dysfunction, resulting in a transport problem, and an enhanced visceral sensitivity.

ALTERED GASTROINTESTINAL SECRETION

Few studies have so far addressed GI secretion in IBS, partly due to methodological problems in assessing gastrointestinal secretion. However, there are some evidences supporting altered secretion in the small intestine of IBS. An old study demonstrated that patients with IBS have enhanced intestinal secretion in response to perfused bile acids in the ileum, relative to controls[92]. Our group has used potential difference measurements in the small intestine as an indirect measure of secretion in the small intestine[93], and in preliminary studies found an enhanced reactivity of the secretory component of the MMC in the small intestine in diarrhea-predominant IBS and to some extent also in constipation predominant IBS[94]. Ongoing studies will further evaluate the importance of secretory abnormalities in patients with IBS and the relevance for symptoms.

VISCERAL HYPERSENSITIVITY

Since James Ritchie in 1973 demonstrated colonic hyperalgesia by inflating balloons in the sigmoid colon in patients with "the irritable colon syndrome"[95] numerous reports on visceral hypersensitivity in IBS have appeared. Lowered perception thresholds for balloon distension in IBS patients have not only been demonstrated in the rectum[96] and colon[97], but also in the esophagus[98,99], stomach[100] and the small intestine[101,102]. These findings support a generalized enhancement of gastrointestinal sensitivity in IBS patients. However, a recent investigation has implicated that the hypersensitivity seems to be pan-intestinal for

those with multiple sites of their symptoms, whereas it was restricted to a specific organ in those with more localized symptoms[103]. Whether IBS patients have a general hypersensitivity remains debatable since divergent results exist regarding somatic sensitivity[104-106]. Patients with IBS also show an altered viscerosomatic referral pattern as another indicator of disturbed processing of viscerosensory information[107]. However, visceral perception is not abnormal in all patients with IBS[100,108] and there is a considerable overlap in colonic pain thresholds between IBS patients and healthy controls [109]. Moreover, the relationship to the symptom profile of the patient is controversial[108,110-112].

In an attempt to find a biological marker for IBS, Mertz et al evaluated different aspects of rectal perception in a group of IBS patients. They found that 94 percent of patients showed altered rectal perception in the form of lowered thresholds for aversive sensations (discomfort), increased intensity of sensations or altered viscerosomatic referral[96]. Also, a more recent study has come to the same conclusion and proposed that rectal sensitivity testing is useful to confirm the diagnosis of IBS and to discriminate IBS from other causes of abdominal pain[113]. The proposal that altered rectal perception is a biological marker for IBS has, however, been questioned and the importance of psychological factors in visceral perception has been stressed instead[114]. Psychological factors might certainly be of great importance in studies dealing with visceral sensations, and response bias[115] may influence results from balloon distension studies. A different conclusion can be drawn from a study by Corsetti *et al*, who showed that there was no difference between patients and healthy controls in identifying regular balloon inflations mixed with sham distensions, suggesting that the increased frequency of sensations often reported by IBS patients are not due to psychological response bias[116]. On the other hand, Whitehead and co-workers found that thresholds were correlated with psychological measures of anxiety and somatization[117]. However, in that study sexual abuse, reported to be associated with IBS[118], did not contribute significantly to the rectal pain sensitivity, which has been confirmed recently[119]. One explanation for these somewhat discrepant results may be that IBS patients demonstrate two different perceptual alterations: hypersensitivity to rectal distension, which is proposed to be largely due to peripheral alterations, and hypervigilance towards labeling a wide range of visceral stimuli in negatively affective terms, which is more related to psychological alterations[120].

A drawback with many of the studies assessing visceral perception in IBS is that they are made under fasting and non-stimulated conditions, under which patients normally do not report severe symptoms. However, it has been shown that repetitive sigmoid distensions - thought to imitate increased colonic motility after food intake[17], emotions[82] and stress[61] - resulted in hyperalgesia and increased viscerosomatic referral during rectal distensions in IBS patients. These findings were proposed to reflect a central sensitization of the dorsal horn neurons[121]. These data fit well with findings from studies evaluating the effects of rectal distension on spinal transmission of nociceptive signals, using a somatic cutaneomuscular flexion reflex (RIII reflex)[122], where IBS patients have an altered response[123]. Whether this is designated to changes in electrophysiological properties of the spinal nociceptive neurones or failure in the inhibition of nociceptive signals in spinal nerves is yet to be answered.

Patients with IBS often describe a correlation between their symptoms and stress, and they seem to be more susceptible to stressful events of daily life[124]. Using different methodologies, several studies now exist that demonstrate an altered visceral perceptual response in IBS patients relative to control subjects after and during stress[125-127], which might be of relevance for stress-related symptoms in IBS patients. Postprandial worsening of symptoms, as well as adverse reactions to one or more foods is common in IBS patients[128]. The effects of nutrients on colorectal sensitivity have been investigated in healthy volunteers and rectal sensitivity increases after nutrient ingestion[129]. Fat is also the main stimulus for this sensory component of the gastrocolonic response[130]. Recently we demonstrated enhancement of the colonic sensitivity in IBS patients after duodenal lipid administration as compared with healthy controls[75]. This finding has thereafter also been reproduced by other groups assessing the effect of duodenal lipid administration on rectal sensory function[131,132], making it fair to state that patients with IBS seem to have an exaggerated sensory component of the gastrocolonic response.

Visceral hypersensitivity may also be affected by motor characteristics and biomechanical properties of the gut, but studies assessing for instance rectal compliance have come to somewhat inconclusive results[108,133,134]. Moreover, a study using impedance planimetry found no clear evidence of altered biomechanical properties in the rectum in patients with IBS and hypersensitivity[135]. However, more studies assessing the relationship between sensory and motor characteristics and biomechanical properties of the gastrointestinal tract in IBS patients are needed.

To conclude, visceral hypersensitivity is currently considered to be perhaps the most important pathophysiological factor in IBS. Importantly, several external and internal factors can modulate visceral sensitivity. The link between visceral hypersensitivity and specific symptoms in IBS deserves further studies.

DYSREGULATION OF THE BRAIN-GUT AXIS

The brain-gut axis is a model describing bidirectional pathways linking emotional and cognitive centres in the brain with visceral afferent sensation and intestinal function. Several observations have led to the hypothesis of a dysfunctional brain-gut axis in the pathophysiology of IBS[136-138]. Brain imaging techniques such as functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) and positron emission tomography (PET) have been used to investigate brain response during visceral stimulation with rectal distensions. Despite contradicting results, several studies indicate differences between IBS patients and healthy controls in activation of different pain processing regions such as the anterior cingulate cortex (ACC), thalamus, insula and prefrontal cortex (PFC)[139].

Using PET, Silverman et al initially reported that painful rectal distension in IBS patients resulted in reduced

ACC activity but enhanced activity in the PFC during anticipation of rectal pain suggesting a hypervigilance towards the stimulation and a failure to activate endogenous pain inhibition systems[140]. However, Mertz et al later published an fMRI study showing increased activity in the ACC indicating a normal activation pattern but a heightened sensitivity of the brain-gut axis[141]. Several brain imaging studies have been published thereafter with somewhat divergent results, with reports of increased activity in the insula, PFC and thalamus[142,143], as well as in the cingular cortex[142,144,145], but also decreased activity in the insula, amygdala and striatum[146]. The discrepancies in results are probably explained by factors such as small study populations and pooling of results from heterogeneous groups, as well as the use of different methodologies[147]. It has for instance been demonstrated that male and female IBS patients show differences in activation of brain regions[148,149], just like the activation pattern differs between IBS subgroups based on the predominant bowel habit[150]. The psychological state of the patient is also important since emotional status has been shown to modulate brain activation patterns[151]. Interestingly, changes in some brain regions have also been associated with treatment response in IBS[152]. In addition to brain imaging, IBS patients have also shown different results than healthy controls in studies using electroencephalography (EEG)[153,154] and evoked potentials[155,156].

Central nervous system communication with the gut is mediated through the parasympathetic and sympathetic pathways of the autonomic nervous system (ANS) by modulation of the enteric nervous system. Several studies have reported autonomic dysfunction in IBS[157-161]. The results are inconsistent, but increased sympathetic and decreased parasympathetic activity in IBS patients compared with healthy controls are the most frequently reported differences[162-166]. Again, the contradictory results may partly be due to varying experimental designs with differences in study populations. Anxiety and depression influences autonomic function in IBS[167], and there also seem to be discrepancies between different subgroups of IBS patients[162,165,168]. Recently Tillisch *et al* also showed gender differences in ANS response to visceral stimulus, with more prominent alterations in male IBS patients[169].

Another important system in the communication between the brain and the gut is the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis, with important effects on GI motility, sensation and immune function[170]. Activation of this system takes place in response to both physical and psychological stressors[171]. Since patients with IBS often report stress-related symptoms[124], it has been a logical step to evaluate the HPA axis and its effect on GI function in IBS. Also here results are divergent with investigations reporting attenuated[172], normal[125] and enhanced reactivity[127,173] of the HPA-axis in IBS patients in response to various stressors. Again, different study designs, patient characteristics and other factors might be the explanation for the somewhat heterogeneous results[174].

To conclude, there appears to be alterations along the brain-gut axis and in autonomic nervous function in patients with IBS. However, there are discrepancies between existing studies, and in future studies standardization of the methodology, as well as strict inclusion criteria and evaluation of larger patient groups will enhance our understanding of the interaction between the gut and different parts of our nervous system.

CONCLUSION

The pathophysiology of IBS is complex and still incompletely known. Both central and peripheral factors, including psychosocial factors, abnormal GI motility and secretion, and visceral hypersensitivity, are thought to contribute to the symptoms of IBS. However, in order to be able to find new treatment alternatives for this big patients group more knowledge about the pathophysiology of IBS is needed.

REFERENCES

1 **Thompson WG**, Longstreth GF, Drossman DA, Heaton KW, Irvine EJ, Müller-Lissner SA. Functional bowel disorders and functional abdominal pain. *Gut* 1999; **45 Suppl 2**: II43-II47

2 **Harvey RF**, Salih SY, Read AE. Organic and functional disorders in 2000 gastroenterology outpatients. *Lancet* 1983; **1**: 632-634

3 **Thompson WG**, Heaton KW, Smyth GT, Smyth C. Irritable bowel syndrome in general practice: prevalence, characteristics, and referral. *Gut* 2000; **46**: 78-82

4 **Heaton KW**, O'Donnell LJ, Braddon FE, Mountford RA, Hughes AO, Cripps PJ. Symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome in a British urban community: consulters and nonconsulters. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 1962-1967

5 **Longstreth GF**, Wolde-Tsadik G. Irritable bowel-type symptoms in HMO examinees. Prevalence, demographics, and clinical correlates. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38**: 1581-1589

6 **Agréus L**, Svärdsudd K, Nyrén O, Tibblin G. Irritable bowel syndrome and dyspepsia in the general population: overlap and lack of stability over time. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 671-680

7 **Kay L**, Jørgensen T, Jensen KH. The epidemiology of irritable bowel syndrome in a random population: prevalence, incidence, natural history and risk factors. *J Intern Med* 1994; **236**: 23-30

8 **Saito YA**, Locke GR, Talley NJ, Zinsmeister AR, Fett SL, Melton LJ, 3rd. A comparison of the Rome and Manning criteria for case identification in epidemiological investigations of irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 2816-2824

9 **Wells NE**, Hahn BA, Whorwell PJ. Clinical economics review: irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1997; **11**: 1019-1030

10 **McKee DP**, Quigley EM. Intestinal motility in irritable bowel syndrome: is IBS a motility disorder? Part 2. Motility of the small bowel, esophagus, stomach, and gall-bladder. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38**: 1773-1782

11 **McKee DP**, Quigley EM. Intestinal motility in irritable bowel syndrome: is IBS a motility disorder? Part 1. Definition of IBS and colonic motility. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38**: 1761-1772

12 **Mayer EA**, Gebhart GF. Basic and clinical aspects of visceral hyperalgesia. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **107**: 271-293

13 **Drossman DA**. Review article: an integrated approach to the irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1999; **13** Suppl 2: 3-14

14 **Whorwell PJ**, Clouter C, Smith CL. Oesophageal motility in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Br Med J (Clin Res Ed)* 1981; **282**: 1101-1102

15 **Clouse RE**, Eckert TC. Gastrointestinal symptoms of patients with esophageal contraction abnormalities. *Dig Dis Sci* 1986; **31**: 236-240

16 **Acharya U**, Waite N, Howlett P, Tanner AR, Smith CL. Failure to demonstrate altered gastric emptying in irritable bowel syn-

drome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1983; **28**: 889-892
17 **Narducci F**, Bassotti G, Granata MT, Pelli MA, Gaburri M, Palumbo R, Morelli A. Colonic motility and gastric emptying in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. Effect of pretreatment with octylonium bromide. *Dig Dis Sci* 1986; **31**: 241-246
18 **Nielsen OH**, Gjørup T, Christensen FN. Gastric emptying rate and small bowel transit time in patients with irritable bowel syndrome determined with 99mTc-labeled pellets and scintigraphy. *Dig Dis Sci* 1986; **31**: 1287-1291
19 **van Wijk HJ**, Smout AJ, Akkermans LM, Roelofs JM, ten Thije OJ. Gastric emptying and dyspeptic symptoms in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1992; **27**: 99-102
20 **Charles F**, Phillips SF, Camilleri M, Thomforde GM. Rapid gastric emptying in patients with functional diarrhea. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1997; **72**: 323-328
21 **Caballero-Plasencia AM**, Valenzuela-Barranco M, Herrerías-Gutiérrez JM, Esteban-Carretero JM. Altered gastric emptying in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Eur J Nucl Med* 1999; **26**: 404-409
22 **Portincasa P**, Moschetta A, Baldassarre G, Altomare DF, Palasciano G. Pan-enteric dysmotility, impaired quality of life and alexithymia in a large group of patients meeting ROME II criteria for irritable bowel syndrome. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9**: 2293-2299
23 **Evans PR**, Bak YT, Shuter B, Hoschl R, Kellow JE. Gastroparesis and small bowel dysmotility in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 2087-2093
24 **Stanghellini V**, Tosetti C, Barbara G, De Giorgio R, Cogliandro L, Cogliandro R, Corinaldesi R. Dyspeptic symptoms and gastric emptying in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 2738-2743
25 **van der Voort IR**, Osmanoglou E, Seybold M, Heymann-Mönnikes I, Tebbe J, Wiedenmann B, Klapp BF, Mönnikes H. Electrogastrography as a diagnostic tool for delayed gastric emptying in functional dyspepsia and irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2003; **15**: 467-473
26 **Leahy A**, Besherdas K, Clayman C, Mason I, Epstein O. Abnormalities of the electrogastrogram in functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 1023-1028
27 **Corsetti M**, Caenepeel P, Fischler B, Janssens J, Tack J. Impact of coexisting irritable bowel syndrome on symptoms and pathophysiological mechanisms in functional dyspepsia. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 1152-1159
28 **Husebye E**. The patterns of small bowel motility: physiology and implications in organic disease and functional disorders. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1999; **11**: 141-161
29 **Kerlin P**, Phillips S. Variability of motility of the ileum and jejunum in healthy humans. *Gastroenterology* 1982; **82**: 694-700
30 **Kellow JE**, Borody TJ, Phillips SF, Tucker RL, Haddad AC. Human interdigestive motility: variations in patterns from esophagus to colon. *Gastroenterology* 1986; **91**: 386-395
31 **Thompson DG**, Laidlow JM, Wingate DL. Abnormal small-bowel motility demonstrated by radiotelemetry in a patient with irritable colon. *Lancet* 1979; **2**: 1321-1323
32 **Kingham JG**, Bown R, Colson R, Clark ML. Jejunal motility in patients with functional abdominal pain. *Gut* 1984; **25**:375-380
33 **Kellow JE**, Phillips SF. Altered small bowel motility in irritable bowel syndrome is correlated with symptoms. *Gastroenterology* 1987; **92**:1885-1893
34 **Kellow JE**, Gill RC, Wingate DL. Prolonged ambulant recordings of small bowel motility demonstrate abnormalities in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98**: 1208-1218
35 **Kellow JE**, Eckersley GM, Jones M. Enteric and central contributions to intestinal dysmotility in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 168-174
36 **Gorard DA**, Libby GW, Farthing MJ. Ambulatory small intestinal motility in 'diarrhoea' predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1994; **35**: 203-210
37 **Schmidt T**, Hackelsberger N, Widmer R, Meisel C, Pfeiffer A, Kaess H. Ambulatory 24-hour jejunal motility in diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1996; **31**: 581-589
38 **Simrén M**, Castedal M, Svedlund J, Abrahamsson H, Björnsson E. Abnormal propagation pattern of duodenal pressure waves in the irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)[correction of (IBD)]. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45**: 2151-2161
39 **Quigley EM**, Donovan JP, Lane MJ, Gallagher TF. Antroduodenal manometry. Usefulness and limitations as an outpatient study. *Dig Dis Sci* 1992; **37**: 20-28
40 **Kellow JE**, Eckersley CM, Jones MP. Enhanced perception of physiological intestinal motility in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **101**: 1621-1627
41 **Evans PR**, Bennett EJ, Bak YT, Tennant CC, Kellow JE. Jejunal sensorimotor dysfunction in irritable bowel syndrome: clinical and psychosocial features. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110**: 393-404
42 **Small PK**, Loudon MA, Hau CM, Noor N, Campbell FC. Large-scale ambulatory study of postprandial jejunal motility in irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1997; **32**: 39-47
43 **Björnsson ES**, Abrahamsson H. Interdigestive gastroduodenal manometry in humans. Indication of duodenal phase III as a retroperistaltic pump. *Acta Physiol Scand* 1995; **153**: 221-230
44 **Cann PA**, Read NW, Brown C, Hobson N, Holdsworth CD. Irritable bowel syndrome: relationship of disorders in the transit of a single solid meal to symptom patterns. *Gut* 1983; **24**: 405-411
45 **Jian R**, Najean Y, Bernier JJ. Measurement of intestinal progression of a meal and its residues in normal subjects and patients with functional diarrhoea by a dual isotope technique. *Gut* 1984; **25**: 728-731
46 **Mann SD**, Debinski HS, Kamm MA. Clinical characteristics of chronic idiopathic intestinal pseudo- obstruction in adults. *Gut* 1997; **41**: 675-681
47 **Vantrappen G**, Janssens J, Hellemans J, Ghoos Y. The interdigestive motor complex of normal subjects and patients with bacterial overgrowth of the small intestine. *J Clin Invest* 1977; **59**: 1158-1166
48 **Rhodes JM**, Middleton P, Jewell DP. The lactulose hydrogen breath test as a diagnostic test for small-bowel bacterial overgrowth. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1979; **14**: 333-336
49 **Pimentel M**, Chow EJ, Lin HC. Eradication of small intestinal bacterial overgrowth reduces symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 3503-3506
50 **Pimentel M**, Chow EJ, Lin HC. Normalization of lactulose breath testing correlates with symptom improvement in irritable bowel syndrome. a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 412-419
51 **Pimentel M**, Soffer EE, Chow EJ, Kong Y, Lin HC. Lower frequency of MMC is found in IBS subjects with abnormal lactulose breath test, suggesting bacterial overgrowth. *Dig Dis Sci* 2002; **47**: 2639-2643
52 **Posserud I**, Ringström G, Stotzer PO, Björnsson ES, Abrahamsson H, Simrén M. Small intestinal bacterial overgrowth (SIBO) in irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 839
53 **Simrén M**, Stotzer PO. Use and abuse of hydrogen breath tests. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 297-303
54 **Walters B**, Vanner SJ. Detection of bacterial overgrowth in IBS using the lactulose H2 breath test: comparison with 14C-D-xylose and healthy controls. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 1566-1570
55 **Kumar D**, Wingate DL. The irritable bowel syndrome: a paroxysmal motor disorder. *Lancet* 1985; **2**: 973-977
56 **Sarna SK.** Physiology and pathophysiology of colonic motor activity (2). *Dig Dis Sci* 1991; **36**: 998-1018
57 **Sarna SK.** Physiology and pathophysiology of colonic motor activity (1). *Dig Dis Sci* 1991; **36**: 827-862
58 **Snape WJ Jr**, Carlson GM, Cohen S. Colonic myoelectric activity in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1976; **70**: 326-330
59 **Snape WJ Jr**, Carlson GM, Matarazzo SA, Cohen S. Evidence that abnormal myoelectrical activity produces colonic motor dysfunction in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1977; **72**: 383-387
60 **Sarna S**, Latimer P, Campbell D, Waterfall WE. Effect of stress, meal and neostigmine on rectosigmoid electrical control activ-

ity (ECA) in normals and in irritable bowel syndrome patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 1982; **27**: 582-591
61 **Welgan P**, Meshkinpour H, Hoehler F. The effect of stress on colon motor and electrical activity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Psychosom Med* 1985; **47**: 139-149
62 **Latimer P**, Sarna S, Campbell D, Latimer M, Waterfall W, Daniel EE. Colonic motor and myoelectrical activity: a comparative study of normal subjects, psychoneurotic patients, and patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1981; **80**: 893-901
63 **Bueno L**, Fioramonti J, Ruckebusch Y, Frexinos J, Coulom P. Evaluation of colonic myoelectrical activity in health and functional disorders. *Gut* 1980; **21**: 480-485
64 **Katschinski M**, Lederer P, Ellermann A, Ganzleben R, Lux G, Arnold R. Myoelectric and manometric patterns of human rectosigmoid colon in irritable bowel syndrome and diverticulosis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1990; **25**: 761-768
65 **Chey W**Y, Jin HO, Lee MH, Sun SW, Lee KY. Colonic motility abnormality in patients with irritable bowel syndrome exhibiting abdominal pain and diarrhea. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 1499-1506
66 **Vassallo MJ**, Camilleri M, Phillips SF, Steadman CJ, Talley NJ, Hanson RB, Haddad AC. Colonic tone and motility in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1992; **67**: 725-731
67 **Chaudhary NA**, Truelove SC. Human colonic motility: a comparative study of normal subjects, patients with ulcerative colitis, and patients with the irritable colon syndrome. I. Resting patterns of motility. *Gastroenterology* 1961; **40**: 1-17
68 **Bassotti G**, de Roberto G, Chistolini F, Sietchiping-Nzepa F, Morelli O, Morelli A. Twenty-four-hour manometric study of colonic propulsive activity in patients with diarrhea due to inflammatory (ulcerative colitis) and non-inflammatory (irritable bowel syndrome) conditions. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 2004; **19**: 493-497
69 **Clemens CH**, Samsom M, Van Berge Henegouwen GP, Smout AJ. Abnormalities of left colonic motility in ambulant nonconstipated patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48**: 74-82
70 **Clemens CH**, Samsom M, Roelofs JM, van Berge Henegouwen GP, Smout AJ. Association between pain episodes and high amplitude propagated pressure waves in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 1838-1843
71 **Sullivan MA**, Cohen S, Snape WJ Jr. Colonic myoelectrical activity in irritable-bowel syndrome. Effect of eating and anticholinergics. *N Engl J Med* 1978; **298**: 878-883
72 **Rogers J**, Henry MM, Misiewicz JJ. Increased segmental activity and intraluminal pressures in the sigmoid colon of patients with the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1989; **30**: 634-641
73 **Bassotti G**, Sietchiping-Nzepa F, De Roberto G, Chistolini F, Morelli A. Colonic regular contractile frequency patterns in irritable bowel syndrome: the 'spastic colon' revisited. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **16**: 613-617
74 **Steadman CJ**, Phillips SF, Camilleri M, Haddad AC, Hanson RB. Variation of muscle tone in the human colon. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **101**: 373-381
75 **Simrén M**, Abrahamsson H, Björnsson ES. An exaggerated sensory component of the gastrocolonic response in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 20-27
76 **Di Stefano M**, Miceli E, Missanelli A, Mazzocchi S, Corazza GR. Meal induced rectosigmoid tone modification: a low-caloric meal accurately separates functional and organic gastrointestinal disease patients. *Gut* 2006; **55**: 1409-1414
77 **Ng C**, Danta M, Prott G, Badcock CA, Kellow J, Malcolm A. Modulatory influences on antegrade and retrograde tonic reflexes in the colon and rectum. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **287**: G962-G966
78 **Ng C**, Danta M, Kellow J, Badcock CA, Hansen R, Malcolm A. Attenuation of the colorectal tonic reflex in female patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **289**: G489-G494
79 **van der Sijp JR**, Kamm MA, Nightingale JM, Britton KE, Mather SJ, Morris GP, Akkermans LM, Lennard-Jones JE. Radioisotope determination of regional colonic transit in severe constipation: comparison with radio opaque markers. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 402-408
80 **Vassallo M**, Camilleri M, Phillips SF, Brown ML, Chapman NJ, Thomforde GM. Transit through the proximal colon influences stool weight in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 102-108
81 **Charles F**, Camilleri M, Phillips SF, Thomforde GM, Forstrom LA. Scintigraphy of the whole gut: clinical evaluation of transit disorders. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1995; **70**: 113-118
82 **Welgan P**, Meshkinpour H, Beeler M. Effect of anger on colon motor and myoelectric activity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94**: 1150-1156
83 **Lasser RB**, Bond JH, Levitt MD. The role of intestinal gas in functional abdominal pain. *N Engl J Med* 1975; **293**: 524-526
84 **King TS**, Elia M, Hunter JO. Abnormal colonic fermentation in irritable bowel syndrome. *Lancet* 1998; **352**: 1187-1189
85 **Serra J**, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Impaired transit and tolerance of intestinal gas in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2001; **48**: 14-19
86 **Serra J**, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Gastric distension and duodenal lipid infusion modulate intestinal gas transit and tolerance in humans. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 2225-2230
87 **Serra J**, Salvioli B, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Lipid-induced intestinal gas retention in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **123**: 700-706
88 **Dainese R**, Serra J, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Effects of physical activity on intestinal gas transit and evacuation in healthy subjects. *Am J Med* 2004; **116**: 536-539
89 **Dainese R**, Serra J, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Influence of body posture on intestinal transit of gas. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 971-974
90 **Salvioli B**, Serra J, Azpiroz F, Lorenzo C, Aguade S, Castell J, Malagelada JR. Origin of gas retention and symptoms in patients with bloating. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128**: 574-579
91 **Passos MC**, Serra J, Azpiroz F, Tremolaterra F, Malagelada JR. Impaired reflex control of intestinal gas transit in patients with abdominal bloating. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 344-348
92 **Oddsson E**, Rask-Madsen J, Krag E. A secretory epithelium of the small intestine with increased sensitivity to bile acids in irritable bowel syndrome associated with diarrhoea. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1978; **13**: 408-416
93 **Mellander A**, Järbur K, Sjövall H. Pressure and frequency dependent linkage between motility and epithelial secretion in human proximal small intestine. *Gut* 2000; **46**: 376-384
94 **Sjövall H**, Björnsson E, Mellander A, Simrén M. Positive Diagnosis of Diarrhea-Dominant Irritable Bowel Syndrome (d-IBS) by Combined Recording of Proximal Intestinal Motility and Transmucosal Potential Difference (PD). *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: W1020
95 **Ritchie J**. Pain from distension of the pelvic colon by inflating a balloon in the irritable colon syndrome. *Gut* 1973; **14**: 125-132
96 **Mertz H**, Naliboff B, Munakata J, Niazi N, Mayer EA. Altered rectal perception is a biological marker of patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 40-52
97 **Bradette M**, Delvaux M, Staumont G, Fioramonti J, Bueno L, Frexinos J. Evaluation of colonic sensory thresholds in IBS patients using a barostat. Definition of optimal conditions and comparison with healthy subjects. *Dig Dis Sci* 1994; **39**: 449-457
98 **Costantini M**, Sturniolo GC, Zaninotto G, D'Incà R, Polo R, Naccarato R, Ancona E. Altered esophageal pain threshold in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38**: 206-212
99 **Trimble KC**, Farouk R, Pryde A, Douglas S, Heading RC. Heightened visceral sensation in functional gastrointestinal disease is not site-specific. Evidence for a generalized disorder of gut sensitivity. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40**: 1607-1613
100 **Zighelboim J**, Talley NJ, Phillips SF, Harmsen WS, Zinsmeister AR. Visceral perception in irritable bowel syndrome. Rectal and gastric responses to distension and serotonin type 3 antagonism. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40**: 819-827
101 **Accarino AM**, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Selective dysfunction of mechanosensitive intestinal afferents in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108**: 636-643
102 **Holtmann G**, Goebell H, Talley NJ. Functional dyspepsia and

irritable bowel syndrome: is there a common pathophysiological basis? *Am J Gastroenterol* 1997; **92:** 954-959
103 **Bouin M**, Lupien F, Riberdy M, Boivin M, Plourde V, Poitras P. Intolerance to visceral distension in functional dyspepsia or irritable bowel syndrome: an organ specific defect or a pan intestinal dysregulation? *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 311-314
104 **Chang L**, Mayer EA, Johnson T, FitzGerald LZ, Naliboff B. Differences in somatic perception in female patients with irritable bowel syndrome with and without fibromyalgia. *Pain* 2000; **84**: 297-307
105 **Rodrigues AC**, Nicholas Verne G, Schmidt S, Mauderli AP. Hypersensitivity to cutaneous thermal nociceptive stimuli in irritable bowel syndrome. *Pain* 2005; **115**: 5-11
106 **Whitehead WE**, Holtkotter B, Enck P, Hoelzl R, Holmes KD, Anthony J, Shabsin HS, Schuster MM. Tolerance for rectosigmoid distention in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98**: 1187-1192
107 **Swarbrick ET**, Hegarty JE, Bat L, Williams CB, Dawson AM. Site of pain from the irritable bowel. *Lancet* 1980; **2**: 443-446
108 **Prior A**, Maxton DG, Whorwell PJ. Anorectal manometry in irritable bowel syndrome: differences between diarrhoea and constipation predominant subjects. *Gut* 1990; **31**: 458-462
109 **Whitehead WE**, Engel BT, Schuster MM. Irritable bowel syndrome: physiological and psychological differences between diarrhea-predominant and constipation-predominant patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 1980; **25**: 404-413
110 **Kuiken SD**, Lindeboom R, Tytgat GN, Boeckxstaens GE. Relationship between symptoms and hypersensitivity to rectal distension in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **22**: 157-164
111 **Schmulson M**, Chang L, Naliboff B, Lee OY, Mayer EA. Correlation of symptom criteria with perception thresholds during rectosigmoid distension in irritable bowel syndrome patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 152-156
112 **Distrutti E**, Salvioli B, Azpiroz F, Malagelada JR. Rectal function and bowel habit in irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 131-137
113 **Bouin M**, Plourde V, Boivin M, Riberdy M, Lupien F, Laganière M, Verrier P, Poitras P. Rectal distention testing in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: sensitivity, specificity, and predictive values of pain sensory thresholds. *Gastroenterology* 2002; **122**: 1771-1777
114 **Whitehead WE**, Palsson OS. Is rectal pain sensitivity a biological marker for irritable bowel syndrome: psychological influences on pain perception. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **115**: 1263-1271
115 **Scarinci IC**, McDonald-Haile J, Bradley LA, Richter JE. Altered pain perception and psychosocial features among women with gastrointestinal disorders and history of abuse: a preliminary model. *Am J Med* 1994; **97**: 108-118
116 **Corsetti M**, Ogliari C, Marino B, Basilisco G. Perceptual sensitivity and response bias during rectal distension in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2005; **17**: 541-547
117 **Whitehead WE**, Crowell MD, Davidoff AL, Palsson OS, Schuster MM. Pain from rectal distension in women with irritable bowel syndrome: relationship to sexual abuse. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 796-804
118 **Drossman DA**, Leserman J, Nachman G, Li ZM, Gluck H, Toomey TC, Mitchell CM. Sexual and physical abuse in women with functional or organic gastrointestinal disorders. *Ann Intern Med* 1990; **113**: 828-833
119 **Ringel Y**, Whitehead WE, Toner BB, Diamant NE, Hu Y, Jia H, Bangdiwala SI, Drossman DA. Sexual and physical abuse are not associated with rectal hypersensitivity in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 838-842
120 **Naliboff BD**, Munakata J, Fullerton S, Gracely RH, Kodner A, Harraf F, Mayer EA. Evidence for two distinct perceptual alterations in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 1997; **41**: 505-512
121 **Munakata J**, Naliboff B, Harraf F, Kodner A, Lembo T, Chang L, Silverman DH, Mayer EA. Repetitive sigmoid stimulation induces rectal hyperalgesia in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 55-63
122 **Bouhassira D**, Sabaté JM, Coffin B, Le Bars D, Willer JC, Jian R. Effects of rectal distensions on nociceptive flexion reflexes in humans. *Am J Physiol* 1998; **275:** G410-G417
123 **Coffin B**, Bouhassira D, Sabaté JM, Barbe L, Jian R. Alteration of the spinal modulation of nociceptive processing in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1465-1470
124 **Whitehead WE**, Crowell MD, Robinson JC, Heller BR, Schuster MM. Effects of stressful life events on bowel symptoms: subjects with irritable bowel syndrome compared with subjects without bowel dysfunction. *Gut* 1992; **33**: 825-830
125 **Dickhaus B**, Mayer EA, Firooz N, Stains J, Conde F, Olivas TI, Fass R, Chang L, Mayer M, Naliboff BD. Irritable bowel syndrome patients show enhanced modulation of visceral perception by auditory stress. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 135-143
126 **Murray CD**, Flynn J, Ratcliffe L, Jacyna MR, Kamm MA, Emmanuel AV. Effect of acute physical and psychological stress on gut autonomic innervation in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: 1695-1703
127 **Posserud I**, Agerforz P, Ekman R, Björnsson ES, Abrahamsson H, Simrén M. Altered visceral perceptual and neuroendocrine response in patients with irritable bowel syndrome during mental stress. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1102-1108
128 **Simrén M**, Månsson A, Langkilde AM, Svedlund J, Abrahamsson H, Bengtsson U, Björnsson ES. Food-related gastrointestinal symptoms in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Digestion* 2001; **63**: 108-115
129 **Musial F**, Crowell MD, Kalveram KT, Enck P. Nutrient ingestion increases rectal sensitivity in humans. *Physiol Behav* 1994; **55**: 953-956
130 **Erckenbrecht JF**, Hemstege M, Rühl A, Krause J. The sensory component of the gastrocolonic response revisited: Postprandial colonic perception depends on meal composition. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **106**: A494
131 **Caldarella MP**, Milano A, Laterza F, Sacco F, Balatsinou C, Lapenna D, Pierdomenico SD, Cuccurullo F, Neri M. Visceral sensitivity and symptoms in patients with constipation- or diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome (IBS): effect of a low-fat intraduodenal infusion. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 383-389
132 **Distrutti E**, Hauer SK, Fiorucci S, Pensi MO, Morelli A. Intraduodenal lipids increase perception of rectal distension in IBS patients. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118 (Suppl 2)**: A138
133 Slater BJ, Plusa SM, Smith AN, Varma JS. Rectal hypersensitivity in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1997; **12**: 29-32
134 **Steens J**, Van Der Schaar PJ, Penning C, Brussee J, Masclee AA. Compliance, tone and sensitivity of the rectum in different subtypes of irritable bowel syndrome. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2002; **14**: 241-247
135 **Drewes AM**, Petersen P, Rössel P, Gao C, Hansen JB, Arendt-Nielsen L. Sensitivity and distensibility of the rectum and sigmoid colon in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2001; **36**: 827-832
136 **Aziz Q**, Thompson DG. Brain-gut axis in health and disease. *Gastroenterology* 1998; **114**: 559-578
137 **Farthing MJ**. Irritable bowel, irritable body, or irritable brain? *BMJ* 1995; **310**: 171-175
138 **Mayer EA**, Chang L, Lembo T. Brain-gut interactions: implications for newer therapy. *Eur J Surg Suppl* 1998; **582**: 50-55
139 **Hobson AR**, Aziz Q. Brain imaging and functional gastrointestinal disorders: has it helped our understanding? *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1198-1206
140 **Silverman DH**, Munakata JA, Ennes H, Mandelkern MA, Hoh CK, Mayer EA. Regional cerebral activity in normal and pathological perception of visceral pain. *Gastroenterology* 1997; **112**: 64-72
141 **Mertz H**, Morgan V, Tanner G, Pickens D, Price R, Shyr Y, Kessler R. Regional cerebral activation in irritable bowel syndrome and control subjects with painful and nonpainful rectal distention. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118**: 842-848
142 **Verne GN**, Himes NC, Robinson ME, Gopinath KS, Briggs RW, Crosson B, Price DD. Central representation of visceral and cutaneous hypersensitivity in the irritable bowel syn-

drome. *Pain* 2003; **103**: 99-110
143 **Yuan YZ**, Tao RJ, Xu B, Sun J, Chen KM, Miao F, Zhang ZW, Xu JY. Functional brain imaging in irritable bowel syndrome with rectal balloon-distention by using fMRI. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9**: 1356-1360
144 **Chang L**, Berman S, Mayer EA, Suyenobu B, Derbyshire S, Naliboff B, Vogt B, FitzGerald L, Mandelkern MA. Brain responses to visceral and somatic stimuli in patients with irritable bowel syndrome with and without fibromyalgia. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 1354-1361
145 **Naliboff BD**, Derbyshire SW, Munakata J, Berman S, Mandelkern M, Chang L, Mayer EA. Cerebral activation in patients with irritable bowel syndrome and control subjects during rectosigmoid stimulation. *Psychosom Med* 2001; **63**: 365-375
146 **Bonaz B**, Baciu M, Papillon E, Bost R, Gueddah N, Le Bas JF, Fournet J, Segebarth C. Central processing of rectal pain in patients with irritable bowel syndrome: an fMRI study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 654-661
147 **Drossman DA**. Brain imaging and its implications for studying centrally targeted treatments in irritable bowel syndrome: a primer for gastroenterologists. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 569-573
148 **Berman S**, Munakata J, Naliboff BD, Chang L, Mandelkern M, Silverman D, Kovalik E, Mayer EA. Gender differences in regional brain response to visceral pressure in IBS patients. *Eur J Pain* 2000; **4**: 157-172
149 **Naliboff BD**, Berman S, Chang L, Derbyshire SW, Suyenobu B, Vogt BA, Mandelkern M, Mayer EA. Sex-related differences in IBS patients: central processing of visceral stimuli. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 1738-1747
150 **Wilder-Smith CH**, Schindler D, Lovblad K, Redmond SM, Nirkko A. Brain functional magnetic resonance imaging of rectal pain and activation of endogenous inhibitory mechanisms in irritable bowel syndrome patient subgroups and healthy controls. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 1595-1601
151 **Drossman DA**, Ringel Y, Vogt BA, Leserman J, Lin W, Smith JK, Whitehead W. Alterations of brain activity associated with resolution of emotional distress and pain in a case of severe irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124**: 754-761
152 **Morgan V**, Pickens D, Gautam S, Kessler R, Mertz H. Amitriptyline reduces rectal pain related activation of the anterior cingulate cortex in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 601-607
153 **Berman SM**, Naliboff BD, Chang L, Fitzgerald L, Antolin T, Camplone A, Mayer EA. Enhanced preattentive central nervous system reactivity in irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 2791-2797
154 **Nomura T**, Fukudo S, Matsuoka H, Hongo M. Abnormal electroencephalogram in irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1999; **34**: 478-484
155 **Rössel P**, Pedersen P, Niddam D, Arendt-Nielsen L, Chen AC, Drewes AM. Cerebral response to electric stimulation of the colon and abdominal skin in healthy subjects and patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2001; **36**: 1259-1266
156 **Sinhamahapatra P**, Saha SP, Chowdhury A, Chakrabarti SK, Ghosh A, Maiti B. Visceral afferent hypersensitivity in irritable bowel syndrome--evaluation by cerebral evoked potential after rectal stimulation. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 2150-2157
157 **Adeyemi EO**, Desai KD, Towsey M, Ghista D. Characterization of autonomic dysfunction in patients with irritable bowel syndrome by means of heart rate variability studies. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94**: 816-823
158 **Karling P**, Nyhlin H, Wiklund U, Sjöberg M, Olofsson BO, Bjerle P. Spectral analysis of heart rate variability in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1998; **33**: 572-576
159 **Smart HL**, Atkinson M. Abnormal vagal function in irritable bowel syndrome. *Lancet* 1987; **2(8557)**: 475-478
160 **van Orshoven NP**, Andriesse GI, van Schelven LJ, Smout AJ, Akkermans LM, Oey PL. Subtle involvement of the parasympathetic nervous system in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Clin Auton Res* 2006; **16**: 33-39
161 **Gupta V**, Sheffield D, Verne GN. Evidence for autonomic dysregulation in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2002; **47**: 1716-1722
162 **Aggarwal A**, Cutts TF, Abell TL, Cardoso S, Familoni B, Bremer J, Karas J. Predominant symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome correlate with specific autonomic nervous system abnormalities. *Gastroenterology* 1994; **106**: 945-950
163 **Heitkemper M**, Jarrett M, Cain KC, Burr R, Levy RL, Feld A, Hertig V. Autonomic nervous system function in women with irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2001; **46**: 1276-1284
164 **Orr WC**, Elsenbruch S, Harnish MJ. Autonomic regulation of cardiac function during sleep in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95**: 2865-2871
165 **Thompson JJ**, Elsenbruch S, Harnish MJ, Orr WC. Autonomic functioning during REM sleep differentiates IBS symptom subgroups. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 3147-3153
166 **Waring WS**, Chui M, Japp A, Nicol EF, Ford MJ. Autonomic cardiovascular responses are impaired in women with irritable bowel syndrome. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2004; **38**: 658-663
167 **Jarrett ME**, Burr RL, Cain KC, Hertig V, Weisman P, Heitkemper MM. Anxiety and depression are related to autonomic nervous system function in women with irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48**: 386-394
168 **Elsenbruch S**, Orr WC. Diarrhea- and constipation-predominant IBS patients differ in postprandial autonomic and cortisol responses. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96**: 460-466
169 **Tillisch K**, Mayer EA, Labus JS, Stains J, Chang L, Naliboff BD. Sex specific alterations in autonomic function among patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Gut* 2005; **54**: 1396-1401
170 **Taché Y**, Martinez V, Million M, Wang L. Stress and the gastrointestinal tract III. Stress-related alterations of gut motor function: role of brain corticotropin-releasing factor receptors. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **280**: G173-G177
171 Dinan TG. Glucocorticoids and the genesis of depressive illness. A psychobiological model. *Br J Psychiatry* 1994; **164**: 365-371
172 **Böhmelt AH**, Nater UM, Franke S, Hellhammer DH, Ehlert U. Basal and stimulated hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis activity in patients with functional gastrointestinal disorders and healthy controls. *Psychosom Med* 2005; **67**: 288-294
173 **Dinan TG**, Quigley EM, Ahmed SM, Scully P, O'Brien S, O' Mahony L, O'Mahony S, Shanahan F, Keeling PW. Hypothalamic-pituitary-gut axis dysregulation in irritable bowel syndrome: plasma cytokines as a potential biomarker? *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 304-311
174 **Chang L**. Neuroendocrine and neuroimmune markers in IBS: pathophysiological role or epiphenomenon? *Gastroenterology* 2006; **130**: 596-600

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2839-2845
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, *Series Editor*

Evaluation of the biliary tract in patients with functional biliary symptoms

Peter Funch-Jensen, Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, László Madácsy

Peter Funch-Jensen, Surgical Gastroenterological Department L, Aarhus University Hospital, Aarhus, Denmark
Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, Center for Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, Department of Gastroenterology, Aalborg Sygehus and Center of Sensory Motor Interaction (SMI), University of Aalborg, Denmark
László Madácsy, First Department of Internal Medicine and OMCH Endoscopy Unit, Fejér Megyei Szent György Hospital, Székesfehérvár, Hungary
Correspondence to: Peter Funch-Jensen, MD, DMSc, Professor of Surgery, Surgical Gastroenterological Department L, Aarhus Sygehus, Aarhus University Hospital, DK-8000 Aarhus C, Denmark. funchjensen@gmail.com
Telephone: +45-86209065
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

The aim of this paper was to describe functional biliary syndromes and methods for evaluation of the biliary tract in these patients. Functional biliary symptoms can be defined as biliary symptoms without demonstrable organic substrate. Two main syndromes exist: Gallbladder dysfunction and sphincter of Oddi dysfunction. The most important investigative tools are cholescintigraphy and endoscopic sphincter of Oddi manometry. In gallbladder dysfunction a scintigraphic gallbladder ejection fraction below 35% can select patients who will benefit from cholecystectomy. Endoscopic sphincter of Oddi manometry is considered the gold standard in sphincter of Oddi dysfunction but recent development in scintigraphic methods is about to change this. Thus, calculation of hilum-to-duodenum transit time and duodenal appearance time on cholescintigraphy have proven useful in these patients. In conclusion, ambient methods can diagnose functional biliary syndromes. However, there are still a number of issues where further knowledge is needed. Probably the next step forward will be in the area of sensory testing and impedance planimetric methods.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Functional biliary pain; Scintigraphy; Manometry; Pain; Sphincter of Oddi; Gallbladder

Funch-Jensen P, Drewes AM, Madácsy L. Evaluation of the biliary tract in patients with functional biliary symptoms. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2839-2845

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2839.asp

INTRODUCTION

Evaluation of the biliary tract is of importance in physiological, pathophysiological, and clinical settings. Clinical investigations in patients with well-defined, organic diseases such as gallstones, is outside the scope of this review, where focus is directed towards patients with functional biliary symptoms. Investigations aiming at morphological alterations in the biliary tract are thus not discussed in this paper.

The value of different investigative methods is often fluid: Some methods are used to render probable or document a correlation between symptoms and measurable abnormalities. Others are, or later become, real tools in the diagnostic process of patients with functional biliary symptoms. The methods can roughly be subdivided into two subgroups: Motility investigations, and methods for the evaluations of the sensory conditions. Motility comprises direct measurement of the biliary tract as well as intraluminal transport. A further evaluation of wall characteristics, e.g. by means of impedance planimetry, has, so far, only been conducted in animal experiments[1].

The present review will start with a physiologic background section, followed by a description of patients with functional biliary symptoms and evaluation methods in these patients.

PHYSIOLOGIC BACKGROUND

The function of the biliary tract is to store, concentrate, and transport bile from the liver into the duodenum. In order to accomplish this function the extrabiliary tract is composed of a ductal system, a gallbladder, and a sphincter (Sphincter of Oddi) at the termination of the common bile duct. Previously it was believed that there was an additional sphincteric structure at the junction site of the gallbladder and the cystic duct but studies have failed to prove this supposition. Smooth muscles are present in the gallbladder and in the Sphincter of Oddi (SO). Unlike previous belief, no-or only insignificant-

musculature is seen in the ducts. Active contractility is therefore only possible in the gallbladder and the SO. Bile flow into the duodenum occurs after food intake, and late in the interdigestive phase II of the duodenum[2]. The main initiator of biliary secretion-apart from bile production of the liver-is the release of the peptide cholecystokinin (CCK). This peptide relaxes the SO and contracts the gallbladder. The effect of CCK on the SO is brought about by a stimulatory action on inhibitory neurons. This effect overrides a direct stimulatory action of CCK on the SO muscles[3]. In addition to the CCK effect, a reflex relationship exists between the gallbladder and the SO, i.e. pressure increase within the gallbladder leads to relaxation of the SO (Figure 1)[4,5]. This implies that gallbladder contraction, e.g. after food intake, allows bile to run from the gallbladder into the ductal system, and further into the duodenum through the relaxed SO. Conversely, when the gallbladder is empty, the gallbladder pressure is low, and the SO actively contracts, thus allowing bile to divert into the gallbladder. A similar reflex relation is seen between the common bile duct and the SO[6]. This is important in post-cholecystectomy patients.

The gallbladder receives nerve fibres from the sympathetic and the parasympathetic systems. In addition there are a number of neurones containing peptides, e.g. CCK, vasoactive intestinal polypeptide (VIP), nitric oxide (NO), and motilin. The sympathetic nerves arise at the Th8-9 level and are relayed in the celiac plexus, with second order fibres travelling along the vascular system to the gallbladder. The parasympathetic innervation arises from both the anterior and posterior vagal trunks and reaches the gallbladder in a similar way as the sympathetic fibres, with the exception that branches from the anterior vagal nerve do not pass through the celiac plexus. Vagal activity stimulates gallbladder contraction directly, and enhances the contractile effect of CCK on the gallbladder. Sympathetic activity has the opposite effect on gallbladder motility. The sympathetic system also transmits sensory inputs to the central nervous system leading to pain. Pain is enhanced by inflammation. The ductal system and the sphincter of Oddi (SO) are innervated in a similar way as the gallbladder, with the highest neural density in the SO.

FUNCTIONAL BILIARY PAIN

Biliary pain is mainly characterized according to the symptomatic presentation of gallstone attacks. As in many other gastrointestinal disorders this is not simple, as a variation in symptomatic presentations can be seen in some patients[7]. Nevertheless, according to the existing literature, and the experience of experts, functional biliary pain was defined as absence of demonstrable organic substrate, and[8]: Episodes of severe steady pain located in the epigastrium and right upper quadrant. A number of additional criteria are outlined. One of these is that the pain attack should last at least 30 min. This seems substantiated in patients where the symptoms are derived from the gallbladder. However, if symptoms originate in the SO, this criterion will still await validation. Two types of functional biliary pain syndromes have been described: Gallbladder dysfunction and sphincter of Oddi dysfunction (SOD). The symptomatic presentation seems rather similar, but obviously patients with gallbladder dysfunction still have the gallbladder in situ, whereas SOD dysfunction most often-albeit not unequivocally-is seen in post-cholecystectomy patients.

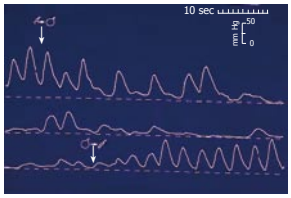


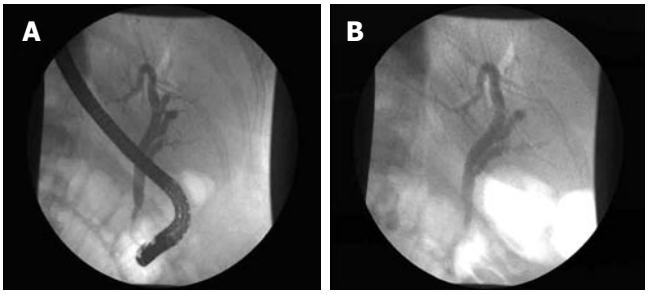
Figure 1 Sphincter of Oddi manometry in a dog during gallbladder distension (upper tracing), and gallbladder emptying (lower tracing). Distension of the gallbladder-mimicking gallbladder contraction -leads to relaxation of the sphincter of Oddi thus permitting free flow of bile into the duodenum. (After reference 5 with permission).

Gallbladder dysfunction

Gallbladder dysfunction denominates a condition where the gallbladder empties insufficiently in a patient with biliary symptoms, without demonstrable organic substrate, such as gallstones. The prevalence of biliary-type pain without gallstones was found to be 2.4%[9]. Other population studies have found prevalences as high as 7.6% in men[10] and 20.3% in women[11]. Per definition patients with gallbladder dysfunction have impaired gallbladder emptying. Later in this paper the methodology is described. The mechanism of pain is rather obscure: Generally it is believed that some kind of functional obstruction at the transition zone between the gallbladder and the cystic duct exists, leading to gallbladder pressure increase. Possibly, a combination with inflammation amplifies sensory firing. Primary hypersensitivity can also not be ruled out and central neuroplastic changes may be responsible for visceral hypersensitivity. Nevertheless, in a randomised controlled investigation[12], it was shown that patients with gallbladder dysfunction would benefit from cholecystectomy. A number of other papers have supported this finding[13,14]. However, there are still a number of critical issues to be addressed[15].

Sphincter of Oddi dysfunction

Sphincter of Oddi dysfunction (SOD) denominates patients with biliary-type pain and dysfunction of the Sphincter of Oddi. The condition is most often seen in post-cholecystectomy patients. The prevalence of symptoms suggesting SO dysfunction is about 1.5% after cholecystectomy, being more frequent in women[16]. SO dysfunction can be subdivided into three groups according to clinical presentation, laboratory results, and ERCP findings[17]: (1) Patients with type I SO dysfunction have biliary-like pain, elevated liver function tests documented on two or more occasions, delayed contrast drainage (more than 45 min, (Figure 2), and a common bile duct diameter equal to or greater than 12 mm at ERCP; (2) Type II patients present with biliary-like pain, and only one or two of the above mentioned criteria; (3) Type III patients only have biliary-like pain, and none of the above mentioned criteria. The mechanism of pain is also rather obscure in this group of patients. From a theoretical point of view SO abnormalities could give rise to pain due to impeded flow, ischemia arising from spastic contractions, and hypersensitivity of the papilla or the common bile duct.



During ERCP (time 0) 45 min after ERCP

Figure 2 Endoscopic cholangiogram during investigation, and 45 min after contrast injection in a patient with complete contrast retention.

These mechanisms may solely or in combination explain the genesis of pain[18]. In a prospective randomised study it was shown that pain could be alleviated by endoscopic sphincterotomy[17].

EVALUATION METHODS

Quantitative hepatobiliary scintigraphy

Quantitative hepatobiliary scintigraphy (QHBS) is a non-invasive scintigraphic method where it is possible not only to assess the patency of the biliary system but also to measure the rate of bile flow (Figure 3). 99mTc-N-2,6-dimethylphenylcarbamoylmethyliminodiacetic acid (99mTc-EHIDA) and numerous of its analogues, such as 2, 6-diisopropyliminodiacetic acid (DISIDA) and 2, 4, 6-trimethyl-3-bromoiminodiacetic acid (mebrofenin) are the tracers most widely used for hepatobiliary imaging. After (iv) injection, these 99mTc agents bind loosely to serum proteins and are then rapidly taken up by the hepatocytes and excreted into the bile. This uptake mechanism is similar to that of bilirubin, and hyperbilirubinaemia therefore has an inhibitory effect. After excretion by the hepatocytes, the bile continues to flow into the bile canaliculi, the bile ducts and the gallbladder, and then empties into the duodenum through the SO.

Patients should be fasted for a minimum of 4 h prior to the investigation. The gamma-camera is positioned over the right upper abdomen of the supine patient. After an iv bolus injection of 140-180 MBq 99mTc-IDA derivative, gamma-camera images are acquired on a computer (1 frame/min) for 90-120 min. If needed, analogue images can also be obtained every 10 min for the first hour, with delayed images if required (first image 500 000 counts, and then subsequent images for the same length of time). The analogue pictures should be examined for liver radiotracer uptake, size, shape and homogeneity. Under normal circumstances the liver uptake of 99mTc-IDA compounds is rapid, with little if any tracer in the blood pool by 5 min. In most normal fasting subjects, radioactivity appears in the gallbladder (GB) and in the small bowel by 1 h after its administration. The extent of visualisation of the hepatic ducts is variable but the left duct tends to be more prominent than the right. In patients without extrahepatic

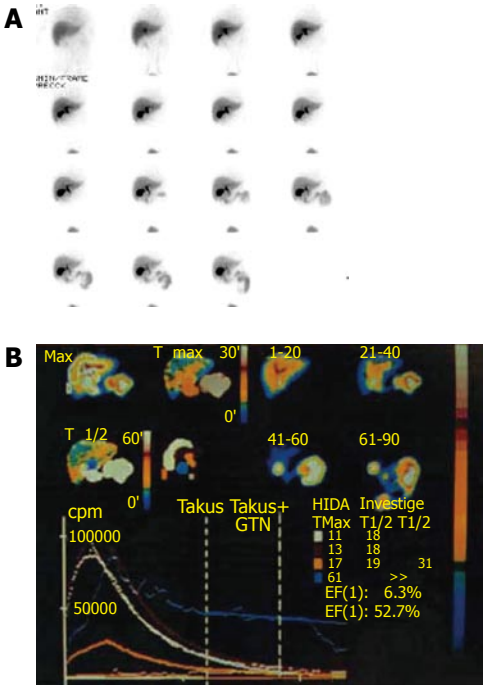


Figure 3 Hepatobiliary scintigraphy. **A:** Pictures at different time windows; **B:** Time activity curves are shown for different regions of interest.

bile duct obstruction, the level of radioactivity of the common bile duct (CBD) reaches its maximum before 45 min. Excretion of radioactivity into the duodenum occurs by 60 min in 81% of patients with the GB *in situ*. In the remaining 19% of patients without bowel activity at 60 min, duodenal visualisation is always present after exogenous CCK administration[19].

Gallbladder phase imaging

The GB contraction after consumption of a meal or administration of an exogenous CCK analogue (CCK octapeptide or caerulein) can also be measured by means of QHBS. These data can be acquired in a separate study between 60 and 90 min after the initial isotope administration. QHBS combined with administration of a meal or an exogenous CCK analogue is a validated and accurate method for the measurement of GB motility, with satisfactory reproducibility of both parametric variables and emptying patterns. The method of measuring GB is to place a region of interest (ROI) over the GB with a ROI over the liver background (adjacent to the GB), then to generate a time-activity curve for the GB and to calculate the GB ejection fraction (EF) via the following formula: EF% = (GBmax-GBmin)/GBmax × 100. The degree of GB emptying is CCK dose-dependent, and therefore the mode of administration has a critical effect on the net GB contraction. The GB EF increases as the dose of CCK is increased from 0.5 to 3.3 ng/kg per minute. Then begins to decrease when larger doses are infused, especially when CCK is given as a rapid iv bolus. A large non-physiological dose produces a low EF in association with abdominal pain, even in normal subjects. It has become clear that the GB EFs obtained depend on the procedure used but a

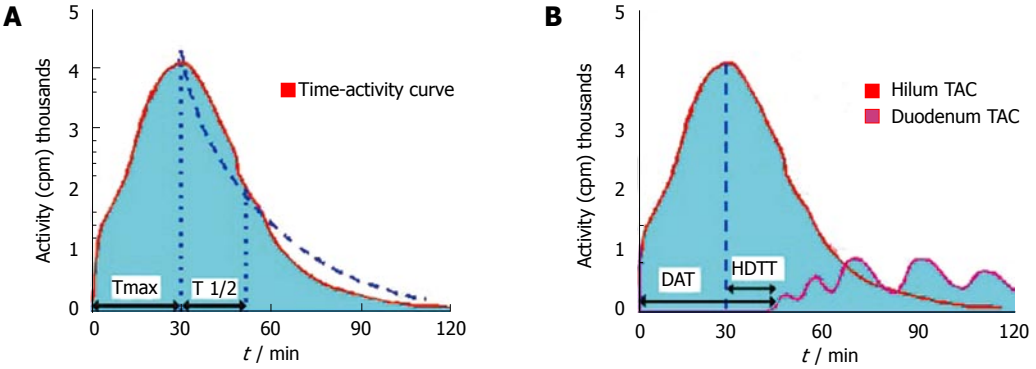


Figure 4 Hepatobiliary scintigraphic activity curves of regions of interest in sphincter of Oddi dysfunction.

GB EF over 35%[12,20,21] can be regarded as indicative of a normal GB function if it is evoked by a total infusion dose of 10 ng/kg CCK, administered during 3-10 min.

Scintigraphic features of gallbladder dysfunction

In clinical practice, the distinctive feature of a GB dysfunction is impaired GB emptying. A GB EF under 35% is a sensitive test for the identification of patients with chronic cholecystitis or GB dysfunction[12,20,21]. However, there is a considerable overlap in EF values[15]. Many of the patients experience a reproduction of biliary pain during CCK infusion. Administration of nitro-glycerine before CCK infusion can abolish biliary pain and normalise the GBEF in a subset of patients with gallbladder dysfunction.

Scintigraphic features of sphincter of Oddi dysfunction

The scintigraphic signs in SOD depend upon the presence or absence of a GB in situ, albeit the latter is rare. In patients with SOD and GB in situ, an intact GB serves as a low-pressure reservoir by compensating the increased bile flow that is diverted into it by the tight and hypertonic SO. Therefore, the CBD does not dilate and the rate of emptying of the isotope from the CBD is usually in the normal range. After CCK administration to patients with a functional SOD, the SO relaxes (except in SOD patients with a paradoxical response to CCK, which is a relatively rare phenomenon) and, if the GB function is intact, the GB EF remains normal. In cholecystectomized subjects with a normal liver function, the flow of the bile from the liver to the duodenum is mainly regulated by the motor activity of the SO. HIDA compounds, which are taken up and secreted by the liver into the bile, can therefore be used as markers to measure the rate of bile flow and indirectly to assess the patency of the SO. In asymptomatic cholecystectomized patients with a normal SO function, HIDA excretion and transit from the liver into the duodenum is rapid, and the time-activity curves are exponential, exhibiting only minor patient-to-patient variations[19]. In cholecystectomized patients with SOD however, cholescintigraphy reveals a prominent bile stasis within the intra- and extrahepatic bile ducts, and a marked delay in the transpapillary isotope transit[22-24]. Retention of a 99mTc-IDA tracer after 120 min in the visually prominent bile ducts on static images of the planar HBS was noted to be a good predictor of an abnormal biliary drainage. Quantitative cholescintigraphic parameters may afford valuable numerical information on the bile flow impairment in the presence of a SOD, thereby increasing the sensitivity (Figure 4). Unfortunately, it is not clear, which scintigraphic variable is optimal to express SOD. We recently compared the sensitivities of these parameters in cholecystectomized patients with SOD diagnosed by manometry, which showed that HDTT was the best predictor of SOD, followed by DAT, and then the $T_{1/2}$ parameters of the hepatic hilum and CBD Madacsy). The quantitative parameters of the CBD seem to be relatively insensitive, which is probably due to the disturbing influence of other factors, such as the CBD diameter and the duodenal motility phase during the study. In fact, we found that the SO basal pressure relative to the CBD pressure exhibited the best correlation with the QHBS parameters. CCK administration increases the hepatic bile secretion and relaxes the SO; it therefore washes out the bile stasis from the ducts if there is no anatomic obstruction. A differentiation between a fixed anatomic obstruction (organic SO stenosis, bile duct stricture or stones, *etc.*) and a functional obstruction (SO spasm) can also be made by amyl nitrate or nitro-glycerine administration during QHBS. In order to measure SO relaxation after the administration of a smooth muscle relaxant in patients with SOD, after the baseline evaluation of the QHBS parameters, at 60 min amyl nitrate was administered and the $T_{1/2}$ parameter of the CBD was recalculated. A reversible biliary obstruction on the QHBS (an obstructive pattern relieved after amyl nitrate) indicates a functional SOD, i.e. an SO spasm, whereas a persistent accumulation of the isotope in the biliary tree (during the baseline condition and after amyl nitrate) suggests a fixed organic obstruction[25]. A differentiation between stenosis and dyskinesia of the SO may be important from a clinical point of view, and it might modify the therapeutic strategy, since endoscopic sphincterotomy is of great benefit in patients with a persistently elevated basal SO pressure and SO stenosis. To summarise, QHBS may be regarded as a useful method for study of the bile flow dynamics in patients with postcholecystectomy syndrome and suspected SOD. QHBS may be applied not only as a simple and non-invasive screening test before SO manometry but also as a reliable diagnostic method during the evaluation and follow-up of patients with suspected SOD.

Ultrasonography

US has become a widely used method for visualisation

of the abdominal organs. As it is a non-invasive method without radiation exposure, it has also become a popular method for the investigation of motility disorders of the GB and the SO. US methods are relatively cheap and widely available and they also afford excellent reproducibility and sensitivity. However, their diagnostic accuracy is appreciably investigator-dependent and also influenced by the different forms of methodology.

Ultrasonographic measurement of GB contraction

The GB contraction induced by exogenous CCK or CCK analogue (caerulein) administration can be measured by means of either US or QHBS, but methods involving QHBS are currently regarded as the gold standard. QHBS offers the advantage over US of allowing simultaneous visualisation of the bile ducts, together with non-geometrical measurement of the GB contraction. However, the lack of radiation exposure is a favourable feature of the US methods, because it can be repeated several times in the same patient, which is extremely important in motility studies if normal physiology is investigated. US is also able to determine the approximate volume of the GB, which may be of some importance in the pathophysiology of GB motility. Different formulae are known for calculation of the GB volume. The most widely used is the sum of cylinders method, or Dodd's formula. With this method, the GB volume (GBV) can be calculated if one multiplies the three axes together and then by Pi/6[26]. The GB EF is calculated from the fasting and post-stimulation GBVs via the well-known formula: GBEF (%) = GBVmax - GBVmin/GBVmax. The refilling of the GB is another characteristic feature of GB motility, which can be calculated as a percentage of the ratio between the GBV in the most contracted state and at the maximum after refilling. The two main types of stimuli, which can be used to evoke GB contraction, are food intake and administration of CCK or a CCK analogue.

Ultrasonographic bile duct imaging

Bile duct imaging with US is more difficult than visualisation of the GB. Most investigators use the right anterior oblique view to visualise the common hepatic duct within the porta hepatis, where the surrounding liver parenchyma gives a good acoustic window. Visualisation of the pancreatic duct in the body of the pancreas may be problematic in a number of patients, because the presence of gas in the stomach and in the intestines above it means that an acoustic window is not available. Moreover, exact determination of the pancreatic duct diameter necessitates its measurement in two different part of the pancreas. The upper limit of normal diameter of the common hepatic duct (also termed hepatocholedochus, because it is not possible to differentiate between common hepatic duct and CBD by US) is less than 8-10 mm, and of the pancreatic duct is less than 2-3 mm.

Ultrasonographic assessment of sphincter of Oddi dysfunction

Ultrasonography has been reported as a method for diagnosing SO dysfunction. The authors measured the bile duct diameter before and after CCK infusion or ingestion of a fatty meal[27,28]. However, these methods have not gained acceptance, probably because of low reproducibility.

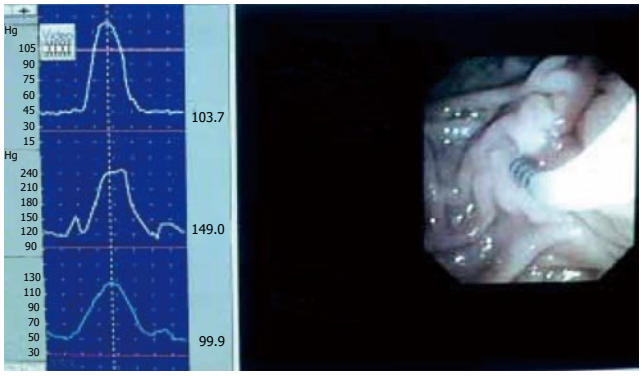


Figure 5 Combined video- and manometric recording in the sphincter of Oddi during endoscopy.

Sphincter of Oddi manometry

SO manometry can be done during endoscopic retrograde cholangio-pancreatographic (ERCP) investigation. A triple lumen catheter with sideholes spaced 2 mm apart is introduced into the common bile duct, and then withdrawn until positioned in the SO segment. The catheter is slowly perfused from a hydraulic capillary infusion pump, and external transducers are connected with a computer for direct reading of the manometric tracing. Additionally the readings are stored for later analysis[29,30]. The SO is a high-pressure zone with an elevated baseline and superimposed phasic contractions. The readings may suffer from periodic superimposed artefact patterns. Usually these are easily recognised, but simultaneous endoscopic videorecording may be helpful in separating SO activity from artefact phenomenon (Figure 5)[31]. The parameters measured are baseline pressure and phasic wave amplitude, duration, frequency, and propagation mode. Baseline pressure is measured with the duodenal pressure as zero reference. The amplitude is measured with baseline pressure as zero reference. When evaluating the propagation modality, proximal and distal readings are compared.

Normal SO manometry

In healthy subjects the baseline pressure is around 5-15 mmHg, phasic wave amplitude 100-140 mmHg, wave duration 4-6 s, and frequency 3-6 waves per minute. Most contractions are coordinated, and the direction of contractions is mostly antegrade, with only 5%-20% being retrograde[32]. After cholecystectomy no significant alterations are seen in patients who no longer have symptoms[33,34].

Abnormal SO manometry

SO manometric abnormalities comprise elevated baseline pressure, increased phasic wave amplitude, frequency, and disordered propagation mode (Figure 6, Figure 7). It has been suggested to define SO abnormality as a baseline

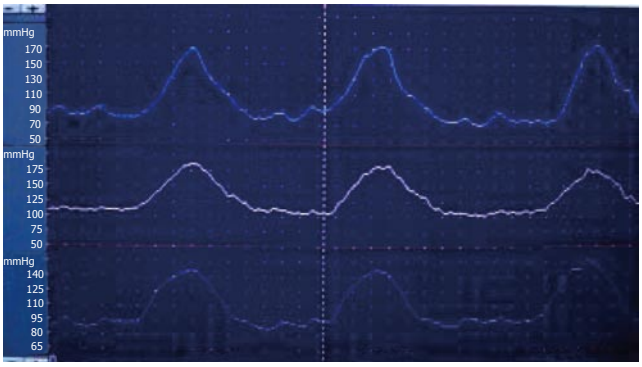


Figure 6 Endoscopic sphincter of Oddi manometry in a patient with elevated baseline pressure.

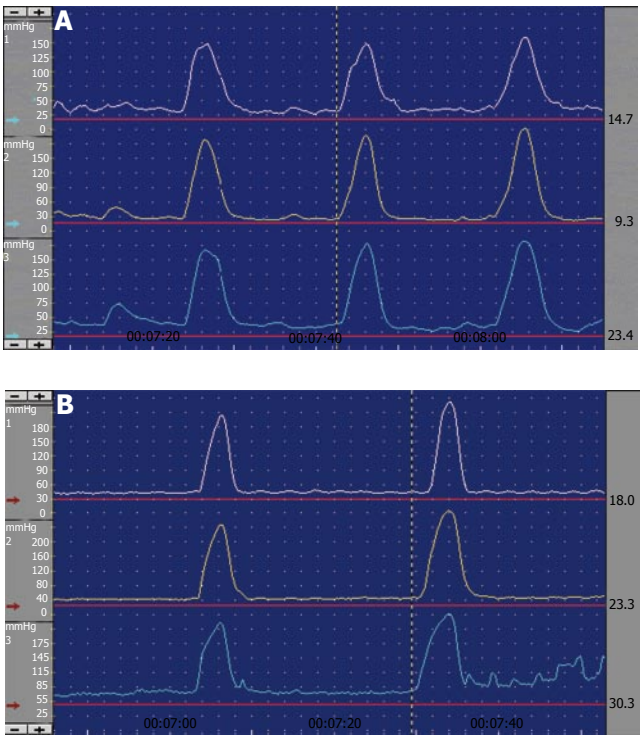


Figure 7 Endoscopic sphincter of Oddi manometry. **A**: Normal antegrade contractions; **B**: Abnormal retrograde waves.

pressure of more than 40 mmHg, phasic amplitude above 350 mmHg, frequency of more than 7 waves per minute; and a pattern of more than 50% retrograde waves[8]. The clinical importance of these abnormalities is not clear, except for elevated baseline pressure, where it was shown in a randomised study that patients with this abnormality improved clinically after endoscopic sphincterotomy[17].

Pain studies

The fact that there are still "holes" in our understanding of patients with functional biliary pain has led investigators to focus on sensory mechanisms. Clinically, it has been observed that some patients develop pain upon manipulation with the papilla (tender papilla), or during intraductal contrast injection. A further step forward was taken with the demonstration of duodenal-specific visceral hyperalgesia in post-cholecystectomy patients with persistent abdominal pain[35]. Stawowy *et al*[36-38] has investigated the referred pain area in patients with uncomplicated gallstones and acute cholecystitis before and after cholecystectomy. Although hypersensitivity was found in both groups of patients, the hypothesized prolonged neuroplastic changes, as a possible explanation of post-cholecystectomy syndrome could not be proven. However, in the future it will be of importance to conduct studies in patients with post-cholecystectomy syndrome and also in patients with suspected gallbladder dysfunction.

REFERENCES

1 **Duch BU**, Andersen H, Gregersen H. Mechanical properties of the porcine bile duct wall. *Biomed Eng Online* 2004; **3:** 23
2 **Peeters TL**, Vantrappen G, Janssens J. Bile acid output and the interdigestive migrating motor complex in normals and in cholecystectomy patients. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **79:** 678-681
3 **Behar J**, Biancani P. Effect of cholecystokinin and the octapeptide of cholecystokinin on the feline sphincter of Oddi and gallbladder. Mechanisms of action. *J Clin Invest* 1980; **66:** 1231-1239
4 **Thune A**, Thornell E, Svanvik J. Reflex regulation of flow resistance in the feline sphincter of Oddi by hydrostatic pressure in the biliary tract. *Gastroenterology* 1986; **91:** 1364-1369
5 **Funch-Jensen P**, Sørensen SS. Influence of graded distension of the gallbladder on sphincter of Oddi activity in dogs. *Dig Dis* 1991; **9:** 408-413
6 **Rolny P**, Funch-Jensen P, Kruse A, Thommesen P. Effect of cholecystectomy on the relationship between hydrostatic common bile duct pressure and sphincter of Oddi motility. *Endoscopy* 1991; **23**: 111-113
7 **Berhane T**, Vetrhus M, Hausken T, Olafsson S, Søndenaa K. Pain attacks in non-complicated and complicated gallstone disease have a characteristic pattern and are accompanied by dyspepsia in most patients: the results of a prospective study. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2006; **41:** 93-101
8 **Corazziari E**, Shaffer EA, Hogan WJ, Sherman S, Toouli J. Functional disorders of the biliary tract and pancreas. *Gut* 1999; **45 Suppl 2:** II48-II54
9 **Barbara L**, Sama C, Morselli Labate AM, Taroni F, Rusticali AG, Festi D, Sapio C, Roda E, Banterle C, Puci A. A population study on the prevalence of gallstone disease: the Sirmione Study. *Hepatology* 1987; **7:** 913-917
10 The epidemiology of gallstone disease in Rome, Italy. Part I. Prevalence data in men. The Rome Group for Epidemiology and Prevention of Cholelithiasis (GREPCO). *Hepatology* 1988; **8:** 904-906
11 Prevalence of gallstone disease in an Italian adult female population. Rome Group for the Epidemiology and Prevention of Cholelithiasis (GREPCO). *Am J Epidemiol* 1984; **119:** 796-805
12 **Yap L**, Wycherley AG, Morphett AD, Toouli J. Acalculous biliary pain: cholecystectomy alleviates symptoms in patients with abnormal cholescintigraphy. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **101:** 786-793
13 **Westlake PJ**, Hershfield NB, Kelly JK, Kloiber R, Lui R, Sutherland LR, Shaffer EA. Chronic right upper quadrant pain without gallstones: does HIDA scan predict outcome after cholecystectomy? *Am J Gastroenterol* 1990; **85:** 986-990
14 **Chen PF**, Nimeri A, Pham QH, Yuh JN, Gusz JR, Chung RS. The clinical diagnosis of chronic acalculous cholecystitis. *Surgery* 2001; **130:** 578-81; discussion 581-583
15 **Rastogi A**, Slivka A, Moser AJ, Wald A. Controversies concerning pathophysiology and management of acalculous biliary-type abdominal pain. *Dig Dis Sci* 2005; **50:** 1391-1401
16 **Drossman DA**, Li Z, Andruzzi E, Temple RD, Talley NJ, Thompson WG, Whitehead WE, Janssens J, Funch-Jensen P, Corazziari E. U.S. householder survey of functional gastroin-

testinal disorders. Prevalence, sociodemography, and health impact. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38:** 1569-1580

17 **Geenen JE**, Hogan WJ, Dodds WJ, Toouli J, Venu RP. The efficacy of endoscopic sphincterotomy after cholecystectomy in patients with sphincter-of-Oddi dysfunction. *N Engl J Med* 1989; **320:** 82-87

18 **Funch-Jensen P**. Defining sphincter of oddi dysfunction. *Gastrointest Endosc Clin N Am* 1996; **6:** 107-115

19 **Madácsy L**, Toftdahl DB, Middelfart HV, Hojgaard L, Funch-Jensen P. Comparison of the dynamics of bile emptying by quantitative hepatobiliary scintigraphy before and after cholecystectomy in patients with uncomplicated gallstone disease. *Clin Nucl Med* 1999; **24:** 649-654

20 **Adams DB**, Tarnasky PR, Hawes RH, Cunningham JT, Brooker C, Brothers TE, Cotton PB. Outcome after laparoscopic cholecystectomy for chronic acalculous cholecystitis. *Am Surg* 1998; **64:** 1-5; discussion 5-6

21 **Szepes A**, Bertalan V, Várkonyi T, Pávics L, Lonovics J, Madácsy L. Diagnosis of gallbladder dyskinesia by quantitative hepatobiliary scintigraphy. *Clin Nucl Med* 2005; **30:** 302-307

22 **Corazziari E**, Cicala M, Habib FI, Scopinaro F, Fiocca F, Pallotta N, Viscardi A, Vignoni A, Torsoli A. Hepatoduodenal bile transit in cholecystectomized subjects. Relationship with sphincter of Oddi function and diagnostic value. *Dig Dis Sci* 1994; **39:** 1985-1993

23 **Shaffer EA**, Hershfield NB, Logan K, Kloiber R. Cholescintigraphic detection of functional obstruction of the sphincter of Oddi. Effect of papillotomy. *Gastroenterology* 1986; **90:** 728-733

24 **Madácsy L**, Middelfart HV, Matzen P, Hojgaard L, Funch-Jensen P. Quantitative hepatobiliary scintigraphy and endoscopic sphincter of Oddi manometry in patients with suspected sphincter of Oddi dysfunction: assessment of flow-pressure relationship in the biliary tract. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2000; **12:** 777-786

25 **Bertalan V**, Madácsy L, Pávics L, Lonovics J. Scintigraphic sign of functional biliary obstruction is pathognomic for sphincter of Oddi dysfunction. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2004; **51:** 76-81

26 **Dodds WJ**, Groh WJ, Darweesh RM, Lawson TL, Kishk SM, Kern MK. Sonographic measurement of gallbladder volume. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1985; **145:** 1009-1011

27 **Darweesh RM**, Dodds WJ, Hogan WJ, Geenen JE, Collier BD, Shaker R, Kishk SM, Stewart ET, Lawson TL, Hassanein EH. Efficacy of quantitative hepatobiliary scintigraphy and fatty-meal sonography for evaluating patients with suspected partial common duct obstruction. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94:** 779-786

28 **Simeone JF**, Mueller PR, Ferrucci JT Jr, vanSonnenberg E, Hall DA, Wittenberg J, Neff CC, O'Connell RC. Sonography of the bile ducts after a fatty meal: an aid in detection of obstruction. *Radiology* 1982; **143:** 211-215

29 **Csendes A**, Kruse A, Funch-Jensen P, Oster MJ, Ornsholt J, Amdrup E. Pressure measurements in the biliary and pancreatic duct systems in controls and in patients with gallstones, previous cholecystectomy, or common bile duct stones. *Gastroenterology* 1979; **77:** 1203-1210

30 **Geenen JE**, Hogan WJ, Dodds WJ, Stewart ET, Arndorfer RC. Intraluminal pressure recording from the human sphincter of Oddi. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **78:** 317-324

31 **Madácsy L**, Middelfart HV, Matzen P, Funch-Jensen P. Video manometry of the sphincter of Oddi: a new aid for interpreting manometric tracings and excluding manometric artefacts. *Endoscopy* 2000; **32:** 20-26

32 **Funch-Jensen P**, Kruse A, Ravnsbaek J. Endoscopic sphincter of Oddi manometry in healthy volunteers. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1987; **22:** 243-249

33 **Luman W**, Williams AJ, Pryde A, Smith GD, Nixon SJ, Heading RC, Palmer KR. Influence of cholecystectomy on sphincter of Oddi motility. *Gut* 1997; **41:** 371-374

34 **Middelfart HV**, Matzen P, Funch-Jensen P. Sphincter of Oddi manometry before and after laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Endoscopy* 1999; **31:** 146-151

35 **Desautels SG**, Slivka A, Hutson WR, Chun A, Mitrani C, DiLorenzo C, Wald A. Postcholecystectomy pain syndrome: pathophysiology of abdominal pain in sphincter of Oddi type III. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116:** 900-905

36 **Stawowy M**, Bluhme C, Arendt-Nielsen L, Drewes AM, Funch-Jensen P. Somatosensory changes in the referred pain area in patients with acute cholecystitis before and after treatment with laparoscopic or open cholecystectomy. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2004; **39:** 988-993

37 **Stawowy M**, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Drewes AM. Somatosensory changes in the referred pain area in patients with cholecystolithiasis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **17:** 865-870

38 **Stawowy M**, Drewes AM, Arendt-Nielsen L, Funch-Jensen P. Somatosensory changes in the referred pain area before and after cholecystectomy in patients with uncomplicated gallstone disease. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2006; **41(7)**: 833-837

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Bai SH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2846-2857
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, Asbjorn Mohr Drewes, MD, *Series Editor*

Upper gastrointestinal sensory-motor dysfunction in diabetes mellitus

Jing-Bo Zhao, Jens Brøndum Frøkjær, Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, Niels Ejskjaer

Jing-Bo Zhao, Jens Brøndum Frøkjær, Asbjørn Mohr Drewes, Center of Excellence in Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, Aalborg Hospital, Søndre Skovvej 15, DK-9000 Aalborg, Denmark & Center for Sensory-Motor Interactions, Department of Health Science, Aalborg University, Fredrik Bajers Vej 7 D-3, DK-9220 Aalborg, Denmark
Niels Ejskjaer, Department of Medicine M (Diabetes & Endocrinology), Aarhus University Hospital, Norrebrogade 44, DK 8000 Aarhus C, Denmark
Supported by the Danish Diabetes Association, the Research Council of North Jutland County, the Toyota Foundation and the SparNord Foundation
Correspondence to: Jingbo Zhao, Center of Excellence in Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, the Research Building room 404, Aalborg Hospital, Sdr. Skovvej 15, DK-9000 Aalborg, Denmark. aas.jzhao@nja.dk
Telephone: +45-99326907 Fax: +45-99326801
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

Gastrointestinal (GI) sensory-motor abnormalities are common in patients with diabetes mellitus and may involve any part of the GI tract. Abnormalities are frequently sub-clinical, and fortunately only rarely do severe and life-threatening problems occur. The pathogenesis of abnormal upper GI sensory-motor function in diabetes is incompletely understood and is most likely multi-factorial of origin. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy as well as acute suboptimal control of diabetes has been shown to impair GI motor and sensory function. Morphological and biomechanical remodeling of the GI wall develops during the duration of diabetes, and may contribute to motor and sensory dysfunction. In this review sensory and motility disorders of the upper GI tract in diabetes is discussed; and the morphological changes and biomechanical remodeling related to the sensory-motor dysfunction is also addressed.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Diabetes; Esophagus; Stomach; Intestine; Motility; Pain; Diabetic neuropathy; Hyperglycemia; Remodeling

Zhao J, Frøkjær JB, Drewes AM, Ejskjaer N. Upper gastrointestinal sensory-motor dysfunction in diabetes mellitus. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2846-2857

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2846.asp

INTRODUCTION

Diabetes mellitus (DM) is a chronic disease requiring lifelong medical attention in order to limit the development of potentially devastating late complications and to manage them if they occur. In the USA, the per capita cost of healthcare in 2002 was $13 243 for patients with diabetes and $2560 for patients without diabetes[1]. Gastrointestinal (GI) disorders are common in diabetic patients[2,3]. As many as 75% of patients attending DM clinics report significant GI symptoms[2]. The entire GI tract from the esophagus to the anorectal region may be affected. Common complaints include dysphasia, early satiety, reflux, constipation, abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting and diarrhea. The symptoms may be severe and substantially decrease quality of life. The pathogenesis of the GI abnormalities is complex of nature, multi-factorial (motor dysfunction, autonomic neuropathy, glycemic control, psychological factors, *etc*.) and is not well understood[4]. A number of abnormal conditions have been described in different segments of the GI tract in patients with diabetic autonomic neuropathy (DAN): esophagus (dysmotility), stomach (dysmotility, delayed emptying) and small and large bowel (dysmotility, delayed transit, bacterial overgrowth and diarrhea)[4]. Only a few studies have addressed the visceral sensory function in DM[5-7] and have demonstrated abnormalities in perception thresholds, vagal tonus and evoked brain potentials in patients with DAN. This indicates that DM related neuronal changes may be located both in the peripheral and in the central nervous system (CNS). As mentioned the entire GI tract may be involved in DM, but our review describes the upper GI tract only.

Many studies have demonstrated prominent morphological changes of the small intestine and esophagus in DM[8-11]. Lately, several studies have described biomechanical remodeling as well as morphological remodeling in experimental diabetic rats[12-18]. Recently, Frøkjær *et al*[19] have shown that both the neuronal function of the contractile system as well as the structural apparatus of the GI tract may be affected in patients with longstanding DM and DAN. Therefore we suggest that

along with DAN and glycemic control, the structural and biomechanical changes may play important roles in the symptomatology of GI abnormalities in long-standing DM. The future management of diabetic patients with GI symptoms may develop accordingly.

SYMPTOMS FROM THE UPPER GI TRACT IN DIABETES MELLITUS

Motor and sensory abnormalities in DM may affect the entire GI tract or part hereof, and the perceived symptoms may originate from one or several parts of the gut, such as the esophagus, stomach and small intestine[20,21]. The prevalence of upper GI symptoms is high in both insulin dependent DM (IDDM) and non-insulin dependent DM (NIDDM)[22-28]. The symptoms relating to the esophagus, stomach and small intestine are as follows: (1) Esophagus: Heartburn, dysphagia and chest pain[37]; (2) Stomach: weight loss and abdominal pain[38]; (3) Small intestine: Diarrhea, discomfort, pain and pseudo-obstruction. Most symptoms are non-specific of nature and may relate to other GI disorders not necessarily related to DM. Therefore, when dealing with GI symptoms, some specific issues need to be addressed. Chest pain may relate to reflux or esophageal motor disorders, but ischemic heart disease and other causes of non-cardiac chest pain are also possible causes and must be excluded. Dysphagia, the most characteristic symptom of impaired esophageal transit, may be caused by motility disorders of the esophagus. It is very important, however, to emphasize that dysphagia is more often caused by mechanical obstruction such as tumors and peptic stenosis than by motility disorders. A number of other incidental conditions must be excluded when diabetic gastroparesis is suspected: gastric outlet obstruction caused by tumors and ulcer disease; metabolic abnormalities such as diabetic ketoacidosis or uremia and side effects of pharmacotherapy. A gastroscopy and biochemical screening followed by physical examination are obligatory requisites to reach the correct diagnosis. The symptoms of diabetic gastroparesis tend to increase in intensity and frequency over the duration of diabetes in patients affected. Most often symptoms are vague and nonspecific such as early satiety, slight abdominal discomfort and perhaps bloating, and fortunately more rarely do nausea and vomiting develop. When nausea and vomiting becomes continuous hospitalization is needed to control glucose homeostasis, electrolytes and fluid substitution is needed. This is a potential life threatening situation. In the long run diabetic gastroparesis may be accompanied by poor diabetic control, weight loss and diminished quality of life partly due to frequent hospital contacts. The symptoms may last for days to months, and do often occur in cycles with symptom free intervals[29,30]. Diabetic patients frequently report abdominal pain and this may be the only symptom of diabetic gastroparesis; however, abdominal pain can also be seen in diabetic ketoacidosis and severe metabolic acidosis[31]. These conditions are followed by other symptoms as well and therefore distinguishable from gastroparesis. Diabetic patients with thoracic polyradiculopathy, a rare condition, may also suffer from abdominal pain[32]. Diarrhea in DM patients may be induced by a number of factors. These may include food composition, abnormal intestinal motility, small intestinal bacterial overgrowth, excessive loss of bile acids, pancreatic insufficiency and more[33]. Abnormal small intestinal motility (rapid or delayed transit) is a frequent condition in the diabetic patients as described below. Rapid transit may induce an increase in intra-luminal contents that reach the caecum, whereas delayed transit may cause bacterial overgrowth, both potentially resulting in diabetic diarrhea. Bacterial overgrowth has been reported in up to 40% of diabetic patients with diarrhea[34,35]. Celiac disease is overrepresented in IDDM and a cause of severe diarrhea to be excluded when dealing with diabetic diarrhea[36]. In its most fulminate form, diabetic diarrhea is a devastating and horrible condition for the person affected, sometimes resulting in catastrophical nightly soiling in bed and an uncontrollable condition during daytime. Most often, fortunately, this condition is self limiting and symptoms are more manageable.

SENSORY DYSFUNCTION

Although both the afferent and efferent nerves are affected in DM, the data related to the sensory dysfunction of the GI tract are sparse compared with those relating to the motor dysfunction of the upper GI tract. Elevation of perception thresholds to esophageal electrical stimulation has been observed in patients with DAN and different severity of GI symptoms[7]. Increased vagal tonus and abnormal evoked brain potentials to mechanical and electrical stimulation of the esophagus has also been shown[5,6]. Rayner *et al* performed isovolumetric and isobaric distensions of the proximal stomach in ten randomly selected patients with IDDM[39]. They demonstrated that the perception of gastric distension during euglycemia was increased compared with healthy controls. To study mechanisms behind postprandial symptoms in patients with diabetes, the gastric accommodation of the meal was assessed by abdominal ultrasound[40]. In DM patients, a large proximal stomach was associated with perception of fullness and a large antrum was associated with perception of pain after a meal. More recently, Frøkjær *et al*[41] used a multimodal stimulation device (Figure 1) to investigate the visceral sensitivity to mechanical, thermal and electrical stimulation in the esophagus and duodenum in IDDM patients with DAN and GI symptoms. This study demonstrated that the patients had decreased sensitivity to the stimulations of the esophagus and duodenum. This indicates that the affection of the sensory nerves is widespread in the GI tract. As the multimodal approach is thought to stimulate the mucosa, submucosa and muscle layers differentially, the disease seems to be generalized to nerves in all layers of the gut.

MOTILITY DISORDERS

Long ago, it was known that abnormal motility of the GI tract occurred during the development of DM[42]. So far many studies have demonstrated that DM patients have slow transit and abnormal motility. The most frequent

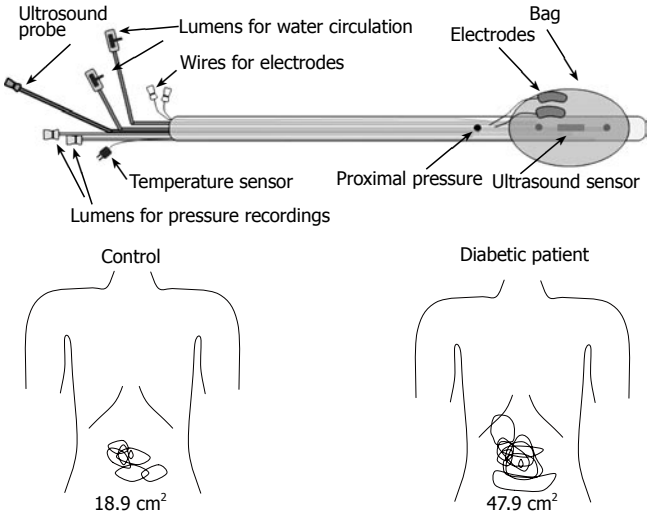


Figure 1 Top: The probe design allowing mechanical, heat and electrical stimulation of both the oesophagus and duodenum. The centre of the bag contains the sensor of the ultrasound probe imaging the oesophagus and duodenum during mechanical distension. The thermal stimuli were given by a pump system, which re-circulates water at 60 ℃ through two channels in the probe. The electrodes allowed electrical stimulation delivered directly to the mucosal surface. Bottom: The somatic referred pain areas to mechanical distension of the duodenum for the controls (left) and diabetic patients (right). The areas were larger for the diabetic patients.

Table 1 Motility disorders of upper GI tract in DM

Organ	Motility disorder
Esophagus	Amplitude[88,89] and number[46,90] of peristaltic contractions↑
	Number of spontaneous and non-propagated contractions↑[45]
	Amplitude of lower esophageal sphincter pressure↓[88]
	Multi-peaked contractions[78,79]
Stomach	Antral IMMC↓[87]
	Post-prandial antral activity and the number of antral contractions↓[91]
	Pyloric dysmotility[92]
Small intestine	Frequency and amplitude of the antropyloroduodenal contractions↑↓[93]
	Duration of MMC cycle↑[85]
	Early recurrence of the MMC and clusters of contractile activity[94]

motility disorders of upper GI tract are shown in Table 1.

Upper GI transit disorders in DM

Esophagus: Impaired esophageal transit has been reported both in IDDM and NIDDM patients[43-47]. The esophageal transit appears to be delayed in about 50% of patients with long-standing DM[48]. The retarded esophageal transit in the DM usually reflects either peristaltic failure or focal low-amplitude pressure waves[49].

Stomach: Several animal studies reported a slowing gastric emptying in IDDM and NIDDM rats[50-55], whereas other studies on IDDM and NIDDM animals demonstrated that gastric emptying increased[56-59]. Using radionuclide measuring techniques it has been demonstrated that gastric empting of solid, or liquid meals was abnormally slow in 30%-50% of patients with long-standing IDDM and NIDDM[60,61]. The gastroparesis in DM has been known clinically for more than 50 years[29]. It is not surprising that the gastric emptying delay in DM is related to both slow transit with increased retention of food in the proximal and distal stomach[62,63], and abnormal motility of the gastric wall[64].

Small intestine: Delayed and rapid transit in the small intestine was observed in animal diabetic models[65,66,67,68]. El-Salhy reported that the GI transit was rapid in non-obese diabetic mice[67] and was slower in obese diabetic mice[68]. Anjaneyulu and Ramarao[69] reported an increase in intestinal transit and a decrease in intestinal tone due to increased cholinergic and decreased beta-adrenergic receptor activities in DM rats. Slow small intestinal transit in DM patients have been documented using breath hydrogen appearance time after the ingestion of lactulose[70,71], by using radiopaque markers[72,73] and by use of metal-detector test[74]. On the other hand, Keshavarzian and Iber[75] investigated intestinal transit in IDDM patients after the ingestion of both liquid and solid meals and showed abnormal fast intestinal transit in their sample of diabetic patients. Nguyen *et al*[76] used intraluminal multiple impedance measurements to identify the postprandial duodenal chyme transport in patients with long standing IDDM. They demonstrated that the patients had disturbed propulsive chyme transport through the duodenum and the duodenal chyme clearance activity was decreased.

The transit disorders can occur in any region of the gut and in every stage of diabetes[74], and can affect each other. Since transit of food through the esophagus is relative fast, the gastric emptying rate is the major determinant of the food delivery to the small intestine. The relationship between esophageal transit and the rate of gastric empting appears to be poor[43] and the gastroparesis is often associated with the intestinal transit delay in DM[74,77].

Abnormal patterns of upper GI motility in DM

Esophagus: Esophageal manometric abnormalities occur in over 50% of patients with DM (see Table 1)[37]. The reduced amplitude of lower esophageal sphincter pressure is in accordance with the increased prevalence of gastro-esophageal reflux disease in DM. More recently the evoked esophageal contractile activity to standardized bag distension was assessed using a specialized ultrasound-based probe by Frøkjær *et al*[19]. A balloon-like bag was positioned 10 cm above the lower esophageal sphincter and inflated. It was demonstrated, both at the bag and 6 cm proximally, that the distension induced hyperreactivity and impaired the coordination of the contractions in the diabetic patients.

Stomach: Motility disorders of the fundus and pylorus have been demonstrated in the diabetic animals[80-83]. In the human studies, it is recognized that disordered gastric contractile activity as assessed by manometry and gastric emptying occurs frequently in DM[84,85]. The motility disorders may include three aspects: Inter-digestive migrating motor complex (IMMC), amplitude and frequency of contractions, and pyloric dysfunction (Table 1).

Small intestine: Camilleri and Malagelada reported that

small intestinal motility was abnormal in about 80% patients of long-standing DM with delayed gastric emptying[86]. Both postprandial and fasting small intestinal dysmotility in the DM was reported (Table 1). Dooley *et al*[87] studied fasting GI motility by manometry for a mean of 210 min in a group of 12 NIDDM patients with diarrhea and DAN. The patients showed grossly disordered motility. The migrating motor complex (MMC) disorders reflect the prolongation of phase II without change in the duration of phase I and III. The results of studies on postprandial motility at the level of the small intestine are inconsistent. However, abnormal motility patterns were observed in the diabetic subjects[85].

Table 2 Acute hyperglycemia and upper GI disorders

Motility disorder	Sensory disorder
Peristaltic wave duration[98]↑	Amplitude of the cortical evoked brain potentials to moderate esophageal distension↑[98]
Peristaltic velocity in the distal part of the esophagus↓[103]	Perception during proximal gastric distension in healthy subjects both in the fasted state and during intra-duodenal lipid infusion↑[95]
Pressure of the low esophageal sphincter↓[103]	Influencing the postprandial fullness in IDDM patients↑[105]
Gastric emptying of both solids and nutrient liquids↓[104]	
Motility index and propagation of duodenal and jejunal waves↓[84]	
Cycle length of inter-digestive motor activity in the fasted state↓[56]	
Small intestinal transit↓[71]	
Proximal duodenal pressure waves↓[104]	

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF GI MOTILITY AND SENSORY DYSFUNCTION IN DM

Hyperglycemia

Disordered GI function in DM has been attributed to irreversible DAN but it is now clear that acute high blood glucose concentration *per se* have a major reversible influence on upper-GI tract motility and sensory function. An animal study demonstrated that the correction of hyperglycemia to euglycemic levels restores the delayed transit[65]. Several studies in both healthy subjects and DM patients have shown that the GI motor function is impaired during acute hyperglycemia (Table 2)[84,95-97]. Marked acute hyperglycemia affects the motility in every region of the GI tract[98]. This may indicate that cholinergic activity is affected during hyperglycemia. Hyperglycemia may also affect the perception of sensations arising from the GI tract (Table 2). However, much of the data have been observational, and there is relatively little information relating to potential mechanisms by which these effects are mediated. Because both stimulatory and inhibitory effects occur during the hyperglycemia, the effects of glucose are likely to be mediated by neural or humoral mechanisms, rather than a direct effect on the smooth muscle of the GI tract. The secretion of pancreatic polypeptide, which is under vagal cholinergic control, is diminished during acute hyperglycemia in healthy control subjects[99]. In healthy volunteers, plasma concentrations of motilin are less during hyperglycemia when compared with euglycemia[100]. Considering the effects of systemic changes in blood glucose concentrations, animal studies have revealed the presence of glucose-responsive neurons in the central nervous system, which may modify vagal efferent activity[101]. Neurons responsive to glucose have recently been identified in the rat small intestine[102], but their response to systemic rather than luminal glucose is unclear. Much work is required to elucidate the neural, humoral, and cellular mechanisms by which systemic glucose levels affects GI motility and sensation.

Peripheral and central neuronal changes

DAN is seen as a major factor in the pathogenesis of disordered GI motor and sensory functions in DM[106,107]. Although GI manifestations related to DAN are diverse, many GI complications of DM seem to be related to DAN[19,48,72,108-110].

Histological findings: The best-characterized signs of damage to the autonomic nervous system during DM are morphological animal studies[111-117]. The number of myelinated axons in the vagosympathetic trunk is decreased in diabetic rats[118]. In the GI tract, many changes of nerves and ganglia were observed i.e. (1) dystrophic axonopathy[119]; (2) degeneration of mesenteric nerves and ganglia[111]; (3) number of vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP)-IR neurons in myenteric ganglia[112]; (4) relative volume density in myenteric plexus[120]; (5) number of adrenergic and serotonergic neurons[111]. In addition, the surrounding tissue is also often disturbed. There is a thickening of the endothelium[121,122], which may sensitize axons to damage from increased pressure or decreased oxygen and glucose availability. It is thus possible that axonal damage may be secondary to disorders in tissue surrounding the neurons. Nitric oxide (NO) is a key neurotransmitter in the regulation of GI motor function[123,124]. In rodents with streptozotocin (STZ)-induced diabetes, NO synthase expression in the gastric myenteric neurons is diminished[125] and associated with delayed gastric emptying. The results of morphologic studies of the vagal nerves in diabetic patients are less consistent. One study demonstrated a decrease in unmyelinated axons in the abdominal vagus, another study found no abnormalities[126,127].

Clinical findings: One study has shown that abnormal esophageal motility is more frequent in the diabetic patients with evidence of DAN than in those without[37]. The presence of abnormal gastroesophageal reflux in diabetic patients has also been associated with the existence of DAN[128]. Increased cholinergic tone may relate to multipeaked waves in the diabetic esophagus in these patients[78]. Gastric emptying largely depends on vagus nerve function, which can be severely disrupted in DM[60]. Studies using cardiac autonomic nerve function tests to assess the involvement of the autonomic nerve system in diabetic patients have indicated that the prevalence and severity of dysmotility of the small intestine is substantially greater in DM patients with DAN compared to patients with normal autonomic function[129]. Diarrhea is evident in 20% of diabetic patients, particularly those with known DAN[130,131]. Altogether, abnormal upper GI motility in DM has been associated to DAN. However, the question arises as to whether neuropathic changes in the intramural GI plex-

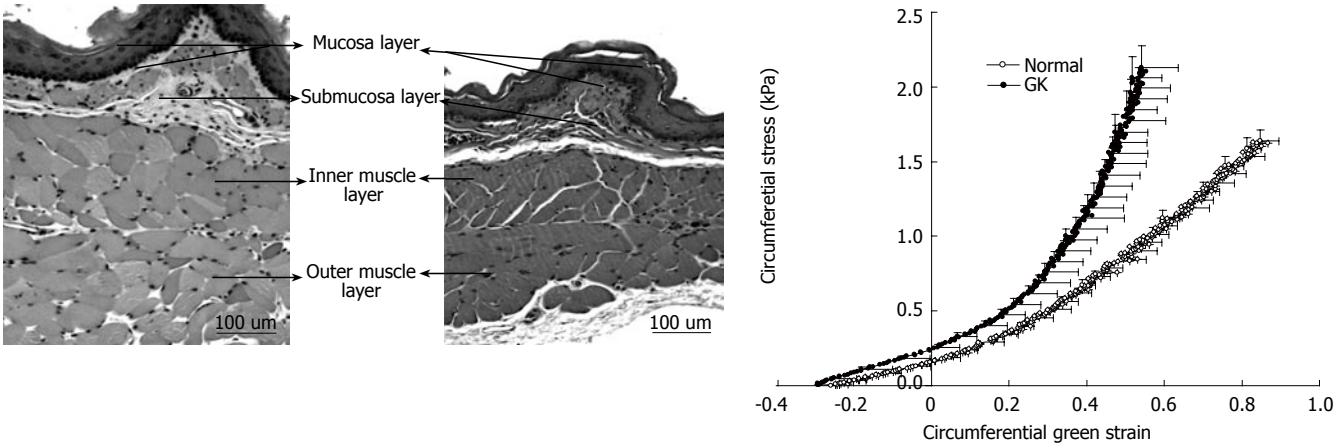


Figure 2 Microphotos of esophageal layer thickness in GK rats (left) and normal rats (middle). The muscle layer was biggest in the GK esophagus. Correspondingly the circumferential stress-strain curves of diabetic and non-diabetic esophageal wall showed in the right. The curve in the GK rats was shifted to the left, indicating that the esophageal wall stiffness increased.

uses, the extrinsic neuronal pathways or in the central nervous system are primary or secondary. In a recent study, Frøkjær *et al* found hyperreactivity and impaired coordination to bag distension of the esophagus in IDDM patients, which indicates that a neuronal dysfunction is responsible for the hyperreactivity[19]. This dysfunction can theoretically be addressed to the mechano-sensitive afferent fibers, inter-neurons or efferent fibers located in the esophageal wall. However, impaired extra-intestinal pathways can potentially also affect the motor response. In another study, Frøkjær *et al* demonstrated that IDDM patients had decreased sensitivity to the stimulations of the esophagus and duodenum[41]. This was accompanied by an increase in somatic referred pain areas to the gut stimulation (Figure 1). As the referred pain is a result of convergence between visceral and somatic afferents on central neurons, the findings are indirect evidence for central hyperexcitability and neuroplastic changes. Altogether, this indicate that the neuronal changes can be located both peripherally (receptors, nerve fibers, ganglions) and in the CNS. Sensory nerve dysfunction in the gut may explain why diabetic patients with severe GI motility disorders often do not suffer from the GI symptoms expected from the abnormal motility and motor function. On the another hand a large subgroup of patients with longstanding DM suffers from severe GI symptoms[2,26,27]. This overall hyperalgesia/hypersensitivity is in contrast to the peripheral autonomic afferent neuropathy that most likely impairs the perception from the GI tract. The mismatch between hypo-and hypersensitivity can likely be explained by an impaired balance between peripheral and central neuronal changes. Hence, the impaired function of the peripheral afferent nerves is likely counterbalanced (or even overruled) by increased central (spinal and/or brain) neuronal excitability and this balance may determine the symptoms in individual patients.

It is likely that different pathophysiological mechanisms contribute to the peripheral and central neuronal changes in DM, including metabolic alterations, microvascular changes, and inflammatory changes[132]. Hypoxia, hyperglycemia, and increased oxidative stress in DM contribute directly and indirectly to Schwann cell dysfunction[133]. This will result in impaired paranodal barrier function, damaged myelin, reduced antioxidative capacity, and decreased neurotrophic support for axons. Furthermore, the direct effects of prolonged hyperglycemia through the glycation on nervous tissue are also important in the development of DAN[134-136].

Morphological and biomechanical remodeling

Although the hyperglycemia and neuropathy seem to be the main mechanisms to the motor-sensory dysfunction in the upper GI tract in DM, the question remains whether the disordered motor and sensory functions of the GI tract are only due to the neuronal changes and dysfunction or if primary diabetes-induced structural and biomechanical changes in the GI tract also play a role? Data on the biomechanical properties are crucial for the understanding of the motor function of the GI tract because, (1) peristaltic motion that propels the food through the GI tract is a result of interaction of the passive and active tissue forces and the hydrodynamic forces in the food bolus and (2) remodeling of the mechanical properties reflects the changes in the tissue structure that determine a specific motor dysfunction. Therefore, the morphological and biomechanical remodeling of the GI wall may also be an important factor in the pathogenesis to the GI motor-sensory dysfunction in the diabetic patients.

Esophageal remodeling: Many studies have shown that DM causes morphological changes and biomechanical remodeling in the esophagus. Yang *et al*[13] in the *in vitro* study on the STZ-induced diabetic rat esophagus found that the wall thickness and cross-sectional wall area increased after the induction of diabetes. Twenty-eight days after the diabetic esophagus became stiffer both in shear and in the longitudinal direction. The esophageal remodeling was also found in NIDDM rat esophagus[18]. In the diabetic rats the opening angle and residual strain distribution in the outer surface of the wall decreased, the collagen fraction in the mucosa-submucosa layer and the passive circumferential stiffness of the esophageal wall increased (Figure 2). Furthermore, the esophageal weight per length, wall thickness and cross-sectional wall area increased in the NIDDM rats.

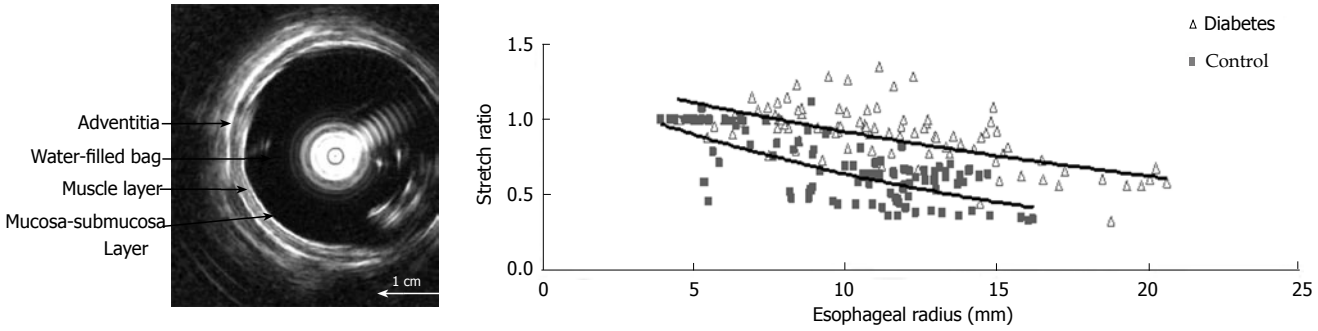


Figure 3 Left: Cross-sectional ultrasound image of the distended distal esophagus allows identification of the esophageal layers, i.e. mucosa-submucosa, muscle and adventitia layers. The white round shadow in the center is caused by the intraluminal ultrasound probe. Right: The distension-induced change in longitudinal stretch ratio is illustrated as function of the esophageal radius. The curves were obtained during smooth muscle relaxation with butylscopolamine. Exponential trend lines of the patients and controls are shown. The shortening during distension was clearly reduced in the diabetic patients.

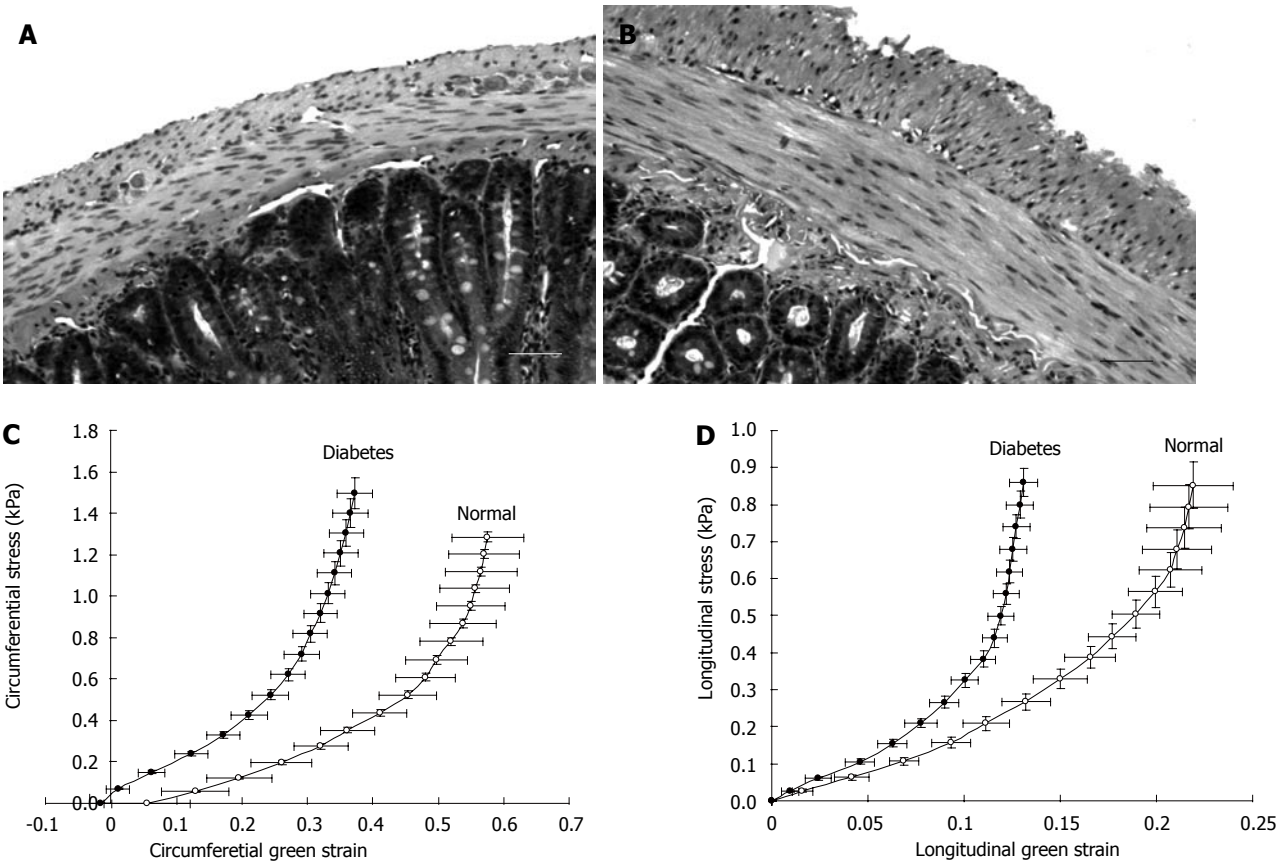


Figure 4 The micro-photographs show the normal (**A**) and 4 wk STZ-induced diabetic (**B**) duodenal histological sections. It clearly demonstrates that the muscle and submucosa layers in the diabetic duodenum became much thicker than in the normal duodenum. The bar is 100 μm. Correspondingly, the circumferential (**C**) and longitudinal (**D**) stress-strain relation curves of the duodenum in the STZ-induced diabetic rats shifted to the left indicating the wall became stiffer.

One previous human study reported that among six cases of diffuse muscular hypertrophy of the esophagus, four cases were associated with DM[137]. Recently, Frøkjær *et al*[19] in an human study found an increase in esophageal wall thickness and altered deformation to the distension with reduced longitudinal shortening and the radial stretch in IDDM patients (Figure 3).

Stomach remodeling: A morphological study in DM rats demonstrated that the gastric mucosa thickness increased in DM rats compared with controls[138]. Remodeling of the interstitial cells network of Cajal in the stomach were found both in animals and humans with DM[139-141]. A histopathological study of the human stomach in DM patients with severe gastroparesis showed prominent collagenization and smooth muscle atrophy of the muscle layer[142]. Regarding the biomechanical remodeling of the stomach only one report by Liao *et al* is available[17]. The rat stomach was distended *in vitro*. Gastric compliance, the surface tension, and circumferential and longitudinal deformation-pressure curves were calculated based on three-dimensional ultrasound reconstructions of non-diabetic and diabetic stomach models. In experimental DM, gastric compliance was lowered both in the non-glandular stomach (proximal part) and the whole stomach (Figure 4). Fur-

Table 3 Morphological and biomechanical changes of small intestine in DM

Morphological change	Biomechanical change
Intestinal weight, length, and weight per unit length↑	Opening angle and residual strain in duodenum↓
Surface area of mucosa↑	Opening angle and residual strain in jejunum and ileum↑
Number of goblet cells per villus↑	Circumferential stiffness of the intestinal wall↑
Smooth muscle mass↑	Longitudinal stiffness of the intestinal wall↑
Different layer thickness↑	Stress relaxation of small intestine↓
Proliferating cell nuclear antigen (PCNA) ↑	
interstitial cells of Cajal volume↓	

thermore, the circumferential stiffness in the non-glandular part increased. The structural changes of the stomach due to DM may together with the sensory and motor nerve dysfunction contribute to the delayed gastric emptying and the symptoms in diabetic patients.

Small intestinal remodeling: Many human[2,11,143,144] and animal [2,3,10,145-148] studies have shown that DM causes morphological alterations in the small intestine (Table 3). However, only few data exist relating to biomechanical remodeling of the small intestine in DM[12]. Recently we did a series of studies on the morphological and biomechanical remodeling of small intestine in the STZ-induced diabetic rats[14-16]. The major findings in our studies are summarized in Table 3 and briefly showed that the stiffness of the diabetic intestinal wall increased in a time-dependent manner (Figure 5). The viscoelastic behavior of intestinal wall also changed during the development of diabetes (Table 3). The stress-strain distribution and viscoelastic behavior mainly reflects the elastic properties of intestine. The changes in elastic properties reflect the structural remodeling of the intestinal wall during the diabetic development.

Advanced glycation end products (AGEs) produced during the development of DM likely relate to the morphological changes and biomechanical remodeling of the GI tract in DM. AGEs are generated by the sequential non-enzymatic glycation of protein amino groups and by oxidation reaction[149]. The accumulation of AGEs in tissues will alter the structure and function of matrix proteins[150]. Studies on DM and ageing show that AGEs are causing cross-linking of collagen molecules responsible for basement membrane thickening and loss of matrix elasticity[151-153]. AGEs may contribute to the diabetic GI morphological and biomechanical remodeling by at least two major mechanisms. The first is receptor-independent alteration of the extracellular matrix architecture by non-enzymatic glycation and the formation of protein cross-links. The second mechanism is receptor-dependent and consists of modulation of cellular functions through ligation of specific cell surface receptors[154-156]. Sanchez SS and coworkers have demonstrated that the expression of small intestinal extracellular matrix proteins have changed in STZ-induced diabetic rats[152]. Therefore, the nonenzymatic glycation of the GI tissue induced by long-term hyperglycemia seems to be an important mechanism behind the GI wall remodeling in DM.

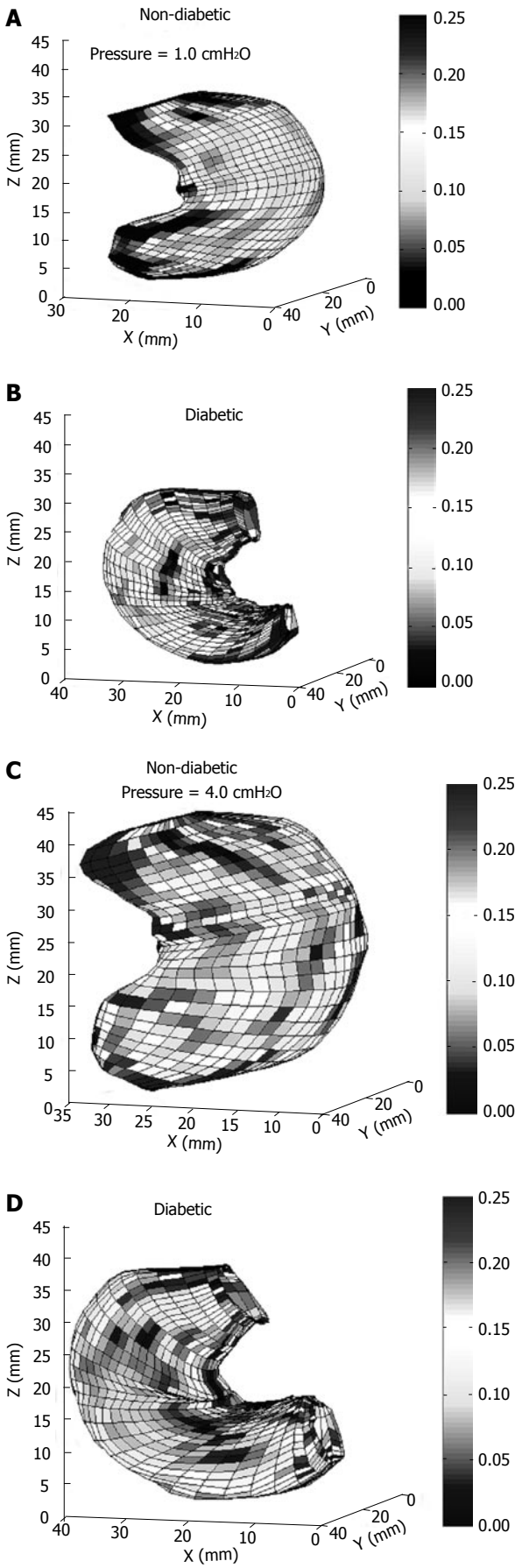


Figure 5 The circumferential curvature at the distension pressure of 1.0 (**A**,**B**) and 4.0 (**C**,**D**) cmH2O in the non-diabetic (**A**,**C**) and the diabetic stomach (**B**,**D**). The circumferential deformation of the stomach in the non-diabetic rats was significantly bigger than that in the diabetic Goto-Kakizaki (GK) rats, indicating the stiffness of the diabetic gastric wall increased in the diabetic GK rats.

Implication of GI remodeling on mechanosensory assessments: Mechanosensation is of fundamental importance for the GI function. The mechanosensitive nerve endings exist extensively in the GI tract where they serve a critical role in homeostasis. Several mechanoreceptor-like structures have been identified such as intraganglionic laminar nerve endings (IGLE) and intramuscular arrays (IMA) in the GI tract[157-164]. The mechanosensitive afferents in the intrinsic and extrinsic pathways were described as low-, wide-dynamic- or high-threshold tension-receptors[165]. Therefore, the GI tract structure as well as the tension, stress and strain distribution in the wall is important for the GI sensory and motor function. The GI wall structure or deformation changes in the DM will alter the relative positions of the mechanosensitive afferents (zero setting of the mechanosensitive afferents)[166]. The biomechanical remodeling in the DM such as alterations of residual strain and stress distribution and increase the wall stiffness will alter the tension and stress distribution of the mechanosensitive afferents. As results, the perception and motility of the GI tract will change as well. Hence, the morphological changes and biomechanical remodeling of GI tract in the DM is likely to affect the function of mechanosensitive afferents in the GI wall and further affect the motor and sensory function. However, so far the data are sparse about the association between the morphological and biomechanical remodeling of GI tract and the motor-sensory dysfunction in the DM[19,41]. The multimodal stimulations have proven accurate and reliable in the assessment of visceral sensation in several studies[167-169]. The geometry data of GI tract can be obtained by impedance and cross-sectional imaging such as ultrasound[170-172]. Combined with pressure recordings, biomechanical parameters such as tension, stress and strain can be obtained and correlated to the symptoms and mechanosensory data in the DM subjects[41]. Therefore, combined studies the GI motor-sensory dysfunction and morphological and biomechanical remodeling in the diabetic GI tract will improve our understanding about the pathophysiology of GI disorders in the DM patients. In the future, animal studies are needed to investigate the passive and active biomechanical and mechanosensory properties of the GI tract related to DM. The experiments should simulate the physiological conditions both *in vivo* and *in vitro* in normal and diabetic animals. The identification of mechanosensitive afferents and enteric nerve responses to the different stimuli will obviously be beneficial to understand the mechanisms of GI motor-sensory dysfunction in the DM.

In conclusion, GI symptoms are frequent in the diabetic patients and are associated with sensory-motor abnormalities, such as impaired perception and motility of the GI tract. The pathogenesis of abnormal GI sensory-motor function in DM is clearly multi-factorial. DAN seems to be the major factor in the pathogenesis of disordered GI motor and sensory functions in DM. Hyperglycemia has also been shown to impair GI motor and sensory function. Furthermore, the morphological changes and biomechanical remodeling of the GI wall may compromise the GI motor function and affect the function of the mechanosensitive afferents in the GI wall. Studies of the relation between the GI motor-sensory dysfunction, morphological changes and biomechanical remodeling in the diabetic GI tract may shed of more light to understand the mechanism of GI motor-sensory dysfunction in the diabetic patients. This knowledge may prove to be valuable in the development of new treatment strategies, which can also be evaluated with the developed methods. New treatments that may be based on the present knowledge and methods are: (1) neurostimulation of afferent visceral nerves, i.e. gastric electric stimulation, (2) agents which can break down already formed glycation end product protein-protein cross-links, and (3) modulation of the central nervous system excitability by drugs.

REFERENCES

1 **Hogan P**, Dall T, Nikolov P. Economic costs of diabetes in the US in 2002. *Diabetes Care* 2003; **26:** 917-932

2 **Folwaczny C**, Riepl R, Tschöp M, Landgraf R. Gastrointestinal involvement in patients with diabetes mellitus: Part I (first of two parts). Epidemiology, pathophysiology, clinical findings. *Z Gastroenterol* 1999; **37:** 803-815

3 **Verne GN**, Sninsky CA. Diabetes and the gastrointestinal tract. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 1998; **27:** 861-874, vi-vii

4 **Horowitz M,** Samsom M. Gastrointestinal function in diabetes mellitus. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2004: 1-337

5 **Kamath MV**, Tougas G, Fitzpatrick D, Fallen EL, Watteel R, Shine G, Upton AR. Assessment of the visceral afferent and autonomic pathways in response to esophageal stimulation in control subjects and in patients with diabetes. *Clin Invest Med* 1998; **21:** 100-113

6 **Kamath MV**, May A, Hollerbach S, Fitzpatrick D, Bulat R, Bajwa A, Tougas G, Fallen EL, Shine G, Upton AR. Effects of esophageal stimulation in patients with functional disorders of the gastrointestinal tract. *Crit Rev Biomed Eng* 2000; **28:** 87-93

7 **Rathmann W**, Enck P, Frieling T, Gries FA. Visceral afferent neuropathy in diabetic gastroparesis. *Diabetes Care* 1991; **14:** 1086-1089

8 **Mayhew TM**, Carson FL, Sharma AK. Small intestinal morphology in experimental diabetic rats: a stereological study on the effects of an aldose reductase inhibitor (ponalrestat) given with or without conventional insulin therapy. *Diabetologia* 1989; **32:** 649-654

9 **Tahara T**, Yamamoto T. Morphological changes of the villous microvascular architecture and intestinal growth in rats with streptozotocin-induced diabetes. *Virchows Arch A Pathol Anat Histopathol* 1988; **413:** 151-158

10 **Zoubi SA**, Mayhew TM, Sparrow RA. The small intestine in experimental diabetes: cellular adaptation in crypts and villi at different longitudinal sites. *Virchows Arch* 1995; **426:** 501-507

11 **Charlton M**, Ahlman B, Nair KS. The effect of insulin on human small intestinal mucosal protein synthesis. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **118:** 299-306

12 **Jørgensen CS**, Ahrensberg JM, Gregersen H, Flyvberg A. Tension-strain relations and morphometry of rat small intestine in experimental diabetes. *Dig Dis Sci* 2001; **46:** 960-967

13 **Yang J**, Zhao J, Zeng Y, Gregersen H. Biomechanical properties of the rat oesophagus in experimental type-1 diabetes. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16:** 195-203

14 **Zhao J**, Sha H, Zhou S, Tong X, Zhuang FY, Gregersen H. Remodelling of zero-stress state of small intestine in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. Effect of gliclazide. *Dig Liver Dis* 2002; **34:** 707-716

15 **Zhao J**, Yang J, Gregersen H. Biomechanical and morphometric intestinal remodelling during experimental diabetes in rats. *Diabetologia* 2003; **46:** 1688-1697

16 **Zhao J**, Liao D, Yang J, Gregersen H. Viscoelastic behavior of small intestine in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48:** 2271-2277

17 **Liao D**, Zhao J, Gregersen H. Three-dimensional geometry analysis of the stomach in type II diabetic GK rats. *Diabetes Res*

Clin Pract 2006; **71:** 1-13
18 **Zhao J**, Liao D, Gregersen H. Biomechanical and histomorphometric esophageal remodeling in type 2 diabetic GK rats. *J Diabetes Complications* 2007; **21**: 34-40
19 **Frokjaer JB**, Andersen SD, Ejskjaer N, Funch-Jensen P, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. Impaired contractility and remodeling of the upper gastrointestinal tract in diabetes mellitus type-1. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 4881-4890
20 **Camilleri M**. Gastrointestinal problems in diabetes. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 1996; **25:** 361-378
21 **Horowitz M**, Fraser R. Disordered gastric motor function in diabetes mellitus. *Diabetologia* 1994; **37:** 543-551
22 **Talley NJ**, Young L, Bytzer P, Hammer J, Leemon M, Jones M, Horowitz M. Impact of chronic gastrointestinal symptoms in diabetes mellitus on health-related quality of life. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2001; **96:** 71-76
23 **Talley NJ**, Howell S, Jones MP, Horowitz M. Predictors of turnover of lower gastrointestinal symptoms in diabetes mellitus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97:** 3087-3094
24 **Schvarcz E**, Palmér M, Ingberg CM, Aman J, Berne C. Increased prevalence of upper gastrointestinal symptoms in long-term type 1 diabetes mellitus. *Diabet Med* 1996; **13:** 478-481
25 **Maleki D**, Locke GR 3rd, Camilleri M, Zinsmeister AR, Yawn BP, Leibson C, Melton LJ 3rd. Gastrointestinal tract symptoms among persons with diabetes mellitus in the community. *Arch Intern Med* 2000; **160:** 2808-2816
26 **Ko GT**, Chan WB, Chan JC, Tsang LW, Cockram CS. Gastrointestinal symptoms in Chinese patients with Type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Diabet Med* 1999; **16:** 670-674
27 **Spångéus A**, El-Salhy M, Suhr O, Eriksson J, Lithner F. Prevalence of gastrointestinal symptoms in young and middle-aged diabetic patients. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1999; **34:** 1196-1202
28 **Ricci JA**, Siddique R, Stewart WF, Sandler RS, Sloan S, Farup CE. Upper gastrointestinal symptoms in a U.S. national sample of adults with diabetes. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2000; **35:** 152-159
29 **Smith DS**, Ferris CD. Current concepts in diabetic gastroparesis. *Drugs* 2003; **63:** 1339-1358
30 **Rayner CK**, Horowitz M. New management approaches for gastroparesis. *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2005; **2:** 454-462; quiz 493
31 **Umpierrez G**, Freire AX. Abdominal pain in patients with hyperglycemic crises. *J Crit Care* 2002; **17:** 63-67
32 **Longstreth GF**. Diabetic thoracic polyradiculopathy: ten patients with abdominal pain. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1997; **92:** 502-505
33 **Samsom M,** Verhagen MAMT. Intestinal function. In: Horowitz M, Samsom M, eds. Gastrointestinal function in diabetes mellitus. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2004: 177-218
34 **Virally-Monod M**, Tielmans D, Kevorkian JP, Bouhnik Y, Flourie B, Porokhov B, Ajzenberg C, Warnet A, Guillausseau PJ. Chronic diarrhoea and diabetes mellitus: prevalence of small intestinal bacterial overgrowth. *Diabetes Metab* 1998; **24:** 530-536
35 **Zietz B**, Lock G, Straub RH, Braun B, Schölmerich J, Palitzsch KD. Small-bowel bacterial overgrowth in diabetic subjects is associated with cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy. *Diabetes Care* 2000; **23**: 1200-1201
36 **Anderson RP**. Coeliac disease. *Aust Fam Physician* 2005; **34:** 239-242
37 **Smout AJPM.** Oesophageal function. In: Horowitz M, Samsom M, eds. Gastrointestinal function in diabetes mellitus. Chichester: John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2004: 97-116
38 **Kong MF**, Horowitz M. Diabetic gastroparesis. *Diabet Med* 2005; **22 Suppl 4:** 13-18
39 **Rayner CK**, Verhagen MA, Hebbard GS, DiMatteo AC, Doran SM, Horowitz M. Proximal gastric compliance and perception of distension in type 1 diabetes mellitus: effects of hyperglycemia. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2000; **95:** 1175-1183
40 **Undeland KA**, Hausken T, Gilja OH, Aanderud S, Berstad A. Gastric meal accommodation and symptoms in diabetes. A placebo-controlled study of glyceryl trinitrate. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1998; **10:** 677-681
41 **Frøkjaer JB,** Andersen SD, Ejskaer N, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Gut sensations in diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Pain* 2007; **131**: 320-329
42 **Rothstein RD**. Gastrointestinal motility disorders in diabetes mellitus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1990; **85:** 782-785
43 **Horowitz M**, Maddox AF, Wishart JM, Harding PE, Chatterton BE, Shearman DJ. Relationships between oesophageal transit and solid and liquid gastric emptying in diabetes mellitus. *Eur J Nucl Med* 1991; **18:** 229-234
44 **Jørgensen F**, Boesen F, Andersen EB, Hesse B. Oesophageal transit in patients with autonomic dysfunction. The effect of treatment with fludrocortisone. *Clin Physiol* 1991; **11:** 83-92
45 **Keshavarzian A**, Iber FL, Nasrallah S. Radionuclide esophageal emptying and manometric studies in diabetes mellitus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1987; **82:** 625-631
46 **Stewart IM**, Hosking DJ, Preston BJ, Atkinson M. Oesophageal motor changes in diabetes mellitus. *Thorax* 1976; **31:** 278-283
47 **Tsai SC**, Kao CH, Pan DY, ChangLai SP, Wang SJ. Effects of oral erythromycin on esophageal motility in patients with noninsulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. *Gaoxiong Yixue Kexue Zazhi* 1995; **11:** 430-435
48 **Annese V**, Bassotti G, Caruso N, De Cosmo S, Gabbrielli A, Modoni S, Frusciante V, Andriulli A. Gastrointestinal motor dysfunction, symptoms, and neuropathy in noninsulin-dependent (type 2) diabetes mellitus. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1999; **29:** 171-177
49 **Holloway RH**, Tippett MD, Horowitz M, Maddox AF, Moten J, Russo A. Relationship between esophageal motility and transit in patients with type I diabetes mellitus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94:** 3150-3157
50 **Chang FY**, Doong ML, Chen TS, Lee SD, Wang PS. Altered intestinal transit is independent of gastroparesis in the early diabetic rats. *Chin J Physiol* 1997; **40:** 31-35
51 **Yamano M**, Kamato T, Nagakura Y, Miyata K. Effects of gastroprokinetic agents on gastroparesis in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol* 1997; **356:** 145-150
52 **Mehta N**, Veliath S, Thombre DP. Effect of experimental diabetes and vagotomy on gastric emptying in rats. *Indian J Physiol Pharmacol* 2002; **46:** 441-448
53 **Ogata M**, Uchimura T, Iizuka Y, Murata R, Suzuki S, Toyota T, Hikichi N. Effect of non-insulin dependent diabetes on cyclosporin A disposition in Goto-Kakizaki (GK) rats. *Biol Pharm Bull* 1997; **20:** 1026-1029
54 **Liu J**, Qiao X, Micci MA, Pasricha PJ, Chen JD. Improvement of gastric motility with gastric electrical stimulation in STZ-induced diabetic rats. *Digestion* 2004; **70:** 159-166
55 **Le Blanc-Louvry I**, Guerre F, Songné B, Ducrotté P. Gastric stimulation: influence of electrical parameters on gastric emptying in control and diabetic rats. *BMC Surg* 2002; **2:** 5
56 **Ogata M**, Iizuka Y, Murata R, Hikichi N. Effect of streptozotocin-induced diabetes on cyclosporin A disposition in rats. *Biol Pharm Bull* 1996; **19:** 1586-1590
57 **Young AA**, Gedulin B, Vine W, Percy A, Rink TJ. Gastric emptying is accelerated in diabetic BB rats and is slowed by subcutaneous injections of amylin. *Diabetologia* 1995; **38:** 642-648
58 **Nowak TV**, Roza AM, Weisbruch JP, Brosnan MR. Accelerated gastric emptying in diabetic rodents: effect of insulin treatment and pancreas transplantation. *J Lab Clin Med* 1994; **123:** 110-116
59 **Granneman JG**, Stricker EM. Food intake and gastric emptying in rats with streptozotocin-induced diabetes. *Am J Physiol* 1984; **247:** R1054-R1061
60 **Horowitz M**, Wishart JM, Jones KL, Hebbard GS. Gastric emptying in diabetes: an overview. *Diabet Med* 1996; **13:** S16-S22
61 **Horowitz M**, Su YC, Rayner CK, Jones KL. Gastroparesis: prevalence, clinical significance and treatment. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2001; **15:** 805-813
62 **Jones KL**, Horowitz M, Wishart MJ, Maddox AF, Harding PE, Chatterton BE. Relationships between gastric emptying, intragastric meal distribution and blood glucose concentrations in diabetes mellitus. *J Nucl Med* 1995; **36:** 2220-2228

63 **Urbain JL**, Vekemans MC, Bouillon R, Van Cauteren J, Bex M, Mayeur SM, Van den Maegdenbergh V, Bataille G, Charkes ND, Malmud LS. Characterization of gastric antral motility disturbances in diabetes using a scintigraphic technique. *J Nucl Med* 1993; **34:** 576-581

64 **Samsom M**, Roelofs JM, Akkermans LM, van Berge Henegouwen GP, Smout AJ. Proximal gastric motor activity in response to a liquid meal in type I diabetes mellitus with autonomic neuropathy. *Dig Dis Sci* 1998; **43:** 491-496

65 **Chang FY**, Lee SD, Yeh GH, Wang PS. Hyperglycaemia is responsible for the inhibited gastrointestinal transit in the early diabetic rat. *Acta Physiol Scand* 1995; **155:** 457-462

66 **Kumar MS**, Prashanth KV. alpha-Lipoic acid ameliorates altered colonic contractility and intestinal transit in STZ-diabetic rats. *Indian J Exp Biol* 2004; **42:** 279-282

67 **El-Salhy M**. Gastrointestinal transit in nonobese diabetic mouse: an animal model of human diabetes type 1. *J Diabetes Complications* 2001; **15:** 277-284

68 **El-Salhy M**. Gastrointestinal transit in an animal model of human diabetes type 2: relationship to gut neuroendocrine peptide contents. *Ups J Med Sci* 2002; **107:** 101-110

69 **Anjaneyulu M**, Ramarao P. Studies on gastrointestinal tract functional changes in diabetic animals. *Methods Find Exp Clin Pharmacol* 2002; **24:** 71-75

70 **Scarpello JH**, Greaves M, Sladen GE. Small intestinal transit in diabetics. *Br Med J* 1976; **2:** 1225-1226

71 **de Boer SY**, Masclee AA, lam WF, Schipper J, Jansen JB, Lamers CB. Hyperglycemia modulates gallbladder motility and small intestinal transit time in man. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38:** 2228-2235

72 **Iida M**, Ikeda M, Kishimoto M, Tsujino T, Kaneto H, Matsuhisa M, Kajimoto Y, Watarai T, Yamasaki Y, Hori M. Evaluation of gut motility in type II diabetes by the radiopaque marker method. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2000; **15:** 381-385

73 **Kawagishi T**, Nishizawa Y, Okuno Y, Sekiya K, Morii H. Segmental gut transit in diabetes mellitus: effect of cisapride. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract* 1992; **17:** 137-144

74 **Folwaczny C**, Hundegger K, Volger C, Sorodoc J, Kühn M, Tatsch K, Landgraf R, Karbach U. Measurement of transit disorders in different gastrointestinal segments of patients with diabetes mellitus in relation to duration and severity of the disease by use of the metal-detector test. *Z Gastroenterol* 1995; **33:** 517-526

75 **Keshavarzian A**, Iber FL, Dangleis MD, Cornish R. Intestinal-transit and lactose intolerance in chronic alcoholics. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1986; **44:** 70-76

76 **Nguyen HN**, Silny J, Wüller S, Marschall HU, Rau G, Matern S. Abnormal postprandial duodenal chyme transport in patients with long standing insulin dependent diabetes mellitus. *Gut* 1997; **41:** 624-631

77 **Iber FL**, Parveen S, Vandrunen M, Sood KB, Reza F, Serlovsky R, Reddy S. Relation of symptoms to impaired stomach, small bowel, and colon motility in long-standing diabetes. *Dig Dis Sci* 1993; **38:** 45-50

78 **Loo FD**, Dodds WJ, Soergel KH, Arndorfer RC, Helm JF, Hogan WJ. Multipeaked esophageal peristaltic pressure waves in patients with diabetic neuropathy. *Gastroenterology* 1985; **88:** 485-491

79 **Borgström PS**, Olsson R, Sundkvist G, Ekberg O. Pharyngeal and oesophageal function in patients with diabetes mellitus and swallowing complaints. *Br J Radiol* 1988; **61:** 817-821

80 **Belai A**, Lefebvre RA, Burnstock G. Motor activity and neurotransmitter release in the gastric fundus of streptozotocin-diabetic rats. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1991; **194:** 225-234

81 **James AN,** Ryan JP, Crowell MD, Parkman HP. Regional gastric contractility alterations in a diabetic gastroparesis mouse model: effects of cholinergic and serotoninergic stimulation. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2004; **287:** G612-G619

82 **Korolkiewicz R**, Rekowski P, Szyk A, Kato S, Yasuhiro T, Kubomi M, Tashima K, Takeuchi K. Effects of diabetes mellitus on the contractile activity of carbachol and galanin in isolated gastric fundus strips of rats. *Pharmacology* 1998; **57:** 65-78

83 **Sakai Y**, Inazu M, Shamoto A, Zhu B, Homma I. Contractile hyperreactivity and alteration of PKC activity in gastric fundus smooth muscle of diabetic rats. *Pharmacol Biochem Behav* 1994; **49:** 669-674

84 **Björnsson ES**, Urbanavicius V, Eliasson B, Attvall S, Smith U, Abrahamsson H. Effects of hyperglycemia on interdigestive gastrointestinal motility in humans. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1994; **29:** 1096-1104

85 **Samsom M**, Jebbink RJ, Akkermans LM, van Berge-Henegouwen GP, Smout AJ. Abnormalities of antroduodenal motility in type I diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 1996; **19:** 21-27

86 **Camilleri M**, Malagelada JR. Abnormal intestinal motility in diabetics with the gastroparesis syndrome. *Eur J Clin Invest* 1984; **14:** 420-427

87 **Dooley CP**, el Newihi HM, Zeidler A, Valenzuela JE. Abnormalities of the migrating motor complex in diabetics with autonomic neuropathy and diarrhea. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1988; **23:** 217-223

88 **Murray FE**, Lombard MG, Ashe J, Lynch D, Drury MI, O' Moore B, Lennon J, Crowe J. Esophageal function in diabetes mellitus with special reference to acid studies and relationship to peripheral neuropathy. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1987; **82:** 840-843

89 **Clouse RE**, Lustman PJ, Reidel WL. Correlation of esophageal motility abnormalities with neuropsychiatric status in diabetics. *Gastroenterology* 1986; **90:** 1146-1154

90 **Hollis JB**, Castell DO, Braddom RL. Esophageal function in diabetes mellitus and its relation to peripheral neuropathy. *Gastroenterology* 1977; **73:** 1098-1102

91 **Ishiguchi T**, Tada H, Nakagawa K, Yamamura T, Takahashi T. Hyperglycemia impairs antro-pyloric coordination and delays gastric emptying in conscious rats. *Auton Neurosci* 2002; **95:** 112-120

92 **Mearin F**, Camilleri M, Malagelada JR. Pyloric dysfunction in diabetics with recurrent nausea and vomiting. *Gastroenterology* 1986; **90:** 1919-1925

93 **Fraser R**, Fried M, Beglinger C. [Assessment of gastric emptying]. *Schweiz Med Wochenschr Suppl* 1993; **54:** 15-21

94 **Jebbink HJ**, Bravenboer B, Akkermans LM, vanBerge-Henegouwen GP, Smout AJ. Relationships between dyspeptic symptoms and gastrointestinal motility in patients with type 1 (insulin-dependent) diabetes mellitus. *Diabetologia* 1993; **36:** 948-954

95 **Hebbard GS**, Sun WM, Dent J, Horowitz M. Hyperglycaemia affects proximal gastric motor and sensory function in normal subjects. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1996; **8:** 211-217

96 **Hebbard GS**, Samsom M, Sun WM, Dent J, Horowitz M. Hyperglycemia affects proximal gastric motor and sensory function during small intestinal triglyceride infusion. *Am J Physiol* 1996; **271:** G814-G819

97 **Hebbard GS**, Samson M, Andrews JM, Carman D, Tansell B, Sun WM, Dent J, Horowitz M. Hyperglycemia affects gastric electrical rhythm and nausea during intraduodenal triglyceride infusion. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42:** 568-575

98 **Rayner CK**, Samsom M, Jones KL, Horowitz M. Relationships of upper gastrointestinal motor and sensory function with glycemic control. *Diabetes Care* 2001; **24:** 371-381

99 **Lam WF**, Masclee AA, Souverijn JH, Lamers CB. Effect of acute hyperglycemia on basal, secretin and secretin + cholecystokinin stimulated exocrine pancreatic secretion in humans. *Life Sci* 1999; **64:** 617-626

100 **Barnett JL**, Owyang C. Serum glucose concentration as a modulator of interdigestive gastric motility. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94:** 739-744

101 **Mizuno Y**, Oomura Y. Glucose responding neurons in the nucleus tractus solitarius of the rat: in vitro study. *Brain Res* 1984; **307:** 109-116

102 **Liu M**, Seino S, Kirchgessner AL. Identification and characterization of glucoresponsive neurons in the enteric nervous system. *J Neurosci* 1999; **19:** 10305-10317

103 **de Boer SY**, Masclee AA, Lamers CB. Effect of hyperglycemia on gastrointestinal and gallbladder motility. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl* 1992; **194:** 13-18

104 **Samsom M**, Akkermans LM, Jebbink RJ, van Isselt H, vanBerge-Henegouwen GP, Smout AJ. Gastrointestinal motor

mechanisms in hyperglycaemia induced delayed gastric emptying in type I diabetes mellitus. *Gut* 1997; **40:** 641-646
105 **Jones KL**, Horowitz M, Berry M, Wishart JM, Guha S. Blood glucose concentration influences postprandial fullness in IDDM. *Diabetes Care* 1997; **20:** 1141-1146
106 **Feldman M,** Schiller LR. Disorders of gastrointestinal motility associated with diabetes mellitus. *Ann Intern Med* 1983; **98:** 378-384
107 **Samsom M,** Smout AJ. Abnormal gastric and small intestinal motor function in diabetes mellitus. *Dig Dis* 1997; **15:** 263-274
108 **Koch KL**. Diabetic gastropathy: gastric neuromuscular dysfunction in diabetes mellitus: a review of symptoms, pathophysiology, and treatment. *Dig Dis Sci* 1999; **44:** 1061-1075
109 **Mearin F**, De Ribot X, Balboa A, Antolín M, Varas MJ, Malagelada JR. Duodenogastric bile reflux and gastrointestinal motility in pathogenesis of functional dyspepsia. Role of cholecystectomy. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40:** 1703-1709
110 **Mearin F**, Malagelada JR. Gastroparesis and dyspepsia in patients with diabetes mellitus. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1995; **7:** 717-723
111 **Belai A**, Burnstock G. Changes in adrenergic and peptidergic nerves in the submucous plexus of streptozocin-diabetic rat ileum. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98:** 1427-1436
112 **Belai A**, Facer P, Bishop A, Polak JM, Burnstock G. Effect of streptozotocin-diabetes on the level of VIP mRNA in myenteric neurones. *Neuroreport* 1993; **4:** 291-294
113 **Belai A**, Burnstock G. Acrylamide-induced neuropathic changes in rat enteric nerves: similarities with effects of streptozotocin-diabetes. *J Auton Nerv Syst* 1996; **58:** 56-62
114 **Di Giulio AM**, Lesma E, Gorio A. Diabetic neuropathy in the rat: 1. Alcar augments the reduced levels and axoplasmic transport of substance P. *J Neurosci Res* 1995; **40:** 414-419
115 **Yagihashi S**, Wada R, Kamijo M, Nagai K. Peripheral neuropathy in the WBN/Kob rat with chronic pancreatitis and spontaneous diabetes. *Lab Invest* 1993; **68:** 296-307
116 **Yagihashi S,** Kamijo M, Baba M, Yagihashi N, Nagai K. Effect of aminoguanidine on functional and structural abnormalities in peripheral nerve of STZ-induced diabetic rats. *Diabetes* 1992; **41:** 47-52
117 **Yagihashi S**, Zhang WX, Sima AA. Neuroaxonal dystrophy in distal symmetric sensory polyneuropathy of the diabetic BB-rat. *J Diabet Complications* 1989; **3:** 202-210
118 **Yagihashi S**, Sima AA. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy. The distribution of structural changes in sympathetic nerves of the BB rat. *Am J Pathol* 1985; **121:** 138-147
119 **Schmidt RE**, Dorsey DA, Beaudet LN, Parvin CA, Zhang W, Sima AA. Experimental rat models of types 1 and 2 diabetes differ in sympathetic neuroaxonal dystrophy. *J Neuropathol Exp Neurol* 2004; **63:** 450-460
120 **Spångéus A**, El-Salhy M. Myenteric plexus of obese diabetic mice (an animal model of human type 2 diabetes). *Histol Histopathol* 2001; **16:** 159-165
121 **Thomson AB**, Keelan M, Thiesen A, Clandinin MT, Ropeleski M, Wild GE. Small bowel review: diseases of the small intestine. *Dig Dis Sci* 2001; **46:** 2555-2566
122 **Tomlinson DR**, Carrington AL, Diemel LT, Ettlinger CB, Smith WJ, Fernyhough P. Limitations of the polyol hypothesis in the pathobiology of experimental diabetic neuropathy. *Diabet Med* 1993; **10 Suppl 2:** 27S-30S
123 **Coulie B**, Tack J, Sifrim D, Andrioli A, Janssens J. Role of nitric oxide in fasting gastric fundus tone and in 5-HT1 receptor-mediated relaxation of gastric fundus. *Am J Physiol* 1999; **276:** G373-G377
124 **Russo A**, Fraser R, Adachi K, Horowitz M, Boeckxstaens G. Evidence that nitric oxide mechanisms regulate small intestinal motility in humans. *Gut* 1999; **44:** 72-76
125 **Wrzos HF**, Cruz A, Polavarapu R, Shearer D, Ouyang A. Nitric oxide synthase (NOS) expression in the myenteric plexus of streptozotocin-diabetic rats. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42:** 2106-2110
126 **Yagihashi S**, Kamijo M, Ido Y, Mirrlees DJ. Effects of long-term aldose reductase inhibition on development of experimental diabetic neuropathy. Ultrastructural and morphometric studies of sural nerve in streptozocin-induced diabetic rats. *Diabetes* 1990; **39:** 690-696
127 **Undeland KA**, Hausken T, Aanderud S, Berstad A. Lower postprandial gastric volume response in diabetic patients with vagal neuropathy. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1997; **9:** 19-24
128 **Lluch I**, Ascaso JF, Mora F, Minguez M, Peña A, Hernandez A, Benages A. Gastroesophageal reflux in diabetes mellitus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94:** 919-924
129 **Bharucha AE**, Camilleri M, Low PA, Zinsmeister AR. Autonomic dysfunction in gastrointestinal motility disorders. *Gut* 1993; **34:** 397-401
130 **Vinik AI**, Erbas T. Recognizing and treating diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Cleve Clin J Med* 2001; **68:** 928-30, 932, 934-944
131 **Vinik AI**, Maser RE, Mitchell BD, Freeman R. Diabetic autonomic neuropathy. *Diabetes Care* 2003; **26:** 1553-1579
132 **Kelkar P**. Diabetic neuropathy. *Semin Neurol* 2005; **25:** 168-173
133 **Eckersley L**. Role of the Schwann cell in diabetic neuropathy. *Int Rev Neurobiol* 2002; **50:** 293-321
134 **Cellek S**, Foxwell NA, Moncada S. Two phases of nitrergic neuropathy in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Diabetes* 2003; **52:** 2353-2362
135 **Cellek S**, Qu W, Schmidt AM, Moncada S. Synergistic action of advanced glycation end products and endogenous nitric oxide leads to neuronal apoptosis in vitro: a new insight into selective nitrergic neuropathy in diabetes. *Diabetologia* 2004; **47:** 331-339
136 **King RH**. The role of glycation in the pathogenesis of diabetic polyneuropathy. *Mol Pathol* 2001; **54:** 400-408
137 **Iyer SK**, Chandrasekhara KL, Sutton A. Diffuse muscular hypertrophy of esophagus. *Am J Med* 1986; **80:** 849-852
138 **Watanabe T**, Asanuma A, Tanaka M, Akiba T, Koga T. [Morphological study on the gastric mucosa in diabetes mellitus rats induced by streptozotocin]. *Exp Anim* 1995; **43:** 693-696
139 **Forster J**, Damjanov I, Lin Z, Sarosiek I, Wetzel P, McCallum RW. Absence of the interstitial cells of Cajal in patients with gastroparesis and correlation with clinical findings. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2005; **9:** 102-108
140 **Horváth VJ,** Vittal H, Ordög T. Reduced insulin and IGF-I signaling, not hyperglycemia, underlies the diabetes-associated depletion of interstitial cells of Cajal in the murine stomach. *Diabetes* 2005; **54:** 1528-1533
141 **Long QL**, Fang DC, Shi HT, Luo YH. Gastro-electric dysrhythm and lack of gastric interstitial cells of cajal. *World J Gastroenterol* 2004; **10:** 1227-1230
142 **Ejskjaer NT**, Bradley JL, Buxton-Thomas MS, Edmonds ME, Howard ER, Purewal T, Thomas PK, Watkins PJ. Novel surgical treatment and gastric pathology in diabetic gastroparesis. *Diabet Med* 1999; **16:** 488-495
143 **He CL**, Soffer EE, Ferris CD, Walsh RM, Szurszewski JH, Farrugia G. Loss of interstitial cells of cajal and inhibitory innervation in insulin-dependent diabetes. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121:** 427-434
144 **Secondulfo M**, Iafusco D, Carratù R, deMagistris L, Sapone A, Generoso M, Mezzogiomo A, Sasso FC, Cartenì M, De Rosa R, Prisco F, Esposito V. Ultrastructural mucosal alterations and increased intestinal permeability in non-celiac, type I diabetic patients. *Dig Liver Dis* 2004; **36:** 35-45
145 **Bhor VM**, Raghuram N, Sivakami S. Oxidative damage and altered antioxidant enzyme activities in the small intestine of streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2004; **36:** 89-97
146 **Noda T**, Iwakiri R, Fujimoto K, Yoshida T, Utsumi H, Sakata H, Hisatomi A, Aw TY. Suppression of apoptosis is responsible for increased thickness of intestinal mucosa in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Metabolism* 2001; **50:** 259-264
147 **Tormo MA**, Martínez IM, Romero de Tejada A, Gil-Exojo I, Campillo JE. Morphological and enzymatic changes of the small intestine in an n0-STZ diabetes rat model. *Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes* 2002; **110:** 119-123
148 **Adachi T**, Mori C, Sakurai K, Shihara N, Tsuda K, Yasuda K. Morphological changes and increased sucrase and isomaltase activity in small intestines of insulin-deficient and type 2 diabetic rats. *Endocr J* 2003; **50:** 271-279

149 **Singh R**, Barden A, Mori T, Beilin L. Advanced glycation end-products: a review. *Diabetologia* 2001; **44:** 129-146
150 **Monnier VM**, Sell DR, Nagaraj RH, Miyata S, Grandhee S, Odetti P, Ibrahim SA. Maillard reaction-mediated molecular damage to extracellular matrix and other tissue proteins in diabetes, aging, and uremia. *Diabetes* 1992; **41 Suppl 2:** 36-41
151 **Ulrich P**, Cerami A. Protein glycation, diabetes, and aging. *Recent Prog Horm Res* 2001; **56:** 1-21
152 **Sánchez SS,** Genta SB, Aybar MJ, Honoré SM, Villecco EI, Sánchez Riera AN. Changes in the expression of small intestine extracellular matrix proteins in streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats. *Cell Biol Int* 2000; **24:** 881-888
153 **Reddy GK**. AGE-related cross-linking of collagen is associated with aortic wall matrix stiffness in the pathogenesis of drug-induced diabetes in rats. *Microvasc Res* 2004; **68:** 132-142
154 **Bierhaus A**, Humpert PM, Morcos M, Wendt T, Chavakis T, Arnold B, Stern DM, Nawroth PP. Understanding RAGE, the receptor for advanced glycation end products. *J Mol Med (Berl)* 2005; **83:** 876-886
155 **Stern DM**, Yan SD, Yan SF, Schmidt AM. Receptor for advanced glycation endproducts (RAGE) and the complications of diabetes. *Ageing Res Rev* 2002; **1:** 1-15
156 **Wautier JL**, Zoukourian C, Chappey O, Wautier MP, Guillausseau PJ, Cao R, Hori O, Stern D, Schmidt AM. Receptor-mediated endothelial cell dysfunction in diabetic vasculopathy. Soluble receptor for advanced glycation end products blocks hyperpermeability in diabetic rats. *J Clin Invest* 1996; **97:** 238-243
157 **Patterson LM**, Zheng H, Ward SM, Berthoud HR. Vanilloid receptor (VR1) expression in vagal afferent neurons innervating the gastrointestinal tract. *Cell Tissue Res* 2003; **311:** 277-287
158 **Phillips RJ**, Powley TL. Tension and stretch receptors in gastrointestinal smooth muscle: re-evaluating vagal mechanoreceptor electrophysiology. *Brain Res Brain Res Rev* 2000; **34:** 1-26
159 **Raab M**, Neuhuber WL. Intraganglionic laminar endings and their relationships with neuronal and glial structures of myenteric ganglia in the esophagus of rat and mouse. *Histochem Cell Biol* 2004; **122:** 445-459
160 **Raab M**, Neuhuber WL. Number and distribution of intraganglionic laminar endings in the mouse esophagus as demonstrated with two different immunohistochemical markers. *J Histochem Cytochem* 2005; **53:** 1023-1031
161 **Swithers SE**, Baronowsky E, Powley TL. Vagal intraganglionic laminar endings and intramuscular arrays mature at different rates in pre-weanling rat stomach. *Auton Neurosci* 2002; **102:** 13-19
162 **Zagorodnyuk VP**, Chen BN, Brookes SJ. Intraganglionic laminar endings are mechano-transduction sites of vagal tension receptors in the guinea-pig stomach. *J Physiol* 2001; **534:** 255-268
163 **Zagorodnyuk VP**, Chen BN, Costa M, Brookes SJ. Mechanotransduction by intraganglionic laminar endings of vagal tension receptors in the guinea-pig oesophagus. *J Physiol* 2003; **553:** 575-587
164 **Zagorodnyuk VP**, Lynn P, Costa M, Brookes SJ. Mechanisms of mechanotransduction by specialized low-threshold mechanoreceptors in the guinea pig rectum. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2005; **289:** G397-G406
165 **Gregersen H**. Biomechanics of the Gastrointestinal Tract. London : Springer-Verlag; 2002
166 **Pedersen J**, Gao C, Egekvist H, Bjerring P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Pain and biomechanical responses to distention of the duodenum in patients with systemic sclerosis. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **124:** 1230-1239
167 **Drewes AM**, Gregersen H, Arendt-Nielsen L. Experimental pain in gastroenterology: a reappraisal of human studies. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38:** 1115-1130
168 **Drewes AM**, Schipper KP, Dimcevski G, Petersen P, Andersen OK, Gregersen H, Arendt-Nielsen L. Multimodal assessment of pain in the esophagus: a new experimental model. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283:** G95- G103
169 **Pedersen J**, Reddy H, Funch-Jensen P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Cold and heat pain assessment of the human oesophagus after experimental sensitisation with acid. *Pain* 2004; **110:** 393-399
170 **Drewes AM**, Pedersen J, Liu W, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H. Controlled mechanical distension of the human oesophagus: sensory and biomechanical findings. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38:** 27-35
171 **Frøkjaer JB**, Andersen SD, Gale J, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. An experimental study of viscero-visceral hyperalgesia using an ultrasound-based multimodal sensory testing approach. *Pain* 2005; **119:** 191-200
172 **Pedersen J**, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. New analysis for the study of the muscle function in the human oesophagus. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2005; **17:** 767-772

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Bai SH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2858-2863
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, Asbjorn Mohr Drewes, MD, *Series Editor*

Morphology and motor function of the gastrointestinal tract examined with endosonography

Svein Odegaard, Lars Birger Nesje, Dag Arne Lihaug Hoff, Odd Helge Gilja, Hans Gregersen

Svein Odegaard, Lars Birger Nesje, Odd Helge Gilja, National Centre for Ultrasound in Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, Haukeland University Hospital, Bergen, Norway
Svein Odegaard, Lars Birger Nesje, Dag Arne Lihaug Hoff, Odd Helge Gilja, Hans Gregersen, Institute of Medicine, University of Bergen, Bergen, Norway
Dag Arne Lihaug Hoff, Department of Medicine, Aalesund Hospital, Aalesund, Norway
Hans Gregersen, Centre for Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, Aalborg Hospital, SMI, Aalborg University, Aalborg, Denmark
Correspondence to: Professor Svein Odegaard, MD, PhD, National Centre for Ultrasound in Gastroenterology, Department of Medicine, NO-5021 Bergen,
Norway. svein.odegaard@helse-bergen.no
Telephone: +47-55975000 Fax: +47-55972950
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

Endosonography is a useful tool for studying the morphology and motor function of the gastrointestinal tract. Intraluminal ultrasonography is the common denomination of ultrasound examinations using intracorporal transducers which are inserted into the GI tract. Thus, the visceral wall and adjacent structures can be imaged in detail. This review describes the usefulness of endosonography in gastroenterology, in particular with respect to studies of the biomechanical and motor function of the gastrointestinal tract. New techniques such as 3-D EUS, elastography and strain rate imaging are discussed.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Intraluminal ultrasonography; Gastrointestinal tract; Imaging; Biomechanics

Odegaard S, Nesje LB, Hoff DAL, Gilja OH, Gregersen H. Morphology and motor function of the gastrointestinal tract examined with endosonography. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2858-2863

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2858.asp

INTRODUCTION

Disorders of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract may be examined using endoscopy, X-ray, radionuclide studies, electromyography, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and manometry. Specific analysis of structural changes occurring within the GI wall is, however, difficult to study by these techniques. Intraluminal ultrasonography (endosonography (ES), endoscopic ultrasonography (EUS) is the common denomination of ultrasound examinations using intracorporal transducers which are inserted into the GI tract. Thus, the visceral wall and adjacent structures can be imaged in detail[1-3]. Acoustic coupling is usually achieved by filling water into the lumen or into a balloon around the ultrasound transducer. Alternatively, the ultrasound probe can be applied directly on the endoluminal surface.

Endosonography is currently mostly performed in the upper GI tract and rectum. However, endosonographic imaging of the colon and distal ileum as well as intraductal ultrasonography (IDUS) of biliary and pancreatic ducts are frequently performed with miniprobes. Dedicated echocolonoscopes are also available, but these have so far gained limited clinical application.

ENDOSONOGRAPHIC INSTRUMENTS

Echoendoscopes combine endoscopy with integrated ultrasound transducers. These instruments can be classified both according to the type of endoscope and the US system. Echoendoscopes may have radial or curvilinear array US transducers using frequencies between 7.5 and 30 MHz. These systems are being continuously improved. The possibility to combine echoendoscopes with conventional ultrasound machines has allowed the use of different ultrasound modalities like B-mode, M-mode and Doppler technology. Ultrasound elastography is a new method with the potential of separating normal from pathological tissue. Recently, elastography and contrast enhanced ultrasound have been applied also in endosonographic imaging[4]. US miniprobes have a diameter which allows the probe to be inserted through the biopsy channel of a conventional endoscope or a suitable catheter (Figure 1). Currently, available US miniprobes comprise mechanical sector, electronic phased arrays, or single crystal linear compound systems operating with frequencies between 12 and 30 MHz. Systems that combine linear compound scanning with mechanical sector scanning or M-mode registration are also available making it possible to switch between these modalities.

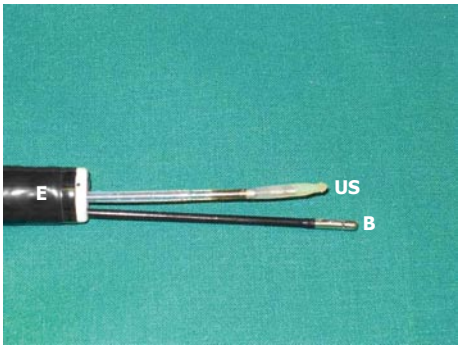


Figure 1 An endoscope with two channels. A miniature ultrasound transducer (US) and a biopsy forceps (B) are inserted through the channels.

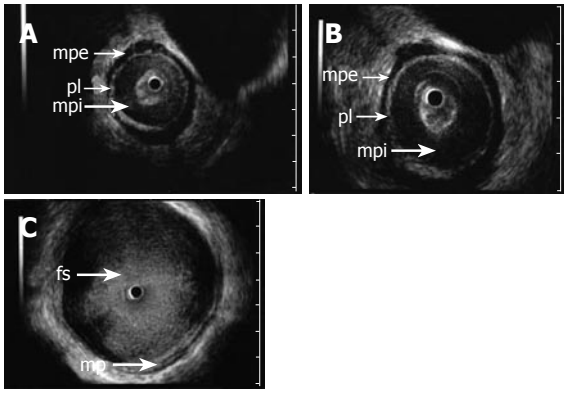


Figure 2 ES images (**A** and **B**) obtained with a 15 MHz miniprobe in a patient with achalasia showing the longitudinal, outer layer of the proper muscle (mpe) separated from a thickened circular, inner layer (mpi) by an echogenic layer corresponding to the localization of the plexus myentericus (pl). **C**: shows a dilated esophageal lumen with food content (fs). A normal aspect of the proper muscle is seen.

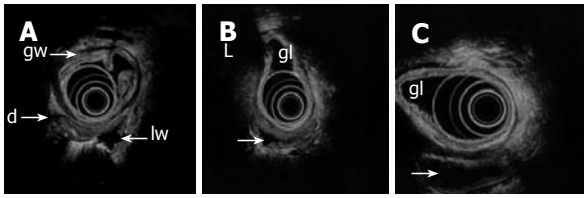


Figure 3 Endosonography with an echoendoscope (12 MHz frequency is used) placed in the gastric lumen (gl) showing the layers of the gastric wall (gw) and GI loops outside the stomach. Lumen is partly collapsed (d), partly waterfilled (arrows). Motility and contractions of native GI loops may be studied. High frequency miniprobes are less suitable for this purpose due to higher frequencies and small transducer diameter.

The small size and high frequencies of miniature probes reduce the size of the US image and the penetration depth of the US beam into the tissue as compared to echoendoscopes. However, small diameter probes can be passed into stenotic areas not traversable with conventional echoendoscopes. Doppler sonography may provide important information about vascular flow and separate vessels from other echo-poor structures. Some echoendoscopes have integrated Doppler technology and Doppler miniprobes for transendoscopic use have also been developed[5]. Other ultrasound systems designed for use within the GI tract do not have an optical system. Transrectal probes have been used for imaging the prostate, bladder, uterus, and rectum. These probes are either linear array or mechanical sector.

ENDOSONOGRAPHIC ASSESSMENT OF GI MOTILITY AND BIOMECHANICS

In recent years ultrasound has been applied in studies of the biomechanical function of the GI tract. In this sense biomechanics should be understood in a much broader sense than the term motility. Motility considers active properties such as peristaltic contractions whereas biomechanics deals with active and passive forces and deformation of the tissue. Biomechanical alterations and abnormal motility in the GI tract is found in several diseases which may be localized in the organ itself or related to the nearest surroundings or to systemic diseases. Luminal manometry has so far been the most widely used method to study GI tract physiology. However, despite the development of high-resolution manometry systems there are still problems in the investigation of GI motor function. The strength of a contraction may vary considerably, thus giving more or less reliable manometric registrations. Furthermore, respiration, aortic pulsation and cardiac contractions may affect the recordings.

The presence of probes in the GI lumen has an influence on physiology and biomechanical studies should therefore ideally be examined without intraluminal devices. ES miniprobes combine the advantages of high ultrasound frequencies with small transducers, allowing detailed images of GI wall layers to be obtained with less influence on the GI lumen than the larger echoendoscopes. Hence, these probes have been regarded suitable for motility studies of the GI tract, especially when applied in lumina with small diameter, like the esophagus (Figure 2). However, echoendoscopes can also be used for examination of motility if positioned in wider lumina like the stomach. Since echoendoscopes generally utilize lower ultrasound frequencies and larger ultrasound probes they can also be used to study motility of neighbouring GI structures (Figure 3). Endosonographic real time B-mode imaging alone or in combination with other methods, as manometry and electromyography, have been used for studying correlation between the pressure and electric potential changes and structural changes in the GI wall. Correct interpretation of ultrasound images of the GI wall is crucial when applying this technique for detailed examination of physiological characteristics. The GI wall consists of mucosa, submucosa, muscularis propria and adventitia/serosa. Muscularis propria has an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer that is separated by the myenteric plexus.

The normal GI wall is imaged by ultrasonography as a layered structure consisting of 3-9 layers depending on the thickness and structure of different layers, ultrasound frequency, and applied pressure on the wall[6,7]. In most cases, a five-layer structure of the wall can be demonstrated, as determined by the histological layers and the appearance of interface echoes (Figure 2, Figure 4). When the visceral wall is imaged with an endoluminal transducer, the interface between the luminal contents and

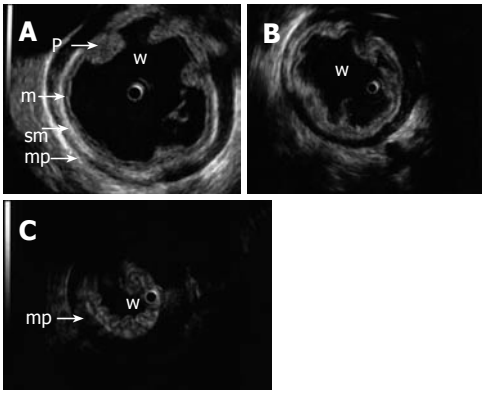


Figure 4 Contraction sequence (**A**, **B**, **C**) demonstrated with a 15 MHz miniprobe in a water-filled (w) stomach. Gastric fold (p), mucosa (m), submucosa (sm), proper muscle (mp).

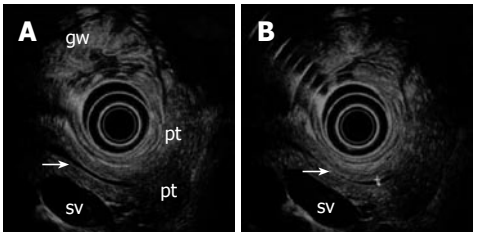


Figure 5 A normal pancreas imaged from the stomach with a 6 MHz echoendoscope. The compressed posterior gastric wall is closely related to the surface of the pancreas. The pancreatic duct is seen (arrow) with minor (**A**) and slightly increased transducer pressure (**B**). The non-compressed gastric wall with folds (gw) is seen on the opposite side of the transducer. Pancreatic tail (pt), splenic vein (sv).

the mucosa accounts for the first, echo-rich layer. The rest of mucosa appears as a second, echo-poor layer. The third, echo-rich layer usually includes the interface between the lamina propria and muscularis mucosae, the submucosa, and the interface at the border of the muscularis propria. In a five-layer structure, the rest of muscularis propria is imaged as an echo-poor fourth layer. The fifth, echogenic layer represents the outer wall delineation and is an interface echo at the serosa or adventitia level.

Sometimes, the use of high-frequency ultrasound produces an interface echo between the different aspects of the muscularis propria, probably reflecting the connective tissue embedding the myenteric plexus. A thick muscularis mucosa may also be identified as an echo-poor layer dividing the third, echogenic layer. Hence, the ultrasonographic wall structure may consist of seven or even nine different layers[6,8].

CLINICAL APPLICATIONS OF ENDOSONOGRAPHY IN BIOMECHANICS AND MOTILITY

Esophagus is often associated with motility disorders which can be studied with different techniques. Endosonography has been regarded as a suitable tool for examination of esophagus because this organ is a straight tube with a small diameter. McCray *et al*[9] studied the high pressure zone between the esophagus and stomach (lower esophageal sphincter and extrinsic crural diaphragm) in normal subjects with a dual high resolution endosonography-manometry catheter. This catheter recorded simultaneously manometric pressures and corresponding ultrasound images while being pulled through the distal esophagus. They found that simultaneous high-resolution endoluminal sonography and pressure manometry separate the two components of the high-pressure zone in the distal esophagus.

Endoscopic ultrasound findings have also suggested that an association exists between sustained longitudinal layer contraction in the esophageal body and chest pain of unknown origin[10]. Furthermore, Nicosia *et al*[11] combined manometry and ultrasound and used conservation of mass principles to quantify local axial shortening of the esophagus. A relationship between contractions in the circular and longitudinal muscle layers during swallowing was established. They also made 3D (space-time) reconstructions of the inner wall of the circular muscle layer for representative swallows. Takeda *et al*[12] used combined ultrasound and manometry to determine circumferential stress-strain properties in the esophagus. In a study by Taniguchi *et al*[13] the sheep esophagus was investigated with M-mode echoesophagram recording and manometry with the goal to measure simultaneously changes in the thickness of the individual esophageal wall layers and the corresponding changes in intraluminal pressure. The maximum manometric pressure, the esophageal wall layer thickness, and the duration of contraction were measured. Swallowing events up to one hour were recorded and in one trial both dry and wet swallows were compared. All swallowing events produced simultaneous increase in intraluminal pressure and esophageal wall thickness. The thickness of the inner (circular) muscle layer increased in dry as well as wet swallows.

The combination of manometry with a 20 MHz ultrasound transducer has also been used to correlate wall thickness, luminal diameter and contractive activity in healthy volunteers[14]. The increase in muscle width by ultrasonography was found to correlate with the increase in luminal pressure by manometry. Recently, Hoff *et al*[15] described a multimodal device inserted into esophagus combining bag distension, manometry, high frequency intraluminal ultrasound, laser Doppler flowmetry and symptom registration. Preliminary experience indicates that these modalities can be used in combination without significant technical influence on each other. Thus, this method can provide a basis for further studies, probably within both the upper and lower GI tract.

Achalasia

Achalasia is a disorder in esophageal motility and is defined by its typical pattern at manometry. The diagnosis can be supported by findings at barium radiography that may show delayed passage through the lower esophageal sphincter and dilatation of the body of the esophagus. At manometry, achalasia is characterized primarily by aperistalsis of the esophageal body and incomplete relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter. In autopsy

studies of patients with achalasia, the thickness of the lower esophageal sphincter is increased. Using high frequency US probes, it has been shown that the thickening of muscularis propria mainly appear in the inner circular portion (Figure 2). Thickening of the circular layer of the muscularis propria at the cardia may support the diagnosis of evolving achalasia[16-23].

A study of the esophageal wall in patients with newly diagnosed achalasia has also been performed using a sector scanning echoendoscope with 12 MHz transducer frequency. The endosonographic findings were correlated with manometric features and clinical symptoms. In these patients, an increase in total wall thickness and thickness of the muscularis propria was found at the level of the lower esophageal sphincter and the proximal 5 cm of the sphincter[16]. Miller *et al*[21] used a 20 MHz radial ultrasound transducer to examine the width of the total muscularis propria, and the circular and longitudinal smooth muscles at the lower esophageal sphincter in 29 patients with achalasia, comparing them with 19 normal subjects. They found that the mean width of these muscles was increased in patients with achalasia. However, because of overlap in muscle width thicknesses between these groups it was concluded that a thickened muscularis propria cannot be used to differentiate clinically between patients with achalasia and normal controls. Nevertheless, they found that the mean diameter of both the longitudinal and the circular smooth muscle layers at the lower esophageal sphincter were wider in patients with achalasia than in normal subjects. Trowers *et al*[22] used a single crystal transendoscopic probe providing linear images. Six achalasia patients were examined, demonstrating the thickness of the muscularis propria to be increased four-fold, and all patients were abnormal compared to controls.

Scleroderma

Patients suffering from systemic sclerosis have frequently clinical gastrointestinal manifestations, especially excessive deposition of collagen in the esophagus which may cause swallowing problems. Endoluminal US seems capable of defining morphologic as well as physiologic abnormalities of the esophagus in patients with scleroderma of the esophagus. Lieu *et al*[24] examined four patients and found that US images correlated with established pathologic descriptions like smooth muscle atrophy, variable fibrosis, and collagen deposition. Increased echogenicity and thinning of the muscularis propria, consistent with fibrosis and atrophy of the smooth muscle were observed. Miller *et al*[25] used a 20 MHz ultrasound transducer in examining 13 patients suffering from systemic sclerosis and 13 healthy subjects. Also postmortem autopsy study was performed to compare histopathological abnormalities with sonographic findings in the esophagus. In the postmortem ultrasound study of two cases, hyperechoic echoes were seen in the normally hypoechoic muscularis propria. These findings corresponded to fibrosis found in histological examinations. Hyperechoic abnormalities were ultrasonographically seen in the muscularis propria in patients but not in normal controls. A strong positive correlation between esophageal hyperechoic and manometric abnormalities was also found.

Nutcracker esophagus

Patients with nutcracker esophagus (NE) suffer dysphagia and/or chest pain due to strong peristaltic contractions. High-pressure amplitudes are found at manometry. Melzer *et al*[26,27] used an echoendoscope to examine the thickness of the muscularis propria at the gastroesophageal junction and in the lower, middle, and upper esophagus in patients with nutcracker esophagus. The muscularis propria was thickened in one-third of the patients. This thickening, however, did not correspond to the location and magnitude of the manometric abnormality and did not correlate with the clinical presentation. They also reported a patient with NE and esophageal pressures exceeding 800 mmHg in whom endoscopic ultrasonography demonstrated a markedly thickened esophageal muscularis propria. The hypertrophy of the muscularis propria extended from the gastroesophageal junction upwards to the middle esophagus.

Reflux esophagitis

Esophageal dysfunction can be seen in patients with reflux esophagitis. Important pathophysiological factors are impaired esophageal acid clearance and a hypotonic lower esophageal sphincter. The intraluminal esophageal pressure is related to the contraction of the inner circular smooth muscle. Dysfunction of the lower esophageal sphincter area may cause esophageal reflux disease. Contraction of the longitudinal smooth muscle during swallowing causes axial shortening of the esophagus. This muscle may also stiffen the esophagus and thus generate intraluminal pressure during peristalsis. In patients with reflux esophagitis, inflammatory changes are present, affecting all or individual wall layers in the distal part of the esophagus. Periesophageal inflammation may also be present and, depending on the degree of total inflammation, it may affect the esophageal motility and thus also acid clearance. These changes can usually be imaged by ultrasound miniprobes, which thus may provide insights into the pathophysiology of reflux esophagitis.

GASTRODUODENAL MOTILITY

Endosonography of the stomach and duodenum is in essence performed in the same way as in the esophagus. However, endosonography can be technically more challenging in wide and curved organs. Transabdominal ultrasound is applied in studying gastroduodenal motility, also in combination with intraluminal pressure devices. Recently, mechanosensory properties in the human gastric antrum were evaluated using transabdominal ultrasound scanning during volume-controlled antral distension[28,29]. Furthermore, a device which combines endosonographic real - time imaging with intraluminal volume-controlled bag distensions has been developed also for use in large lumina. Thus, detailed images of GI wall layers corresponding to the area of bag pressure can be obtained. Arslan *et al*[30] investigated duodenum with high-frequency ultrasound to study wall layers and motility during allergenic

provocation. A 20 MHz miniature ultrasound probe was inserted through a nasoduodenal tube and ultrasound examination was performed before and after provocation. Clinical symptoms were recorded and the thickness of mucosa, submucosa and muscularis propria was measured directly on ultrasonographic images. Endosonographic changes (i.e. any resolvable wall thickening, contraction or new echogenic layer) were observed in 15 of the 20 patients. Mucosal thickening, changes in the number of wall layers and sustained contractions of duodenum were observed in some patients after provocation. The mucosal thickening could represent mucosal edema in response to provocation. A new echorich layer was observed in two patients, probably caused by an additional interface at the border of a thicker muscularis mucosa due to the allergic reaction.

Rectum, large and small intestine

These organs may be examined in the same way as described for esophagus, stomach and duodenum using dedicated echoendoscopes and rectal probes. However, ES miniprobes, which can easily be inserted through the biopsy channel of standard endoscopes, seem to be a practical method for imaging the colon as well as the rectum. The interpretation of wall layers, organ contractions and other motility aspects is similar to that of the upper GI tract. Endoscopy of the small intestine is now possible in some GI laboratories. New enteroscopes may in the future be integrated with ultrasound transducers making ES/EUS of the small intestine possible. Capsule endoscopy which also is a relatively new method, allows endoscopic imaging of the entire small intestine. If a miniature ultrasound device is integrated in this capsule, EUS of the small intestine may possibly be performed.

NEW TECHNIQUES

Three-dimensional EUS

3D- images are assumed to be easier to understand and communicate than the mental reconstruction of several 2D-images. 3D-techniques are currently under development for most imaging modalities and 3D-EUS may be applied for improved recognition of the GI anatomy and pathological lesions. 3D-EUS images can be obtained using images acquired by echoendoscopes or miniprobes. Mostly, a pullback device has been used to obtain parallel 2D images which are reconstructed to a 3D-image. Acquired ultrasound images can be stored and digitized using frame grabbing but direct digitizing of ultrasound raw data is being increasingly used in new scanners. Advanced software programs containing different rendering or other reconstruction algorithms are used for postprocessing and display of 3D ultrasound data, which can be studied using anyplane slicing, segmentation and volume calculation[31,32].

Elastography

The stiffness of normal and pathological tissue is usually different and may be evaluated by ultrasound which is based on B-mode scanning during compressions (elastography) (Figure 5). Elastography has been applied on the GI tract, kidney, muscle, breast and the heart. The underlying principle is that the deformation of tissue by a mechanical excitation is a function of its mechanical properties. For gastrointestinal purposes, the intraluminal pressure may be used as the excitation force[33,34].

Imaging of ultrasound tissue elasticity has gained considerable interest as a method to differentiate normal from abnormal tissue, particularly malignant from non-malignant disease. However, normal structures also have variable internal sonoelastic properties. When compressed by an ultrasound transducer, the ultrasound image of normal as well as pathological tissue is changed. It has been demonstrated that increased pressure on the GI wall changes the thickness, layers and echogenicity of the wall as imaged by B-mode ultrasonography[7].

Strain rate imaging

Strain rate imaging is a recently introduced technique to measure deformation of biological tissue. The technique is based on tissue velocity imaging, which is an ultrasound technique that provides quantitative information on velocities within a tissue. By color-coded tissue velocity imaging, velocity data from the whole field of view are available simultaneously[35]. This allows extraction of other parameters through spatial and temporal processing of the velocity data. Strain rate and strain are examples of such parameters. The methods have primarily been used in echocardiography, but other uses have also been reported, including measurements of gastric motor function[36].

Further development of specialized EUS instruments can allow the investigators to choose the most appropriate instruments for the separate tasks. Miniature probes, which are less costly and easier to operate, will most likely be available in a majority of endoscopy units within a few years. Different modalities can probably be merged into new multimodal devices making it possible to obtain multiple motility parameters in one procedure. A successful development of such devices can hopefully be achieved on the basis of fruitful collaboration between medicine, technology and soft-ware producers.

REFERENCES

1 **Tio TL.** Endosonography in gastroenterology. Berlin: Springer-Verlag, 1988

2 **Rösch T**, Classen M. Gastroenterologic endosonography. Stuttgart: Georg Thieme Verlag, 1992

3 **Van Dam J**, Sivak MV, eds. Gastrointestinal endosonography. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders Company, 1999

4 **Giovannini M**, Bories E, Pesenti C, Monges G, Moutardier V, Delpero J. Elastography and contrast-enhanced (Sonovue) color. Doppler pancreatic endoscopic ultrasound to characterize pancreatic mass. Results in 25 patients. *Endoscopy* 2005; **37 Suppl I:** A68

5 **Matre K**, Odegaard S, Hausken T. Endoscopic ultrasound Doppler probes for velocity measurements in vessels in the upper gastrointestinal tract using a multifrequency pulsed Doppler meter.. *Endoscopy* 1990; **22:** 268-270

6 **Kimmey MB**, Martin RW, Haggitt RC, Wang KY, Franklin DW, Silverstein FE. Histologic correlates of gastrointestinal ultrasound images. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96:** 433-441

7 **Odegaard S**, Kimmey MB, Martin RW, Yee HC, Cheung AH, Silverstein FE. The effects of applied pressure on the thickness, layers, and echogenicity of gastrointestinal wall ultrasound

images. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1992; 3**8:** 351-356
8 **Ødegaard S**, Kimmey MB. Location of the muscularis mucosae on high frequency gastrointestinal ultrasound images. *Eur J Ultrasound* 1994; **1**: 39-50
9 **McCray WH Jr**, Chung C, Parkman HP, Miller LS. Use of simultaneous high-resolution endoluminal sonography (HRES) and manometry to characterize high pressure zone of distal esophagus. *Dig Dis Sci* 2000; **45:** 1660-1666
10 **Balaban DH,** Yamamoto Y, Liu J, Pehlivanov N, Wisniewski R, DeSilvey D, Mittal RK**.** Sustained esophageal contraction: a marker of esophageal chest pain identified by intraluminal ultrasonography. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116:** 29-37
11 **Nicosia MA**, Brasseur JG, Liu JB, Miller LS. Local longitudinal muscle shortening of the human esophagus from high-frequency ultrasonography. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **281:** G1022-G1033
12 **Takeda T**, Kassab G, Liu J, Puckett JL, Mittal RR, Mittal RK. A novel ultrasound technique to study the biomechanics of the human esophagus in vivo. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **282:** G785-G793
13 **Taniguchi DK**, Martin RW, Trowers EA, Silverstein FE. Simultaneous M-mode echoesophagram and manometry in the sheep esophagus. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1995; **41:** 582-586
14 **Miller LS,** Liu JB, Colizzo FP, Ter H, Marzano J, Barbarevech C, Helwig K, Leung L, Goldberg BB, Hedwig K [corrected to Helwig K]. Correlation of high-frequency esophageal ultrasonography and manometry in the study of esophageal motility. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109:** 832-837
15 **Hoff DA**, Gregersen H, Odegaard S, Nesje LB, Oevreboe K, Hausken T, Gilja OH, Matre K, Hatlebakk JG. A multimodal laser Doppler and endosonographic distension device for studying mechanosensation and mucosal blood flow in the oesophagus. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2006; **18:** 243-248
16 **Barthet M**, Mambrini P, Audibert P, Boustière C, Helbert T, Bertolino JG, Peyrot J, Salducci J, Grimaud JC. Relationships between endosonographic appearan e and clinical or manometric features in patients with achalasia. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1998; **10:** 559-564
17 **Birk JW**, Brand DL, Georgesson M, Hubbard P, Quashie A, Brugge W, et al. The use of endoscopic ultrasound, manometrics and esophogram to evaluate pneumatic dilatation in the treatment of achalasia. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108**: A59
18 **Devière J**, Dunham F, Rickaert F, Bourgeois N, Cremer M. Endoscopic ultrasonography in achalasia. *Gastroenterology* 1989; **96:** 1210-1213
19 **Bertolino JG**, Mambrini P, Audibert P, Zighed D, Larroque O, Boustière C, et al. Endoscopic ultrasonography of the distal esophagus in achalasia. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **108:** A59
20 **Ponsot P**, Chaussade S, Palazzo L, Amouyal P, Gaudric M, Couturier D, Paolaggi JA. Endoscopic ultrasonography in achalasia. *Gastroenterology* 1990; **98**: 253
21 **Miller LS**, Liu JB, Barbarevech CA, Baranowski RJ, Dhuria M, Schiano TD, Goldberg BB, Fisher RS. High-resolution endoluminal sonography in achalasia. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1995; **42:** 545-549
22 **Trowers EA**, Kimmey MB, Yee HC, Martin RW, Taniguchi D. Assessment of esophageal muscle thickness in achalasia using a high frequency linear endoscopic ultrasound probe. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1992; **38:** 244A
23 **Hatlebakk JG**, Odegaard S. Endoscopic ultrasound: a new look at achalasia? *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1998; **10:** 543-545
24 **Liu JB**, Miller LS, Goldberg BB, Feld RI, Alexander AA, Needleman L, Castell DO, Klenn PJ, Millward CL. Transnasal US of the esophagus: preliminary morphologic and function studies. *Radiology* 1992; **184:** 721-727
25 **Miller LS**, Liu JB, Klenn PJ, Holahan MP, Varga J, Feld RI, Troshinsky M, Jimenez SA, Castell DO, Goldberg BB. Endoluminal ultrasonography of the distal esophagus in systemic sclerosis. *Gastroenterology* 1993; **105:** 31-39
26 **Melzer E**, Ron Y, Tiomni E, Avni Y, Bar-Meir S. Assessment of the esophageal wall by endoscopic ultrasonography in patients with nutcracker esophagus. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1997; **46:** 223-225
27 **Melzer E**, Tiomny A, Coret A, Bar-Meir S. Nutcracker esophagus: severe muscular hypertrophy on endosonography. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1995; **42:** 366-367
28 **Hveem K**, Sun WM, Hebbard G, Horowitz M, Doran S, Dent J. Relationship between ultrasonically detected phasic antral contractions and antral pressure. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2001; **281**: G95-101
29 **Gregersen H**, Hausken T, Yang J, Ødegaard S, Gilja OH. Mechanosensory properties in the human gastric antrum evaluated using B-mode ultrasonography during volume-controlled antral distension. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2006; **290:** G876- G882
30 **Arslan G**, Ødegaard S, Elsayed S, Florvaag E, Berstad A. Food allergy and intolerance: response to intestinal provocation monitored by endosonography. *Eur J Ultrasound* 2002; **15:** 29-36
31 **Molin S**, Nesje LB, Gilja OH, Hausken T, Martens D, Odegaard S. 3D-endosonography in gastroenterology: methodology and clinical applications. *Eur J Ultrasound* 1999; **10:** 171-177
32 **Odegaard S**, Nesje LB, Molin SO, Gilja OH, Hausken T. Three-dimensional intraluminal sonography in the evaluation of gastrointestinal diseases. *Abdom Imaging* 1999; **24:** 449-451
33 **Konofagou EE**. Quo vadis elasticity imaging? *Ultrasonics* 2004; **42:** 331-336
34 **Ødegaard S**, Gilja OH, Gregersen H. Basic and New aspects of Gastrointestinal Ultrasonography. Singapore: World Scienific, 2005
35 **Gregersen H**, Matre K. The use of Ultrasound in Biomechanics. In: Odegaard S, Gilja OH, Gregersen H, eds. Basic and New aspects of Gastrointestinal Ultrasonography. Singapore: World Scienific, 2005
36 **Gilja OH**, Heimdal A, Hausken T, Gregersen H, Matre K, Berstad A, Ødegaard S. Strain during gastric contractions can be measured using Doppler ultrasonography. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 2002; **28:** 1457-1465

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Bai SH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2864-2869
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, Asbjorn Mohr Drewes, MD, *Series Editor*

New perspectives of studying gastrointestinal muscle function

Hans Gregersen, Donghua Liao

Hans Gregersen, Center for Visceral Biomechanics & Pain, Aalborg Hospital and the Institute of Health Technology, Aalborg University, Denmark, and Haukeland University Hospital, Bergen Norway
Donghua Liao, Center for Visceral Biomechanics & Pain, Aalborg Hospital, Aalborg, Denmark
Correspondence to: Hans Gregersen, professor, Center for Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, The Research Building, Aalborg Hospital, DK-9100 Aalborg, Denmark. hag@aas.nja.dk
Telephone: +45-99326825 Fax: +45-99326801
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

The motor function of the gastrointestinal tract has primarily been studied using manometry and radiography, though more indirect tests have also been applied. Manometry and radiography do not provide detailed information about the muscle properties as can be assessed from studies of muscle properties in muscle strips in vitro. In recent years a technique based on impedance planimetric measurement of pressure-cross-sectional area relations in a distending bag has proven to provide more detailed information about the muscle function in vivo. This review shows examples of new muscle function analysis such as length-tension diagrams, force-velocity curves and preload-afterload diagrams.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Muscle analysis; Length-tension; Force; Velocity

Gregersen H, Liao D. New perspectives of studying gastrointestinal muscle function. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2864-2869

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2864.asp

INTRODUCTION

The gastrointestinal (GI) tract is a continuous channel through the body with oral and anal orifices for intake and output. It consists of a series of organs with the biliary tract as a major side-branch. These organs resemble one another in constitution, the elements being variously arranged in such a way as to produce cylinders, spheroids, or intermediate forms[1]. The wall of the GI tract is a laminated composite structure. The general structure is an outer muscle coat consisting of a longitudinal muscle layer and a circular muscle layer. The collagen-rich submucosa layer and a mucosa layers are found inside the outer muscle coat. A third layer of muscle, the muscularis mucosae, exists throughout almost the entire tract. A network of nerves, the myenteric plexus, is embedded in the loose collagen matrix of the intermuscular plane. This set of nerves is essential in the regulation of the contractions of the adjacent musculature, the two layers of the muscularis propria. The motions of the GI tract must, at all times, keep the contents of the tract in their intended place, i.e. to bring them to the site of absorption. This means not only that they accomplish net antegrade flow but also that they mix the contents and move it across the surface where absorption occurs. The contractile patterns and transit varies greatly from one part of the tract to another. The muscle layers provide the forces that distort the cylindrical conduit in the form of contractions. The connective tissue layers provide a framework, or stroma, that determines the passive physical properties of the gut wall.

As stated above, the gross mechanical function of the GI tract depends on the coordinated muscle function and neuromuscular circuits. In bioengineering terms the mechanical properties of the GI tract has mainly been studied in vitro under standardized isometric and isotonic conditions and length-tension and force-velocity characteristics have been described[2]. The muscle function is altered in a number of organic and functional GI diseases, as well as it can be modified by drugs. Despite the importance of the muscle function, only few methods exist to evaluate the mechanics of GI muscle function in vivo. Manometry has become a standard method for clinical motility testing but it merely provides a proxy of the force developed by the muscles and is in many diseases poorly related to the organ dysfunction and symptoms[3].

Heart muscle function has attracted more attention that GI muscle function in the past and pressure-volume loops and ventricular function curves can be generated from measurements obtained *in vivo*[4,5]. Inspired by the cardiovascular research similar "muscle function" curves can now be obtained in the GI tract from impedance planimetric studies and such analyses provide new insight into the behavior and function of the GI tract. The review provides the background for advanced muscle analysis in vivo and takes the readers through some examples.

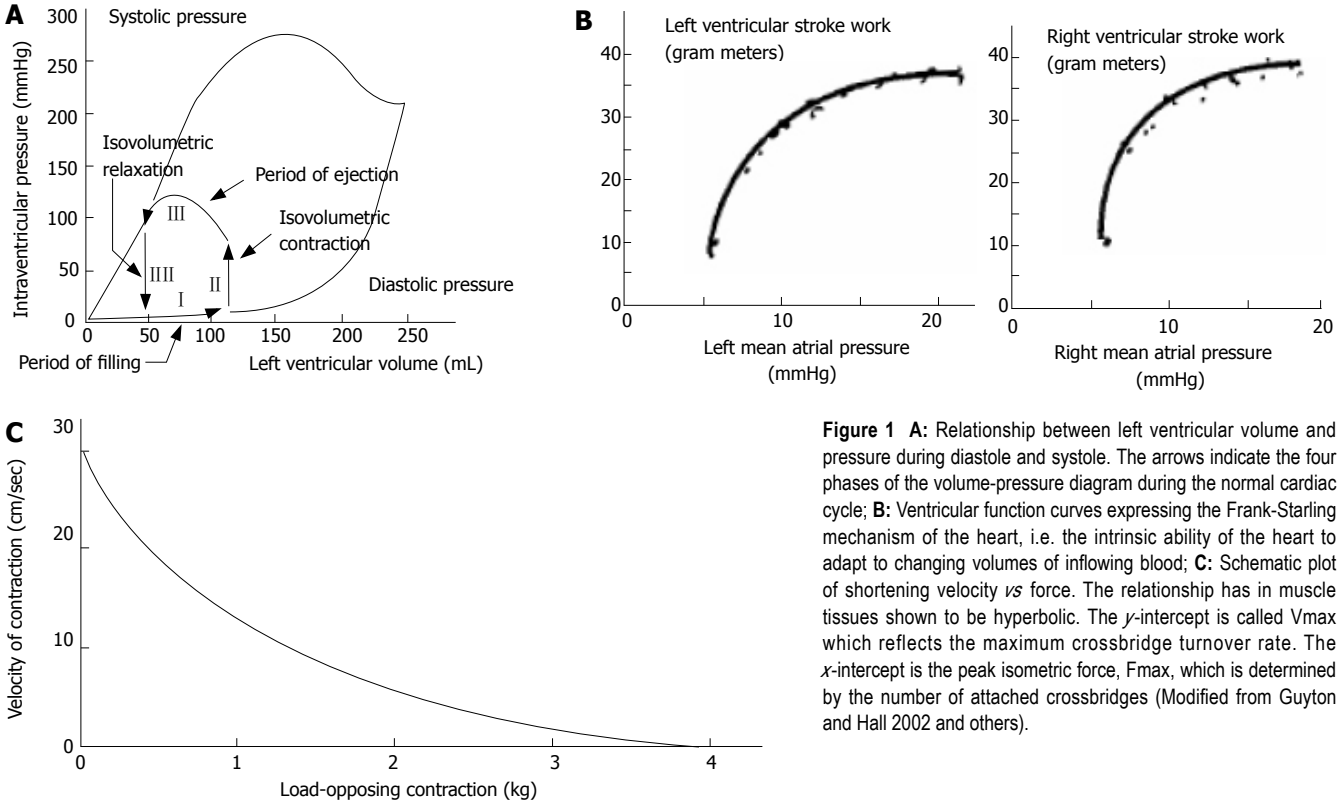


Figure 1 **A:** Relationship between left ventricular volume and pressure during diastole and systole. The arrows indicate the four phases of the volume-pressure diagram during the normal cardiac cycle; **B:** Ventricular function curves expressing the Frank-Starling mechanism of the heart, i.e. the intrinsic ability of the heart to adapt to changing volumes of inflowing blood; **C:** Schematic plot of shortening velocity *vs* force. The relationship has in muscle tissues shown to be hyperbolic. The *y*-intercept is called Vmax which reflects the maximum crossbridge turnover rate. The *x*-intercept is the peak isometric force, Fmax, which is determined by the number of attached crossbridges (Modified from Guyton and Hall 2002 and others).

CURRENT METHODS FOR EVALUATING MUSCLE FUNCTION

The cardiac cycle and cardiac mechanics-function relationship have been studied in much more detail than contractile properties of GI smooth muscle in vivo. Curves are often derived from pressure-volume data where four phases during the cardiac cycle can be identified (Figure 1A), and from stroke work output as function of atrial pressures (Figure 1B). Such data are clinically useful for explaining the pumping mechanics of the left ventricle. One of the best known relationships concerning muscle action is the hyperbolic force-velocity relation[4,6] (Figure 1C). Although this relationship originally was derived for isolated muscle, it has been confirmed for whole striated muscle movements[7]. The curve implies that velocity of muscle contraction is inversely proportional to the load, that a large force cannot be exerted in very rapid movements, that the greatest velocities are attained under conditions of low loading, and that the intermediate values of force and velocity depend on the maximal isometric force.

Most mechanical studies in vitro on GI smooth muscle is isometric length-tension experiments conducted at resting conditions in small organ baths and during stimulation or inhibition with pharmacological substances[2]. Such studies have given valuable information about the regulation of contractions and passive tissue properties.

Only few methods are established for evaluation of GI motor and biomechanical function in vivo. Luminal pressure recordings are the key measurement technique for determining the contractile pattern in many parts of the GI tract. Manometry has been used for more than 50 years to monitor motility in the gastrointestinal tract. These systems often use reliable perfused hydraulic-capillary systems where pressure at a sensor outside the body can be used to accurately measure pressure at a point along a catheter *via* a low flow rate perfused channel. This system has been used extensively to measure force via a pressure measurement in lumens and in liquid filled balloons. Other tests may give a more indirect measure of the motor function. These include transit time studies, pH-metry in the esophagus, radiography, *etc*. The measurement of luminal pressure, however, is not a direct measure of muscle tone and tension. It is a proxy of changes in force generated by the surrounding tissues[8,9].

During recent years, bag distension has become popular as a research tool for GI studies, primarily because mechanical data may be obtained. Furthermore, distension provokes pain and therefore can be used to study the sensory function in patients with functional chest pain[10]. Only few distension studies using inhibitory drugs focused on separating phasic and tonic contractions[11,12]. Recently, tools were developed for studying both the active (phasic and tonic contractions) and passive behavior using impedance planimetric distension before and during administration of inhibitory drugs[9,13,14]. Tension, stress and strain are of principal interest because these parameters give information about the esophageal elastic properties and mechanoreceptors respond more directly to these parameters than to pressure and volume[9]. Furthermore, the muscle function is better evaluated when the forces and tensions can be measured rather than the pressure generated by contractions[1,15]. The most used bag distension technique is the barostat but other techniques such as impedance planimetry and distensions combined

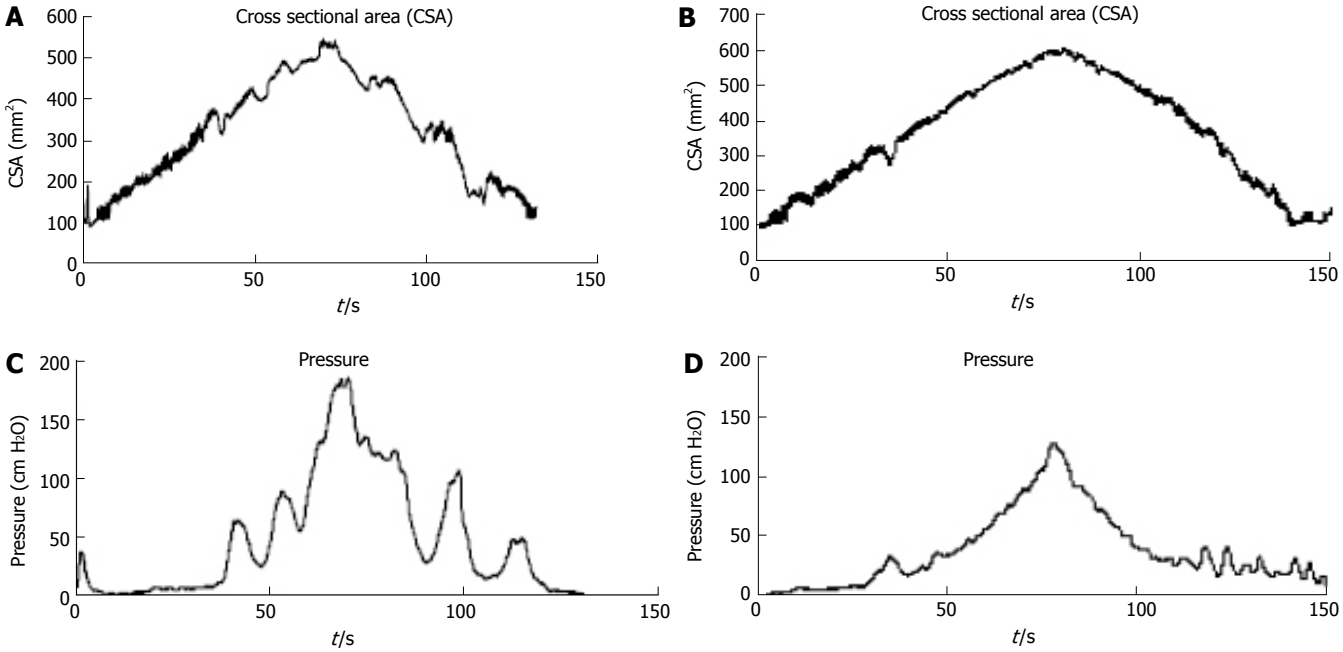


Figure 2 Cross-sectional area (CSA), and pressure as function of time during the distension of esophagus without (**A, C**) and during (**B, D**) the administration of butylscopolamine. Modified from previous publications by Gregersen and coworkers.

with imaging techniques give more detailed geometric information. Rather than analyzing pressure-volume relationships based on the barostat, impedance planimetry enables data on the CSA of the bag during distension to be gathered. CSA shows a better relationship to the diametrical changes in the alimentary lumen than volume[1].

THE IMPEDANCE PLANIMETRIC PRINCIPLE

Impedance planimetry is a technique for performing bag distensions in hollow visceral organs. It has been used to measure CSA together with bag pressure in animal and human studies and the wall tension and strain in the organ can be estimated[1,16]. From Ohm´s law we know that

$$V = IZ$$

where V, I and Z denote the potential difference, the current and the electrical impedance. In the case of a fluid filled bag on a probe with an alternating constant current set up between two excitation electrodes (E), Ohms law will apply for the field between two inner sensing electrodes (S). The impedance depends on the distance (D) between the S electrodes, the conductivity (ς) of the liquid in the bag and the CSA of the bag between the S electrodes. Since

$$Z = \frac{D}{\varsigma CSA}$$

the potential difference can be written as

$$V = \frac{DI}{\varsigma CSA}.$$

If the conductivity of the solution remains constant (the temperature must be constant), the distance between the S electrodes is fixed, and the current source exciting the E electrodes is kept constant, then

$$V = \alpha \frac{1}{CSA},$$

where α is a calibration constant. Thus, the voltage crossing the S electrodes is proportional to the inverse of the CSA. Direct proportionality can be obtained by reciprocation. Data are conditioned and stored on a PC for further analysis.

EXAMPLES OF MUSCLE ANALYSIS

The new analysis consist of *in vivo* (1) phasic and tonic length-tension diagrams; (2) preload-afterload analysis (3) pressure-CSA and tension-radius plots (4) force-velocity and force-power plots.

Basic distention studies

The studies have been done using different step or volume-controlled ramp protocols. An example of CSA and pressure recordings is shown in Figure 2 where a volume-controlled ramp distension was done using an infusion rate of 25 mL/min. The data provide information on the contractile pattern and can be used for computation of elasticity.

Assessment of phasic, tonic and passive length-tension relationship in vivo

Length-tension diagrams can be obtained in vivo in the GI tract using impedance planimetry. Passive curves obtained during administration of butylscopolamine and active curves in terms of both phasic and tonic curves can be generated by analyzing data in accordance with the tracings in Figure 3. For simplicity in the first approach, the circumferential wall tension (T) is calculated according to the law of Laplace for cylindrical structures.

$$T = \Delta P r$$

where T is the circumferential wall tension and r is the bag radius and ΔP is the transmural pressure. The radius is calculated assuming a cylindrical shape of the bag during

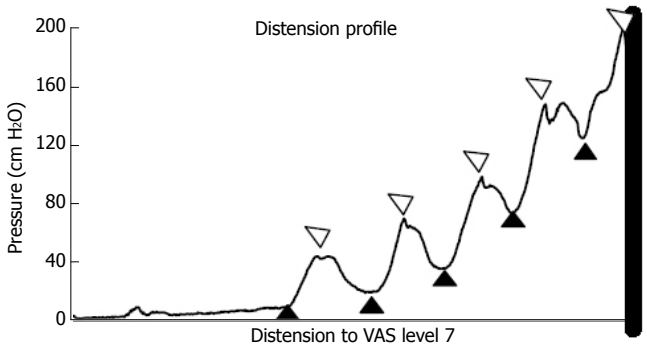


Figure 3 Illustration of a ramp distension curve in the human esophagus. The thick line at the end of the curve is the reverse point. The open symbols above the curve mark the phasic part and the afterload pressure. The closed symbols under the curve mark the tonic part of the distension curve and the preload pressure. The passive pressure is measured from the tonic part of the curve during administration of butylscopolamine. At the symbols pressure and CSA was measured and radius and tension was computed from these values. Modified from previous publications by Gregersen and coworkers.

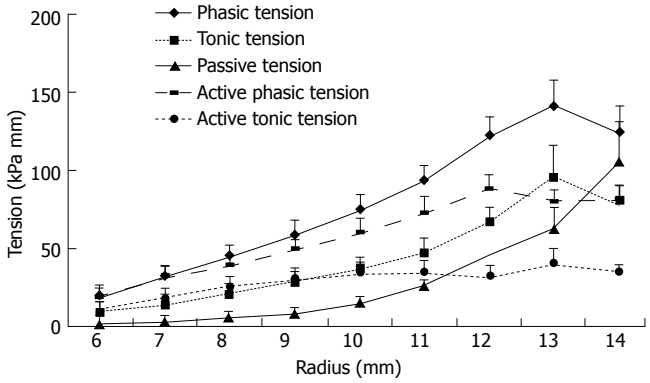


Figure 4 The active and passive tension-radius curves for a subject where the maximum active tension is reached before the moderate pain level (top). The bottom graph shows the averaged data from all volunteers. Mean and SEM values are shown. Modified from previous publications by Gregersen and coworkers.

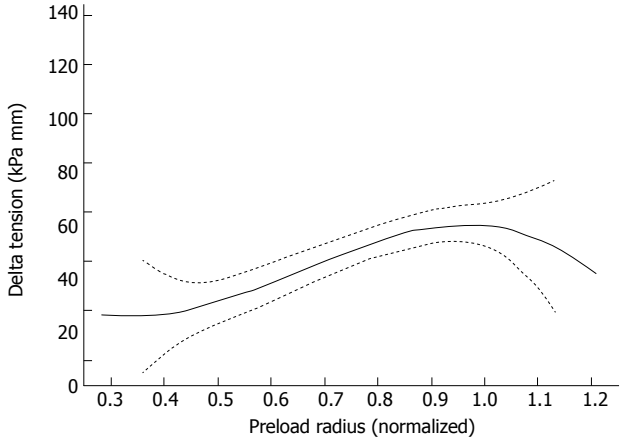


Figure 5 Representation of the change in muscle tension during distension-induced contractions as function of the radius immediately before the contraction (preload-afterload properties) of the esophageal muscles. The solid line is the polynomial fit and the dotted lines represent 95% confidence intervals. Modified from previous publications by Gregersen and coworkers.

distension and by knowing the CSA. The circumferential stretch ratio can be computed as the fractional change in radius (r/r_0) where r is the radius at any distension state and r_0 is the reference radius.

The distentions induce contractile activity. For each contraction, tonic tension (tension computed from pressure and CSA between phasic contractions) and phasic tension (tension during maximum contraction) can be identified from the tension-time curve. Since both active and passive tissue properties contribute to the total tension developed in the small intestine during distension, both the tonic and the phasic tensions must be separated into active and passive components. The passive tension can be derived from the distensions during butylscopolamine infusion and the total tension. Thus, the active tensions can be computed as:

$T_{tonic\text{-}total} = T_{tonic\text{-}active} + T_{passive}$ and $T_{phasic\text{-}total} = T_{phasic\text{-}active} + T_{passive}$

where $T_{tonic\text{-}total}$ $T_{tonic\text{-}active}$, $T_{phasic\text{-}total}$ $T_{phasic\text{-}active}$ and $T_{passive}$ are the total tonic tension, the active tonic tension, the total phasic tension, the active phasic tension, and passive tension, respectively.

The graph in Figure 4 shows averaged data from the normal human esophagus. The passive tension increased exponentially as function of the radius, whereas the tonic and combined phasic-tonic tension increased until a maximum at a radius of 13 mm. This corresponded with the pain threshold. The active tension decreased at higher radii. The major finding was that both active curves exhibited a maximum tension. The active tensions were most important at low distending loads whereas the passive tension was predominant at higher loads. Thus, the esophagus can contribute its largest active force to transport the bolus within the physiological range. The maximum active tension appears close to the pain threshold and before overstretching the esophageal wall. Thus, the esophagus has its physiological function in the ascending leg of the length-tension curve. Exceeding this level it becomes inefficient, like the heart that also functions at the ascending leg of the curve. The maximum active tension is presumably reached at a level of optimum overlap between the sliding filaments in the intestinal muscle cells. When the esophageal wall was stretched to a degree where pain appeared, the passive tension predominated. The passive curves were exponential-like in accordance with findings in other soft tissues. The exponential behavior protects the tissue against overdistension and damage at high luminal pressure loads, while distending easily and facilitating flow in the physiological pressure range.

Preload-afterload diagrams

A way to express the Frank-Starling mechanism in the heart is preload-afterload curve (Figure 1B). In Figure 5 this concept was borrowed from cardiac physiology and it is shown that GI muscle behaves in a similar fashion. The change in tension during individual distension-induced contractions (afterload) was analyzed as function of the radius immediately before the contractions (preload radius). In a similar way the change in radius during distension-induced contractions was plotted as function of the preload radius. These diagrams correspond to heart function curves in terms of the ventricular stroke work as function

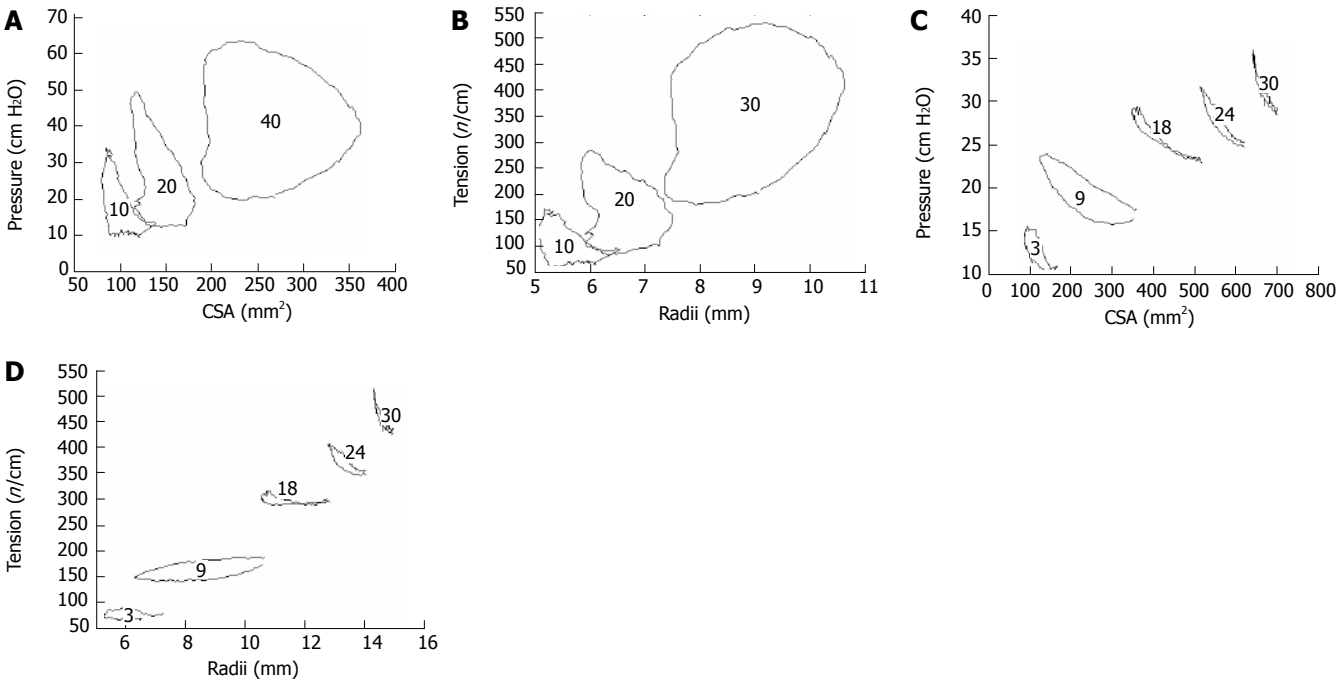


Figure 6 Pressure-CSA and tension-radius relations during esophagus contractions (**A, B**) and during duodenum contractions (**C, D**). The numbers in the figures indicate the volume in ml.

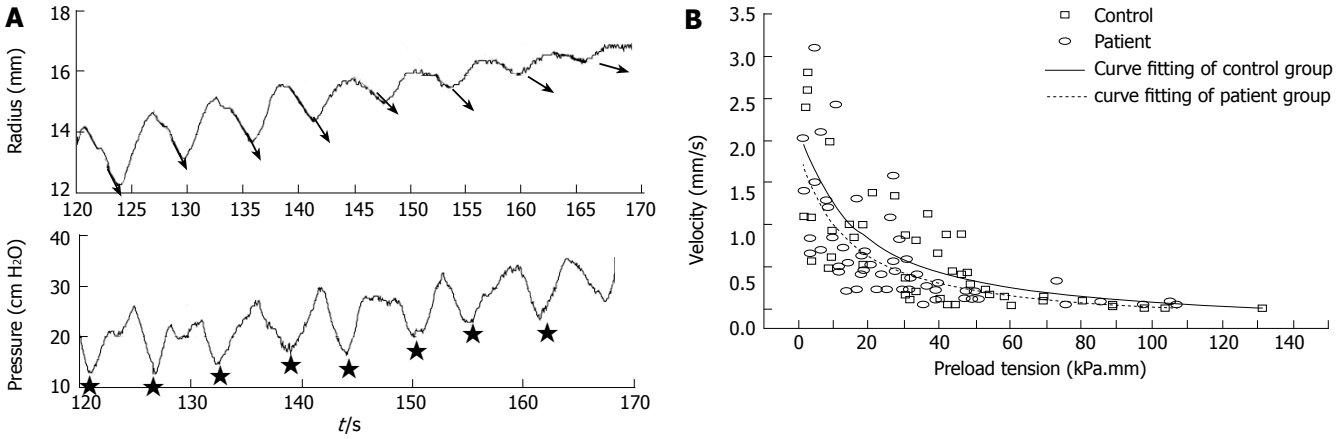


Figure 7 **A:** Arrows indicate that the slope (velocity decreases at high loads. The stars indicate the preload tension; **B:** Force-velocity curves represented as circumferential preload tension-radius shortening velocity and preload tension-circumferential preload tension*CSA rate in SS patients (symbol O and dashed line) and controls (and solid line). The tension-velocity data were curve fitted using Hill's equation. Modified from previous publications by Gregersen and coworkers.

of the mean atrial pressure. Such curves demonstrate the Frank-Starling mechanism of the heart[4,5]. The change in tension during bag-distension-induced contractions increased at normalized radii (radius divided by the radius at the pump reverse point) up to 0.95 (corresponding to radii of 5-12 mm) (Figure 5). This may be called the ascending leg of the curve. At higher radii the change in tension decreased again (the descending leg).

The preload is considered to be the initial muscle length (radius) preceding the contraction during the distension, whereas the afterload is evaluated as the active tension during the contraction. In cardiac physiology the preload is usually considered to be the end-diastolic pressure or radius and the afterload is considered to be the arterial pressure during the systole. The explanation of the Frank-Starling mechanism is that when an extra amount of blood flows into the ventricles, the cardiac muscle itself is stretched to greater length. This causes the muscle to contract with increased force because the actin and myosin filaments are brought to a more nearly optimal degree of interdigitation for force generation. In cardiac physiology the importance of the concept of preload and afterload is that in many abnormal functional states of the heart and circulation, the pressure during filling of the ventricle or the arterial pressure against which the ventricle must contract, or both, are severely altered from the normal. Transferring this concept to GI physiology, the development may have interest for evaluation of normal GI physiology, aging and in the pathophysiology of gastro-esophageal reflux disease, systemic sclerosis, obstruction, achalasia, functional chest

pain, spasms and other esophageal disorders.

P-CSA and tension-radius plots

These curves correspond to the well known pressure-volume curves obtained in the heart (as shown in Figure 1A. The data below was generated from analyzing pressure and CSA data during contractile events at various levels of bag distension in the esophagus and duodenum (Figure 6). It is clearly shown that loops consisting of different "phases" can be determined. However, definition of contraction and relaxation phases seems not as clear cut as in the heart. It is evident that duodenum and esophagus muscle behaves in a very different way. Especially the esophagus curves show a large degree of hysteresis. The area enclosed by the tracing is a measure of the work done during the contraction.

Force-velocity analysis

Figure 1C shows a schematic of the well known force-velocity relationship for muscle tissue and Figure 7 shows data obtained in the GI tract. The tension and shortening velocity were quantified from the contraction waves in the tension-time and radius-time curves simultaneously. For each contraction the preload tension was defined as the tension preceding the contraction. The shortening velocity was defined as the radius shortening rate which is the slope of the radius-time curve for each contraction (arrows in Figure 7A). Since it turned out that the tension-shortening velocity relationship was a hyperbola similar to that described for skeletal muscle, Hill's equation can be used to characterize this relationship[5].

$$(T + a)(V + b) = (T\max + a)b$$

where T represents tension, V the velocity of shortening, Tmax the maximum tension at which the muscle is first unable to move, a and b are constants with dimensions of force and velocity, respectively. Figure 7A shows the bag radius (derived from the CSA) and the pressure during ramp distension of the duodenum. The slope of the contraction curve (arrows representing the contraction velocity) decrease as a function of the degree of distension. Force-velocity curves expressed as circumferential preload tension-radius shortening velocity diagrams are shown in Figure 7B for the duodenum in controls and systemic sclerosis patients. The velocity of shortening decreased with increasing preload tension. *T*max and the muscle power were lowest in the patients and association was found between the duration of the disease and the maximum stretch ratio. Decreased muscle function may explain the GI symptoms reported in this patient group and should be considered as an important factor in the diagnosis and treatment.

In conclusion, current understanding of the "mechanical" physiology of the GI tract is based on measurement techniques such as manometry. The development of new analysis of bag distention data will contribute significantly to the understanding of digestion in health and disease in the future. The impact of the proposed analysis is to better understand the muscle properties and how they relate to mechanism involved in symptom generation in organic and functional diseases in visceral hollow organs. Examples of frequent diseases of great interest are GERD, non-cardiac chest pain and functional dyspepsia. The perspective is that future treatment of GI disorders with affection of neuromuscular pathways can be mechanism- and evidence based with respect to such function curves.

REFERENCES

1 **Gregersen H.** Biomechanics of the gastrointestinal tract. London: Springer-Verlag, 2002

2 **Tøttrup A**, Forman A, Uldbjerg N, Funch-Jensen P, Andersson KE. Mechanical properties of isolated human esophageal smooth muscle. *Am J Physiol* 1990; **258:** G338-G343

3 **Pandolfino JE,** Kahrilas PJ. AGA technical review on the clinical use of esophageal manometry. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **128:** 209-224

4 **Guyton AC,** Hall JE. Heart muscle; the heart is a pump. In Textbook of medical physiology. Philadelphia WB Saunders Co, 2002

5 **Fung YC.** Biomechanics. Mechanical properties of living tissues. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1993

6 **HILL AV.** A reinvestigation of two critical points in the energetics of muscular contraction. *Proc R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 1953; **141:** 503-510

7 **Komi P.** Neuromuscular performance: Factors influencing force and speed production. *Scand J of Sports Sci* 1979; **1:** 2-15

8 **Gregersen H,** Christensen J. Gastrointestinal tone. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2000; **12:** 501-508

9 **Gregersen H,** Gilja OH, Hausken T, Heimdal A, Gao C, Matre K, Ødegaard S, Berstad A. Mechanical properties in the human gastric antrum using B-mode ultrasonography and antral distension. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283:** G368-375

10 **Rao SS,** Gregersen H, Hayek B, Summers RW, Christensen J. Unexplained chest pain: the hypersensitive, hyperreactive, and poorly compliant esophagus. *Ann Intern Med* 1996; **124:** 950-958

11 **Mayrand S,** Diamant NE. Measurement of human esophageal tone in vivo. *Gastroenterology* 1993; **105:** 1411-1420

12 **Zhang X,** Tack J, Janssens J, Sifrim DA. Neural regulation of tone in the oesophageal body: in vivo barostat assessment of volume-pressure relationships in the feline oesophagus. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16:** 13-21

13 **Drewes AM,** Pedersen J, Liu W, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H. Controlled mechanical distension of the human oesophagus: sensory and biomechanical findings. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38:** 27-35

14 **Gao C,** Petersen J, Arendt-Nielsen L, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. Age-related variation in mechanical and sensory function of the human duodenum. *J Appl Res* 2004; **4:** 99-110

15 **Gregersen H,** Kassab G. Biomechanics of the gastrointestinal tract. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1996; **8:** 277-297

16 **Gregersen H,** Barlow J, Thompson D. Development of a computer-controlled tensiometer for real-time measurements of tension in tubular organs. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1999; **11:** 109-118

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2870-2875
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

TOPIC HIGHLIGHT

Hans Gregersen, MD, *Series Editor*

Three-dimensional surface model analysis in the gastrointestinal tract

Donghua Liao, Jens B Frøkjær, Jian Yang, Jingbo Zhao, Asbjørn M Drewes, Odd H Gilja, Hans Gregersen

Donghua Liao, Jens B Frøkjær, Jian Yang, Jingbo Zhao, Asbjørn M Drewes, Hans Gregersen, Center of Excellence in Visceral Biomechanics and Pain, Aalborg Hospital and Institute of Health Technology, Aalborg University, Denmark
Odd H Gilja, Hans Gregersen, National Center of Ultrasound in Gastroenterology, Bergen University and Haukeland Hospital, Bergen, Norway
Correspondence to: Hans Gregersen, MD, Dr, MSc, Aalborg Hospital, the Research Building, Sdr. Skovvej 15, DK-9000 Aalborg, Denmark. hag@aas.nja.dk
Telephone: +45-99326825 Fax: +45-99326801
Received: 2006-03-25 Accepted: 2006-04-10

Abstract

The biomechanical changes during functional loading and unloading of the human gastrointestinal (GI) tract are not fully understood. GI function is usually studied by introducing probes in the GI lumen. Computer modeling offers a promising alternative approach in this regard, with the additional ability to predict regional stresses and strains in inaccessible locations. The tension and stress distributions in the GI tract are related to distensibility (tension-strain relationship) and smooth muscle tone. More knowledge on the tension and stress on the GI tract are needed to improve diagnosis of patients with gastrointestinal disorders. A modeling framework that can be used to integrate the physiological, anatomical and medical knowledge of the GI system has recently been developed. The 3-D anatomical model was constructed from digital images using ultrasonography, computer tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Different mathematical algorithms were developed for surface analysis based on thin-walled structure and the finite element method was applied for the mucosa-folded three layered esophageal model analysis. The tools may be useful for studying the geometry and biomechanical properties of these organs in health and disease. These studies will serve to test the structure-function hypothesis of geometrically complex organs.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: GI tract; Surface; Tension; Stress; Three-dimensional

Liao D, Frøkjær JB, Yang J, Zhao J, Drewes AM, Gilja OH, Gregersen H. Three-dimensional surface model analysis in the gastrointestinal tract. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2870-2875

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2870.asp

INTRODUCTION

Biomechanical changes due to functional loading and unloading of the human gastrointestinal (GI) tract are not fully understood. The GI function is usually studied by introducing probes in the GI lumen, e.g. for pressure recordings. Computer modeling based on medical imaging offers a promising alternative approach in this regard, with the additional ability to predict regional stresses and strains in inaccessible locations. Thus, the three-dimensional (3-D) geometry of visceral organs is of considerable interesting since the morphology and geometry are changed in various diseases[1,2]. The tension and stress distributions in the GI tract are related to distensibility (tension-strain relationship) and smooth muscle tone. The most widely used method for biomechanical stimulation of the gastrointestinal tract is bag distension[3,4]. Distension data are traditionally based on pressure-volume measurements[5-9]. Several studies suggest that the mechanoreceptors located in the gastrointestinal wall are tension receptors[10,11]. Distension technology has been refined by the introduction of the impedance planimetry technique and the endoscopic ultrasound probe[12-23]. These are now well-established methods for assessing circumferential strain, tension, stress and stiffness (slope of stress-strain relation). Previous GI studies have provided data on wall tension and stress in visceral organs. These studies, however, were based on two-dimensional models; i.e., the circumferential tension and stress have been determined at one specified position along the long axis of the organ. However, the tension distribution is related to the geometry (radii of curvature) and the distension pressure according to Laplace's law. Complex geometries will result in heterogeneous tension distributions. Therefore, three-dimensional geometry based on medical images is necessary for computing the tension and stress in the GI tract at various physiological and pathophysiological states.

Recently, 3-D surface model of the gall bladder, stomach, rectum and sigmoid colon have been developed by simultaneous cross-sectional imaging using ultrasonography, computer tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance

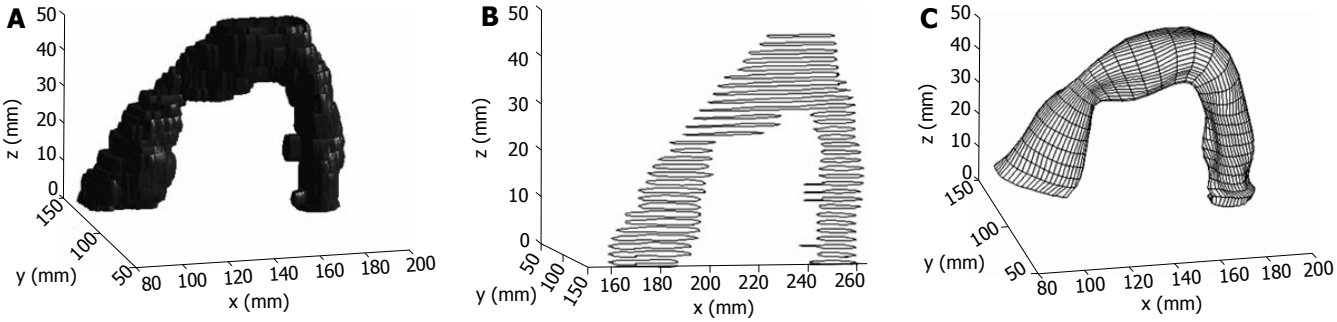


Figure 1 A 3-D sigmoid colon solid model (**A**), the surface model based on the cross sectional images (**B**)and the 3-D surface model with slices along the centre axis (**C**).

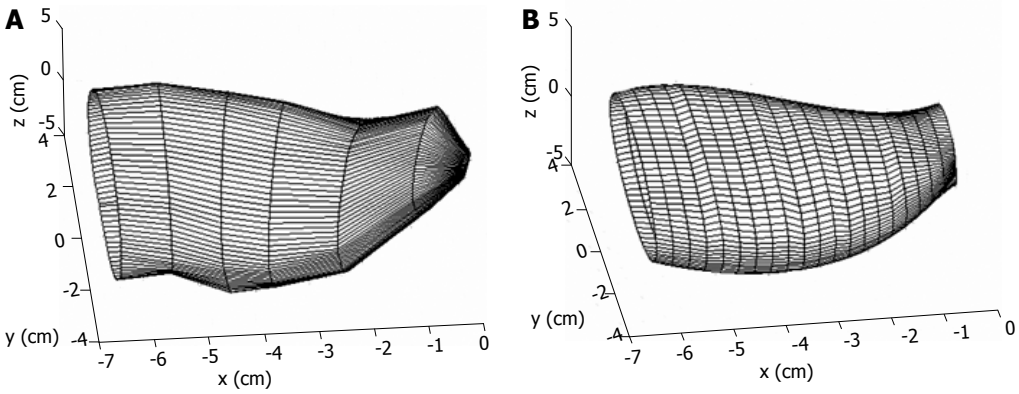


Figure 2 A 3-D reconstructed stomach antrum wall surface before (**A**) and after (**B**) surface smoothing by using the Fourier transform method.

imaging (MRI)) and pressure measurement during distension[24-27]. Using this method it is possible to model the 3-D geometry and mechanical properties of the gastrointestinal tract, including the spatial distribution of the 3-D principal curvatures, radii of curvature, wall thickness, tension and stress.

Examples of 3-D surface models of the GI organs, including stomach, rectum, sigmoid colon and gall bladder and the mucosal folded three layered esophageal finite element model are presented. Two different mathematic algorithms used for surface analysis were introduced. The human stomach[24] and gall bladder[25] models were generated based on the cross sectional images and the surfaces were analyzed theoretically by using a Fourier transform method. The human rectum[26], human sigmoid colon and rat stomach[27] were established from re-sliced images. The surfaces were analyzed locally by using a numerical method.

GEOMETRIC MODELS

Image acquisition and model reconstruction

The anatomical data used for the construction of the initial GI 3D models were obtained from ultrasonography, computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). The image processing method was used to identify the inner and outer wall boundaries and then a data cloud of a 3-D model was obtained. A 3-D sigmoid colon model built from cross sectional images is illustrated in Figure 1.

For GI organs such as the stomach[24], rectum[26] or sigmoid colon (Figure 1), the centre axis are curved. The distended organs are deformed along the curved axis. Alignment of data points along this curved centre axis was necessary to describe the GI model deformation. Based on a 3-D solid model generated from the cross sectional images, it can be re-sliced along the curved centre axis and the surface model based on the re-sliced images can be obtained. Figure 1 show a sigmoid colon solid model and a surface model generated from the re-sliced images.

Surface smoothing

The reconstructed surfaces have some irregularities due to the discretization of the images. The irregularities were removed using two different smoothing methods in our studies, one method was based on the Fourier transform algorithm and another one is a modified non-shrinking Gaussian smoothing method[28]. The two smoothing algorithms used in the surface analysis are illustrated in Appendix A and B. By using the algorithm described in appendix A, a complex surface can thus be described and smoothed by the surface function of Eq. A3. A smoothed stomach antrum model is illustrated in Figure 2. Figure 3 shows a sigmoid colon model that was smoothed based on the Gaussian smoothing method. With the continuous and smoothed surface, thus the surface can be approximated locally by a biquadric surface patch. The parametric surface used in our studies is a tensor product B-spline surface which gives the necessary continuity properties and with good surface approximation[29].

GEOMETRIC ANALYSIS

Curvature calculation

With the surface function Eq. (A3) or Eq.(B1) at the local co-ordinate system, the principle curvatures of

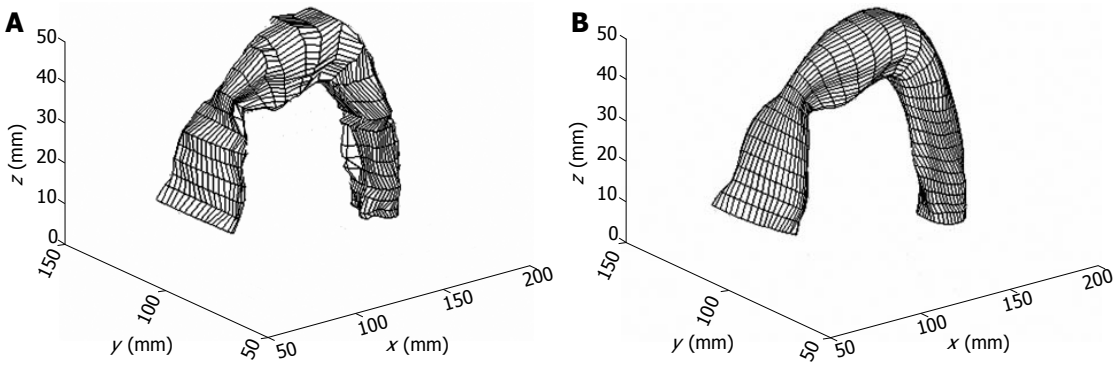


Figure 3 A 3-D sigmoid colon segment surface before (**A**) and after (**B**) surface smoothing by using the non-shrinking Gaussian method.

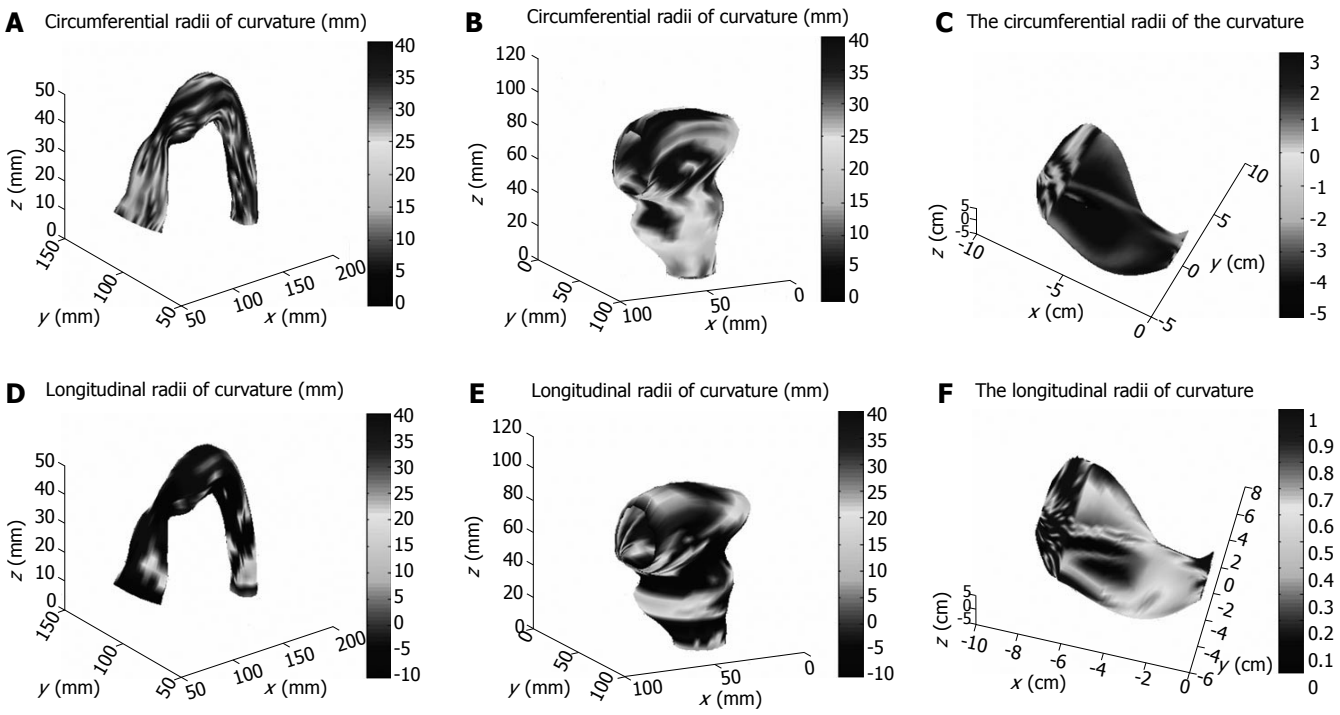


Figure 4 Circumferential (**A, B, C**) and longitudinal (**D, E, F**) radii of curvatures distributions in sigmoid colon (**A, D**), rectum (**B, E**) and human stomach (**C, F**).

the surface were generated from the coefficient of the first fundamental form (E,F and G) and the second fundamental form (L, M and N) of the surface function. The principal curvatures κ_1 and κ_2 can be combined from the *Gaussian* curvature (K_G) and the *Mean* curvature (K_M):

$$K_G = \kappa_1\kappa_2 = \frac{LN - M^2}{G - F^2} \quad (1)$$

$$K_M = \frac{1}{2}(\kappa_1 + \kappa_2) = \frac{1}{2}\frac{NE - 2MF + LG}{EG - F^2} \quad (2)$$

K_G is a particularly useful curvature parameter that indicates an elliptical surface ($K_G > 0$), a parabolic surface ($K_G = 0$) or a hyperbolic surface ($K_G < 0$).

Circumferential and longitudinal curvatures distribution on human sigmoid colon, human rectum and human stomach models are illustrated in Figure 4.

Tension and stress calculation

If we assume that the GI organs are thin-walled and its material properties are isotropic, the surface tension at a surface point is related to the transmural pressure by Laplace's equation as follows:

$$P = T\,[\kappa_1 + \kappa_2] \quad (3)$$

where κ_1 and κ_2 are the principal surface curvatures at a surface point. This equation is valid as long as the membrane is so thin that bending rigidity can be neglected and the curvature changes are not sudden. Accordingly, only the spatial points with positive Gaussian curvature were used for tension (and stress) calculations in this study. Stress is defined as the force acting on a unit area. The stress distribution on the surface can be calculated from wall tension and normal wall thickness as:

$$\sigma = T/h \quad (4)$$

T is the surface tension and h is the normal wall thickness. An example of tension and stress distribution on the rectum model are illustrated in Figure 5.

FINITE ELEMENT ANALYSIS FOR MUCOSAL FOLDED LAYRED ESOPHAGUS

The major shortcoming of the above surface analysis is the thin wall assumption. Thus only surfaces with positive principal curvatures in both directions could use Laplace's

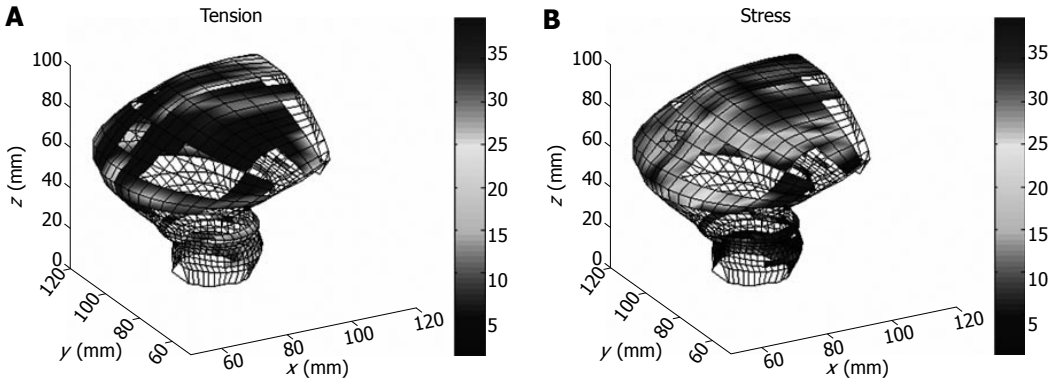


Figure 5 Tension (**A**) and stress (**B**) distribution on a distended rectum model.

equation for tension and stress calculation (Figure 5). To overcome this limitation, numerical methods such as finite element analysis must be adopted. The finite element method has been used for modeling GI tract bioelectric activity[30,31] and the layered esophagus distension simulation[32,33]. Figure 6 is a mucosal folded three layered esophageal finite element model. It is indicated that the stress distribution throughout the esophageal wall was not uniform and the stress was discontinuous between the muscle and mucosal-submucosal layer (Figure 6). Thus the Laplace's law is no longer valid in such layered and thick wall models.

PERSPECTIVES

Mechanosensitive receptors are important for GI tract function and sensation. The intraganglionic laminar nerve ending (IGLE) is believed to be a mechanosensitive receptor and is located within the smooth muscle-lined regions of the GI tract[34,35]. It is generally believed that they are tension receptors. The neurons respond in an intensity-dependent manner to the gastric distension[35,36]. Hence, determination of the stress or tension locally is important for understanding the mechanical environment at receptor sites. Methods based on pressure-volume measurements obtained during bag distension (such as the barostat) do not directly measure variables used in plane stress and strain analysis[5,8,12,22]. Because the bag can elongate, cross-sectional area cannot be derived from bag volume. Moreover, the main assumption for the computation of tension using the barostat and Laplace's law is that the geometry is spherical, although it seems obvious from medical imaging modalities such as ultrasound and magnetic resonance (MR)-scanning of the complex GI organs such as stomach or rectum that the assumption is not valid. Impedance planimetry measures luminal pressure and cross-sectional area in a short segment of hollow viscera during bag distension[14-18,22,37]. Based on these measures the circumferential strain, tension (applying Laplace law) and stiffness (slope of tension-strain relation) of a specific cross-sectional segment can be computed. This approach has limitations in irregular organs like the stomach, rectum or sigmoid colon because the calculated tension is based on the assumption of circularity, is only valid for thin walled structures, and only accounts for circumferential tension.

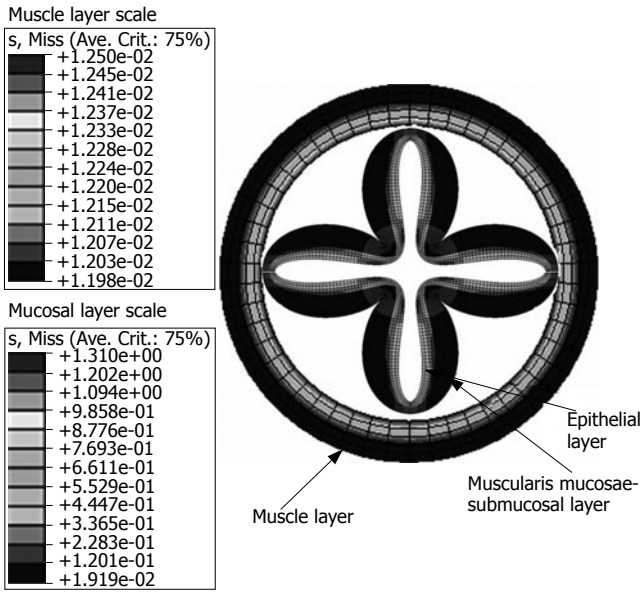


Figure 6 Mises stress (left) distribution in the mucosal folded three-layered esophagus at the bonded state.

In our 3D surface analysis, we generated the organ geometry based on 3-D ultrasound or MR images measurements. It is clear that GI organs such as the stomach, rectum, sigmoid colon and gall bladder have heterogeneous curvature distributions. Consequently, the geometry cannot be assumed spherical or cylindrical and that tension estimations based on Laplace's law are dubious because the geometry of the surface is complex. Two different methods were used for building 3D model and the surface approximation. By using the Fourier transform method the whole surface was reconstructed and smoothed simultaneously, i.e. the surface can be described theoretically and then the curvatures can be computed with good accuracy. However, it is difficult to describe all geometry characters in such complex GI organs by using only one function. Furthermore, the Fourier transform method can only be used on the surface generated from the horizontal cross sectional images. The analysis employed in these surface models produces large errors at both polar ends, especially to models with a curved center axis, such as the stomach, rectum or sigmoid colon. Since 3D solid model can be re-sliced in any direction, a new method for re-generating the 3-D surface

from the solid model was developed. By using the new method, all geometric characters can thus be kept in the surface model.

The major limitation of the surface analysis is the thin wall assumption. Thus only surfaces with positive principal curvatures in both directions could use Laplace's equation for tension and stress calculation. The finite element analysis or the finite difference method should be developed for further GI modeling analysis in the future. 3-D modeling based on cross-sectional imaging (CT, MRI and ultrasonography) has been used to characterize biomechanics and geometry in for instance the stomach[24,27], the rectum[26] cardiovascular system[38], and in computer-aided orthopedic surgery. The present analytical tool can be used to analyze complex structures for understanding biomechanical properties and visceral perception in other hollow visceral organs. The geometry and sensory aspects of diseases in the sigmoid colon (diverticular disease, irritable bowel syndrome, *etc.*), small bowel (motility disorders), stomach (motility disorders, non-ulcer dyspepsia, *etc.*) and esophagus (esophagitis, gastro-esophageal reflux disease, non-cardiac chest pain, *etc.*) can be obtained by applying a modified version of this method.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Dr. Elena Steffensen, Dr. Anette Bergmann for their contributions to the rectum and the sigmoid colon models, Prof T. Hausken for his contribution to the human stomach model and Prof G. Kassab for the Fourier Transform method development.

APPENDIX A

Surface smoothing based on the Fourier transform method

Arbitrary point in a given cross section of the surface can be expressed in a polar co-ordinate system as (r, θ, z), where r, θ and z are the polar radius, angle and section height with respect to the origin. Each point can be fitted using a Fourier series as

Math1

$$r(\theta) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{n=d} a_n \cos(n\theta) + \sum_{n=1}^{n=d} b_n \sin(n\theta) \qquad \text{(A1)}$$

where d denotes the degree of the Fourier series.

To approximate the Fourier coefficient as a function of the section height z, orthogonal polynomial were used as

$$a_i(z) = c_{0i} + c_{0i} z + c_{2i} z^2 + \cdots + c_{pi} z^p \qquad \text{(A2)}$$

where p is the degree of the polynomial and i is the index of the Fourier coefficient. The (r, θ, z) coordinates were described using vector rotation as

$$X(\theta, z) = (r(\theta, z)\cos(\theta), r(\theta, z)\sin(\theta), z) \qquad \text{(A3)}$$

where

Math2

$$r(\theta, z) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ \cos\theta \\ \cdots \\ \sin d\theta \end{bmatrix}^T \begin{bmatrix} c_{00} & \cdots & c_{p0} \\ c_{01} & \cdots & c_{p1} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ c_{0(2d+1)} & \cdots & c_{p(2d+1)} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ z \\ \cdots \\ z^p \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{(A4)}$$

Hence, all the information of the surface is contained in the coefficient matrix, i.e., the surface was now transformed from a three-dimensional Cartesian coordinates (x, y, z) to a two-dimensional local tangent plane coordinates system (θ, z), where the θ is the tangent direction corresponding to the circumferential muscle direction and z to the longitudinal muscle direction, respectively.

APPENDIX B

Surface smoothing based on modified non-shrinking Gaussian method

This smoothing algorithm consists of two consecutive Gaussian smoothing steps with a positive scale factor λ applied to all the vertices of the shape, a second Gaussian smoothing step applied to all the vertices but with a negative scale factor μ, greater in magnitude than the first scale factor ($0 < \lambda < -\mu$). To produce a significant smoothing effect, these two steps must be repeated, alternating the positive and negative scale factors, a number of times. The relation between the position of the vertices of the surface before and after N iteration can be expressed as

$$X^N = ((I - \mu K)(I - \lambda K))^N X \qquad \text{(B1)}$$

where N was the number of iterations, λ and μ are two scale factors, I is the $n_V \times n_V$ identity matrix, $K = I - W$, W is the weight matrix and n_V is the number of the neighborhood of a vertex. In fact this method produces a low pass filter effect. The two scale factors determine the pass band and the stop band.

REFERENCES

1 **Champion JK**, Delise N, Hunt T. Myenteric plexus in spastic motility disorders. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2001; **5**: 514-516
2 **Villadsen GE**, Storkholm JH, Hendel L, Vilstrup H, Gregersen H. Impedance planimetric characterization of esophagus in systemic sclerosis patients with severe involvement of esophagus. *Dig Dis Sci* 1997; **42**: 2317-2326
3 **van der Schaar PJ**, Lamers CB, Masclee AA. The role of the barostat in human research and clinical practice. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl* 1999; **230**: 52-63
4 **Whitehead WE**, Wald A, Diamant NE, Enck P, Pemberton JH, Rao SS. Functional disorders of the anus and rectum. *Gut* 1999; **45** Suppl 2: II55-II59
5 **Madoff RD**, Orrom WJ, Rothenberger DA, Goldberg SM. Rectal compliance: a critical reappraisal. *Int J Colorectal Dis* 1990; **5**: 37-40
6 **Thumshirn M**, Camilleri M, Choi MG, Zinsmeister AR. Modulation of gastric sensory and motor functions by nitrergic and alpha2-adrenergic agents in humans. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116**: 573-585
7 **Piessevaux H**, Tack J, Wilmer A, Coulie B, Geubel A, Janssens J. Perception of changes in wall tension of the proximal stomach in humans. *Gut* 2001; **49**: 203-208
8 **Distrutti E**, Azpiroz F, Soldevilla A, Malagelada JR. Gastric wall tension determines perception of gastric distention. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116**: 1035-1042
9 **Arhan P**, Devroede G, Danis K, Dornic C, Faverdin C, Persoz B, Pellerin D. Viscoelastic properties of the rectal wall in Hirschsprung's disease. *J Clin Invest* 1978; **62**: 82-87
10 **Ginzel KH**. [Studies on the mechanism of the peristaltic reflex of the guinea pig ileum]. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Exp Pathol Pharmakol* 1960; **238**: 104-106

11 **Sengupta JN**, Gebhart GF. Gastrointestinal afferent fibers and sensation. In: Johnson L, ed. *Physiology of the gastrointestinal tract*.New York: Raven Press, 1994: 483-519

12 **Gregersen H**, Kassab G. Biomechanics of the gastrointestinal tract. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 1996; **8**: 277-297

13 **Drewes AM**, Schipper KP, Dimcevski G, Petersen P, Andersen OK, Gregersen H, Arendt-Nielsen L. Multimodal assessment of pain in the esophagus: a new experimental model. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **283**: G95-103

14 **Dall FH**, Jørgensen CS, Houe D, Gregersen H, Djurhuus JC. Biomechanical wall properties of the human rectum. A study with impedance planimetry. *Gut* 1993; **34**: 1581-1586

15 **Petersen P**, Gao C, Rössel P, Qvist P, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Sensory and biomechanical responses to distension of the normal human rectum and sigmoid colon. *Digestion* 2001; **64**: 191-199

16 **Petersen P**, Gao C, Arendt-Nielsen L, Gregersen H, Drewes AM. Pain intensity and biomechanical responses during ramp-controlled distension of the human rectum. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48**: 1310-1316

17 **Drewes AM**, Petersen P, Rössel P, Gao C, Hansen JB, Arendt-Nielsen L. Sensitivity and distensibility of the rectum and sigmoid colon in patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2001; **36**: 827-832

18 **Dall FH**, Jørgensen CS, Djurhuus JC, Gregersen H. Biomechanical wall properties of the porcine rectum: a study using impedance planimetry. *Dig Dis* 1991; **9**: 347-353

19 **Takeda T**, Kassab G, Liu J, Puckett JL, Mittal RR, Mittal RK. A novel ultrasound technique to study the biomechanics of the human esophagus in vivo. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **282**: G785-G793

20 **Takeda T**, Kassab G, Liu J, Nabae T, Mittal RK. Effect of atropine on the biomechanical properties of the oesophageal wall in humans. *J Physiol* 2003; **547**: 621-628

21 **Takeda T**, Nabae T, Kassab G, Liu J, Mittal RK. Oesophageal wall stretch: the stimulus for distension induced oesophageal sensation. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 721-728

22 **Gregersen H**. Biomechanics of the Gastrointestinal Tract. London: Springer-Verlag, 2002: 77-105

23 **Barlow JD**, Gregersen H, Thompson DG. Identification of the biomechanical factors associated with the perception of distension in the human esophagus. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2002; **282**: G683-G689

24 **Liao D**, Gregersen H, Hausken T, Gilja OH, Mundt M, Kassab G. Analysis of surface geometry of the human stomach using real-time 3-D ultrasonography in vivo. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2004; **16**: 315-324

25 **Liao D**, Duch BU, Stødkilde-Jørgensen H, Zeng YJ, Gregersen H, Kassab GS. Tension and stress calculations in a 3-D Fourier model of gall bladder geometry obtained from MR images. *Ann Biomed Eng* 2004; **32**: 744-755

26 **Frøkjaer JB**, Liao D, Bergmann A, McMahon BP, Steffensen E, Drewes AM, Gregersen H. Three-dimensional biomechanical properties of the human rectum evaluated with magnetic resonance imaging. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2005; **17**: 531-540

27 **Liao D**, Zhao J, Gregersen H. Regional surface geometry of the rat stomach based on three-dimensional curvature analysis. *Phys Med Biol* 2005; **50**: 231-246

28 **Taubin G**. Geometric signal processing on polygonal meshes. In: Proc. EUROGRAPHICS: State of the Art Report (STAR), Interlaken, Switzerland (2000). Avaliable from: http://mesh.brown.edu/taubin/pdfs/taubin-eg00star.pdf

29 **Dierckx P**. Curve and Surface Fitting with Splines. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1993: 74-128

30 **Buist ML**, Cheng LK, Yassi R, Bradshaw LA, Richards WO, Pullan AJ. An anatomical model of the gastric system for producing bioelectric and biomagnetic fields. *Physiol Meas* 2004; **25**: 849-861

31 **Pullan A**, Cheng L, Yassi R, Buist M. Modelling gastrointestinal bioelectric activity. *Prog Biophys Mol Biol* 2004; **85**: 523-550

32 **Liao D**, Zhao J, Fan Y, Gregersen H. Two-layered quasi-3D finite element model of the oesophagus. *Med Eng Phys* 2004; **26**: 535-543

33 **Yang W**, Fung TC, Chian KS, Chong CK 3-D finite element model of the two-layered esophagus: The effects of residual strains and buckling of mucosa. Proceedings of the Second LASTED international conference. *Biomechanics* 2005: 194-199

34 **Ozaki N**, Sengupta JN, Gebhart GF. Mechanosensitive properties of gastric vagal afferent fibers in the rat. *J Neurophysiol* 1999; **82**: 2210-2220

35 **Page AJ**, Martin CM, Blackshaw LA. Vagal mechanoreceptors and chemoreceptors in mouse stomach and esophagus. *J Neurophysiol* 2002; **87**: 2095-2103

36 **Phillips RJ**, Powley TL. Tension and stretch receptors in gastrointestinal smooth muscle: re-evaluating vagal mechanoreceptor electrophysiology. *Brain Res Brain Res Rev* 2000; **34**: 1-26

37 **Gregersen H**, Christensen J. Gastrointestinal tone. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* 2000; **12**: 501-508

38 **Petrank YF**, Dong SJ, Tyberg J, Sideman S, Beyar R. Regional differences in shape and load in normal and diseased hearts studied by three dimensional tagged magnetic resonance imaging. *Int J Card Imaging* 1999; **15**: 309-321

S- Editor Pan BR **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2876-2883
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

REVIEW

Immune therapy including dendritic cell based therapy in chronic hepatitis B virus infection

Sk Md Fazle Akbar, Norio Horiike, Morikazu Onji

Sk Md Fazle Akbar, Norio Horiike, Morikazu Onji, Third Department of Internal Medicine, Ehime University School of Medicine, Ehime 791-0295, Japan
Supported by the Grant-in-Aid for Scientific Research from the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology, Japan to Sk. Md. Fazle Akbar, No. C17590651 and Morikazu Onji, No. C17590652
Correspondence to: Dr. Sk. Md. Fazle Akbar, PhD, Third Department of Internal Medicine, Ehime University School of Medicine, To on City, Ehime 791-0295, Japan. akbar@m.ehime-u.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-89-9605308 Fax: +81-89-9605310
Received: 2005-09-28 Accepted: 2005-10-26

Abstract

Hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection is a global public health problem. Of the approximately 2 billion people who have been infected worldwide, more than 400 million are chronic carriers of HBV. Considerable numbers of chronic HBV carriers suffer from progressive liver diseases. In addition, all HBV carriers are permanent source of this virus. There is no curative therapy for chronic HBV carriers. Antiviral drugs are recommended for about 10% patients, however, these drugs are costly, have limited efficacy, and possess considerable side effects.

Recent studies have shown that immune responses of the host to the HBV are critically involved at every stage of chronic HBV infection: (1) These influence acquisition of chronic HBV carrier state, (2) They are important in the context of liver damages, (3) Recovery from chronic HBV-related liver diseases is dependent on nature and extent of HBV-specific immune responses. However, induction of adequate levels of HBV-specific immune responses in chronic HBV carriers is difficult. During the last one decade, hepatitis B vaccine has been administered to chronic HBV carriers as a therapeutic approach (vaccine therapy). The present regimen of vaccine therapy is safe and cheap, but not so effective. A dendritic cell-based therapeutic vaccine has recently been developed for treating chronic HBV infection. In this review, we will discuss about the concept, scientific logics, strategies and techniques of development of HBV-specific immune therapies including vaccine therapy and dendritic cell-based vaccine therapy for treating chronic HBV infection.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Hepatitis B virus; Dendritic cells; Immune therapy; Vaccine therapy

Akbar SMF, Horiike N, Onji M. Immune therapy including dendritic cell based therapy in chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2876-2883

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2876.asp

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis B Virus (HBV) is a hepatotropic, noncytopathic, DNA virus which can cause acute as well as chronic infection. Chronic HBV infection remains a significant public health problem world-wide. It is estimated that there are at least 400 million HBV carriers in the world and that up to one million die annually due to HBV-associated liver diseases. Although the majority of the chronic HBV carriers may remain in an inactive phase associated with low viral replication and histological remission, a significant proportion will develop chronic hepatitis B (CHB), which is characterized by the presence of high viral replication, and chronic necroinflammation of the liver. Patients with CHB develop serious complications like liver cirrhosis (LC) and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). Indeed, all chronic HBV carriers are at higher risk for HCC when compared with general population; the risk becomes much higher when LC develops. In addition, all chronic HBV carriers (inactive HBV carrier, patients with CHB [both treated and untreated], patients with LC and HCC) are permanent and living sources of HBV. Presence of million of chronic HBV carrier is practically responsible for the incidence of acute and fulminant hepatitis due to HBV[1].

No specific treatment is provided to 90% of chronic HBV carrier ('do nothing strategy'). Antiviral drugs are recommended only for patients with high HBV replication and necroinflammatory liver diseases. These drugs include type-1 interferons (IFN) and nucleosides analogues such as lamivudine and adefovir. It is difficult to assess the real therapeutic impact of antiviral drugs in chronic HBV carriers. On one hand, these drugs are recommended in some selected patients with CHB. On the other hand, the response varies considerably depending on virological and immunological statuses of the patients. Finally, many terms such as complete responder, biological responder, virological responder, transient responder, and sustained responder are used to assess responses to antiviral drugs. In general, antiviral drugs exhibit some beneficial effects in about 20%-30% of treated patients. However, IFNs

are costly and a significant proportion of patients with CHB are not eligible for treatment due to various reasons. On the other hand, lamivudine may need life-long usage. Treatment with lamivudine gives rise to emergence of mutant HBV and breakthrough hepatitis in considerable numbers of patients with CHB[2,3]. These problems related to currently available anti-viral therapies necessitate the development of alternative therapeutic approaches for chronic HBV carriers.

HBV is a non cytopathic virus and the immune responses of the hosts to HBV are important in different aspects of HBV infection. Although the cellular and molecular mechanisms underlying host/HBV interactions are not completely understood, various evidences suggest that host immune responses may have dual role in chronic HBV carriers. In one hand, liver damages in chronic HBV carriers are initiated and maintained by host immune responses. On the other hand, recovery from chronic HBV carrier state is dependent on the intensity and nature of host immune responses[4,5]. Accordingly, induction or suppression of generalized or polyclonal immune responses in HBV carriers is not likely to have therapeutic potentials. In line of this, it has been shown that although chronic HBV carriers exhibit impaired T helper 1 (Th1) responses, Th1-inducing cytokines (interleukin (IL)-12 and IFN-gamma) possess no notable therapeutic effects in these patients[6].

Only recently, some investigators have shown functional differences of HBV-specific immune responses and non HBV-specific immune responses in chronic HBV infection. It appears that products of non HBV-specific immune responses are responsible for liver damages. On the other hand, HBV-specific immune responses possess antiviral potentials without inducing liver damage in chronic HBV carriers[7,8].

Although this indicates that induction of HBV-specific immune responses in chronic HBV carriers may have therapeutic effect, it is extremely difficult to achieve this *in vivo*. Indeed, this is a confusing task. All chronic HBV carriers harbor HBV DNA and all HBV-related antigens. However, they do not exhibit adequate levels of HBV-specific immune responses. Initially, it has been assumed that chronic HBV carriers may be tolerant to some HBV-related antigens such as hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg). However, recent studies have revealed that HBsAg-specific immune responses are present in chronic HBV carriers, although the magnitude of immune responses may not adequate to clear or suppress the virus in chronic HBV carriers[9,10]

ROLE OF IMMUNE RESPONSES DURING ACQUISITION AND PROGRESSION OF CHRONIC HBV INFECTION AND ALSO DURING RECOVERY

Two billion people of the world exhibit either present or past infection with HBV and about 400 million of them are chronically infected with HBV. This indicates that less than 20% HBV-infected persons become chronic HBV carriers. It is natural to ask why some persons become chronic HBV carriers, whereas, others control the virus after an acute infection. Again, it is not clear why some chronic HBV carriers do not show any evidence of liver diseases, whereas, others suffer from progressive liver diseases like CH, LC and HCC. Finally, it is elusive why some chronic HBV carriers recover spontaneously. Although the exact cellular and molecular mechanisms underlying these are not completely clear, experimental evidences indicate that viral factor alone do not influence the courses of HBV diseases. Acquisition of HBV carrier state, degrees of liver damages in chronic HBV carriers and recovery from HBV carrier state are not dependent on any particular viral factor such as the amounts of the HBV, genotypes of the HBV, mutations at certain region of the HBV or expression of certain proteins of the HBV[1,2]. Recent investigations have revealed that immune responses of the hosts to HBV may be important in this context (Table 1). Vertical transmission of HBV from HBV-infected mothers (especially hepatitis B e antigen-positive) to neonates usually results in chronic HBV carrier state. This may be related to the concept of 'Neonatal Tolerance' as described by Burnett *et al*[11]. On the other hand, this may be due to impaired functional capacities of neonatal antigen-presenting cells[12].

Table 1 Role of immune responses in chronic HBV carrier

	HBV carriers	Possible causes
A: Acquisition of chronic State	A: Neonates of HBV-carrier mothers B: Immune suppressed Individuals	Inability to induce HBV-specific immunity
B: Induction and Progression of Hepatitis	Chronic hepatitis B	Accumulation of non-specific lymphocytes
C: Recovery from chronic HBV infection	A: Natural recovery	A: Strong and multispecific
	B: Acute hepatitis C: By antiviral drugs	HBV-related immune responses B: Antiviral therapy effective in immune modulatory phase

Some chronic HBV carriers never show any feature of liver diseases during their life time, although they harbor the HBV from their birth day. On the other hand, considerable numbers of chronic HBV carriers exhibit features of necroinflammatory liver diseases. Many of them also suffer from progressive liver diseases such as LC and HCC. HBV is a non-cytopathic virus and it is assumed that HBV-specific HLA-class restricted cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) act as the principle event determining the intensity of liver damages[13]. However, recent studies indicate that direct destruction of hepatocytes by the CTLs may not the only or principle mechanism of liver damages in patients with CHB. A series of investigations have shown that most of the liver-infiltrating lymphocytes are not HBV-specific. Liver injury could occur as a consequence of large infiltrate of antigen non-specific mononuclear cells. Different types of proinflammatory

cytokines such as IFN-gamma and tumor necrosis factoralpha may be responsible for induction of liver damages because neutralization of these cytokines prevent liver damages in various experimental models of hepatitis[14].

Host immune responses are also important during recovery from chronic HBV carrier state. The HBV-specific immune responses are strong and multispecific in patients with acute hepatitis B who control the virus replication after an acute infection. On the other hand, these are narrowly focused, weak and mono-specific in chronic HBV carriers who are unable to control the virus[13]. This indicates that if proper immune responses against the HBV are initiated after HBV infection, the patients are likely to recover. This is also manifested by the fact that antiviral drugs are mostly effective in immunodulatory phase, but not in immunetolerant phase, of chronic HBV carriers[15].

DEVELOPMENT OF EVIDENCE-BASED IMMUNE THERAPY FOR CHRONIC HBV INFECTION

As described above, immune responses of the hosts to HBV play important roles during acquisition of chronic HBV infection, during progression of liver damages in chronic HBV carriers and also for recovery from chronic HBV carrier state. In this context, it is natural ask what is meant by 'immune response of the host' in chronic HBV infection. This is a very complex issue and this review is not primarily intended to give a detail account of cellular and molecular events related to this. Here, we will focus on HBV-related 'immune responses' those are relevant for developing immune therapy for chronic HBV carriers.

All chronic HBV carriers studied to date, even the immune competent adults who acquire HBV infection, display infrequent, narrowly-focused, and weak HBV-specific immune responses[13]. The purpose of immune therapy in patients with chronic HBV infection is aimed at induction of strong HBV-specific immune responses *in vivo*.

It has been assumed that HBV-specific CTLs are primarily responsible for clearance of HBV-infected hepatocytes in chronic HBV carriers. CTLs are thought to destroy HBV-infected hepatocytes by cytolytic mechanisms. However, the overall concept regarding CTL and their role in destroying virus-infected cells has been changed not only in the context of HBV infection but also in other viral infections. First, CTL is not the only effector cells capable of destroying HBV-infected hepatocytes. Rather, other cells of both innate and adaptive immune system such as HBV-specific CD4 T cells, natural killer cells, macrophages, and neutrophils may also regulate replication of HBV and destruction of hepatocytes[14]. The next, CTLs are not only committed to destroy HBV-infected cells by directly interacting with hepatocytes. Rather, one of the major functions of CTL is to produce various types of cytokines. Series of experiments by different investigators have sown that cytokines are able to induce destruction of HBV or reduced replication of HBV by a non cytopathic mechanism[5,14,16].

Moreover, both HBV-specific and non HBV-specific immune responses are seen in patients with CHB. Several investigators have shown that HBV-specific immune responses are needed for control of HBV replication. On the other hand, non HBV-specific immune responses may induce destruction of hepatocytes. Patients with CHB express high levels of proinflammatory cytokines and accumulation of mononuclear cells in the liver. Recently, it has been shown that most of these mononuclear cells are non HBV-specific[17,18].

Taken together, these features indicate that induction of immune responses is not the main target of immune therapy for chronic HBV carriers. Rather, induction and maintenance of HBV-specific immune responses may have therapeutic implications. The challenging issue is to accomplish this in patients with chronic HBV infection.

VACCINE THERAPY: INDUCTION OF HBV-SPECIFIC IMMUNE RESPONSES

As an approach to induce HBV-specific immune responses in chronic HBV carriers, vaccines containing HBsAg and/or other HBV-related antigens have been administered in patients with CHB. Dienstag *et al* have used hepatitis B vaccine in patients with CHB in early 1980s, however, that study has not been regarded as vaccine therapy because the purpose of that investigation was to evaluate induction of anti-HBs in chronic HBV carriers[19]. The first clinical trial of vaccine therapy was done by Pol *et al* in 1994[20]. Subsequently, clinical trials of vaccine therapy have been performed during last one decade (Table 2)[21-27]. Most of these studies were pilot studies. The present regimen of vaccine therapy has been well tolerated in patients with CHB. It has caused reduced HBV replication, seroconversion to anti-HBe and normalization of serum transaminases in some patients with CHB. However, there is no standard protocol of vaccine therapy. Vaccine therapy has mainly been conducted as pilot studies. All investigators have used their own protocol to perform vaccine therapy. Variable doses of HBsAg (10-20 micrograms) have been used. In some clinical trials, only HBsAg-containing vaccines were used, whereas, in others vaccines containing HBsAg plus preS1 and preS2 proteins were used. The numbers of immunization also varied among studies (3-12 times). Most importantly, there are no standard criteria to assess the response of vaccine therapy.

CAN VACCINE THERAPY STAND THE TASTE OF TIME?

The present regimen of vaccine therapy is unlikely to be an independent therapeutic approach for patients with CHB. A lot of works must be done regarding vaccine therapy. There should be randomized controlled trials of vaccine therapy in different countries. More studies are needed regarding optimum doses of vaccine, compositions of vaccine and numbers of immunization. This therapy is safe for human usage. No side effects of this therapy have yet been published. Vaccines are commercially available and comparatively cheaper. At present, therapeutic efficacy of vaccine therapy is not so satisfactory. But, that is not so important if we consider its future potentials. The concept

of vaccine therapy is unique. Treatment of chronic infection by inducing antigen-specific immune responses deserves attention. There are ample opportunities to improve the present regimen of vaccine therapy.

At present, it appears that the present regimen of vaccine therapy can be used in some specific patients with CHB such as in patients with anti-HBe positive CHB and patients with low levels of HBV replication. The next, vaccine therapy can be used in combination with other antiviral agents. Vaccine therapy can be started after using antiviral drugs for some times in patients with CHB. This may allow better action of this therapy due to decrease of HBV load by antiviral drugs. Again, vaccine therapy can be used first and then antiviral agents can be applied after induction of host immune responses by vaccine therapy. This may be manifested in better therapeutic potential of antiviral agents in CHB patients. We have recently reported a combination therapy of lamivudine and vaccine therapy in patients with CHB. All patients receiving combination therapy became negative for HBV DNA in the sera, whereas, only 56% patients with lamivudine monotherapy lost HBV DNA in the sera within 12 mo. Also, patients with combination therapy did not develop HBV DNA mutation or breakthrough hepatitis[28].

Table 2 Vaccine therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis B. The criteria of response to this therapy have been determined by individual investigators

Protocol	Response	Reference
HBsAg/pre S2, 3 times	Responders: 12 of 32 (38%)	Pol *et al*[20]
HBsAg/anti-HBs vaccine; 3 times	Responders: 9 of 15 (60%)	Wen *et al*[21]
PreS2/S, 3 times (controlled trial)	Responders: 18.8%	Pol *et al*[22]
HBsAg; 12 times	Responders (1 yr: 55%, 2 yr: 77%)	Horiike *et al*[23]
PreS2 vaccine; 3 times	Responders: 60%	Senturk *et al*[24]
S/pre S2; 6 times	Decreased HBV DNA	Ren *et al*[25]
HBsAg/preS2; 3 times	Immune tolerant phage: no significant change	Dikici *et al*[26]
PreS2; 3 times	anti-HBs; 3 of 31 cases	Yalcin *et al*[27]
Combination of lamivudine and HB vaccine	HBV DNA negativation in all 15 cases at 1 yr	Horiike *et al*[28]

DEVELOPMENT OF NEXT GENERATION VACCINE FOR TREATMENT OF CHRONIC HBV INFECTION

Vaccine therapy in patients with CHB was started without adequate discussions regarding its scientific validity and utility. Vaccine therapy was done without paying full attention to common consensuses of immunology and virology. It was surprising to most clinicians why administration of vaccine containing HBsAg in CHB patients will have therapeutic effect because all CHB patients have abundant amounts of HBsAg in the sera and the liver. Moreover, it has been assumed that HBsAg is a tolerogenic antigen in CHB patients. Also the mechanism of action of vaccine therapy in patients with CHB has not been properly analyzed. In general, new therapeutic approaches are usually tested in animal models of human diseases and then these are applied in patients. Vaccine therapy is an exceptional type of therapy. It was first done in patients with CHB without performing preclinical trials in animal models of chronic HBV infection.

In fact, there has been no good animal model of chronic HBV infection. Natural infection of the HBV is limited to some animals only. Lack of an animal model was a major limitation to study immune pathogenesis of chronic HBV infection. During 1980s, HBV transgenic mice (HBV-TM) were produced by microinjecting HBV genome into fertilized eggs of mice[29]. Naturally, there are many differences between HBV-TM and patients with CHB, but HBV-TM represent a suitable immunological animal model of HBV infection. We and others used HBV-TM to develop insights about HBV immunopathogenesis to study various cellular events those can not be investigated directly in human[29,30].

We used a line of HBV-TM that expressed HBsAg and HBV DNA in the sera. This HBV-TM also expressed HBV-related mRNAs in the liver[31]. HBV-TM did not express antibody to HBsAg (anti-HBs) and HBsAg-specific lymphocytes were not detected in HBV-TM. We showed that HBV-TM were unresponsiveness to HBsAg due to impaired function of antigen-presenting dendritic cells (DCs)[32]. Moreover, the immune response defects of HBV-TM were over come by activating endogenous DCs of HBV-TM[33,34]. Next, four controlled trials of vaccine therapy were conducted in HBV-TM. HBV-TM were immunized with vaccine containing HBsAg once in a month for 12 times. It was possible to induce both HBsAg-specific humoral and cellular immune responses in HBV-TM by administration of vaccine containing HBsAg[35-38]. Study on the mechanism of action of vaccine therapy revealed that vaccine therapy induced HBsAg-specific immune responses by activating autologous DCs[37]. Also, the functions of DCs prior to start of therapy had prognostic value during vaccine therapy[38].

DEVELOPMENT OF HBSAG-PULSED DC

DCs are essential for induction and maintenance of antigen-specific specific immune responses. DCs recognize antigens at the site of their localization. They internalize antigens and process them at their endosomal compartments. This leads to expression of antigenic peptides at the surface of DCs. These DCs migrate to lymphoid tissues and activate lymphocytes to become either CTL or CD4+ T cells or antibody-producing B cells[39,40].

During vaccine therapy in HBV-TM, vaccine containing HBsAg was administered to HBV carriers to induce HBsAg-specific immune responses. This was done with the assumption that DCs of HBV-TM will recognize injected HBsAg. Subsequently, HBsAg would be captured, internalized, and processed by DCs of HBV-TM. It was assumed that DCs would activate lymphocytes to induce HBsAg-specific immune responses (Figure 1). But, DCs of HBV-TM had impaired functional capacities and thus endogenous DCs of HBV-TM are not potent inducer of HBsAg-specific immune responses.

We postulated that a powerful regimen of vaccine therapy can be developed by loading DCs with HBsAg in vitro (HBsAg-pulsed DCs). If HBsAg-pulsed DCs exhibit markers of activation and maturation, HBsAg-pulsed DCs will be able to directly induce HBsAg-specific immune responses without any influence of endogenous DCs of chronic HBV carriers. Accordingly, we cultured murine spleen DCs and HBsAg together to produce HBsAg-pulsed DCs. HBsAg-pulsed DCs were more immunogenic than unpulsed DCs. Only two injections of HBsAg-pulsed DCs caused negativity of HBsAg from HBV-TM (Figure 2). HBV-TM injected with HBsAg-pulsed DCs also developed anti-HBs in the sera[41]. Administration of HBsAg-pulsed DCs also induced anti-HBs in immunosuppressed HBV-TM [42, 43].

TRANSLATION OF IMMUNOLOGICAL KNOWLEDGE FROM THE BENCHES TO PATIENT'S BEDSIDES

Wang *et al.* have first reported about functional impairment of DCs in patients with CHB[44]. Subsequently, we localized HBV DNA and HBV RNA in human blood DCs and also showed low IL-12 production capacity of DCs from CHB patients[45]. Similar data regarding functional defects of DCs of chronic HBV carriers have been reported by other investigators during the last 3 year[46,47]. These studies provided the scientific basis for developing DC-based therapy for patients with CHB.

We followed a very careful protocol to produce HBsAg-pulsed blood DCs for human usage[48]. DCs were enriched from human peripheral blood and cultured with HBsAg to prepare HBsAg-pulsed DCs. We used commercial vaccine as a source of HBsAg. The functional capacities of HBsAg-pulsed DCs were assessed *in vitro*. Next, HBsAg-pulsed DCs were administered to human volunteers. There was no features of inflammation, abnormal liver and kidney functions in any volunteers. No volunteer showed any features of autoantibody or autoimmune diseases. Administration of HBsAg-pulsed DCs induced anti-HBs antibody in all volunteers, although the levels of antibody varied among volunteers.

Then, a study was conducted to assess the safety of HBsAg-pulsed DCs in patients with CHB. We prepared DCs from peripheral blood of patients with CHB. Human blood DCs were cultured with HBsAg in commercial vaccine to prepare HBsAg-pulsed DCs. HBsAg-pulsed DCs were administered to patients with CHB. No adverse effects were detected in these patients. Recently, a group of researcher from China has used HBsAg-pulsed DCs for treating patients with CHB[49]. The data of their study is highly encouraging because HBsAg-pulsed DCs exhibited both antiviral and immune modulatory capacities in some patients with CHB. Moreover, they have reported that patients of CHB with normal transaminase levels may also be benefited from this therapy. Although the data of this study is highly stimulating, more information is necessary about the source of HBsAg and characterization of HBsAg-pulsed DCs. Also, detailed data about study protocol will allow undertaking more clinical trials of these therapeutic approaches.

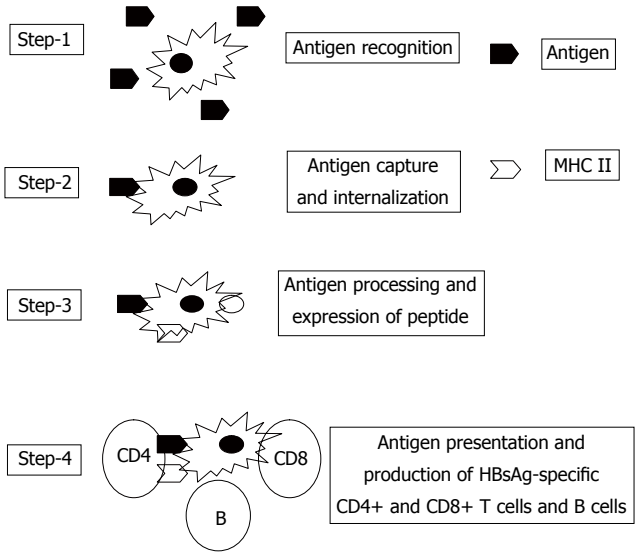


Figure 1 DC/antigen interactions have been shown in 4 steps. Three of these steps are accomplished *in vitro* (step 1-3) when HBsAg-pulsed DCs are prepared.

PRESENT AND FUTURE OF IMMUNE THERAPY AGAINST CHRONIC HBV INFECTION WITH AN EMPHASIS OF IT'S UTILITY IN DEVELOPING NATIONS

The life cycle of HBV, presence of cccDNA of HBV at hepatocytes, and existence of HBV at different extrahepatic sites are major obstacles for eliminating this virus from chronic HBV carriers. It is now apparent that complete eradication of the HBV from chronic HBV carriers may be an unachievable goal[2].

It is also evident that there should be different strategies of HBV control program in developed and developing nations of the world. Less than 10% of total HBV carriers live in developed countries. Moreover, both vertical and horizontal transmissions of HBV have effectively been controlled in most of these countries.

On the other hand, the health care delivery system and economic conditions of developing nations are completely different from those of developed nations, where more than 90% chronic HBV carriers reside. The public health measures are not well developed in most developing nations. Contaminated needles and syringes are used in many facilities, especially in rural areas. There are many chronic HBV carriers among professional blood donors. The numbers of drug abusers are increasing in many of these courtiers. Thus, the numbers of HBV carriers will remain unchanged or increase in most developing nations. China alone harbors about 130 million HBV carriers. Also, there are several million HBV carriers in India.

Regarding treatment, the medical infrastructures of most developed nations allow usage of costly antiviral drugs, regular follow up of treated patients, proper handling of complications and adequate approaches to fight against the mutant HBV. Newer nucleoside analogues are coming to the market. In future, combination therapy with different nucleoside analogues will mainly be used

in patients with CHB in most developed countries. In developed countries, national liver and gastroenterology associations update therapeutic regimens for chronic HBV infection from time to time.

However, usage of antiviral drugs in patients with chronic HBV infection and proper follow up of these patients are difficult in developing nations. IFNs can be afforded by a very small percentage of patients with CHB in these countries. Most of them are not aware of limitation of antiviral drugs in chronic HBV infection. It is generally told that antiviral drugs are effective in about 30% patients with CHB. However, antiviral drugs are recommended for only 10% patients with chronic HBV infection. These drugs are not recommended for majority of chronic HBV carriers. In most developing nations, there is no appropriate system to follow emergence of mutant HBV following lamivudine therapy.

Vaccine therapy in patients with CHB was first conducted in 1994. However, few randomized controlled trials of vaccine therapy have been conducted till now. This situation is different regarding clinical trials of antiviral drugs in developed countries. Antiviral drugs are developed by multinational companies. In contrary, vaccine therapy for chronic HBV carriers has been developed by scientists. This is a cheap therapeutic option for patients with CHB. It is also safe. Vaccine therapy may be popularized if data of controlled trials show their real potentialities. There should be randomized controlled trials of vaccine therapy in patients with CHB in developing countries.

One of the main purposes of immune therapy is to achieve what antiviral drugs could not accomplish in most chronic HBV carriers. The potentiality of vaccine therapy for treating chronic HBV carriers lies in its concept, not in its present ways of application. Truly speaking, this therapy is still in its infancy. Several clinical and experimental studies should be done to optimize protocols of vaccine therapy. At present, commercial vaccines contain HBsAg and/or other components of surface antigens such as preS and preS2 antigens are used in vaccine therapy against chronic HBV carriers. Vaccines containing hepatitis B core antigen or polymerase antigen can also be used in future for treating patients with CHB. However, the main problem is to get safe and human consumable forms of these antigens.

Till now, antigen-pulsed DCs have been used almost exclusively in patients with cancers. Although there are ample opportunities of using antigen-pulsed DCs in chronic infection, allergy and autoimmunity, very few investigators have tried to materialize this in nonmalignant patients. However, we have learnt many important lesions from DC-based therapy in patients with cancers. In the context of DC-based therapy, there is a need to get proper antigens. The next is about the method of preparation of immunogenic antigen-pulsed DCs. Culture of DCs and antigens may lead to production of immunogenic as well as tolerogenic DCs. Accordingly, it is needed to check the nature of antigen-pulsed DCs before administration those to patients. Again, safety is a major concern when antigen-pulsed DCs are administered to patients with chronic HBV infection. In contrast to patients with cancers, patients with chronic HBV infection are immune competent. Administration of antigen-pulsed DCs may induce autoimmunity in these patients.

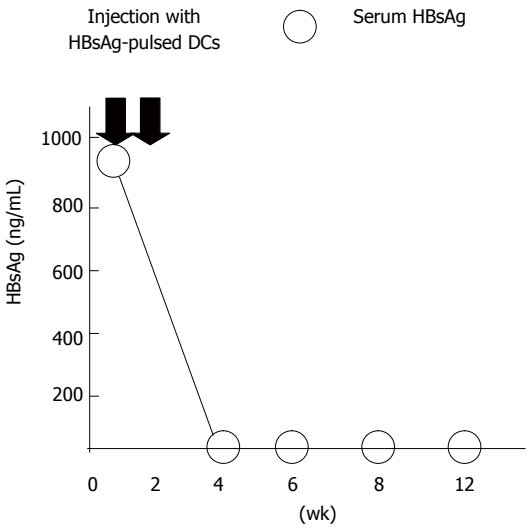


Figure 2 Potent immune modulatory capacity of HBsAg-pulsed DCs in HBV transgenic mice. HBV transgenic mice expressed HBsAg in the sera but not anti-HBs. After two injections of HBsAg-pulsed DCs, these mice became negative for HBsAg in the sera.

At present, clinical trials have been conducting with HBsAg-pulsed DCs. In future, hepatitis B core antigen-pulsed DCs may be used in patients with CHB. The major limitation is to get human grade HBV-related antigens. We used commercial vaccine containing HBsAg to pulse DCs with HBsAg. Chen *et al*[49] have used HBsAg-pulsed DCs in patients with CHB, but they have not mention about the source of HBsAg. The availability of GMP standard HBsAg and other HBV-related antigens will contribute significantly for conducting more clinical trials with antigen-pulsed DCs in patients with CHB. A major challenge will be to achieve GMP standard in developing nations for conducting cell-based therapies including DC-based therapy. This issue can be solved by establishing scientific collaboration among developing countries, developed countries and international agency like World Health Organization.

REFERENCES

1 **Fattovich G**. Natural history and prognosis of hepatitis B. *Semin Liver Dis* 2003; **23:** 47-58
2 **Fung SK**, Lok AS. Update on viral hepatitis in 2004. *Curr Opin Gastroenterol* 2005; **21:** 300-307
3 **Esteban R**. Management of chronic hepatitis B: an overview. *Semin Liver Dis* 2002; **22** Suppl 1: 1-6
4 **Bertoletti A**, Maini MK. Protection or damage: a dual role for the virus-specific cytotoxic T lymphocyte response in hepatitis B and C infection? *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2000; **3:** 387-392
5 **Rehermann B**. Immune responses in hepatitis B virus infection. *Semin Liver Dis* 2003; **23:** 21-38
6 **Sprengers D,** Janssen HL. Immunomodulatory therapy for chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Fundam Clin Pharmacol* 2005; **19:** 17-26
7 **Maini MK**, Boni C, Lee CK, Larrubia JR, Reignat S, Ogg GS, King AS, Herberg J, Gilson R, Alisa A, Williams R, Vergani D,

Naoumov NV, Ferrari C, Bertoletti A. The role of virus-specific CD8(+) cells in liver damage and viral control during persistent hepatitis B virus infection. *J Exp Med* 2000; **191:** 1269-1280

8 **Reignat S**, Webster GJ, Brown D, Ogg GS, King A, Seneviratne SL, Dusheiko G, Williams R, Maini MK, Bertoletti A. Escaping high viral load exhaustion: CD8 cells with altered tetramer binding in chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *J Exp Med* 2002; **195:** 1089-1101

9 **Maruyama T**, McLachlan A, Iino S, Koike K, Kurokawa K, Milich DR. The serology of chronic hepatitis B infection revisited. *J Clin Invest* 1993; **91**: 2586-2595

10 **Milich DR**, Sallberg M, Maruyama T. The humoral immune response in acute and chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *Springer Semin Immunopathol* 1995; **17**:149-166

11 **Burnet FM**, Stone JD, Edey M. The failure of antibody production in the chick embryo. *Aust J Exp Biol Med Sci* 1950; **28:** 291-297

12 **Matzinger P.** Tolerance, danger, and the extended family. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1994; **12:** 991-1045

13 **Chisari FV**, Ferrari C. Hepatitis B virus immunopathogenesis. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1995; **13**: 29-60

14 **Webster G**, Bertoletti A. Quantity and quality of virus-specific CD8 cell response: relevance to the design of a therapeutic vaccine for chronic HBV infection. *Mol Immunol* 2001; **38**: 467-473

15 **Boni C**, Bertoletti A, Penna A, Cavalli A, Pilli M, Urbani S, Scognamiglio P, Boehme R, Panebianco R, Fiaccadori F, Ferrari C. Lamivudine treatment can restore T cell responsiveness in chronic hepatitis B. *J Clin Invest* 1998; **102:** 968-975

16 **Guidotti LG**, Chisari FV. Noncytolytic control of viral infections by the innate and adaptive immune response. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2001;**19:** 65-91

17 **Bertoletti A**, Sette A, Chisari FV, Penna A, Levrero M, De Carli M, Fiaccadori F, Ferrari C: Natural variants of cytotoxic epitopes are T-cell receptor antagonists for antiviral cytotoxic T cells. *Nature* 1994; **369:** 407-410

18 **Maini MK**, Boni C, Ogg GS, King AS, Reignat S, Lee CK, Larrubia JR, Webster GJ, McMichael AJ, Ferrari C, Williams R, Vergani D, Bertoletti A. Direct ex vivo analysis of hepatitis B virus-specific CD8(+) T cells associated with the control of infection. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **117:** 1386-1396

19 **Dienstag JL**, Stevens CE, Bhan AK, Szmuness W. Hepatitis B vaccine administered to chronic carriers of hepatitis b surface antigen. *Ann Intern Med* 1982; **96:** 575-579

20 **Pol S**, Driss F, Michel ML, Nalpas B, Berthelot P, Brechot C. Specific vaccine therapy in chronic hepatitis B infection. *Lancet* 1994; **344:** 342

21 **Wen YM,** Wu XH, Hu DC, Zhang QP, Guo SQ. Hepatitis B vaccine and anti-HBs complex as approach for vaccine therapy. *Lancet* 1995; **345:** 1575-1576

22 **Pol S,** Nalpas B, Driss F, Michel ML, Tiollais P, Denis J, Brécho C. Efficacy and limitations of a specific immunotherapy in chronic hepatitis B. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34:** 917-921

23 **Horiike N**, Md Fazle Akbar S, Ninomiya T, Abe M, Michitaka K, Onji M. Activation and maturation of antigen-presenting dendritic cells during vaccine therapy in patients with chronic hepatitis due to hepatitis B virus. *Hepatol Res* 2002; **23:** 38-47

24 **Senturk H**, Tabak F, Akdogan M, Erdem L, Mert A, Ozaras R, Sander E, Ozbay G, Badur S. Therapeutic vaccination in chronic hepatitis B. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17:** 72-76

25 **Ren F**, Hino K, Yamaguchi Y, Funatsuki K, Hayashi A, Ishiko H, Furutani M, Yamasaki T, Korenaga K, Yamashita S, Konishi T, Okita K. Cytokine-dependent anti-viral role of CD4-positive T cells in therapeutic vaccination against chronic hepatitis B viral infection. *J Med Virol* 2003; **71:** 376-384

26 **Dikici B**, Kalayci AG, Ozgenc F, Bosnak M, Davutoglu M, Ece A, Ozkan T, Ozeke T, Yagci RV, Haspolat K. Therapeutic vaccination in the immunotolerant phase of children with chronic hepatitis B infection. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2003; **22:** 345-349

27 **Yalcin K**, Acar M, Degertekin H. Specific hepatitis B vaccine therapy in inactive HBsAg carriers: a randomized controlled trial. *Infection* 2003; **31:** 221-225

28 **Kumagi T,** Horiike N, Michitaka K, Hasebe A, Kawai K, Tokumoto Y, Nakanishi S, Furukawa S, Hiasa Y, Matsui H, Kurose K, Matsuura B, Onji M. Recent clinical features of Wilson's disease with hepatic presentation. *J Gastroenterol* 2004; **39:** 1165-1169

29 **Chisari FV**, Pinkert CA, Milich DR, Filippi P, McLachlan A, Palmiter RD, Brinster RL. A transgenic mouse model of the chronic hepatitis B surface antigen carrier state. *Science* 1985; **230:** 1157-1160

30 **Akbar SK**, Onji M. Hepatitis B virus (HBV)-transgenic mice as an investigative tool to study immunopathology during HBV infection. *Int J Exp Pathol* 1998; **79:** 279-291

31 **Araki K**, Miyazaki J, Hino O, Tomita N, Chisaka O, Matsubara K, Yamamura K. Expression and replication of hepatitis B virus genome in transgenic mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1989; **86:** 207-211

32 **Akbar SM,** Onji M, Inaba K, Yamamura K, Ohta Y. Low responsiveness of hepatitis B virus-transgenic mice in antibody response to T-cell-dependent antigen: defect in antigen-presenting activity of dendritic cells. *Immunology* 1993; **78:** 468-475

33 **Akbar SM**, Inaba K, Onji M. Upregulation of MHC class II antigen on dendritic cells from hepatitis B virus transgenic mice by interferon-gamma: abrogation of immune response defect to a T-cell-dependent antigen. *Immunology* 1996; **87:** 519-527

34 **Kurose K,** Akbar SM, Yamamoto K, Onji M. Production of antibody to hepatitis B surface antigen (anti-HBs) by murine hepatitis B virus carriers: neonatal tolerance versus antigen presentation by dendritic cells. *Immunology* 1997; **92:** 494-500

35 **Akbar SM**, Kajino K, Tanimoto K, Kurose K, Masumoto T, Michitaka K, Horiike N, Onji M. Placebo-controlled trial of vaccination with hepatitis B virus surface antigen in hepatitis B virus transgenic mice. *J Hepatol* 1997; **26:** 131-137

36 **Akbar SM**, Yamamoto K, Abe M, Ninomiya T, Tanimoto K, Masumoto T, Michitaka K, Horiike N, Onji M. Potent synergistic effect of sho-saiko-to, a herbal medicine, during vaccine therapy in a murine model of hepatitis B virus carrier. *Eur J Clin Invest* 1999; **29:** 786-792

37 **Akbar SM**, Abe M, Masumoto T, Horiike N, Onji M. Mechanism of action of vaccine therapy in murine hepatitis B virus carriers: vaccine-induced activation of antigen presenting dendritic cells. *J Hepatol* 1999; **30:** 755-764

38 **Akbar SK**, Horiike N, Onji M. Prognostic importance of antigen-presenting dendritic cells during vaccine therapy in a murine hepatitis B virus carrier. *Immunology* 1999; **96:** 98-108

39 **Banchereau J**, Steinman RM. Dendritic cells and the control of immunity. *Nature* 1998; **392:** 245-252

40 **Morikazu Onji**. Dendritic cells in clinics. Springer, 2004: 9-40

41 **Akbar SM,** Furukawa S, Hasebe A, Horiike N, Michitaka K, Onji M. Production and efficacy of a dendritic cell-based therapeutic vaccine for murine chronic hepatitis B virus carrierer. *Int J Mol Med* 2004; **14:** 295-299

42 **Furukawa S**, Akbar SM, Hasebe A, Horiike N, Onji M. Induction and maintenance of anti-HBs in immunosuppressed murine hepatitis B virus carriers by a novel vaccination approach: implications for use in hepatitis B virus-infected subjects with liver transplantation. *J Gastroenterol* 2004; **39:** 851-858

43 **Furukawa S,** Akbar SM, Hasebe A, Horiike N, Onji M. Production of hepatitis B surface antigen-pulsed dendritic cells from immunosuppressed murine hepatitis B virus carrier: evaluation of immunogenicity of antigen-pulsed dendritic cells in vivo. *Immunobiology* 2004; **209:** 551-557

44 **Wang FS**, Xing LH, Liu MX, Zhu CL, Liu HG, Wang HF, Lei ZY. Dysfunction of peripheral blood dendritic cells from patients with chronic hepatitis B virus infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2001; **7:** 537-541

45 **Arima S**, Akbar SM, Michitaka K, Horiike N, Nuriya H, Kohara M, Onji M. Impaired function of antigen-presenting dendritic cells in patients with chronic hepatitis B: localization of HBV DNA and HBV RNA in blood DC by in situ hybridization. *Int J Mol Med* 2003; **11:** 169-174

46 **Beckebaum S**, Cicinnati VR, Zhang X, Ferencik S, Frilling A, Grosse-Wilde H, Broelsch CE, Gerken G. Hepatitis B virus-induced defect of monocyte-derived dendritic cells leads to impaired T helper type 1 response in vitro: mechanisms for viral immune escape. *Immunology* 2003; **109:** 487-495

47 **van der Molen RG,** Sprengers D, Binda RS, de Jong EC, Niesters HG, Kusters JG, Kwekkeboom J, Janssen HL. Functional impairment of myeloid and plasmacytoid dendritic cells of patients with chronic hepatitis B. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 738-746
48 **Fazle Akbar SM**, Furukawa S, Onji M, Murata Y, Niya T, Kanno S, Murakami H, Horiike N. Safety and efficacy of hepatitis B surface antigen-pulsed dendritic cells in human volunteers. *Hepatol Res* 2004; **29:** 136-141
49 **Chen M,** Li YG, Zhang DZ, Wang ZY, Zeng WQ, Shi XF, Guo Y, Guo SH, Ren H. Therapeutic effect of autologous dendritic cell vaccine on patients with chronic hepatitis B: a clinical study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11:** 1806-1808

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Kumar M **E- Editor** Cao L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2884-2889
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

REVIEW

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in prevention of gastric cancer

Yun Dai, Wei-Hong Wang

Yun Dai, Wei-Hong Wang, Department of Gastroenterology, First Hospital, Peking University, Beijing 100034, China
Correspondence to: Wei-Hong Wang, MD, Department of Gastroenterology, First Hospital, Peking University, Beijing 100034, China. wh2581@sohu.com
Telephone: +86-10-66551122-2581 Fax: +86-10-66518105
Received: 2005-07-18 Accepted: 2005-12-05

Abstract

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) including cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2) selective inhibitors, are potential agents for the chemoprevention of gastric cancer. Epidemiological and experimental studies have shown that NSAID use is associated with a reduced risk of gastric cancer although many questions remain unanswered such as the optimal dose and duration of treatment. The possible mechanisms for the suppressor effect of NSAIDs on carcinogenesis are the ability to induce apoptosis in epithelial cells and regulation of angiogenesis. Both COX-dependent and COX-independent pathways have a role in the biological activity of NSAIDs. Knowledge of how NSAIDs prevent neoplastic growth will greatly aid the design of better chemopreventive drugs and novel treatments for gastric cancer.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key Words: Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; Gastric cancer; Cyclooxygenase; Prevention; Intervention

Dai Y, Wang WH. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in prevention of gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2884-2889

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2884.asp

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer is a major cause of death in the world. However, the etiology of gastric cancer is not fully understood. Although early diagnosis and treatment of gastric cancer significantly improve prognosis[1,2], the 5-year survival rate is only 10%-15% in those with advanced disease[3]. Therefore, the primary prevention of gastric cancer is of particular importance. Several studies have shown that human gastric carcinoma expresses significantly higher levels of cyclooxygenase (COX)-2 than non-cancerous adjacent mucosa[4], suggesting that COX-2 plays a possible role in gastric carcinogenesis. Numerous observations and clinical studies have suggested that the use of NSAIDs is associated with reduced incidence of gastric cancer[5-8]. NSAIDs, particularly the highly selective COX-2 inhibitors, are promising chemopreventive agents[9-12].

Although the effects of NSAIDs on gastric cancer remain unclear, both COX-dependent and independent mechanisms may have roles in the biological activity of NSAIDs. In this review, we concentrate on the use of NSAIDs for gastric cancer prevention and the underlying mechanisms. Furthermore, we also suggest research opportunities on clinical application of NSAIDs for gastric cancer prevention.

NSAIDS AND GASTRIC CANCER

Epidemiological evidence

There are indications, although still limited and preliminary, of a protective effect of NSAIDs on gastric cancers. The risk of gastric cancer is reduced, though not significantly, in the Swedish[13] cohorts of patients with rheumatoid arthritis, with the relative risk (RR) of 0.63 (95%CI = 0.5 to 0.9) for NSAID users. In the American Cancer Society cohort, there is a significant reduction in the risk of death for gastric cancer in aspirin users (RR = 0.64, 95%CI = 0.51 to 0.80). In addition, a dose-dependent trend in risk reduction has been observed, with the RR of 0.73 (95%CI = 0.56 to 0.96) for occasional use (1-15times per month) and 0.49 (95%CI = 0.33 to 0.74) for use 16 or more times per month[5]. With regard to case-control studies, in an American study of cancers of the esophagus and stomach, based on 261 adenocarcinomas of the cardia, 368 noncardia and 695 population controls, current aspirin users have a lower risk for noncardia cancer (RR = 0.46, 95%CI = 0.31 to 0.68), but not for cardia cancer (RR = 0.80, 95%CI = 0.54 to 1.19) when compared to never users. However, there is no significant trend for the risk reduction of gastric cancer with the frequency and the duration of aspirin use[6]. A case-control study from Russia was conducted on 448 gastric cancer cases and 610 hospital controls. The use of aspirin is significantly associated with a risk reduction for the development of gastric cancer (RR = 0.49, 95%CI = 0.31 to 0.77), although the favorable effect seems to be limited for patients with noncardia cancer and *Helicobacter pylori* (*H pylori*) infection[7]. Another case-control study from Sweden, conducted on 567 cases

and 1165 hospital controls, reported that users of aspirin have a moderately reduced risk of gastric cancer compared to never users (RR = 0.7, 95% CI: 0.6 to 1.0), and gastric cancer risk falls with the increasing frequency of aspirin use. Moreover, the risk reduction is statistically significant not only for cardia but also for noncardia cancer, and is slightly more marked in patients with *H pylori* infection[8].

However, there are several limitations for the above observational studies. First, the small number of cases may result in inadequate statistical power[7,8,15]. Second, the choice of control subjects in case-control studies may distort the results because hospital-based controls can not represent population-based controls[16]. Third, different definition of drug exposure and different doses of drugs have been evaluated in these studies. Therefore, the optimal duration and dose of treatment could not be recommended from these studies.

A recent systematic review with meta-analysis of nine observational studies evaluating the association between NSAID use and the risk of gastric cancer suggested that long-term use of aspirin or other NSAIDs is associated with a statistically significant, dose-dependent reduction in the risk of gastric cancer (OR = 0.78, 95%CI = 0.69 to 0.87). When the analysis is stratified by the site of gastric cancer, use of NSAIDs is associated with a statistically significant lower risk for noncardia gastric cancer (OR = 0.72, 95%CI = 0.58 to 0.89), but not for gastric cancer at the cardia. However, whether the minimum effective duration of NSAID use can reduce gastric cancer risk remains undetermined because of the relatively small number of studies, the use of different cut-off time points of treatment duration, and varying definitions of drug exposure[14]. More prospective studies are needed to clarify whether a duration effect exists in the relationship between NSAID use and gastric cancer risk.

Animal models and in vitro studies

The results obtained from animal models evaluating the effect of NSAIDs on gastric cancer have been conflicting. Two studies on animal models of carcinogens suggested that NSAIDs (aspirin and flurbiprofen) could enhance chemical-induced gastric carcinogenesis in rats[17,18], indicating that prostglandins (PGs) produced by the gastric mucosa protect against the action of carcinogens in this rodent model. In contrast, broad anticarcinogenic effects of NSAIDs have been demonstrated both *in vivo* using laboratory animals and *in vitro* using cancer cell lines. Chemically-induced gastric tumors can be reduced by aspirin[19], indomethacin[20], sulindac and ibuprofen[21] in mice. Sawaoka *et al*[22] have investigated the effects of NS-398, a selective COX-2 inhibitor, or indomethacin, a non-selective COX-2 inhibitor, on the growth of gastric cancer xenografts *in vivo*. Both drugs could reduce the tumor volume significantly in a dose-dependent manner. Fu *et al*[23] also found that sulindac and celecoxib obviously decrease the blood vessel quantity and tumor size of SGC7901 cancer xenografts. In a recent study Hu *et al*[24] showed that treatment with celecoxib could suppress MNNG-induced gastric cancer in rats. Indomethacin, sulindac and NS-398 significantly inhibit the proliferation and growth of human gastric cancer cell line MKN28 *in vitro*[25,26].

POSSIBLE MECHANISMS OF CANCER PREVENTION

The results described above provide convincing evidence that non-selective NSAIDs and selective COX-2 inhibitors can inhibit gastric cancer cell formation and growth. However, the molecular basis for the striking chemo-preventive effects has not been fully clarified. Several studies indicate that COX-2 expression is a relatively early event during carcinogenesis in the stomach[27-30]. The best known target of NSAIDs is COX, the rate limiting enzyme in the conversion of arachidonic acid to prostanoids. Thus, the chemo-preventive effects of NSAIDs on gastric cancer may be attributed to inhibition of COX and the resulting decrease in production of PGs[31-33]. However, there are several studies that conflict with this observation. For example, NSAID derivates that lack the ability to inhibit COX (sulindac sulfone) have been shown to inhibit gastrointestinal tumor growth *in vivo* and *in vitro*[34-37]. COX-1 and COX-2 null mouse embryofibroblast cells remain sensitive to the anti-proliferative and anti-neoplastic effects of NSAIDs[38]. Furthermore, the concentration of NSAIDs that inhibits the growth of cancer cells *in vitro* is 10-100 times higher than that required to inhibit COX activity, suggesting the existence of additional cellular targets.

Induction of apoptosis

A substantial body of evidence now supports the idea that the induction of programmed cell death (apoptosis) is one of the main ways by which NSAIDs prevent cancer in a COX-2 dependent manner or a COX-2 independent manner.

COX 2-dependent mechanisms

One of the primary pharmacological properties of the NSAIDs is their ability to inhibit the COX. Analysis of COX expression has shown that COX-2 is increased in gastric cancer, but not in normal mucosa[4,39-42]. These findings support the idea that COX-2 over-expression is important during gastric carcinogenesis. In addition, over-expression of COX-2 can increase production of PGE2, adhesion to the extra-cellular matrix, concentrations of BCL2, and reduce TGF-2 receptor expression and E-cadherin protein. All these changes, which suggest an increased tumorigenic potential, support the notion that COX-2 overexpression alters the biology of cells and plays a part in the transformation process[43,44]. The question of how COX-2 inhibition induces apoptosis has been hotly debated. Several studies have suggested that decreased COX-2 activity can reduce eicosanoids such as the PGs, and in turn affect cell proliferation and apoptosis[45]. So far, there is no definitive evidence that supports the existence of a signaling pathway through which PGs can directly affect apoptosis. However, specific observations provide some clues and warrant mention here. The peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors (PPARs), a family of ligand-activated transcription factors comprising a subset within the steroid receptor family of intracellular receptors, have been shown to modulate the apoptotic response of various cell types[46,47]. It is conceivable that certain COX-2

products may be physiological ligands for the PPARs. Thus, it is hypothesized that PPARs are downstream of COX-2 in gastric carcinogenesis and may play a part in NSAIDs-mediated antineoplastic effects[48-50].

Arachidonic acid may also provide a mechanism underlying COX-2-dependent NSAIDs-induced apoptosis. Arachidonic acid is produced by hydrolysis of phospholipids and triglycerides. The phospholipase A2 cleaves phospholipids and releases arachidonic acid into the cytosol. Once released, it serves as a precursor for PGs production and is a signaling molecule in its own right. Treatment with various NSAIDs results in inhibition of COX-2 and a dramatic increase in the concentration of arachidonic acid, the main substrate for COX-2[45,51]. This buildup of arachidonic acid stimulates the sphingomyelinase to convert sphingomyelin to ceramide, a potent inducer of apoptosis[52-55]. Other studies have shown that the cellular concentration of arachidonic acid is a general mechanism by which apoptosis is regulated[56-59]. It seems that arachidonic acid can alter mitochondrial permeability and cause cytochrome C release, leading to apoptosis[58,60].

COX 2-independent mechanisms

Several recent observations cast doubt on the idea that COX is the sole target of NSAID action. The finding that some NSAIDs can inhibit proliferation and induce cell death in cells that do not express COX, suggests that other targets may play a part in NSAIDs-mediated apoptosis[61].

One potential mechanism involves the transcription factor NF-κB, which promotes cell survival and enhances proliferation. Several investigators have suggested that NSAIDs could promote apoptosis by inhibiting NF-κB signaling pathway[62-64]. The effect that seems to be due to its ability to inhibit the activity of IκB kinase β (IKKβ), an enzyme that activates the NF-κB pathway by phosphorylating the inhibitory subunit of NF-κB (IκB-α) and targeting it for destruction. Subsequently, genes required for cancer cell growth and survival may not be transcribed[65]. Furthermore, Yasui *et al*[66] reported that sulindac inhibits TNF-α-mediated NF-κB activation and greatly sensitizes human gastric cancer cell line MKN45 to TNF-α. The study data strongly suggest that combination therapy of TNF-alpha with sulindac may sensitize tumor cells to TNF-α and augment its proapoptotic potential. Moreover, Wong *et al*[67] showed that SC236, a selective COX-2 inhibitor, could inhibit NF-κB mediated gene transcription and binding activity in gastric cancer. This effect occurs through a mechanism independent of COX activity and PG synthesis. Furthermore, unlike aspirin, SC236 affects neither the phosphorylation, degradation, nor the expression of IκB-α, suggesting that the effects of SC236 are independent of IKK activity and IκB-α gene transcription. Instead, SC236 works directly through suppressing the nuclear translocation of RelA/p65. It is possible that SC236 directly targets proteins that facilitate the nuclear translocation of NF-κB[67].

The role of protein kinase C (PKC) and apoptosis-related oncogenes has also attracted more attention. Zhu *et al*[68] showed that both aspirin and indomethacin induce apoptosis in gastric cancer cells which may be mediated by up-regulation of *c-myc* proto-oncogene. PKC activation can abrogate the effects of NSAIDs by decreasing *c-myc* expression. Jiang *et al*[69] also showed that SC-236 induces apoptosis in AGS cells. SC-236 down-regulates the protein expression and kinase activity of PKC-β(1) in AGS cells, which provides an explanation for COX-independent apoptotic effects of selective COX-2 inhibitors in cultured gastric cancer cells. They also suggested that PKC-β(1) acts as a survival mediator in gastric cancer. Down-regulation of PKC-β(1) by SC-236 may provide new targets for future treatment of gastric cancer[69].

Furthermore, it was reported that the pro-apoptotic proteins Bax and Bak play a role in NSAIDs-induced gastric cancer cell apoptosis[70], suggesting that one of the major pathways mediating the anti-tumor response of aspirin and indomethacin in gastric cancer cells is through the up-regulation of Bax and Bak and activation of caspase-3.

Besides, Wu *et al*[71] demonstrated that SC-236 induces apoptosis in gastric cancer cells via the up-regulation of 15-lipoxygenase-1 (15-LOX-1), and increases endogenous 13-S-hydroxyoctadecadienoic acid (13-S-HODE), a novel target for chemoprevention effect of NSAIDs.

Regulation of angiogenesis

It is now clear that angiogenesis is critical for the progression of most human cancers[72]. Angiogenesis is a complex process controlled by a balance of angiogenic and angiostatic factors involved in multiple pathways that result in endothelial cell proliferation, differentiation, and organization into a functional network of vascular channels. Among the reported angiogenic factors, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) is the most powerful endothelial cell specific mitogen that plays a key role in the complicated process of angiogenesis.

COX-2 has been shown to directly promote angiogenesis in several different experimental systems[73,74]. Masferrer *et al*[80] have examined more than 150 samples of different types of human cancers and found that COX-2 is present in the angiogenic vasculature in most of the tumors analyzed. Therefore, COX-2-derived PGs contribute to tumor growth by inducing newly formed blood vessels that sustain tumor cell viability and growth. Furthermore, xenografts of COX-2 over-expressing gastric cancer, when implanted into nude mice, express angiogenic factors in a COX-2-dependent manner, and both angiogenesis and tumor growth can be inhibited in these mice by administration of NSAIDs[23,78].

COX-2 expression has been shown to correlate with microvessel density (MVD), an accepted histologic marker of tumor angiogenesis in several different human malignancies, including gastric cancer[30]. Recent years, the relationships between COX-2 expression, VEGF expression, tumor angiogenesis, and outcome parameters in gastric cancer patients have been reported[75-77]: COX-2 expression significantly correlates with VEGF, and the colocalization of these proteins is most frequent at the advancing edge of cancer cells[75]. MVD is higher in COX-2 and VEGF positive cases than in COX-2 and VEGF negative cases[76]. Co-expression of COX-2 and VEGF, age, lymph node status, and serosal invasion are

independent prognostic factors for overall survival in gastric cancer patients[77].

Interestingly, COX-1, the other isozyme expressed in tumor vascular endothelia, participates in tumor angiogenesis, because an anti-sense oligonucleotide of COX-1 suppresses *in vitro* angiogenesis induced by COX-2-overexpressing cells. Non-specific COX inhibitors reduce the growth and angiogenesis in cancer xenografts by inhibiting COX-1 in vascular endothelial cells, even when the tumor does not express COX-2. These results demonstrate that COX inhibitors suppress angiogenesis and tumor growth by inhibiting expression of angiogenic factors and vascular endothelial cell migration[79].

COX-2 expression and H pylori infection

H pylori infection is also a strong risk factor for the development of gastric cancer via the pathway of atrophy, intestinal metaplasia and dysplasia in chronic infection. Infection with *H pylori* up-regulates mediators of the inflammatory response, leading to the production of inflammatory cytokines and PGs which themselves may suppress cell-mediated immune responses and promote angiogenesis. These factors may also have effects on cell growth and survival signaling pathways, resulting in induction of cell proliferation and inhibition of apoptosis[81].

H pylori up-regulates COX-2 mRNA expression and PGE_2 synthesis in gastric cancer cells[82], and both pre-malignant and malignant gastric lesions demonstrate high COX-2 expression levels[83]. Therefore, *H pylori*-induced gastric carcinogenesis may be associated with the elevated expression of COX-2 in gastric epithelium. It is possible that NSAIDs may inhibit the replication and proliferation of *H pylori*[84,85], neutralize the increased COX-2 expression and PG synthesis and reverse the increased apoptosis and proliferation of epithelial cells associated with *H pylori* infection[86,89], thereby reducing the risk of gastric cancer[90,91]. Experimental models of cell proliferation have also shown that, in hyperplastic gastritis in the murine model infected with *H pylori*, treatment with etodolac could significantly decrease PGE_2 production and the thickness of gastric pits in the infected groups[87].

Whether eradication of *H pylori* can prevent gastric cancer remains contradictory. COX-2 expression remains in gastric epithelium even after successful eradication of *H pylori*[88]. This may suggest that combined treatment of COX-2 inhibitors and *H pylori* infection may be more useful in eliminating *H pylori*-induced COX-2 expression than either anti-*H pylori* antibiotics or COX-2 inhibitors alone. This issue deserves further study.

CONCLUSIONS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Combining the evidence from humans, animal models and cell culture systems can establish the targeted inhibition of COX-2 was a viable approach to gastric cancer prevention and/or treatment. However, despite these successes, many questions remain unanswered such as the optimal dose and duration of treatment. Selective COX-2 inhibitors, which have an advantage of minimizing the gastrointestinal side-effects, have received wide attention. An exciting area for future investigation is to investigate whether COX-2 inhibitors can be used in the treatment of patients who have preneoplastic gastric lesions or suffer from gastric cancer, and whether combination therapy with COX-2 inhibitors and the drugs targeting other oncogenic pathways can lead to improved clinical outcomes.

REFERENCES

1 **Popiela T,** Kulig J, Kolodziejczyk P, Sierzega M. Long-term results of surgery for early gastric cancer. *Br J Surg* 2002; **89:** 1035-1042

2 **Forman D,** Morris E, Eastwood A, Kleijnen J. Guidelines for treatment of upper gastrointestinal cancer. *Lancet* 2003; **361:** 80

3 **Maruyama M.** Treatment results of gastric cancer staged by the TNM classification. In: Maruyama M, Kimura K, editors. Review of clinical research in gastroenterology. Tokyo (Japan): Igaku-Shoin,1998: 112

4 **Ristimäki A,** Honkanen N, Jänkälä H, Sipponen P, Härkönen M. Expression of cyclooxygenase-2 in human gastric carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 1997; **57:** 1276-1280

5 **Thun MJ,** Namboodiri MM, Calle EE, Flanders WD, Heath CW Jr. Aspirin use and risk of fatal cancer. *Cancer Res* 1993; **53:** 1322-1327

6 **Farrow DC,** Vaughan TL, Hansten PD, Stanford JL, Risch HA, Gammon MD, Chow WH, Dubrow R, Ahsan H, Mayne ST, Schoenberg JB, West AB, Rotterdam H, Fraumeni JF Jr, Blot WJ. Use of aspirin and other nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and risk of esophageal and gastric cancer. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 1998; **7:** 97-102

7 **Zaridze D,** Borisova E, Maximovitch D, Chkhikvadze V. Aspirin protects against gastric cancer: results of a case-control study from Moscow, Russia. *Int J Cancer* 1999; **82:** 473-476

8 **Akre K,** Ekström AM, Signorello LB, Hansson LE, Nyrén O. Aspirin and risk for gastric cancer: a population-based case-control study in Sweden. *Br J Cancer* 2001; **84:** 965-968

9 **Husain SS,** Szabo IL, Tamawski AS. NSAID inhibition of GI cancer growth: clinical implications and molecular mechanisms of action. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97:** 542-553

10 **Baron JA,** Sandler RS. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and cancer prevention. *Annu Rev Med* 2000; **51:** 511-523

11 **Vainio H,** Morgan G. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and chemoprevention of cancer. *Ann Chir Gynaecol* 2000; **89:** 173-176

12 **Jolly K,** Cheng KK, Langman MJ. NSAIDs and gastrointestinal cancer prevention. *Drugs* 2002; **62:** 945-956

13 **Gridley G,** McLaughlin JK, Ekbom A, Klareskog L, Adami HO, Hacker DG, Hoover R, Fraumeni JF Jr. Incidence of cancer among patients with rheumatoid arthritis. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1993; **85:** 307-311

14 **Wang WH,** Huang JQ, Zheng GF, Lam SK, Karlberg J, Wong BC. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug use and the risk of gastric cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2003; **95:** 1784-1791

15 **Schreinemachers DM,** Everson RB. Aspirin use and lung, colon, and breast cancer incidence in a prospective study. *Epidemiology* 1994; **5:** 138-146

16 **Wacholder S,** Silverman DT, McLaughlin JK, Mandel JS. Selection of controls in case-control studies. II. Types of controls. *Am J Epidemiol* 1992; **135:** 1029-1041

17 **Newberne PM,** Charnley G, Adams K, Cantor M, Suphakarn V, Roth D, Schrager TF. Gastric carcinogenesis: a model for the identification of risk factors. *Cancer Lett* 1987; **38:** 149-163

18 **Takahashi M,** Kokubo T, Furukawa F, Kurokawa Y, Hayashi Y. Effects of sodium chloride, saccharin, phenobarbital and aspirin on gastric carcinogenesis in rats after initiation with N-methyl-N'-nitro-N-nitrosoguanidine. *Gann* 1984; **75:** 494-501

19 **Bespalov VG,** Troian DN, Petrov AS, Aleksandrov VA. [The inhibition of esophageal tumor development by the use of the nonsteroidal and steroidal anti-inflammatory preparations indomethacin and dexamethasone]. *Farmakol Toksikol* 1989; **52:**

67-70
20 **Tanaka T,** Kojima T, Yoshimi N, Sugie S, Mori H. Inhibitory effect of the non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug, indomethacin on the naturally occurring carcinogen, 1-hydroxyanthraquinone in male ACI/N rats. *Carcinogenesis* 1991; **12:** 1949-1952
21 **Jalbert G,** Castonguay A. Effects of NSAIDs on NNK-induced pulmonary and gastric tumorigenesis in A/J mice. *Cancer Lett* 1992; **66:** 21-28
22 **Sawaoka H,** Kawano S, Tsuji S, Tsujii M, Gunawan ES, Takei Y, Nagano K, Hori M. Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors suppress the growth of gastric cancer xenografts via induction of apoptosis in nude mice. *Am J Physiol* 1998; **274:** G1061-G1067
23 **Fu SL,** Wu YL, Zhang YP, Qiao MM, Chen Y. Anti-cancer effects of COX-2 inhibitors and their correlation with angiogenesis and invasion in gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2004; **10:** 1971-1974
24 **Hu PJ,** Yu J, Zeng ZR, Leung WK, Lin HL, Tang BD, Bai AH, Sung JJ. Chemoprevention of gastric cancer by celecoxib in rats. *Gut* 2004; **53:** 195-200
25 **Husain SS,** Szabo IL, Pai R, Soreghan B, Jones MK, Tarnawski AS. MAPK (ERK2) kinase--a key target for NSAIDs-induced inhibition of gastric cancer cell proliferation and growth. *Life Sci* 2001; **69:** 3045-3054
26 **Wu YL,** Sun B, Zhang XJ, Wang SN, He HY, Qiao MM, Zhong J, Xu JY. Growth inhibition and apoptosis induction of Sulindac on Human gastric cancer cells. *World J Gastroenterol* 2001; **7:** 796-800
27 **Yamagata R,** Shimoyama T, Fukuda S, Yoshimura T, Tanaka M, Munakata A. Cyclooxygenase-2 expression is increased in early intestinal-type gastric cancer and gastric mucosa with intestinal metaplasia. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **14:** 359-363
28 **van Rees BP,** Saukkonen K, Ristimäki A, Polkowski W, Tytgat GN, Drillenburg P, Offerhaus GJ. Cyclooxygenase-2 expression during carcinogenesis in the human stomach. *J Pathol* 2002; **196:** 171-179
29 **Ohno R,** Yoshinaga K, Fujita T, Hasegawa K, Iseki H, Tsunozaki H, Ichikawa W, Nihei Z, Sugihara K. Depth of invasion parallels increased cyclooxygenase-2 levels in patients with gastric carcinoma. *Cancer* 2001; **91:** 1876-1881
30 **Honjo S,** Kase S, Osaki M, Ardyanto TD, Kaibara N, Ito H. Cyclooxygenase-2 expression in human gastric tubular adenomas and carcinomas; correlation with intratumoral microvessel density and apoptotic index. *Anticancer Res* 2004; **24:** 1439-1444
31 **Prescott SM,** White RL. Self-promotion? Intimate connections between APC and prostaglandin H synthase-2. *Cell* 1996; **87:** 783-786
32 **Chen CN,** Sung CT, Lin MT, Lee PH, Chang KJ. Clinicopathologic association of cyclooxygenase 1 and cyclooxygenase 2 expression in gastric adenocarcinoma. *Ann Surg* 2001; **233:** 183-188
33 **Oshima M,** Dinchuk JE, Kargman SL, Oshima H, Hancock B, Kwong E, Trzaskos JM, Evans JF, Taketo MM. Suppression of intestinal polyposis in Apc delta716 knockout mice by inhibition of cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2). *Cell* 1996; **87:** 803-809
34 **Piazza GA,** Rahm AL, Krutzsch M, Sperl G, Paranka NS, Gross PH, Brendel K, Burt RW, Alberts DS, Pamukcu R. Antineoplastic drugs sulindac sulfide and sulfone inhibit cell growth by inducing apoptosis. *Cancer Res* 1995; **55:** 3110-3116
35 **Piazza GA,** Alberts DS, Hixson LJ, Paranka NS, Li H, Finn T, Bogert C, Guillen JM, Brendel K, Gross PH, Sperl G, Ritchie J, Burt RW, Ellsworth L, Ahnen DJ, Pamukcu R. Sulindac sulfone inhibits azoxymethane-induced colon carcinogenesis in rats without reducing prostaglandin levels. *Cancer Res* 1997; **57:** 2909-2915
36 **Reddy BS,** Kawamori T, Lubet RA, Steele VE, Kelloff GJ, Rao CV. Chemopreventive efficacy of sulindac sulfone against colon cancer depends on time of administration during carcinogenic process. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59:** 3387-3391
37 **Mahmoud NN,** Boolbol SK, Dannenberg AJ, Mestre JR, Bilinski RT, Martucci C, Newmark HL, Chadburn A, Bertagnolli MM. The sulfide metabolite of sulindac prevents tumors and restores enterocyte apoptosis in a murine model of familial adenomatous polyposis. *Carcinogenesis* 1998; **19:** 87-91
38 **Zhang X,** Morham SG, Langenbach R, Young DA. Malignant transformation and antineoplastic actions of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) on cyclooxygenase-null embryo fibroblasts. *J Exp Med* 1999; **190:** 451-459
39 **Lim HY,** Joo HJ, Choi JH, Yi JW, Yang MS, Cho DY, Kim HS, Nam DK, Lee KB, Kim HC. Increased expression of cyclooxygenase-2 protein in human gastric carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2000; **6:** 519-525
40 **Soydan AS,** Gaffen JD, Weech PK, Tremblay NM, Kargman S, O'Neill G, Bennett A, Tavares IA. Cytosolic phospholipase A2, cyclo-oxygenases and arachidonate in human stomach tumours. *Eur J Cancer* 1997; **33:** 1508-1512
41 **Walker MM.** Cyclooxygenase-2 expression in early gastric cancer, intestinal metaplasia and Helicobacter pylori infection. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **14:** 347-349
42 **Ratnasinghe D,** Tangrea JA, Roth MJ, Dawsey SM, Anver M, Kasprzak BA, Hu N, Wang QH, Taylor PR. Expression of cyclooxygenase-2 in human adenocarcinomas of the gastric cardia and corpus. *Oncol Rep* 1999; **6:** 965-968
43 **Chan TA.** Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, apoptosis, and colon-cancer chemoprevention. *Lancet Oncol* 2002; **3:** 166-174
44 **Scartozzi M,** Galizia E, Freddari F, Berardi R, Cellerino R, Cascinu S. Molecular biology of sporadic gastric cancer: prognostic indicators and novel therapeutic approaches. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2004; **30:** 451-459
45 **Sjödahl R.** Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and the gastrointestinal tract. Extent, mode, and dose dependence of anticancer effects. *Am J Med* 2001; **110:** 66S-69S
46 **Roberts RA,** James NH, Woodyatt NJ, Macdonald N, Tugwood JD. Evidence for the suppression of apoptosis by the peroxisome proliferator activated receptor alpha (PPAR alpha). *Carcinogenesis* 1998; **19:** 43-48
47 **Tsubouchi Y,** Sano H, Kawahito Y, Mukai S, Yamada R, Kohno M, Inoue K, Hla T, Kondo M. Inhibition of human lung cancer cell growth by the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma agonists through induction of apoptosis. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2000; **270:** 400-405
48 **Konturek PC,** Konturek SJ, Bielanski W, Kania J, Zuchowicz M, Hartwich A, Rehfeld JF, Hahn EG. Influence of COX-2 inhibition by rofecoxib on serum and tumor progastrin and gastrin levels and expression of PPARgamma and apoptosis-related proteins in gastric cancer patients. *Dig Dis Sci* 2003; **48:** 2005-2017
49 **Leung WK,** Bai AH, Chan VY, Yu J, Chan MW, To KF, Wu JR, Chan KK, Fu YG, Chan FK, Sung JJ. Effect of peroxisome proliferator activated receptor gamma ligands on growth and gene expression profiles of gastric cancer cells. *Gut* 2004; **53:** 331-338
50 **Lehmann JM,** Lenhard JM, Oliver BB, Ringold GM, Kliewer SA. Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptors alpha and gamma are activated by indomethacin and other non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272:** 3406-3410
51 **Chan TA,** Morin PJ, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW. Mechanisms underlying nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug-mediated apoptosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1998; **95:** 681-686
52 **Jayadev S,** Hayter HL, Andrieu N, Gamard CJ, Liu B, Balu R, Hayakawa M, Ito F, Hannun YA. Phospholipase A2 is necessary for tumor necrosis factor alpha-induced ceramide generation in L929 cells. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272:** 17196-17203
53 **Hannun YA.** Functions of ceramide in coordinating cellular responses to stress. *Science* 1996; **274:** 1855-1859
54 **Kolesnick RN**, Haimovitz-Friedman A, Fuks Z. The sphingomyelin signal transduction pathway mediates apoptosis for tumor necrosis factor, Fas, and ionizing radiation. *Biochem Cell Biol* 1994; **72:** 471-474
55 **Masamune A,** Shimosegawa T, Masamune O, Mukaida N, Koizumi M, Toyota T. Helicobacter pylori-dependent ceramide production may mediate increased interleukin 8 expression in human gastric cancer cell lines. *Gastroenterology*

1999; **116:** 1330-1341
56 **Wong BC,** Wang WP, Cho CH, Fan XM, Lin MC, Kung HF, Lam SK. 12-Lipoxygenase inhibition induced apoptosis in human gastric cancer cells. *Carcinogenesis* 2001; **22:** 1349-1354
57 **Cao Y,** Pearman AT, Zimmerman GA, McIntyre TM, Prescott SM. Intracellular unesterified arachidonic acid signals apoptosis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2000; **97:** 11280-11285
58 **Scorrano L,** Penzo D, Petronilli V, Pagano F, Bernardi P. Arachidonic acid causes cell death through the mitochondrial permeability transition. Implications for tumor necrosis factor-alpha aopototic signaling. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276:** 12035-12040
59 **Fonteh AN,** LaPorte T, Swan D, McAlexander MA. A decrease in remodeling accounts for the accumulation of arachidonic acid in murine mast cells undergoing apoptosis. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276:** 1439-1449
60 **Fan XM,** Tu SP, Lam SK, Wang WP, Wu J, Wong WM, Yuen MF, Lin MC, Kung HF, Wong BC. Five-lipoxygenase-activating protein inhibitor MK-886 induces apoptosis in gastric cancer through upregulation of p27kip1 and bax. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **19:** 31-37
61 **Jiang XH,** Wong BC. Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibition and gastric cancer. *Curr Pharm Des* 2003; **9:** 2281-2288
62 **Lim JW,** Kim H, Kim KH. Expression of Ku70 and Ku80 mediated by NF-kappa B and cyclooxygenase-2 is related to proliferation of human gastric cancer cells. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277:** 46093-46100
63 **Yamamoto Y,** Yin MJ, Lin KM, Gaynor RB. Sulindac inhibits activation of the NF-kappaB pathway. *J Biol Chem* 1999; **274:** 27307-27314
64 **Lim JW,** Kim H, Kim KH. Nuclear factor-kappaB regulates cyclooxygenase-2 expression and cell proliferation in human gastric cancer cells. *Lab Invest* 2001; **81:** 349-360
65 **Yin MJ,** Yamamoto Y, Gaynor RB. The anti-inflammatory agents aspirin and salicylate inhibit the activity of I(kappa)B kinase-beta. *Nature* 1998; **396:** 77-80
66 **Yasui H,** Adachi M, Imai K. Combination of tumor necrosis factor-alpha with sulindac augments its apoptotic potential and suppresses tumor growth of human carcinoma cells in nude mice. *Cancer* 2003; **97:** 1412-1420
67 **Wong BC,** Jiang Xh, Fan XM, Lin MC, Jiang SH, Lam SK, Kung HF. Suppression of RelA/p65 nuclear translocation independent of IkappaB-alpha degradation by cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor in gastric cancer. *Oncogene* 2003; **22:** 1189-1197
68 **Zhu GH,** Wong BC, Eggo MC, Ching CK, Yuen ST, Chan EY, Lai KC, Lam SK. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug-induced apoptosis in gastric cancer cells is blocked by protein kinase C activation through inhibition of c-myc. *Br J Cancer* 1999; **79:** 393-400
69 **Jiang XH,** Lam SK, Lin MC, Jiang SH, Kung HF, Slosberg ED, Soh JW, Weinstein IB, Wong BC. Novel target for induction of apoptosis by cyclo-oxygenase-2 inhibitor SC-236 through a protein kinase C-beta(1)-dependent pathway. *Oncogene* 2002; **21:** 6113-6122
70 **Zhou XM,** Wong BC, Fan XM, Zhang HB, Lin MC, Kung HF, Fan DM, Lam SK. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs induce apoptosis in gastric cancer cells through up-regulation of bax and bak. *Carcinogenesis* 2001; **22:** 1393-1397
71 **Wu J,** Xia HH, Tu SP, Fan DM, Lin MC, Kung HF, Lam SK, Wong BC. 15-Lipoxygenase-1 mediates cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor-induced apoptosis in gastric cancer. *Carcinogenesis* 2003; **24:** 243-247
72 **Folkman J.** Role of angiogenesis in tumor growth and metastasis. *Semin Oncol* 2002; **29:** 15-18
73 **Dermond O,** Rüegg C. Inhibition of tumor angiogenesis by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs: emerging mechanisms and therapeutic perspectives. *Drug Resist Updat* 2001; **4:** 314-321
74 **Fosslien E.** Review: molecular pathology of cyclooxygenase-2 in cancer-induced angiogenesis. *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 2001; **31:** 325-348
75 **Tatsuguchi A,** Matsui K, Shinji Y, Gudis K, Tsukui T, Kishida T, Fukuda Y, Sugisaki Y, Tokunaga A, Tajiri T, Sakamoto C. Cyclooxygenase-2 expression correlates with angiogenesis and apoptosis in gastric cancer tissue. *Hum Pathol* 2004; **35:** 488-495
76 **Joo YE,** Rew JS, Seo YH, Choi SK, Kim YJ, Park CS, Kim SJ. Cyclooxygenase-2 overexpression correlates with vascular endothelial growth factor expression and tumor angiogenesis in gastric cancer. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **37:** 28-33
77 **Uefuji K,** Ichikura T, Mochizuki H. Cyclooxygenase-2 expression is related to prostaglandin biosynthesis and angiogenesis in human gastric cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2000; **6:** 135-138
78 **Sawaoka H,** Tsuji S, Tsujii M, Gunawan ES, Sasaki Y, Kawano S, Hori M. Cyclooxygenase inhibitors suppress angiogenesis and reduce tumor growth in vivo. *Lab Invest* 1999; **79:** 1469-1477
79 **Tsuji S,** Tsujii M, Kawano S, Hori M. Cyclooxygenase-2 upregulation as a perigenetic change in carcinogenesis. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2001; **20:** 117-129
80 **Masferrer JL,** Leahy KM, Koki AT, Zweifel BS, Settle SL, Woerner BM, Edwards DA, Flickinger AG, Moore RJ, Seibert K. Antiangiogenic and antitumor activities of cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors. *Cancer Res* 2000; **60:** 1306-1311
81 **O'Byrne KJ,** Dalgleish AG. Chronic immune activation and inflammation as the cause of malignancy. *Br J Cancer* 2001; **85:** 473-483
82 **Romano M,** Ricci V, Memoli A, Tuccillo C, Di Popolo A, Sommi P, Acquaviva AM, Del Vecchio Blanco C, Bruni CB, Zarrilli R. Helicobacter pylori up-regulates cyclooxygenase-2 mRNA expression and prostaglandin E2 synthesis in MKN 28 gastric mucosal cells in vitro. *J Biol Chem* 1998; **273:** 28560-28563
83 **Sung JJ,** Leung WK, Go MY, To KF, Cheng AS, Ng EK, Chan FK. Cyclooxygenase-2 expression in Helicobacter pylori-associated premalignant and malignant gastric lesions. *Am J Pathol* 2000; **157:** 729-735
84 **Shirin H,** Moss SF, Stark B, Weinstein IB, Holt PR, Sordillo EM. Inhibition of Helicobacter pylori growth by sulindac. *Gastroenterology* 2000; **119:** A4931
85 **Wang WH,** Wong WM, Dailidiene D, Berg DE, Gu Q, Lai KC, Lam SK, Wong BC. Aspirin inhibits the growth of Helicobacter pylori and enhances its susceptibility to antimicrobial agents. *Gut* 2003; **52:** 490-495
86 **Takahashi M,** Katayama Y, Takada H, Kuwayama H, Terano A. The effect of NSAIDs and a COX-2 specific inhibitor on Helicobacter pylori-induced PGE2 and HGF in human gastric fibroblasts. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2000; **14** Suppl 1: 44-49
87 **Xiao F,** Furuta T, Takashima M, Shirai N, Hanai H. Involvement of cyclooxygenase-2 in hyperplastic gastritis induced by Helicobacter pylori infection in C57BL/6 mice. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15:** 875-886
88 **McCarthy CJ,** Crofford LJ, Greenson J, Scheiman JM. Cyclooxygenase-2 expression in gastric antral mucosa before and after eradication of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1999; **94:** 1218-1223
89 **Kim TI,** Lee YC, Lee KH, Han JH, Chon CY, Moon YM, Kang JK, Park IS. Effects of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs on Helicobacter pylori-infected gastric mucosae of mice: apoptosis, cell proliferation, and inflammatory activity. *Infect Immun* 2001; **69:** 5056-5063
90 **Nam KT,** Hahm KB, Oh SY, Yeo M, Han SU, Ahn B, Kim YB, Kang JS, Jang DD, Yang KH, Kim DY. The selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor nimesulide prevents Helicobacter pylori-associated gastric cancer development in a mouse model. *Clin Cancer Res* 2004; **10:** 8105-8113
91 **Wambura C,** Aoyama N, Shirasaka D, Sakai T, Ikemura T, Sakashita M, Maekawa S, Kuroda K, Inoue T, Ebara S, Miyamoto M, Kasuga M. Effect of Helicobacter pylori-induced cyclooxygenase-2 on gastric epithelial cell kinetics: implication for gastric carcinogenesis. *Helicobacter* 2002; **7:** 129-138

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2890-2894
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

GASTRIC CANCER

Anticancer effect of Jinlongshe granules on *in situ*-transplanted human MKN-45 gastric cancer in nude mice and xenografted sarcoma 180 in Kunming mice and its mechanism

Zhi-Hong Yu, Pin-Kang Wei, Ling Xu, Zhi-Feng Qin, Jun Shi

Zhi-Hong Yu, Pin-Kang Wei, Ling Xu, Zhi-Feng Qin, Jun Shi, Department of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Changzheng Hospital, Second Military Medical University, Shanghai 200003, China
Supported by the Modernization Programs of Chinese Materia Medica of Science and Technology Commission Foundation of Shanghai, No. 04DZ19811
Correspondence to: Pin-Kang Wei, Department of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Changzheng Hospital, Second Military Medical University, 415 Feng Yang Road, Shanghai 200003, China. czzyk@smmu.edu.cn
Telephone: +86-21-63610109-73408 Fax: +86-21-63520020
Received: 2005-12-14 Accepted: 2006-01-14

Abstract

AIM: To study the antitumor effect of Chinese compound Jinlongshe (JLS) granules on sarcoma 180 and MKN-45 human gastric cancer cell lines *in vivo* and its mechanism.

METHODS: After establishment of S180 sarcoma (S180) and MKN-45 gastric cancer model of nude mice, the tumor-bearing mice were divided into 5 groups at random. Three experimental groups were respectively given the aqueous extract of JLS granules at doses of 120 g, 60 g and 20 g /(kg per 6/wk, *i.g*) for 3 wk in S180 and 6 wk in nude mice model. Positive control was given cyclophosphamide (Cy) at a dose of 50 mg/(kg per 3 /wk, *i.g*) for 3 wk in S180 models and 5- Fluorouracil (5-FU) 20 mg/(kg per 3 /wk, *i.g*) for 3 wk in nude mice model. Negative control was given normal saline (NS) at a dose of 0.18 g/(kg per 6/wk, *i.g*) respectively. After 3 wk in mice bearing S180 tumor and 6 wk in nude mice model, the experimental animals were sacrificed and the masses of tumor were weighed, and the rates of tumor inhibition of each treated group were calculated respectively. To determine the antitumor mechanisms, the morphological changes, cell cycle and apoptosis were observed in MKN-45 nude mice model. Annexin V-FITC/PI double staining FCM assay was used to further determine the live cells, apoptotic cells, necrotic cells and debris.

RESULTS: The inhibitory rates of JLS granules at the doses of 20 g/kg, 60 g/kg and 120 g/kg were 50.31%, 55.94% and 68.13% ($P < 0.01$) in nude mice models and 40.90%, 50.32% and 58.46% ($P < 0.01$) in S180 model. The inhibitory rate of Cy was 85.22% in S180 models and the inhibitory rate of 5-FU was 53.43% in nude mice model ($P < 0.01$). Nuclear chromatin and margination were observed under a transmission electron microscope (TEM). The G0/G1 phase was arrested, typical apoptotic peak appeared, the apoptotic rate was 22.81%-38.54% in three JLS granule-treated groups. Annexin V-FITC/PI double staining FCM assay showed that the apoptotic cells were 4.36%, 3.08%and 7.08% in three dosages, most cells were localized in the low right quadrant.

CONCLUSION: Jinlongshe granules possess anti-tumor effects on experimental tumor models *in vivo*, and apoptosis induction is one of its anti-tumor mechanisms.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Jinlongshe granules; Sarcoma 180; Human MKN-45 gastric cancer lines; Traditional Chinese medicine

Yu ZH, Wei PK, Xu L, Qin ZF, Shi J. Anticancer effect of Jinlongshe granules on *in situ*-transplanted human MKN-45 gastric cancer in nude mice and xenografted sarcoma 180 in Kunming mice and its mechanism. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2890-2894

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2890.asp

INTRODUCTION

Gastric cancer is one of the most leading causes of cancer-related deaths worldwide[1]. Despite its decreasing trend in the Western world during the recent two decades, gastric cancer still accounts for about 23.2% of all cancer deaths in China[2-4]. Although surgery, chemotherapy, and irradiation are the mainstream therapeutic methods for gastric cancer, undesirable chemotherapy reaction and poor prognosis in the advanced gastric cancer patients are still the major problem for gastric cancer treatment[5]. Consequently, combination of multi-therapeutic methods may effectively improve gastric cancer patient's symptoms and prolong their survival time[6-7].

Jinlongshe (JLS) granules are an oral Chinese medicine compound, consisting of Chinese herbs (*Rhizome Arisaemat, Rhizoma Pinelliae, corium stomachium galli, Radix*

Glycyrrhizae preparata, etc.), developed by our department based on TCM theories of "phlegm" as the key factor in preventing and treating gastric cancer[8]. However, the exact antitumor mechanism of JLS granules is unclear. This study was to observe the anti-tumor effect of JLS granules and to determine its mechanism using sarcoma 180 and human gastric cancer cell line MKN-45 *in vivo*.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Experimental animals

BALB/C nude mice (19-22 g) and Kunming mice (20-22 g) were provided by Experimental Animal Center of Chinese Academy of Sciences, Shanghai, China. All experimental animals were housed in specific-pathogen free (SPF) condition for 1 wk to adapt the surroundings before initiation of the experiment and had free access to food and water throughout the study.

Cancer cell lines

S180 cell line and MKN-45 human gastric denocarcinoma cell line were provided by Institute of Pharmaceutical Research, Shanghai, Chinese Academy of Sciences.

Drug samples and reagents

Crude JLS granules were purchased from Leiyunshang Company, Shanghai, China. An aqueous extract of JLS granules at a concentration of 6 g/mL of raw materials was provided by Shanghai Changzheng Hospital. The aqueous extract was diluted with purified water before use. Cyclophosphamide injection (Cy, Lot No. 040909) was produced in Hualian Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd, Shanghai, China. OB Biogel (Lot No.040514) was produced in Baiyun Medical Biogel Co., Ltd, Guangzhou, China. Ketamine hydrochloride injection (Lot No.02072332) was produced in Hengrui Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd, Jiangsu, China.

Establishment of in situ-transplanted human MKN-45 gastric carcinoma nude mouse model

The procedure of *in situ*-transplanted gastric cancer nude mouse model was referred to Xu and Chen Ling *et al*[9-10]. In brief, before transplantation, nude mice bearing gastric denocarcinoma MKN-45 cell lines were killed. Then the tumor was dissected and put into aseptical saline. Pieces of intact, fish meat-like tumor tissue of 1 mm × 1 mm × 1 mm in diameter from margin were prepared after removal of tumor capsule. Mice anesthetized with ketamine (50 mg/kg, ip) were sterilized with caseoiodine and a transverse incision was made on the left upper quadrant. After exposure of the greater curvature of stomach, serosa and muscular layer were incised with needle. Then tumor tissues were transplanted under serosa of stomach and one drop of OB biogel was applied to the tumor tissue. After 40 s, stomach was brought into abdominal cavity and abdominal wall was finally closed. The whole operation procedure was completed following the doctrine of aseptic manipulation.

Establishment of S180 model

This model was by subcutaneous injection as previously described[11]. Briefly, the S180 mouse sarcoma cells with ascites were harvested, diluted with sterilized saline at a ratio of 1:8 (cell concentration was adjusted to 1.0×10^6/mL), and inoculated subcutaneously into the right armpit region of Kunming mice.

Inhibitory effect of JLS granules on S180 and MKN-45 in vivo

Forty-eight hours after establishment of the MKN-45 gastric cancer model and 24 h after establishment of S180 model, the transplanted mice were divided into 5 groups according to the method described in "National Requirements for *in vivo* Screening of Anti-neoplastic Drugs"[12]. The dose of JLS granules was decided according to the clinical dose used in humans. The mice bearing S180 were killed by dislocation of cervical vertebra 3 wk after treatment. The nude mice bearing *in situ*-transplanted MKN-45 gastric cancer cell line were sacrificed 6 wk after treatment. The tumor weights were measured and the inhibitory rates were calculated according to the following equation: rate of inhibition (%) = (mean tumor wt of negative control -mean wt of treated group)/mean tumor wt of negative control ×100.

Morphologic assessment of apoptosis in MKN-45 nude mice

We selected NS group, 5-FU group and 60 g/kg JLS granules group for morphologic assessment of apoptosis in MKN-45 nude mice. Tumor tissue was cut into small pieces, homogenized into 1 mm × 2 mm, prefixed with 4% paraformaldehyde for 4 h and washed with PBS (0.1 mmol/L), post-fixed with 1% osmic acid, dehydrated in graded ethanol-acetonum, embedded in an Epon 812 mixture, and cut into sections on a ultramicrotome. After stained with uranyl acetate and lead citrate, the sections were examined under a Hitachi-800 transmission electron microscope.

Cell cycle and apoptosis in MKN-45 nude mice

Fresh tumor tissue separated from nude mice was chopped with mechanical method. Single cell-suspended solution was obtained with 200 filter screens. The suspensions were divided into two parts. One part was fixed with 70% ice-cold ethanol for at least 12 h at 4 ℃ and then washed with PBS again before examination. The fixed cells were treated with RNase A and stained with PI at 37 ℃ for 30 min. Analysis was performed with a Coulter FCM (EPICS-XL) and data were analyzed with Multicycle DNA content and cell analysis software.

Annexin V-FITC/PI double staining for FCM-assessed apoptosis

The Annexin V FITC kit (Jingmei Company, Lot No. 20050910) was used for detecting apoptosis according to manufacturer's instructions. The suspensions were washed twice and adjusted to a concentration of 1×10^6 cells/mL with ice cold 4 ℃ PBS. The Falcon tubes (12 mm × 75 mm, polystyrene round-bottom) were used in experiment, 100 μL of suspensions was added to each labeled tube, 10 μL of Annexin V-FITC and 10 μL 20 μg/mL PI were added into the labeled tube, incubated for at least 20 min at room temperature in the dark, then 400 μL of PBS

Table 1 Anti-tumor effect of JLS granules on mice bearing S180

Group	*n*	Tumor weight (g)	Inhibition rate (%)
Control	10	4.67 ± 3.27	-
120 g/kg	10	1.94 ± 2.03[ab]	58.46
60 g/kg	10	2.32 ± 2.83[ab]	50.32
20 g/kg	10	2.76 ± 2.32[ab]	40.90
Cy	10	0.69 ± 0.33[b]	85.22

[a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* Cy; [b]$P < 0.01$ *vs* control.

Table 2 Anti-tumor effect of JLS granules on MKN-45 cells in nude mice

Group	*n*	Tumor weight (g)	Inhibition rate (%)
Control	10	3.20 ± 0.96	-
120 g/kg	10	1.02 ± 0.57[b]	68.13
60 g/kg	10	1.41 ± 1.39[b]	55.94
20 g/kg	10	1.59 ± 1.12[b]	50.31
5-FU	8	1.49 ± 1.37[b]	53.43

[b]$P < 0.01$ *vs* control.

binding buffer was added to each tube without washing and analyzed by FCM as soon as possible (within 1 h).

Statistical analysis

Data were presented as mean ± SD and analyzed with SPSS 11.0 software. The analysis of variance (ANOVA) was used and least significant difference *t* test (LSD-*t*) was used for group comparison. $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Anti-tumor effect of JLS granules on S180

JLS granule at the doses of 20 g/kg, 60 g/kg and 120 g/kg significantly inhibited the growth of S180 subcutaneous tumor($P < 0.01$) in a dose-dependent manner, but lower than the inhibitory rates of Cy ($P < 0.05$) (Table 1).

Anti-tumor effect of JLS granules on in situ-transplanted gastric cancer MKN-45 cell lines

JLS granule at the doses of 20 g/kg, 60 g/kg and 120 g/kg significantly inhibited the growth of orthotopic-transplanted MKN-45 gastric cancer($P < 0.01$) in a dose-dependent manner, but no difference statistically compared with 5-FU ($P > 0.05$) (Table 2).

Morphology changes

Condensation of chromatin at margins of nuclei, disintegration of nucleolus, vacuoles in cytoplasm were observed in 60 g/kg group and 5-FU also had the same apoptotic appearance under TEM (Figure 1).

Assessment of cell cycle and apoptosis of MKN-45 cells in nude mice

The percentage of G0/G1 cells in JLS granules group was higher than that in NS group and 5-FU group in a dose-dependent manner ($P > 0.05$). The cell percentage of S phase in of JLS group and 5-FU group was lower than that in control group ($P < 0.05$), the apoptotic rate in 120 g/kg JLS group was higher than that in control group, 20 g/kg JLS group and 5-FU group ($P < 0.05$). The typical apoptotic peak was observed (Table 3, Figure 2).

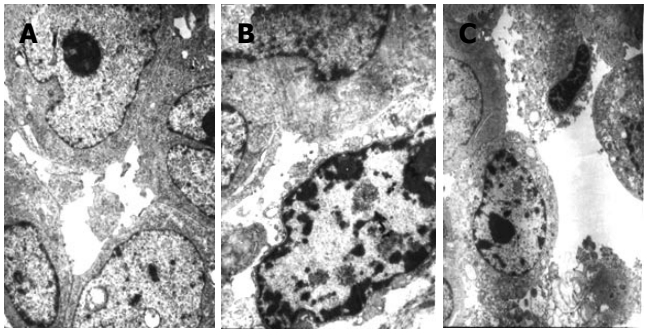


Figure 1 Ultra-structure observed under transmission electron microscopy in control group × 4 000 (**A**), 60 g/kg JLS group × 6 000 (**B**), 5-FU group × 3 000 (**C**).

Table 3 Effect of different treatments on cell cycle and apoptosis of MKN-45 cells (mean ± SD)

Group	*n*	G_0/G_1	G_2/M	S	Apoptotic rate
Control	10	42.40 ± 11.28	21.28 ± 11.43	36.92 ± 12.21	19.88 ± 14.83[c]
120 g/kg	10	50.58 ± 8.78	26.45 ± 12.53	14.56 ± 9.35[a]	38.54 ± 12.65[a]
60 g/kg	10	47.55 ± 7.02	26.51 ± 15.05	19.36 ± 12.69[a]	28.27 ± 11.25
20 g/kg	10	46.37 ± 12.09	25.47 ± 14.79	24.04 ± 13.27[a]	22.81 ± 10.65[c]
5-FU	8	41.78 ± 4.30	23.59 ± 11.97	19.97 ± 13.31[a]	24.97 ± 9.93[c]

[a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* control, [c]$P < 0.05$ *vs* 120 g/kg.

Assessment of apoptosis in MKN-45 nude mice

Results by Annexin V-FITC/PI double staining for FCM assay showed that the early apoptotic cells were 4.36%, 3.08% and 7.08% in the three JLS granules groups (Figure 3), and most of cell populations in 5-FU treated group were located in the up right quadrant and the cells on the lower right quadrant were not many as compared with JLS granules groups.

DISCUSSION

Tumorigenesis, in a sense, is due to the deregulation in cell proliferation and apoptosis[13-14], accordingly tumor treatment not only inhibits cell proliferation, but also induces apoptosis. More and more attention is paid to apoptosis in treatment of tumors and the effectiveness of anti-tumor agents is often evaluated[15,16]. Investigators have confirmed that many Chinese herbs have antitumor property and induction of apoptosis is one of the mechanisms[17-20]. But most of these studies aimed directly at single herbs, bioactive constituents or leading compounds extracted from herbs, and could not educe the multi-target action of Chinese compounds and traditional Chinese medicine (TCM) theories in disease therapy [21].

In TCM theories, "phlegm" is not only a pathologic metabolite, but also a causative agent. The metabolites such as ectopic hormone, growth factor and tumor

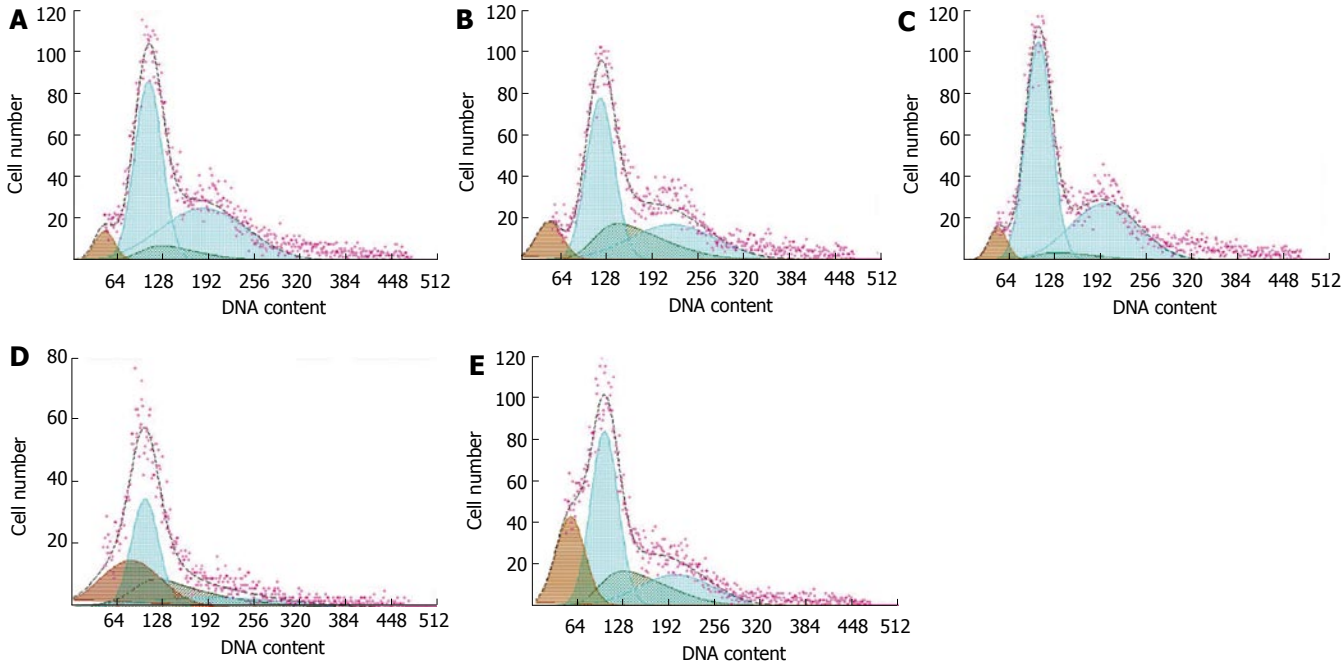


Figure 2 Histogram observed under FCM in 120 g/kg JLS group (**A**), 60 g/kg JLS group (**B**), 20 g/kg JLS group (**C**), control group (**D**), and 5-FU group (**E**).

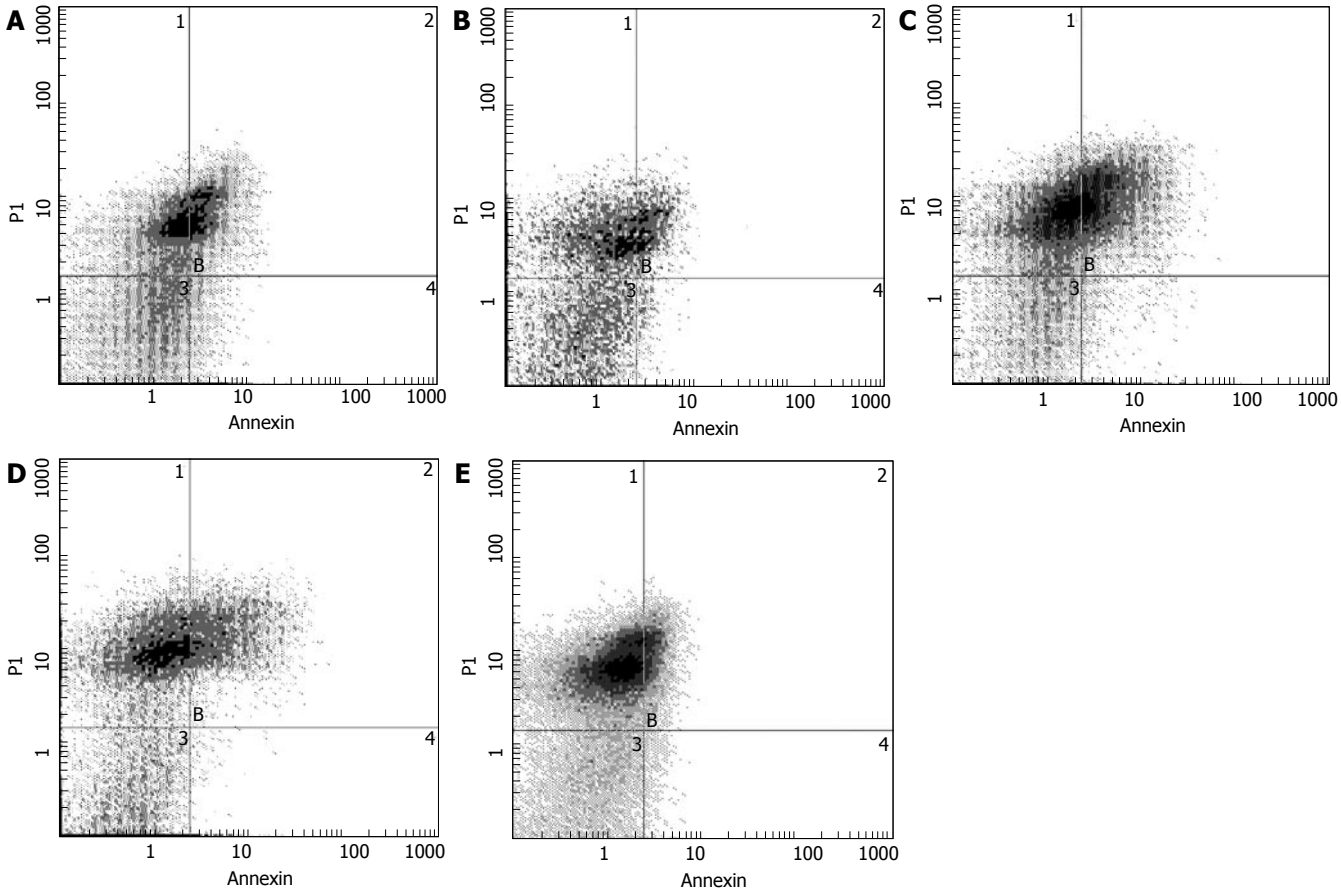


Figure 3 Cytogram observed by Annexin V-FITC/PI double staining assay in 120 g/kg JLS group (**A**), 60 g/kg JLS group (**B**), 20 g/kg JLS group (**C**), control group (**D**), and 5-FU group (**E**).

markers produced by tumor cells all belong to "phlegm", which can devitalize physiologic functions and stimulate tumor invasion and metastasis in turn. Therefore, "dispersing phlegm and eliminating stagnation" (cleaning metabolites produced by tumor) is one of the regimens for tumor treatment in TCM. JLS granules are an anti-

tumor compound prescription developed according to the methods of "dispersing phlegm and eliminating stagnation". Our previous experiments have shown that "dispersing phlegm and eliminating stagnation" inhibit could VEGF, Ras mRNA and protein expression[22-24] and have good antitumor and anti-metastasis potency *in vivo*. However whether it induces apoptosis is unclear. Our studies showed that JLS granules had anti-tumor effects on S180 and MKN-45 human gastric cancer. The ultra-structure of MKN-45 gastric cancer tissue treated with JLS granules showed that there were apoptosis changes. Cell cycle and apoptosis analysis also demonstrated that JLS granules could arrest MKN-45 cells at G0/G1 phase, decrease S phase cell populations. The typical apoptosis peak further confirmed its apoptosis-inducing effect.

In addition, changes in the plasma membrane are one of the earliest morphological features of apoptosis. At this time, the membrane phospholipid phosphatidylserine (PS) is translocated from the inner to the outer leaflet of the plasma membrane, thereby exposing PS to the external cellular environment. Annexin V is a 35-36kD Ca^{2+}-dependent phospholipid binding protein that has a high affinity for PS, thus Annexin V staining serves as a sensitive probe for flow cytometric analysis of cells undergoing apoptosis[25-26]. Therefore, staining with Annexin V in conjunction with vital dyes such as propidiumiodide (PI) can identify early apoptotic cells (Annexin V positive, PI negative). In our study, cells treated with JLS granules were located in the low right quadrant and cells in 5-FU-treated group were located in the upper left quadrant, suggesting that the earlier apoptotic cells in JLS granules-treated groups are higher than those in 5-FU-treated group and that JLS granules induce apoptosis in human gastric cancer MKN-45 cells.

In conclusion, JLS granules have the inhibiting effects on human gastric carcinoma and induction of apoptosis may be one of its mechanisms.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors thank the Department of Laboratory Diagnosis, Changzheng Hospital, Shanghai, and Ling-Zhen Zhang for help in FCM assay.

REFERENCES

1 **Hohenberger P,** Gretschel S. Gastric cancer. *Lancet* 2003; **362:** 305-315
2 **Howson CP,** Hiyama T, Wynder EL. The decline in gastric cancer: epidemiology of an unplanned triumph. *Epidemiol Rev* 1986; **8:** 1-27
3 **Kelley JR,** Duggan JM. Gastric cancer epidemiology and risk factors. *J Clin Epidemiol* 2003; **56:** 1-9
4 **Sun X**, Mu R, Zhou Y, Dai X, Qiao Y, Zhang S, Huangfu X, Sun J, Li L, Lu F. [1990-1992 mortality of stomach cancer in China]. *Zhonghua Zhongliu Zazhi* 2002; 24: 4-8
5 **Ushijima T,** Sasako M. Focus on gastric cancer. *Cancer Cell* 2004; **5:** 121-125
6 **Boon H,** Stewart M, Kennard MA, Gray R, Sawka C, Brown JB, McWilliam C, Gavin A, Baron RA, Aaron D, Haines-Kamka T. Use of complementary/alternative medicine by breast cancer survivors in Ontario: prevalence and perceptions. *J Clin Oncol* 2000; **18:** 2515-2521
7 **Alberts SR,** Cervantes A, van de Velde CJ. Gastric cancer: epidemiology, pathology and treatment. *Ann Oncol* 2003; **14** Suppl 2: ii31-ii36
8 **Wei Pk,** Xu L, Qin ZF, Zhang S, Li XY, Guo XD, Wang JP, Li J, Xiao Y, Shi J, Liu YY. Treatment Mechanism of Phlegm and Clinical Research on Stomach Cancer. *Zhongguo Zhongyi Jichu Yixue Zazhi* 2002; **3:** 18-20
9 **Xu L,** Chen YL, Su XM, Wei PK. Study on Nude Mouse Model of Human Gastric Carcinoma Constructed by Using Orthotopic Transplantation and Their Biological Properties. *Zhongliu Fangzhi Zazhi* 2003; **10:** 476-478
10 **Chen YL,** Wei PK, Xu L, Su XM. [Nude mouse model of human gastric carcinoma metastasis constructed by orthotopic transplantation using organism glue paste technique]. *Ai Zheng* 2005; **24:** 246-248
11 **Xiaoguang C,** Hongyan L, Xiaohong L, Zhaodi F, Yan L, Lihua T, Rui H. Cancer chemopreventive and therapeutic activities of red ginseng. *J Ethnopharmacol* 1998; **60:** 71-78
12 **Han R.** Research and Development of Anticancer Drugs and Experimental Techniques. Beijing: The United Press of Beijing Medical University and Peking Union Medical College, 1997: 295-298
13 **Kamesaki H.** Mechanisms involved in chemotherapy-induced apoptosis and their implications in cancer chemotherapy. *Int J Hematol* 1998; **68:** 29-43
14 **Evan GI,** Vousden KH. Proliferation, cell cycle and apoptosis in cancer. *Nature* 2001; **411:** 342-348
15 **Reed JC.** Apoptosis-targeted therapies for cancer. *Cancer Cell* 2003; **3:** 17-22
16 **Alison MR,** Sarraf CE. Apoptosis: regulation and relevance to toxicology. *Hum Exp Toxicol* 1995; **14:** 234-247
17 **Zhao HL,** Zhao AG, You SF, Gu Y, Tang LD, Yang JK. [Growth-inhibiting and anti-metastasis effects of Weichang'an Decoction on orthotopic transplant nude mouse model of human gastric cancer]. *Zhongxiyi Jiehe Xuebao* 2005; **3:** 378-381
18 **Liu W,** Guo QL, You QD, Zhao L, Gu HY, Yuan ST. Anticancer effect and apoptosis induction of gambogic acid in human gastric cancer line BGC-823. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11:** 3655-3659
19 **Yin X,** Zhou J, Jie C, Xing D, Zhang Y. Anticancer activity and mechanism of Scutellaria barbata extract on human lung cancer cell line A549. *Life Sci* 2004; **75:** 2233-2244
20 **Shao QS,** Ye ZY, Ling ZQ, Ke JJ. Cell cycle arrest and apoptotic cell death in cultured human gastric carcinoma cells mediated by arsenic trioxide. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11:** 3451-3456
21 **Wang J,** Jing L. [Study of Chinese herbs and its compound prescription guided by traditional Chinese medical theory]. *Zhongguo Zhongyao Zazhi* 2003; **28:** 795-798
22 **Chen YL,** Wei PK, Xu L, Su XM. Effects of Xiaotan Sanjie Formula on Expression of Oncogenes ras and cerb B2 at mRNA Level in Tissue of Gastric Carcinoma. *Zhongyi Zazhi* 2004; **45:** 459-461
23 **Xu L,** Wei PK, Chen YL, Su XM, Qin ZF, Shi J, Li J, He J. Xiaotansanjie recipe inhibits growth and metastasis of human gastric adenocarcinoma cell SGC-7901 transplanted in nude mouse. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 2004; **12:** 1015-1020
24 **Xu L,** Su XM, Chen YL, Wei PK. The effect of Xiaotansanjie recipe on VEGF and KDR mRNA expression of human gastric adenocarcinoma transplanted in nude mouse. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 2004; **12:** 988-990
25 **Vermes I,** Haanen C, Steffens-Nakken H, Reutelingsperger C. A novel assay for apoptosis. Flow cytometric detection of phosphatidylserine expression on early apoptotic cells using fluorescein labelled Annexin V. *J Immunol Methods* 1995; **184:** 39-51
26 **van Engeland M,** Nieland LJ, Ramaekers FC, Schutte B, Reutelingsperger CP. Annexin V-affinity assay: a review on an apoptosis detection system based on phosphatidylserine exposure. *Cytometry* 1998; **31:** 1-9

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2895-2900
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

BASIC RESEARCH

Partial Beclin 1 silencing aggravates doxorubicin- and Fas-induced apoptosis in HepG2 cells

Fanny Daniel, Agnès Legrand, Dominique Pessayre, Nathalie Vadrot, Véronique Descatoire, Dominique Bernuau

Fanny Daniel, Agnès Legrand, Dominique Pessayre, Véronique Descatoire, Dominique Bernuau, Institut National de la Santé et de la Recherche Médicale, INSERM, U773, Centre de Recherche Bichat Beaujon CRB3, BP 416, F-75018, Paris, France; Université paris 7 Denis Diderot, site Bichat, BP 416, F-75018, Paris, France
Nathalie Vadrot, Université paris 7 Denis Diderot, site Bichat, BP 416, F-75018, Paris, France
Correspondence to: Fanny Daniel, U773 INSERM (équipe 3), Faculté de Médecine Xavier Bichat, 16 rue Henri Huchard, Paris 75018, France. fdaniel@bichat.inserm.fr
Telephone: +33-1-44856211 Fax: +33-1-44856207
Received: 2005-08-02 Accepted: 2005-10-09

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the role of Beclin 1 on the susceptibility of HepG2 cells to undergo apoptosis after anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin treatment.

METHODS: Beclin 1 silencing was achieved using RNA interference. DNA ploidy, the percentage of apoptotic cells and the mitochondrial membrane potential were assessed by flow cytometry. Levels of Beclin 1, Bcl-X_L and cytochrome *c*, and the cleavage of poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) were assayed by using Western blots.

RESULTS: Beclin 1 expression decreased by 75% 72 h after Beclin 1 siRNA transfection. Partial Beclin 1 silencing significantly increased the percentage of subG1 cells 24 and 40 h after treatment with doxorubicin or anti-Fas antibody, respectively, and this potentiation was abrogated by treatment with a pan-caspase inhibitor. Partial Beclin 1 silencing also increased PARP cleavage, mitochondrial membrane depolarization and cytosolic cytochrome *c*. The pro-apoptotic consequences of partial Beclin 1 silencing were not associated with a decline in Bcl-X_L expression.

CONCLUSION: Partial Beclin 1 silencing aggravates mitochondrial permeabilization and apoptosis in HepG2 cells treated with an anti-Fas antibody or with doxorubicin.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Beclin 1; Apoptosis; HepG2 cells; Anti-Fas antibody; Doxorubicin

Daniel F, Legrand A, Pessayre D, Vadrot N, Descatoire V, Bernuau D. Partial Beclin 1 silencing aggravates doxorubicin- and Fas-induced apoptosis in HepG2 cells. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2895-2900

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2895.asp

INTRODUCTION

Beclin 1, a recently discovered tumor suppressor gene located on human chromosome 17q21, is mono-allelically deleted in 40%-70% of sporadic mammary, ovarian and prostate tumors[1]. Heterozygous beclin $1^{+/-}$ transgenic mice display a high incidence of spontaneous malignancies, including hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), although the remaining beclin 1 allele is neither lost, mutated or silenced in these tumors[2,3]. These data have led to the conclusion that beclin 1 is a haploinsufficient tumor suppressor. One mechanism whereby beclin 1 haploinsufficiency can promote cancer is impaired autophagy, and increased cell proliferation[4]. However, it is not yet clear how Beclin 1 modulates cell death in cancer cells.

Several studies have reported a role of Beclin 1 in autophagic cell death. When embryonic fibroblasts from Bax/Bak double knockout mice were treated with etoposide, cells underwent a non-apoptotic cell death characterized by the presence of a number of autophagosomes/autolysosomes and the accumulation of both Beclin 1 and the APG5-APG12 complex[5]. Cell death was largely prevented by autophagy inhibitors as well as by silencing of Beclin 1 or APG5. In another study, treatment of mouse L929 fibroblastic cells or human U937 monocytoid cells with a pan-caspase inhibitor induced autophagic cell death[6]. Silencing of Beclin 1 or ATG7, another protein required for the formation of autophagic vacuoles, reduced z-VAD-induced cell death. Beclin 1 physically interacts with the anti-apoptotic proteins, Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L[7], but the functional significance of this interaction on apoptosis is yet unclear. Thus, although beclin $1^{-/-}$ mouse embryos exhibited widespread cell death and died *in utero*, the *in vitro* apoptotic rate of beclin $1^{-/-}$ embryonic stem cells after UV irradiation or serum withdrawal was not significantly increased compared to wild-type cells[3]. By contrast, mice infected with a recombinant chimera of the neurotropic Sindbis virus combined with full-length human Beclin 1 exhibited

increased survival, fewer apoptotic brain cells and lower brain viral titers than mice infected with chimeras encoding a Beclin 1 protein lacking the Bcl-2 binding domain or with a premature stop codon[7]. However, these results did not provide information on whether the protective effects of Beclin 1 were a consequence of anti-apoptotic effects, anti-viral effects, or a combination of both mechanisms. Lastly, a recent study reported that the over-expression of Beclin 1 in MKN28 human gastric cancer cells stimulated *cis*-diamminedichloroplatinum (CDD)- or doxorubicin-induced cell death, while a Beclin 1 siRNA protected the cells from apoptosis in the same experimental conditions[8].

We have previously observed a significant correlation between Beclin 1 and Bcl-X_L mRNA expression in human hepatocarcinoma (unpublished results), suggesting that Beclin 1 over-expression may prevent hepatocyte apoptosis. In order to test this assumption, we investigated the effect of Beclin 1 silencing on the response of HepG2 cells to apoptotic stimuli. In the present study, we showed that partial Beclin 1 silencing aggravates the mitochondrial permeabilization and the apoptotic response induced by an agonistic anti-Fas antibody or by doxorubicin in a human HCC cell line.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Materials

HepG2 cells were grown in Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium (DMEM) supplemented with 100 mL/L fetal calf serum and 1% penicillin/streptomycin sulfate (Gibco, Invitrogen).

Small interfering RNA (siRNA) duplexes were purchased from Dharmacon (Lafayette, CO). We used the beclin 1 siRNA: 5'-CAGUUACAGAUGGAGCUAA tt-3' (nt 655-673), which is located downstream from the initiation codon of the human beclin coding region, and a luciferase siRNA as a control siRNA: 5'-CUUACGCU GAGUACUUCGAtt3'. HepG2 cells (15-25 × 10^6 cells) were collected by trypsinization. The pellet was washed with serum-free OptiMEM (Gibco, Invitrogen) without antibiotics, and cells were resuspended in 500-600 μL of the same medium containing 12 μmol/L siRNA. After 10 min on ice, cells were electroporated at 230 V, 960 μF. Cells were resuspended in DMEM containing 100 mL/L fetal calf serum without antibiotics, and were plated in 60 mm Petri dishes (approximately 10^6 cells per dish). Antibiotics were added 3 h later.

In a first treatment protocol, 5 μg/mL of an agonistic anti-Fas antibody (7C11, Immunotech, Beckman Coulter, Miami, FL) was added 24 h after siRNA transfection, with or without 10 μmol/L benzyloxycarbonyl-valyl-alanyl-aspartic acid (o-methyl)-fluoro-methylketone (z-VAD-fmk) (Alexis, Coger, Paris, France), a pan-caspase inhibitor, and apoptosis was detected 40 h later, except for the assessment of cytochrome *c* release, which was detected at 24 h.

In a second treatment protocol, 6 μmol/L doxorubicin (Sigma, Saint-Louis, MO) was added 48 h after siRNA transfection, with or without 100 μmol/L z-VAD-fmk, and apoptosis was detected 24 h later except for the assessment of cytochrome c release, which was detected at 20 h.

Measurement of Beclin 1 mRNA expression by ribonuclease protection assay (RPA)

Attached HepG2 cells were washed twice with PBS and lysed in 5 mol/L guanidine thiocyanate and 0.1 mol/L EDTA (pH 7.4). RPA was carried out on cell lysates without previous RNA extraction[9]. The following DNA fragments were used to prepare riboprobes: a 200-bp fragment (nt 554-753, accession no. AF139131) from human beclin 1, and a 131-bp fragment (nt 553-683, accession no. NM00101) from human S6 used to normalize mRNA levels. The RPA and the separation of the protected mRNA fragments by polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis were performed as previously described[9]. Gel radioactivity was assessed with an Instant Imager (PerkinElmer, Courtaboeuf, France), and the ratio of the studied mRNA to the S6 mRNA was computed.

Western blot analysis of Beclin 1 and Bcl-X_L

Attached HepG2 cells were washed twice with PBS, harvested in PBS, and pelleted by centrifugation. The pellet was weighed and suspended in 2 × Laemmli buffer. Proteins were separated on SDS-polyacrylamide gels (70 g/L polyacrylamide for Beclin 1 and 120 g/L for Bcl-X_L) and transferred onto nitrocellulose membranes. After blocking, membranes were incubated for 1 h with either the anti-Beclin 1 antibody supplied by Dr Yoshimori[10], or an anti-Bcl-$X_{S/L}$ antibody (S-18) (Santa Cruz Biotechnology, Santa Cruz, CA), followed by a horseradish peroxidase-conjugated anti-rabbit IgG antibody (Immunotech, Beckman Coulter). Specific bands were detected by an enhanced chemiluminescence system (Pierce, Rockford, IL). Membranes were subsequently probed with a monoclonal anti-β-actin antibody (Sigma), and the β-actin signal was used to normalize protein loading.

Poly(ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) cleavage

Attached and floating HepG2 cells were harvested in culture medium and pelleted by centrifugation. Nuclear proteins were extracted according to Sadowski and Gilman[11]. After protein measurement (Biorad Reagent, Pierce), nuclear extracts underwent SDS-7% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and blotting as described above, and were revealed with a monoclonal anti-human PARP antibody (clone C2-10, BD Pharmingen, San Diego, CA).

Assessment of cell DNA content by flow cytometry

Pooled, free and adherent HepG2 cells were centrifuged, washed with PBS and fixed with 700 mL/L cold ethanol. The pellet was resuspended in 100 μL RNAse A (180 μg/mL) and incubated at room temperature for 30 min. Propidium iodide (Merck, Darmstadt, Germany; final concentration, 50 μg/mL) was added, and cells were incubated at room temperature in the dark for 15 min. The percentage of cells with a low DNA content (subG1 cells) was quantified by flow cytometry using an Epics Elite ESP coulter cytometer (Beckman coulter, Fullerton, CA). Propidium iodide was excited at 488 nm and fluorescence was analyzed at 630 nm.

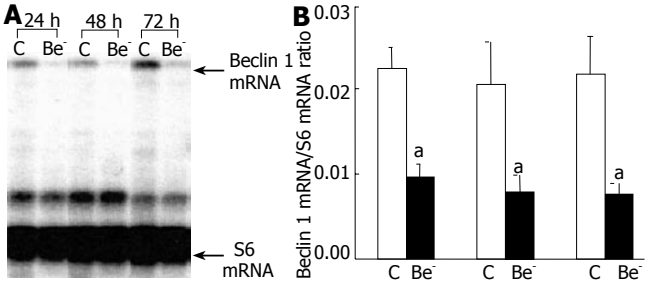


Figure 1 Beclin 1 mRNA expression after transfection of HepG2 cells with a Beclin 1 siRNA or a control siRNA. **A:** Representative RPA gel; **B:** Quantification of the Beclin1/S6 mRNA ratio. Results are means ± SE for 4 experiments ($^aP < 0.05$ *vs* C).

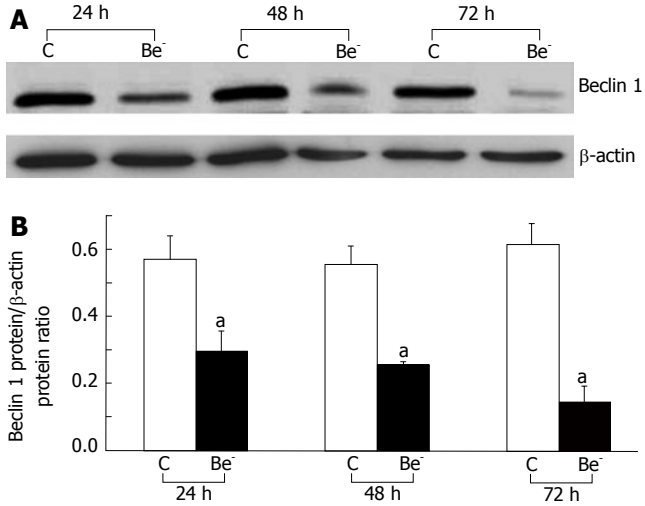


Figure 2 Beclin 1 protein expression after transfection of HepG2 cells with a Beclin 1 siRNA or a control siRNA. **A:** Representative Western blot of Beclin 1 and β-actin; **B:** Quantification of the Beclin 1 protein normalized to β-actin. Data are means ± SE for three experiments ($^aP < 0.05$ *vs* C).

Assessment of the mitochondrial membrane potential by flow cytometry

To determine the mitochondrial membrane potential, we used DIOC6(3) (Molecular Probes, Eugene, OR), a lipophilic cationic dye, which accumulates into polarized mitochondria. Free and adherent HepG2 cells were collected, rinsed with PBS, and suspended in the culture medium. DIOC6(3) was added at a final concentration of 100 nmol/L, and cell suspensions were incubated at 37 ℃ in the dark for 30 min. Propidium iodide (1.5 μmol/L) was added before flow cytometry to exclude dead cells and to only take into account the fluorescence DIOC6(3) in living cells. DIOC6(3) fluorescence was measured by flow cytometry. DIOC6(3) was excited at 488 nm and detected at 510 nm.

Measurement of cytochrome c release

Mitochondrial and cytosolic extracts were prepared using the ApoAlert® cell fractionation kit (BD Biosciences Clontech, Mountain View, CA, USA). Equal levels of protein were separated on SDS-12.5% polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, transferred and immunoblotted with an anti-cytochrome *c* antibody supplied with the kit.

Statistical analysis

Data were expressed as means ± SE. An unpaired Student's *t* test was used to assess statistical differences between HepG2 cells transfected with the control siRNA or the Beclin 1 siRNA. A paired Student's *t* test was used to assess differences resulting from treatments in control siRNA- or in Beclin 1 siRNA-transfected HepG2 cells.

RESULTS

Effects of partial Beclin 1 silencing on Fas- and doxorubicin-mediated apoptosis

We used RNA interference to partially silence the Beclin 1 gene in HepG2 cells. The Beclin 1 mRNA was decreased by 57%, 61% and 65%, 24, 48 and 72 h after transfection of the Beclin 1 siRNA, respectively (Figure 1), and the Beclin 1 protein was decreased by 48%, 54% and 76%, respectively (Figure 2).

We then measured the percentage of cells with a decreased DNA content (subG1 cells) as a consequence of DNA fragmentation after treatment of transfected cells with doxorubicin or with an agonistic anti-Fas antibody, which both trigger apoptotic cell death in HepG2 cells[12,13]. We compared the percentage of cells with a subG1 DNA content in HepG2 cells transfected with the control siRNA (control cells) or the Beclin 1 siRNA (Be^- cells) (Figure 3). The percentage of subG1 cells was not significantly increased in the untreated Be^- cells compared to the untreated control cells (Figure 3B). However, after exposure to the anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin, the increase in subG1 cells was much higher in the Be^- cells compared to the control cells (Figure 3B). In both control cells and Be^- cells, the pan-caspase inhibitor z-VAD-fmk markedly decreased subG1 cells after treatment with the anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin (Figure 3C).

We also studied the apoptotic response of HepG2 cells by assessing PARP cleavage (Figure 4). The cleaved p85 fragment of PARP was not detected in the untreated control cells or untreated Be^- cells. After treatment with the anti-Fas antibody, the cleaved p85 fragment was still absent in the treated control cells, but present in the treated Be^- cells. After treatment with doxorubicin, the p85 fragment was more abundant, and the uncleaved p116 fragment less abundant, in the Be^- cells compared to the control cells (Figure 4).

Since the apoptotic effects of Fas or doxorubicin are amplified by mitochondria[14-16], we determined whether Beclin 1 depletion increases the mitochondrial pathway of apoptosis by first assessing changes in the mitochondrial membrane potential (Figure 5). The percentage of living cells with a low mitochondrial membrane potential was not significantly increased in the untreated Be^- cells compared to the untreated control cells. After treatment with the anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin, the percentage of living cells with a low mitochondrial membrane potential was significantly higher in the Be^- cells than that in the control cells (Figure 5). We next investigated whether Beclin 1 silencing increases the release of mitochondrial cytochrome *c* into the cytosol after treatment with the anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin[14,16]. We firstly checked that the cytosolic fraction was not contaminated by

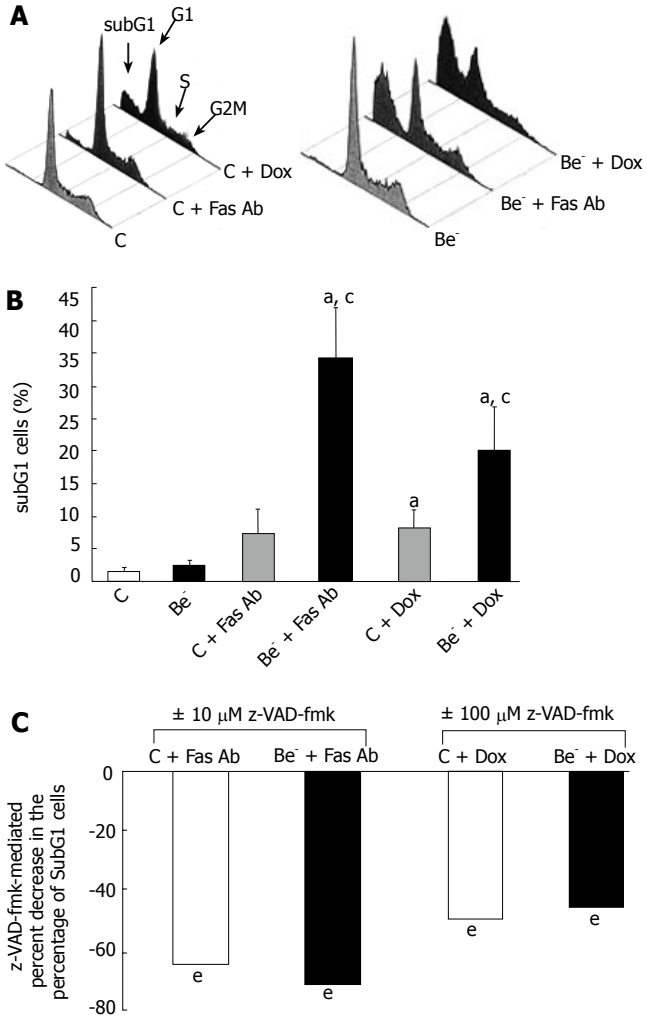


Figure 3 Percentage of subG1 cells after treatment of siRNA-transfected HepG2 cells with an agonistic anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin. **A:** Representative flow cytometry analysis of the cell cycle; **B:** Quantification of the subG1 peak. Results are means ± SE for 5 to 8 experiments ($^aP < 0.05$ *vs* untreated cells; $^cP < 0.05$ *vs* cells transfected with the control siRNA); **C:** Effects of z-VAD-fmk. The figure shows the mean percent decrease in subG1 cells for 3 to 5 experiments ($^eP < 0.05$ between cells incubated with and without z-VAD-fmk).

mitochondria by assessing COX4 (data not shown). Cytosolic cytochrome *c* was increased by the anti-Fas antibody or the doxorubicin treatment in the control cells, and this increase was further enhanced in the Be⁻ cells compared to the control cells, particularly after treatment with the anti-Fas antibody (Figure 6).

To test whether this effect could be mediated by decreased Bcl-X_L expression, we assessed this protein in the untreated and treated cells (Figure 7). Bcl-X_L was not significantly decreased 24, 48 or 72 h post-transfection in the cells transfected with Beclin 1 siRNA compared to the cells transfected with the control siRNA (Figures 7A-B). Treatment with the anti-Fas antibody caused no further changes (Figures 7C-D). Although treatment with doxorubicin tended to decrease Bcl-X_L expression in the control cells, and even more in the Be⁻ cells, the doxorubicin-mediated decline in Bcl-X_L did not differ significantly between the control cells and Be⁻ cells (Figures 7C -D).

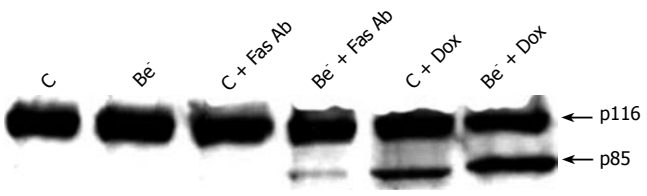


Figure 4 Western blot analysis of PARP cleavage after treatment of siRNA-transfected HepG2 cells with an agonistic anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin.

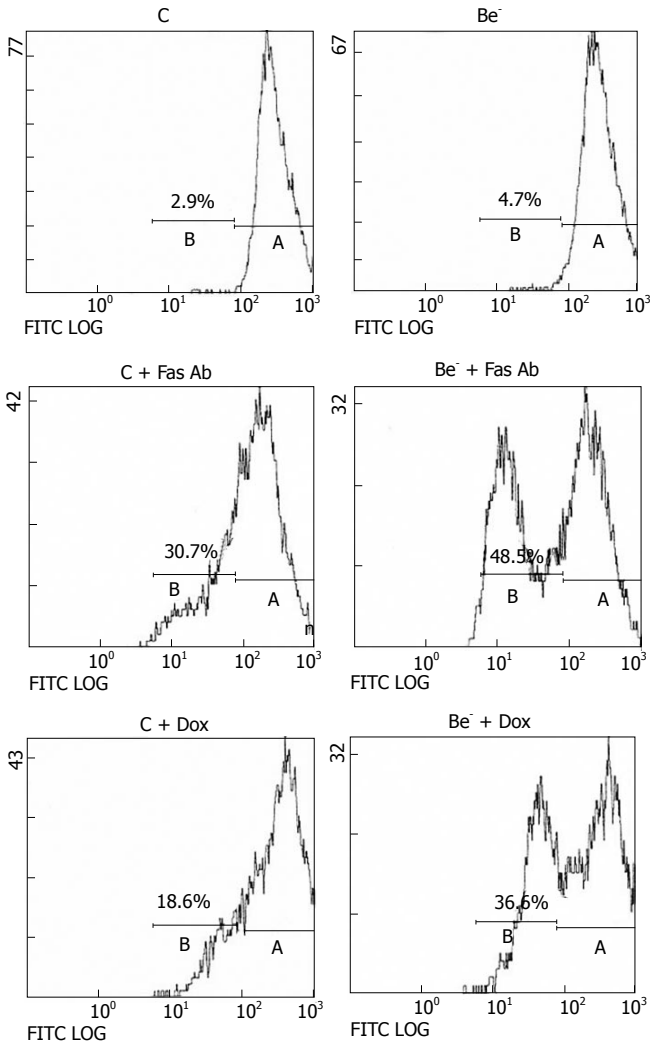


Figure 5 Assessment of the mitochondrial membrane potential in HepG2 living cells after siRNA transfection and treatment with an agonistic anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin (Dox). In four to five different experiments, the percentage (mean ± SE) of cells with a low mitochondrial membrane potential was 4.5 ± 1.3% in C cells, 7.7 ± 2.9% in the Be- cells, 29.1 ± 4.9% in C cells treated with the Fas Ab, 52.5 ± 7.1% in Be- cells treated with the Fas Ab ($P < 0.05$ *vs* treated C cells), 23.6 ± 3% in C cells treated with Dox, and 38.8 ± 3.8% in Be- cells treated with Dox ($P < 0.05$ *vs* treated C cells).

DISCUSSION

Although beclin 1 haploinsufficiency is involved in several extrahepatic human cancers[1,4], and increases the frequency of various tumors, including HCC in transgenic mice[2,3], its role in human HCC is still not clear[17], and its potential involvement in liver apoptosis has not been investigated

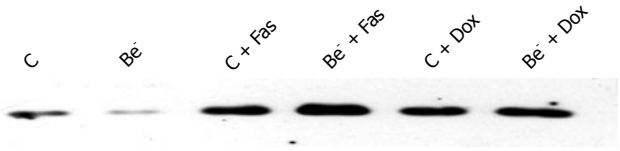


Figure 6 Assessment of cytochrome c release in HepG2 cells after siRNA transfection and treatment with an agonistic anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin.

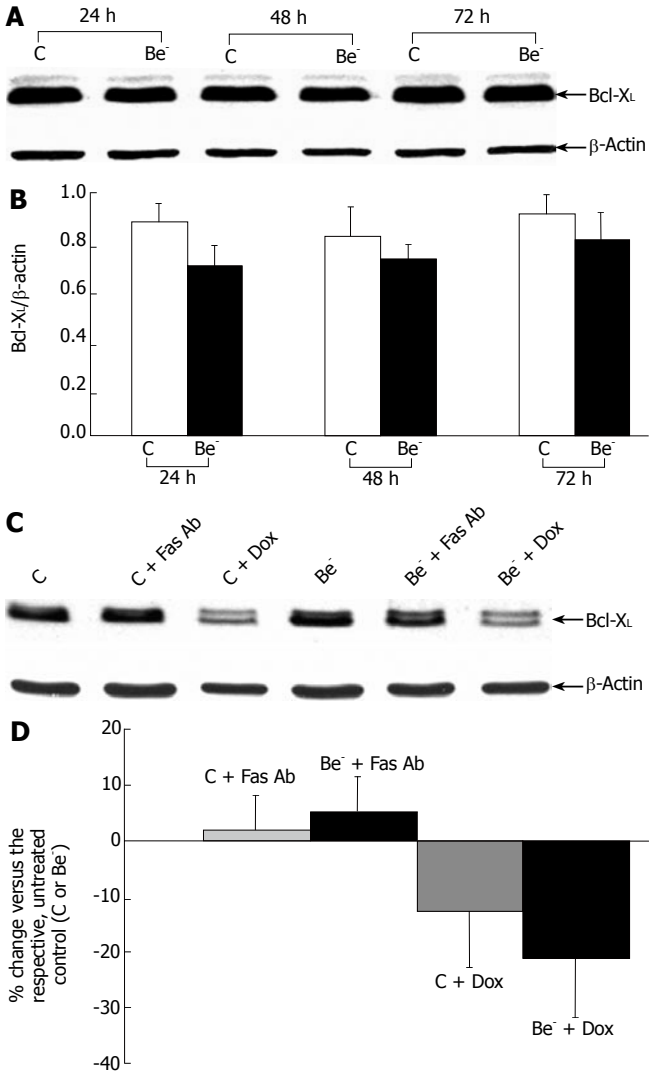


Figure 7 Expression of the Bcl-X_L protein after siRNA transfection, and treatment with an agonistic anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin (Dox). **A:** Representative Western blot of Bcl-X_L and β-actin; **B:** Quantification of the Bcl-X_L/β-actin ratio (mean ± SE for 5 experiments); **C:** Representative Western blot of Bcl-X_L and β-actin after incubation with or without Dox or an anti-Fas; **D:** Quantification of the Fas Ab- or Dox-induced change in Bcl-X_L expression (means ± SE for 4 to 5 experiments).

yet. The aim of the present study was to assess the effects of partial Beclin 1 silencing on the susceptibility of HepG2 human hepatoma cells to undergo apoptosis.

In the cells transfected with a Beclin 1 siRNA (Be^- cells), the Beclin 1 protein was decreased by 50% at 24 h and by 75% at 72 h compared to the cells transfected with a control siRNA (control cells). Although the spontaneous apoptotic rate of the Be^- cells was not significantly increased over that of the control cells, their apoptotic response to doxorubicin or an agonistic anti-Fas antibody was markedly aggravated (Figure 3). The percentage of subG1 cells was much higher in the treated Be^- cells compared to the treated control cells (Figures 3A-B) and dropped significantly when cells were pre-treated with the pan-caspase inhibitor, z-VAD-fmk (Figure 3C). In addition, PARP cleavage was more extensive in the treated Be^- cells than that in the treated control cells, especially after doxorubicin poisoning (Figure 4).

Two reasons prompted us to investigate the potential effect of Beclin 1 depletion on the mitochondrial pathway. Firstly, Beclin 1 physically interacts with Bcl-2 or Bcl-X_L[7,8], two anti-apoptotic proteins predominantly localized to the mitochondrial membrane that prevent loss of mitochondrial membrane potential and cytochrome *c* release[18-20]. Secondly, the apoptotic effects of Fas or doxorubicin are amplified by mitochondria, in particular in hepatocytes and hepatoma cell lines[14-16]. The dissipation of mitochondrial membrane potential after anti-Fas antibody or doxorubicin treatments was more severe, and the cytochrome *c* release was more abundant in the Be^- cells than that in the control cells (Figures 5 and 6), suggesting that Beclin 1 depletion activates the mitochondrial pathway of apoptosis. In a previous study, the over-expression of full-length human Beclin 1 was associated with decreased neuronal apoptosis in mice infected with the neurotropic Sinbis virus, whereas a deleted Beclin 1 construct lacking the region interacting with Bcl-2 or Bcl-X_L was not protective[7]. This previous observation may suggest that the interaction of Beclin 1 with either Bcl-2 or Bcl-X_L is essential for the anti-apoptotic effects of Beclin 1[7]. Since several studies have reported that Bcl-2 is not constitutively expressed in HepG2 cells[21-23] and Bcl-2 over-expression does not protect these cells from Fas or doxorubicin treatment[22-24], Bcl-X_L seems to be the major anti-apoptotic protein in the HepG2 cell line. In the present study, partial Beclin 1 silencing increased apoptosis without significantly decreasing the Bcl-X_L protein (Figure 7), suggesting that normal Beclin 1 levels are required to protect HepG2 cells from apoptotic stimuli, possibly by maintaining the expression of the Bcl-X_L-Beclin 1 complex. How does the interaction between Beclin 1 and Bcl-X_L or other proteins act to modulate mitochondrial permeabilization and apoptosis remains to be determined.

In contrast to our results, Furuya *et al*[8] instead observed that Beclin 1 over-expression aggravated CDD- or doxorubicin-induced apoptosis in a gastric cancer cell line, while Beclin 1 silencing had the opposite effects[8]. However, Beclin 1 silencing did not protect another gastric cancer cell line (with lower Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L expression) against CDD-mediated apoptosis. It thus appears that Beclin 1 differently modulates apoptosis in different cell lines. Although reasons for these differences are unknown, changes in the molecular environment of Beclin 1 from one cancer cell line to another might be involved, including different expression of Bcl-2 and Bcl-X_L[8], and other pro-apoptotic proteins of the Bcl-2 family interacting with these proteins, but not with Beclin 1[7,8,24,25]

In conclusion, our data demonstrate that partial Beclin 1 silencing augments the mitochondrial permeabilization and the apoptosis induced by Fas stimulation or doxorubicin treatment in hepatoma-derived HepG2 cells. As Takehara *et al*[21] reported that down-expression of Bcl-XL by antisense oligonucleotide aggravates apoptosis induced by staurosporine or serum deprivation in HepG2 cells, the use of both Beclin 1 and Bcl-X_L antisense oligonucleotides in combination with chemotherapeutic drugs might efficiently trigger apoptosis in human hepatocarcinoma. The different effects of Beclin 1 on apoptosis in different cell lines[3,7,8] show that Beclin 1, unlike Bcl-2 or Bcl-X_L, can be pro-apoptotic, anti-apoptotic or non-effective, depending on the cellular context.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The Authors are grateful to Dr. Tamotsu Yoshimori (National Institute for Basic Biology, Okazaki, Japan) for providing the anti-Beclin 1 antibody.

REFERENCES

1 **Aita VM,** Liang XH, Murty VV, Pincus DL, Yu W, Cayanis E, Kalachikov S, Gilliam TC, Levine B. Cloning and genomic organization of beclin 1, a candidate tumor suppressor gene on chromosome 17q21. *Genomics* 1999; **59:** 59-65

2 **Qu X,** Yu J, Bhagat G, Furuya N, Hibshoosh H, Troxel A, Rosen J, Eskelinen EL, Mizushima N, Ohsumi Y, Cattoretti G, Levine B. Promotion of tumorigenesis by heterozygous disruption of the beclin 1 autophagy gene. *J Clin Invest* 2003; **112:** 1809-1820

3 **Yue Z,** Jin S, Yang C, Levine AJ, Heintz N. Beclin 1, an autophagy gene essential for early embryonic development, is a haploinsufficient tumor suppressor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2003; **100:** 15077-15082

4 **Liang XH,** Jackson S, Seaman M, Brown K, Kempkes B, Hibshoosh H, Levine B. Induction of autophagy and inhibition of tumorigenesis by beclin 1. *Nature* 1999; **402:** 672-676

5 **Shimizu S,** Kanaseki T, Mizushima N, Mizuta T, Arakawa-Kobayashi S, Thompson CB, Tsujimoto Y. Role of Bcl-2 family proteins in a non-apoptotic programmed cell death dependent on autophagy genes. *Nat Cell Biol* 2004; **6:** 1221-1228

6 **Yu L,** Alva A, Su H, Dutt P, Freundt E, Welsh S, Baehrecke EH, Lenardo MJ. Regulation of an ATG7-beclin 1 program of autophagic cell death by caspase-8. *Science* 2004; **304:** 1500-1502

7 **Liang XH,** Kleeman LK, Jiang HH, Gordon G, Goldman JE, Berry G, Herman B, Levine B. Protection against fatal Sindbis virus encephalitis by beclin, a novel Bcl-2-interacting protein. *J Virol* 1998; **72:** 8586-8596

8 **Furuya D,** Tsuji N, Yagihashi A, Watanabe N. Beclin 1 augmented cis-diamminedichloroplatinum induced apoptosis via enhancing caspase-9 activity. *Exp Cell Res* 2005; **307:** 26-40

9 **Kaabache T,** Barraud B, Feldmann G, Bernuau D, Lardeux B. Direct solution hybridization of guanidine thiocyanate-solubilized cells for quantitation of mRNAs in hepatocytes. *Anal Biochem* 1995; **232:** 225-230

10 **Kihara A,** Kabeya Y, Ohsumi Y, Yoshimori T. Beclin-phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase complex functions at the trans-Golgi network. *EMBO Rep* 2001; **2:** 330-335

11 **Sadowski HB,** Gilman MZ. Cell-free activation of a DNA-binding protein by epidermal growth factor. *Nature* 1993; **362:** 79-83

12 **Lamboley C,** Bringuier AF, Feldmann G. Apoptotic behaviour of hepatic and extra-hepatic tumor cell lines differs after Fas stimulation. *Cell Mol Biol (Noisy-le-grand)* 2000; **46:** 13-28

13 **Sadji-Ouatas Z,** Lasfer M, Julien S, Feldmann G, Reyl-Desmars F. Doxorubicin and octreotide induce a 40 kDa breakdown product of p53 in human hepatoma and tumoral colon cell lines. *Biochem J* 2002; **364:** 881-885

14 **Feldmann G,** Haouzi D, Moreau A, Durand-Schneider AM, Bringuier A, Berson A, Mansouri A, Fau D, Pessayre D. Opening of the mitochondrial permeability transition pore causes matrix expansion and outer membrane rupture in Fas-mediated hepatic apoptosis in mice. *Hepatology* 2000; **31:** 674-683

15 **Barogi S,** Baracca A, Cavazzoni M, Parenti Castelli G, Lenaz G. Effect of the oxidative stress induced by adriamycin on rat hepatocyte bioenergetics during ageing. *Mech Ageing Dev* 2000; **113:** 1-21

16 **Eom YW,** Kim MA, Park SS, Goo MJ, Kwon HJ, Sohn S, Kim WH, Yoon G, Choi KS. Two distinct modes of cell death induced by doxorubicin: apoptosis and cell death through mitotic catastrophe accompanied by senescence-like phenotype. *Oncogene* 2005; **24:** 4765-4777

17 **Song H,** Xia SL, Liao C, Li YL, Wang YF, Li TP, Zhao MJ. Genes encoding Pir51, Beclin 1, RbAp48 and aldolase b are up or down-regulated in human primary hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2004; **10:** 509-513

18 **Boise LH,** González-García M, Postema CE, Ding L, Lindsten T, Turka LA, Mao X, Nuñez G, Thompson CB. bcl-x, a bcl-2-related gene that functions as a dominant regulator of apoptotic cell death. *Cell* 1993; **74:** 597-608

19 **Hockenbery D,** Nuñez G, Milliman C, Schreiber RD, Korsmeyer SJ. Bcl-2 is an inner mitochondrial membrane protein that blocks programmed cell death. *Nature* 1990; **348:** 334-336

20 **Green DR**, Reed JC. Mitochondria and apoptosis. *Science* 1998; **281:** 1309-1312

21 **Takehara T,** Liu X, Fujimoto J, Friedman SL, Takahashi H. Expression and role of Bcl-xL in human hepatocellular carcinomas. *Hepatology* 2001; **34:** 55-61

22 **Takahashi M,** Saito H, Okuyama T, Miyashita T, Kosuga M, Sumisa F, Yamada M, Ebinuma H, Ishii H. Overexpression of Bcl-2 protects human hepatoma cells from Fas-antibody-mediated apoptosis. *J Hepatol* 1999; **31:** 315-322

23 **Luo D,** Cheng SC, Xie H, Xie Y. Effects of Bcl-2 and Bcl-XL protein levels on chemoresistance of hepatoblastoma HepG2 cell line. *Biochem Cell Biol* 2000; **78:** 119-126

24 **Diaz JL,** Oltersdorf T, Horne W, McConnell M, Wilson G, Weeks S, Garcia T, Fritz LC. A common binding site mediates heterodimerization and homodimerization of Bcl-2 family members. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272:** 11350-11355

25 **Minn AJ,** Kettlun CS, Liang H, Kelekar A, Vander Heiden MG, Chang BS, Fesik SW, Fill M, Thompson CB. Bcl-xL regulates apoptosis by heterodimerization-dependent and -independent mechanisms. *EMBO J* 1999; **18:** 632-643

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Kumar M **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2901-2907
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

BASIC RESEARCH

Down-regulation of survivin expression by small interfering RNA induces pancreatic cancer cell apoptosis and enhances its radiosensitivity

Hai-Tao Guan, Xing-Huan Xue, Zhi-Jun Dai, Xi-Jing Wang, Ang Li, Zhao-Yin Qin

Hai-Tao Guan, Xing-Huan Xue, Zhi-Jun Dai, Xi-Jing Wang, Department of Oncosurgery, the Second affiliated Hospital of Xi'an Jiaotong University Medical College, Xi'an 710004, Shaanxi Province, China
Ang Li, Medical Research Center, Affiliated Stomatological Hospital of Xi'an Jiaotong University Medical College, Xi'an 710004, Shaanxi Province, China
Zhao-Yin Qin, Department of General Surgery, the Second Affiliated Hospital of Xi'an Jiaotong University Medical College, Xi'an 710004, Shaanxi Province, China
Supported by the Foundation of Tackling Key Problems in Science and Technology of Shaanxi Province [2004K13-G11(1)]
Correspondence to: Hai-Tao Guan, Department of Oncosurgery, the Second Affiliated Hospital of Xi'an Jiaotong University Medical College, 157 West 5th Road, Xi'an 710004, Shaanxi Province, China. guanhaitao@csco.org.cn
Telephone: +86-29-87679526 Fax: +86-29-87678599
Received: 2005-10-18 Accepted: 2005-11-18

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the inhibitory effect of small interfering RNA (siRNA) on the expression of survivin in pancreatic cancer cell line PC-2 and the role of siRNA in inducing PC-2 cell apoptosis and enhancing its radiosensitivity.

METHODS: A siRNA plasmid expression vector against survivin was constructed and transfected into PC-2 cells with Lipofectamine™ 2000. The down regulation of survivin expression was detected by semi-quantitive RT-PCR and immunohistochemical SP method and the role of siRNA in inducing PC-2 cell apoptosis and enhancing its radiosensitivity was detected by flow cytometry.

RESULTS: The sequence-specific siRNA efficiently and specifically down-regulated the expression of survivin at both mRNA and protein levels. The expression inhibition ratio was 81.25% at mRNA level detected by semi-quantitive RT-PCR and 74.24% at protein level detected by immunohistochemical method. Forty-eight hours after transfection,apoptosis was induced in 7.03% cells by siRNA and in 14.58% cells by siRNA combined with radiation.

CONCLUSION: The siRNA plasmid expression vector against survivin can inhibit the expression of survivin in PC-2 cells efficiently and specifically. Inhibiting the expression of survivin can induce apoptosis of PC-2 cells and enhance its radiosensitivity significantly. RNAi against survivin is of potential value in gene therapy of pancreatic cancer.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: RNA interference; Survivin; Pancreatic cancer; Radiation

Guan HT, Xue XH, Dai ZJ, Wang XJ, Li A, Qin ZY. Down-regulation of survivin expression by small interfering RNA induces pancreatic cancer cell apoptosis and enhances its radiosensitivity. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2901-2907

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2901.asp

INTRODUCTION

Survivin, a structurally unique member of the inhibitors of apoptosis protein (IAP)family, is involved in the control of cell division and inhibition of apoptosis. Survivin inhibits apoptosis via its baculovirus inhibitor of apoptosis repeat (BIR) protein domain by either directly or indirectly interfering with the function of caspases. Survivin is also a chromosomal passenger protein that is required for cell division. Survivin is expressed in embryonic tissues as well as in the majority of human cancers, but not in most normal adult tissues. The cancer-specific expression of survivin, coupled with its importance in inhibiting cell apoptosis and regulating cell division, makes it a useful diagnostic marker and a potential target for cancer treatment[1].

RNA interference (RNAi) is a process of post transcriptional gene silencing (PTGS) in which double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) inhibits gene expression in a sequence-dependent manner *via* degradation of the corresponding mRNA [2-5]. RNAi is initiated by an event while dsRNAs are recognized by Dicer, a member of the RNase III protein family[6]. The Dicer enzyme cleaves dsRNAs into 21 to 23 nucleotide short siRNAs. These siRNA duplexes are incorporated into a protein complex called the RNA-induced silencing complex, which recognizes and cleaves the cognate mRNA[7, 8]. Recently, Elbashir and his colleagues reported that introduction of synthetic 21nt siRNA into

mammalian cells could suppress gene expression in a sequence-specific manner[9]. By using dsRNAs of such a small size, the activation of dsRNA-dependent protein kinase and 2', 5'- oligoadenylate synthetase, which occurs as an interferon response to long dsRNA (i.e. longer than 30nt), leading to a global decrease in protein synthesis, is avoided [10,11]. Thus, siRNA has now become a powerful tool for studies on gene function, cancer and viral disease therapy. In this study, a siRNA against survivin plasmid expression vector was constructed and transfected into PC-2 cells. The changes of survivin expression following RNAi and the role of siRNA in inducing PC-2 cell apoptosis and enhancing its radiosensitivity were investigated, which may lay a foundation for further studies on the functions of survivin and genetic therapy involved in human pancreatic cancer.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Cell line and culture

Human pancreatic cancer cell line PC-2 was purchased from the Medical Experimental Animal Center of the Fourth Military Medical University. The cells were cultured in RPMI 1640 medium supplemented with 100 mL/L fetal bovine serum (FBS), 1×10^5 U/L penicillin and 0.1 g/L streptomycin in a humidified incubator containing 50 mL/L CO_2 at 37 ℃.

Construction of siRNA plasmid expression vector against survivin

Plasmid vector Pgenesil-1 was purchased from Wuhan Genesil Biotechnology Co, Ltd. Aiming at the sequence of survivin[12] (5'-GGA CCA CCG CAT CTC TAC A-3'), two DNA chains were synthesized as following: 5'-GATCC GGA CCA CCG CAT CTC TAC A TTCAAGACG TGT AGA GAT GCG GTG GTC C TTTTTT GAATTC A-3' and 3'-G CCT GGT GGC GTA GAG ATG T AAGTTCTGC ACA TCT CTA CGC CAC CAG G AAAAAA CTTAAG TTCGA-5'. The structure of the DNA chains is *Bam*HI + sense chain + loop + antisense chain + termination signal + *Eco*RI + *Hin*dIII. Equal amount of the two DNA chains was annealed and phosphorylated, then the double-stranded DNA was ligated with the linearized plasmid vector Pgenesil-1 completely digested with *Bam*HI and *Hin*dIII. The ligated plasmid DNA was transfected into competent cells $DH_{5\alpha}$ which were then seeded on solid LB medium containing 0.05 g/L kanamycin and cultured at 37 ℃ overnight. Three monoclonal colonies were picked out and seeded in 3 mL LB culture fluid containing 0.05 g/L kanamycin and cultured at 37 ℃ overnight in a rocking bed. The plasmid was extracted and verificated by digesting with restriction endonucleases and sequencing. The new plasmid was named Pgenesil-sur(+). The negative control plasmid Pgenesil-sur(-) was constructed as the same process. The target sequence is 5'-GAC TTC ATA AGG CGC ATG C-3' and does not have any homology with human beings or mice. The sequences of the two DNA chains are 5'-GATCC GAC TTC ATA AGG CGC ATG C TTCAAGACG GCA TGC GCC TTA TGA AGT C TTTTTT GTCGAC A-3' and 3'-G CTG AAG TAT TCC GCG TAC G AAGTTCTGC CGT ACG CGG AAT ACT TCA G AAAAAA CAGCTG TTCGA -5'. Their structure is *Bam*HI + sense chain + loop + antisense chain + termination signal + *Sal*I + *Hin*d III.

Extraction of plasmids

The plasmid extraction kit without endotoxin was purchased from Beijing Tianwei Corporation. The plasmids were extracted following the manufacturer's instructions. The concentration and purity of the plasmids were detected with an ultraviolet spectrophotometer. The plasmids were stored at -20 ℃ for following experiments.

Transfection of plasmids

Transfection reagent Lipofectamine™2000 was purchased from Invitrogen Corporation. Transfection was performed following the manufacturer's instructions. The ratio of plasmids: Lipofectamine™2000 was 1:3. Twenty-four hours before the transfection, the common complete medium was replaced by the antibiotics- free medium containing serum. Six hours after the transfection, the medium was replaced by the common complete medium again. Twelve hours after the transfection, expression of EGFP in PC-2 cell was observed under an inverse fluorescence microscope.

Expression of survivin mRNA detected by semi-quantitive RT-PCR

PC-2 cells were seeded in 6cm culture capsules and divided into blank control group, negative control group and positive experiment group. Each group contained 3 culture capsules. Only Lipofectamine™2000 was used for the transfection in the blank control group, plasmid Pgenesil-sur(-) was used for the transfection in the negative control group and plasmid Pgenesil-sur(+) was used for the transfection in the positive experiment group. Twenty-four hours after the transfection, 1×10^6 cells were collected and total RNA was extracted using the Trizol reagent following the manufacturer's instructions. The concentration and purity of the total RNA were detected with ultraviolet spectrophotometer. RT-PCR was performed by two-step method. Synthesis of cDNA was performed using the RevertAid™ first chain cDNA synthesis kit following the manufacturer's instructions. PCR was performed using the one tube convenient PCR kit purchased from Beijing Tianwei Corporation. Amplification of human GAPDH served as an internal standard. The primers used are 5' -CGA AGT CAA CGG ATT TGG TCG TAT-3' (forward primer) and 5'-AGC CTT CTC GGT GGT GAA GAC-3' (reverse primer). The amplification product was 306bp.The primers of survivin are 5'-GCA TGG GTG CCC CGA CGT TG-3' (forward primer) and 5'-GCT CCG GCC AGA GGC CTC AA -3' (reverse primer). The amplification product was 447bp. The PCR products were separated in 1.5% agarose gels, visualized by staining with ethidium bromide. Semi-quantitative analysis was performed with the Dolphin 1D software. The expression intensity of survivin was denoted with the ratio of the photodensity of the RT-PCR products of survivin and GAPDH. The inhibition ratio of survivin expression was calculated with the following formula: inhibition ratio of survivin expres-

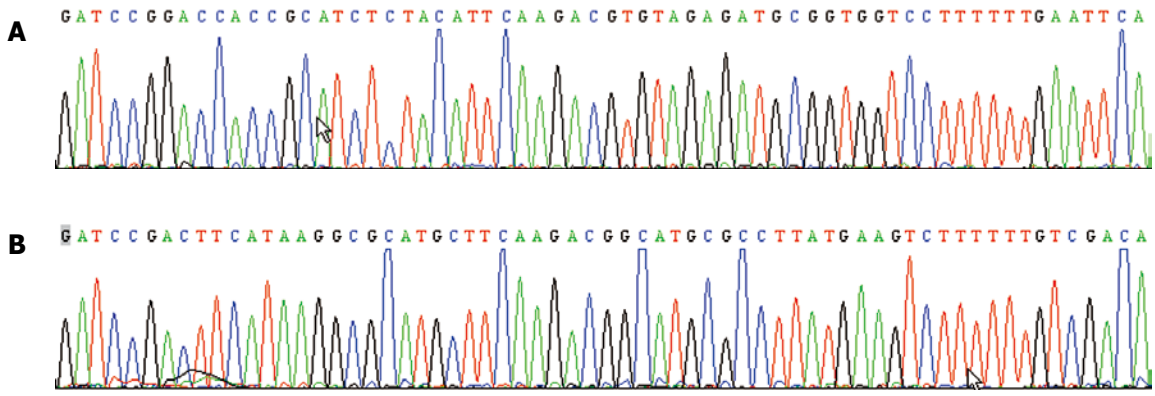


Figure 1 Reports of the sequencing of plasmid Pgenesil-sur(+) (**A**) and plasmid Pgenesil-sur (-) (**B**).

sion = (1-the expression intensity of survivin in the observation group/ the expression intensity of survivin in the blank control group)×100%.

Expression of survivin protein detected by immunohistochemical method

PC-2 cells were seeded in 24-well plates with a small square cover slip in each well. Grouping and transfection were performed the same as above. Each group contained 8 wells. Twenty-four hours after the transfection, the cells were fixed with cold 65% liquor pyroaceticus. The expression of survivin protein was detected by immunohistochemical SP method. The anti-survivin antibody was a rabbit anti-human monoclonal antibody purchased from Beijing Zhongshan Corporation. The working concentration was 1:50. A petroline section of breast cancer expressing survivn positively was used as a positive control, PBS was used to replace the anti-survivn antibody to make a negative control. Cells with brown-yellow granulations in endochylema or nuclei were considered as positive cells. According to the coloration, the cells were scored as following: 0, no staining; 1, faint-yellow; 2, brown-yellow; 3, dark-brown. Five fields of vision of each cover slip were observed under high power lens randomly. The cells were calculated and scored. The sum of the scores was divided by the number of cells, the result was considered as the expression intensity of survivin. The inhibition ratio of survivin expression was calculated with the following formula: inhibition ratio of survivin expression = (1-the expression intensity of survivin in the observation group/ the expression intensity of survivin in the blank control group)× 100%.

Radiation and apoptosis of PC-2 cells detected by flow cytometry

Cells were seeded in 25 cm^2 culture flasks and divided into blank control group, negative control group, positive experiment group, blank control + radiation group, negative control + radiation group, and positive experiment + radiation group. Each group contained 5 culture flasks. Transfection was performed the same as above. Twenty-four hours after the transfection, cells of groups 4, 5, 6 were radiated with 15 Gy of X-ray(6MV) at room temperature using a Varian 2300 C/D linear accelerator. The radiation conditions were ounce-skin distance = 100 cm, radiation dose rate = 2 Gy/min. After radiation, the cells were continuously cultured for another 24 h, digested, collected and washed twice with PBS. Then the cells were fixed with cold 75% ethanol at 4 ℃ overnight. The cells were centrifuged at 1000 r/ min for 5 min, the supernate was poured out, the cells were washed twice with PBS. The cells were resuspended with PBS containing 0.05 g/L RNase and incubated for 30 min at room temperature avoiding light to eliminate the intracellular RNA. The cells were centrifuged at 1000 r/min for 5 min, the supernate was poured out. The cells were resuspended with PBS containing 0.06 g/L propidium iodode again and incubated for 30 min at room temperature avoiding light, then cell apoptosis was detected by flow cytometry. The management was the same in cells of groups 1-3 except for no radiation.

Statistical analysis

Data were expressed as mean ± SD. All statistical analyses were performed using SPSS 10.0 software(one-way ANOVA). $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Verification of plasmids

The multiclone sites of plasmid Pgenesil-1 were as following: *Hin*dIII-*Xba*I-*Sal*I -*Pst*I-*Bam*HI-U6 Promotor-*Eco*RI-*Sal*I-*Xba*I-*Dra*III. An *Eco*RI site for plasmid Pgenesil-sur(+) and a *Sal*I site for plasmid Pgenesil-sur(-) were designed in the inserted fragments between the sites of *Bam*HI and *Hin*dIII. If the insertion was correct, a band about 400 bp should be cut off by *Eco*RI or *Sal*I. The results of digestion with restriction endonucleases and sequencing showed correct plasmids(Figure 1).

Results of transfection

Twelve hours after plasmid Pgenesil-sur(+) or plasmid Pgenesil-sur(-) was transfected into PC-2 cells using Lipofectamine™2000, expression of EGFP could be observed under an inverse fluorescence microscope. Twenty-four hours after the transfection, the expression of EGFP was the strongest. Seventy-two hours after the transfection, the expression of EGFP was attenuated gradually(Figure 2).

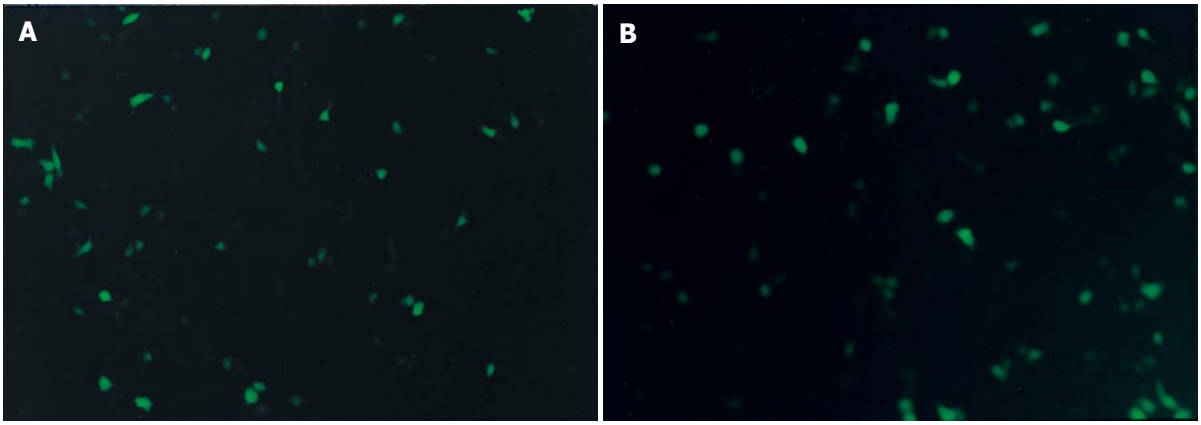


Figure 2 Expression of EGFP in PC-2 cells 24 h after trancfection of plasmid Pgenesil-sur(+) (**A**) and plasmid Pgenesil-sur(-) (**B**) (original magnification×200).

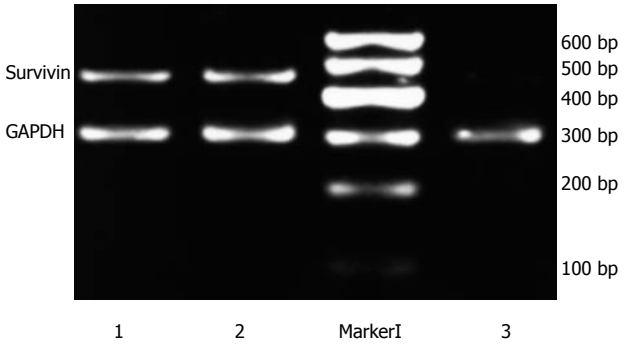


Figure 3 Down-regulation of survivin mRNA expression detected by semi-quantitive RT-PCR. 1: The blank control group; 2: The negative control group; M: Marker I; 3: The positive experiment group.

Significant down regulation of survivin mRNA expression by siRNA

Twenty-four hours after the transfection, the expression intensities of survivin mRNA in blank control, negative control and positive experiment groups were 0.96±0.02, 0.98±0.03 and 0.18±0.03, respectively. The statistical analysis showed that the expression of survivin mRNA in PC-2 cells was down regulated significantly after transfection with plasmid Pgenesil-sur(+) ($P<0.05$), the inhibition ratio was 81.25%. Then expression of PC-2 cells transfected with plasmid Pgenesil-sur(-) had no effect on the expression of survivin mRNA ($P>0.05$)(Figure 3).

Significant down regulation of Survivin protein expression by siRNA

Twenty-four hours after the transfection, the expression intensities of survivin protein in blank control, negative control and positive experiment groups were 2.29±0.23, 2.34±0.15 and 0.59±0.16, respectively. The statistical analysis showed that the expression of survivin protein in PC-2 cells was down- regulated significantly after transfected with plasmid Pgenesil-sur(+) ($P<0.05$), the inhibition ratio was 74.24%. The expression of PC-2 cells transfected with plasmid Pgenesil-sur(-) had no effect on the expression of survivin protein ($P>0.05$) (Figure 4).

Role of siRNA in inducing PC-2 cell apoptosis and enhancing its radiosensitivity detected by flow cytometry

Forty-eight hours after transfection, no cell apoptosis was detected in blank control and negative control groups, but in (7.03±1.12)% cells in the positive experiment group. The apoptosis rate in blank control+radiation group, negative control+radiation group and positive experiment +radiation group was (1.77±0.30)%, (1.66±0.46)% and (14.58±2.72)%, respectively. The statistical analysis showed that transfection with plasmid Pgenesil-sur(+) could induce spontaneous apoptosis of PC-2 cells in a certain degree and the effect was better than that of 15 Gy of X-ray radiation. Inhibiting the expression of survivin could enhance the radiosensitivity of PC-2 cells significantly. siRNA against survivin combined with radiation could induce significant apoptosis of PC-2 cells (Figure 5).

DISCUSSION

Pancreatic cancer is one of the most malignant tumors with a very poor prognosis. The 5-year survival rate of pancreatic cancer patients receiving surgery and chemotherapy ranges 1%-2%. One of the reasons for this low survival rate is the insensitivity of pancreatic cancer to most oncologic therapies such as chemotherapy, radiotherapy and immunotherapy. Tumor development and progression as well as resistance to most oncologic therapies result mainly from lacking response to apoptotic stimuli[13].

Survivin, a member of the IAP family, is a bifunctional protein that suppresses apoptosis and regulates cell division. Recent studies showed that there is a close relationship between survivin and malignant tumors. The expression of survivin is highly cancer-specific, and is one of the top four transcripts uniformly up-regulated in human cancers, but not in normal tissues[14]. The overexpression of survivin appears to correlate with aggressive tumor behavior and poor prognosis in colorectal cancer[15-17], neuroblastomas[18], melanomas[19], non small cell lung cancers[20], breast carcinomas[21], esophageal squamous cell carcinomas[22] and soft-tissue

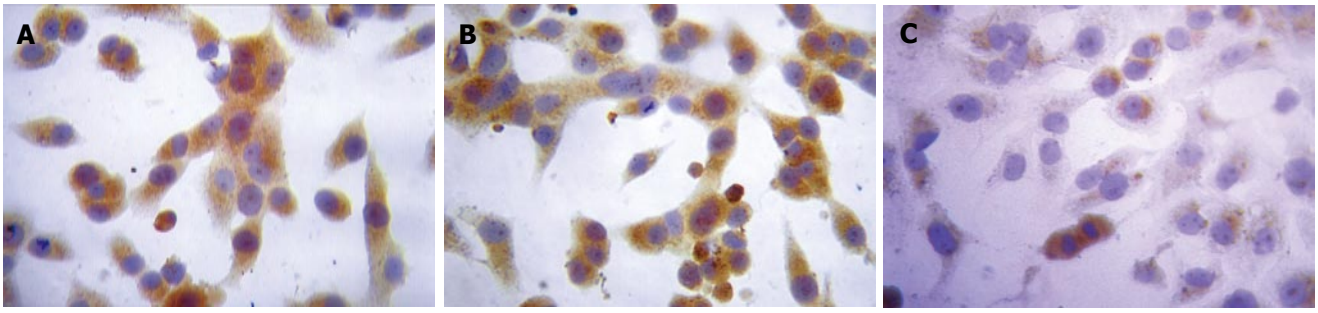


Figure 4 Down-regulation of survivin expression detected by immunohisto- chemical SP method in the blank control group (**A**), negative control group (**B**), and positive experiment group (**C**) (coloration with DAB, original magnification × 400)

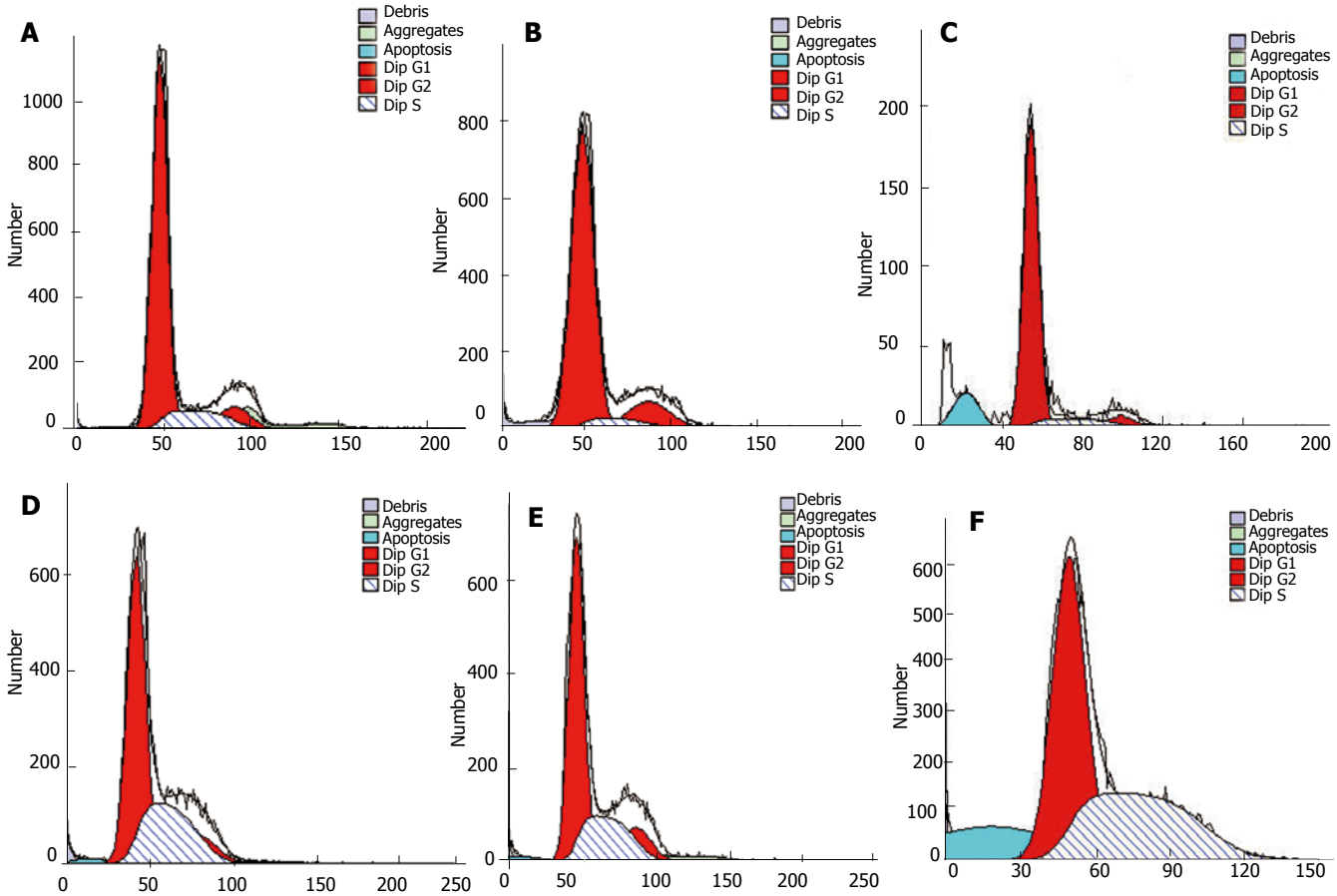


Figure 5 Apoptosis of PC-2 cells detected in 6 groups by flow cytometry (stained with PI)

sarcoma[23]. Additionally, survivin overexpression is also correlated with insensitivity to chemotherapy and radiotherapy in cancers[24,25]. Inhibiting the expression of survivin can induce tumor cell apoptosis, sensitize tumor cells to chemotherapy, radiotherapy and inhibit tumor-angiogenesis[26-29]. Survivin has become an ideal target for the diagnosis and treatment of cancer.

Studies on the relationship between the expression of survivin and pancreatic cancer showed that survivin is also overexpressed in pancreatic cancer, and participates in the development and progress of pancreatic cancer by inhibiting apoptosis. Its overexpression is associated with the insensitivity of pancreatic cancer to chemotherapy and radiotherapy, and is a poor prognosis marker[30-33]. All these studies suggest that survivin is of great potential value in the treatment of pancreatic cancer.

The mechanisms by which survivin inhibits cell apoptosis and cell division are still highly controversial. Survivin may regulate apoptosis by directly or indirectly inhibiting the activity of caspases (caspase-3, -7, -6, -8, -9, -10), or by interacting with cdk4 which releases P_{21} from its complex with cdk4 making it possible for P_{21} to complex with caspase-3, the initial step in inactivating caspase-3 in mitochondria. Survivin may possibly function to inhibit the activity of caspases indirectly *via* binding to and sequestering Smac/DIABLO, thus preventing Smac/DIABLO binding to other IAPs. Survivin might be an additional chromosomal passenger protein just like inner

centromere protein (INCENP), TD-60 and Aurora-B, and is important for cytokinesis and chromosome movement during cell division. Overexpression of survivin may overcome the G2/M phase checkpoint to enforce progression of cells through mitosis[1].

RNAi is characterized by high efficiency, high specificity and low toxicity. siRNA has become a powerful tool for studies on gene function, cancer and viral disease therapy. In this study, we designed and constructed the siRNA plasmid expression vector. Its transcript can form a short hairpin RNA(shRNA) with inverted repeat sequence separated by a short loop sequence, then the shRNA is processed into functional siRNA to degradate target mRNA and silences its expression. The siRNA plasmid expression vector constructed in this study contains the EGFP gene that makes it convenient to observe the result of transfection. By aiming at different sequence of the target gene, the effect of RNAi may be greatly different [34, 35] suggesting that it is very important to find the proper sequence. The sequence of Kappler consulted in this study has been confirmed effective in multiple tumor cell lines[12,36]. The results of our studies also demonstrated that it was effective both in pancreatic cancer cell line PC-2 and in breast cancer cell line MCF-7 (data not shown), suggesting that this sequence may be of universality in malignant tumors and should be a preferential sequence when study on the RNAi against surviving is carried out.

In this study, we investigated whether the sensitivity to X-irradiation could be affected by inhibiting survivin expression with siRNA. The results showed that the siRNA against survivin plasmid expression vector constructed in this study had highly specificity, and could suppress the expression of survivin in PC-2 cells efficiently suggesting that inhibiting the expression of survivin can induce spontaneous apoptosis of pancreatic cancer cells in a certain degree and enhance its radiosensitivity significantly. siRNA against survivin is of potential value in the treatment of pancreatic cancer.

REFERENCES

1 **Chiou SK,** Jones MK, Tarnawski AS. Survivin - an anti-apoptosis protein: its biological roles and implications for cancer and beyond. *Med Sci Monit* 2003; **9:** PI25-PI29

2 **Fire A**, Xu S, Montgomery MK, Kostas SA, Driver SE, Mello CC. Potent and specific genetic interference by double-stranded RNA in Caenorhabditis elegans. *Nature* 1998; **391:** 806-811

3 **Sharp PA.** RNA interference--2001. *Genes Dev* 2001; **15:** 485-490

4 **Hutvágner G**, Zamore PD. RNAi: nature abhors a double-strand. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2002; **12**: 225-232

5 **Hannon GJ**. RNA interference. *Nature* 2002; **418**: 244-251

6 **Bernstein E**, Caudy AA, Hammond SM, Hannon GJ. Role for a bidentate ribonuclease in the initiation step of RNA interference. *Nature* 2001; **409**: 363-366

7 **Hammond SM**, Bernstein E, Beach D, Hannon GJ. An RNA-directed nuclease mediates post-transcriptional gene silencing in Drosophila cells. *Nature* 2000; **404**: 293-296

8 **Hammond SM**, Boettcher S, Caudy AA, Kobayashi R, Hannon GJ. Argonaute2, a link between genetic and biochemical analyses of RNAi. *Science* 2001; **293**: 1146-1150

9 **Elbashir SM**, Harborth J, Lendeckel W, Yalcin A, Weber K, Tuschl T. Duplexes of 21-nucleotide RNAs mediate RNA interference in cultured mammalian cells. *Nature* 2001; **411**: 494-498

10 **Manche L**, Green SR, Schmedt C, Mathews MB. Interactions between double-stranded RNA regulators and the protein kinase DAI. *Mol Cell Biol* 1992; **12**:5238 -5248

11 **Minks MA**, West DK, Benvin S, Baglioni C. Structural requirements of double-stranded RNA for the activation of 2′,5′ -oligo(A) polymerase and protein kinase of interferon-treated HeLa cells. *J Biol Chem* 1979; **254**: 10180-10183

12 **Kappler M,** Bache M, Bartel F, Kotzsch M, Panian M, Würl P, Blümke K, Schmidt H, Meye A, Taubert H. Knockdown of survivin expression by small interfering RNA reduces the clonogenic survival of human sarcoma cell lines independently of p53. *Cancer Gene Ther* 2004; **11:** 186-193

13 **Westphal S**, Kalthoff H. Apoptosis: targets in pancreatic cancer. *Mol Cancer* 2003; **2:** 6

14 **Velculescu VE,** Madden SL, Zhang L, Lash AE, Yu J, Rago C, Lal A, Wang CJ, Beaudry GA, Ciriello KM, Cook BP, Dufault MR, Ferguson AT, Gao Y, He TC, Hermeking H, Hiraldo SK, Hwang PM, Lopez MA, Luderer HF, Mathews B, Petroziello JM, Polyak K, Zawel L, Kinzler KW. Analysis of human transcriptomes. *Nat Genet* 1999; **23:** 387-388

15 **Kawasaki H,** Altieri DC, Lu CD, Toyoda M, Tenjo T, Tanigawa N. Inhibition of apoptosis by survivin predicts shorter survival rates in colorectal cancer. *Cancer Res* 1998; **58:** 5071-5074

16 **Sarela AI**, Macadam RC, Farmery SM, Markham AF, Guillou PJ. Expression of the antiapoptosis gene, survivin, predicts death from recurrent colorectal carcinoma. *Gut* 2000; **46**: 645-650

17 **Sarela AI**, Scott N, Ramsdale J, Markham AF, Guillou PJ. Immunohistochemical detection of the anti-apoptosis protein, survivin, predicts survival after curative resection of stage II colorectal carcinomas. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2001; **8**: 305-310

18 **Ito R**, Asami S, Motohashi S, Ootsuka S, Yamaguchi Y, Chin M, Shichino H, Yoshida Y, Nemoto N, Mugishima H, Suzuki T. Significance of survivin mRNA expression in prognosis of neuroblastoma. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2005; **28**: 565-568

19 **Chiodino C**, Cesinaro AM, Ottani D, Fantini F, Giannetti A, Trentini GP, Pincelli C. Communication: expression of the novel inhibitor of apoptosis survivin in normal and neoplastic skin. *J Invest Dermatol* 1999; **113**: 415-418

20 **Shinohara ET,** Gonzalez A, Massion PP, Chen H, Li M, Freyer AS, Olson SJ, Andersen JJ, Shyr Y, Carbone DP, Johnson DH, Hallahan DE, Lu B. Nuclear survivin predicts recurrence and poor survival in patients with resected nonsmall cell lung carcinoma. *Cancer* 2005; **103:** 1685-1692

21 **Tanaka K**, Iwamoto S, Gon G, Nohara T, Iwamoto M, Tanigawa N. Expression of survivin and its relationship to loss of apoptosis in breast carcinomas. *Clin Cancer Res* 2000; **6**: 127-134

22 **Kato J**, Kuwabara Y, Mitani M, Shinoda N, Sato A, Toyama T, Mitsui A, Nishiwaki T, Moriyama S, Kudo J, Fujii Y. Expression of survivin in esophageal cancer: correlation with the prognosis and response to chemotherapy. *Int J Cancer* 2001; **95**: 92-95

23 **Kappler M,** Kotzsch M, Bartel F, Füssel S, Lautenschläger C, Schmidt U, Würl P, Bache M, Schmidt H, Taubert H, Meye A. Elevated expression level of survivin protein in soft-tissue sarcomas is a strong independent predictor of survival. *Clin Cancer Res* 2003; **9:** 1098-1104

24 **Ikeguchi M**, Liu J, Kaibara N. Expression of survivin mRNA and protein in gastric cancer cell line (MKN-45) during cisplatin treatment. *Apoptosis* 2002; **7**: 23-29

25 **Rödel C**, Haas J, Groth A, Grabenbauer GG, Sauer R, Rödel F. Spontaneous and radiation-induced apoptosis in colorectal carcinoma cells with different intrinsic radiosensitivities: survivin as a radioresistance factor. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2003; **55:** 1341-1347

26 **Pennati M**, Binda M, De Cesare M, Pratesi G, Folini M, Citti L, Daidone MG, Zunino F, Zaffaroni N. Ribozyme-mediated down-regulation of survivin expression sensitizes human melanoma cells to topotecan in vitro and in vivo. *Carcinogenesis* 2004; **25**: 1129-1136

27 **Lu B**, Mu Y, Cao C, Zeng F, Schneider S, Tan J, Price J, Chen J, Freeman M, Hallahan DE.Survivin as a therapeutic target

for radiation sensitization in lung cancer. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 2840-2845

28 **Tu SP**, Jiang XH, Lin MC, Cui JT, Yang Y, Lum CT, Zou B, Zhu YB, Jiang SH, Wong WM, Chan AO, Yuen MF, Lam SK, Kung HF, Wong BC. Suppression of survivin expression inhibits in vivo tumorigenicity and angiogenesis in gastric cancer. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 7724-7732

29 **Coma S**, Noe V, Lavarino C, Adán J, Rivas M, López-Matas M, Pagan R, Mitjans F, Vilaró S, Piulats J, Ciudad CJ. Use of siRNAs and antisense oligonucleotides against survivin RNA to inhibit steps leading to tumor angiogenesis. *Oligonucleotides* 2004; **14**: 100-113

30 **Satoh K**, Kaneko K, Hirota M, Masamune A, Satoh A, Shimosegawa T. Expression of survivin is correlated with cancer cell apoptosis and is involved in the development of human pancreatic duct cell tumors. *Cancer* 2001; **92**: 271-278

31 **Liu jw**, Li KZ, Dou KF, Su MQ, Yu WB, Zhang FQ. Survivin Antisense Oligonucleotide Induces Apoptosis and Sensitizes Pancreatic Cancer Cells to Gemcitabine. *Zhonghua Putong Waike Zazhi* 2004;**19**: 401-403

32 **Asanuma K**, Kobayashi D, Furuya D, Tsuji N, Yagihashi A, Watanabe N. A role for survivin in radioresistance of pancreatic cancer cells. *Jpn J Cancer Res* 2002; **93**: 1057-1062

33 **Kami K**, Doi R, Koizumi M, Toyoda E, Mori T, Ito D, Fujimoto K, Wada M, Miyatake S, Imamura M. Survivin expression is a prognostic marker in pancreatic cancer patients. *Surgery* 2004;**136**: 443-448

34 **Luo KQ**, Chang DC. The gene-silencing efficiency of siRNA is strongly dependent on the local structure of mRNA at the targeted region. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2004; **318:** 303-310

35 **Overhoff M**, Alken M, Far RK, Lemaitre M, Lebleu B, Sczakiel G, Robbins I. Local RNA target structure influences siRNA efficacy: a systematic global analysis. *J Mol Biol* 2005; **348:** 871-881

36 **Lu X**, Zheng QC, Xiong J, Zhang Y, Qing T. Inhibitory Effect of siRNA on Survivin Expression in HepG2 Cells. *Huazhong Keji Daxue Xuebao(Yixue Ban)* 2004; **33**: 696-699

S- Editor Guo SY **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Cao L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2908-2913
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

BASIC RESEARCH

Hyperlipidemia intensifies cerulein-induced acute pancreatitis associated with activation of protein kinase C in rats

Ya-Jun Wang, Jia-Bang Sun, Fei Li, Shu-Wen Zhang

Ya-Jun Wang, Jia-Bang Sun, Fei Li, Shu-Wen Zhang, Department of General Surgery, Xuanwu Hospital of Capital University of Medical Sciences, Beijing 100053, China
Supported by the Key Program of Beijing Academy of Health, No.1998-11-2001-09
Correspondence to: Dr. Ya-Jun Wang, Department of General Surgery, Xuanwu Hospital of Capital University of Medical Sciences, 45 Changchun Street, Beijing 100053, China. wyjwmj@yahoo.com.cn
Telephone: +86-10-81439530
Received: 2005-09-11 Accepted: 2005-11-18

Key words: Acute pancreatitis; Hyperlipidemia; Protein kinase C

Wang YJ, Sun JB, Li F, Zhang SW. Hyperlipidemia intensifies cerulein-induced acute pancreatitis associated with activation of protein kinase C in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2908-2913

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2908.asp

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the effects of hyperlipidemia on acute pancreatitis (AP) and the possible mechanisms.

METHODS: Rat models of hyperlipidemia and AP were established by Triton WR1339 and cerulein respectively. Human albumin was used to treat AP complicated by hyperlipidemia. In each group, we compared the histological score, volume of ascites, ratio of pancreatic wet/dry weight, serum amylase (AMY) and pancreatic acinar cell apoptosis. The level of protein kinase C (PKC) membrane translocation in pancreatic tissue was detected by Western blot.

RESULTS: In the hyperlipidemia model established by Triton WR1339, triglyceride (TG) increased remarkably and reached its peak 6 h after injection, and most rats developed mild acute pancreatitis. Histological score, volume of ascites, ratio of wet/dry weight and serum AMY in AP animals with hyperlipidemia were obviously higher than those in AP animals ($P < 0.05$) and decreased after albumin therapy but not significantly ($P > 0.05$). Apoptotic cells detected by terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase-mediated dUTP-biotin nick end labeling (TUNEL) increased in AP animals with hyperlipidemia and did not change distinctly after albumin therapy. PKC membrane translocation level increased in AP animals with hyperlipidemia and decreased remarkably after albumin therapy ($P < 0.05$).

CONCLUSION: Hyperlipidemia may induce AP or intensify pancreatic injury. Albumin therapy can not alleviate pancreatic lesion effectively. PKC activation may be one mechanism by which AP is intensified by hyperlipidemia.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

INTRODUCTION

Acute pancreatitis (AP) is a common disease that normally runs a benign course in the majority of patients. However in up to 20% of individuals the disease is severe and may be associated with a mortality of about 20%[1,2]. Since Speck in 1865[3] noted the association between hyperlipidemia and AP, their relationship has been studied by many scholars. Currently, hyperlipidemia is another main cause of AP besides cholelithiasis and alcohol abuse[4]. Serum triglyceride (TG) levels higher than 1000 mg/dl seem to be a serious factor for developing AP, particularly in patients suffering from familial hyperlipidemia (types 1, 4 or 5 according to Fredrickson's classification). AP occurs with an incidence of up to 21%[5,6]. Hydrolysis of TG by pancreatic lipase with the local release of large quantities of free fatty acids (FFAs) has been proposed as the pathogenic mechanisms. Hyperlipidemia is a common cause of AP. Moreover, lipid levels increase above normal in up to 50% of patients with AP of any cause[7].

Several studies in humans and animals have been performed to evaluate hyperlipidemia as a risk factor for developing AP. However, there is no ideal animal model of hyperlipidemic AP. Information about the influence of hyperlipidemia on the course of AP is relatively rare. The majority of investigators considered that hyperlipidemia can intensify the pancreatic lesion and systemic inflammatory response. Saharia *et al*[8] perfused the pancreas preparations with TG and FFAs (oleic acid) and found that they can lead to edema of the isolated pancreas, weight gain, and elevation of serum AMY. The injury caused by FFAs is similar to that seen with TG infusion, but it occurs more rapidly. These studies add support to the concept that hypertriglyceridemia can initiate pancreatic injury and the release of FFAs may be the mechanism. Kimuru *et al*[9] initiated an AP model with cerulein, retrograde duct injection of sodium taurocholate,

bile/pancreatic duct respectively and found that the isolate pancreatic damage is increased by TG perfusion. However, some reports suggest that hyperlipidemia could not aggravate the course of AP. Paye *et al*[10] prepared an AP model with cerulein and injected TG simultaneously, and found that histological alterations, pancreatic enzyme level and ascites in these models do not differ from those in AP patients without TG injection. To approve this result further, the authors collected very low density lipoprotein (VLDL) from AP patients and found that the VLDL intravenous infusion for hypertriglyceridemia does not alter the course of AP[11]. Therefore the role of hyperlipidemia in acute pancreatitis seems questionable.

The mechanism by which hyperlipidemia leads to AP is still unclear. A well-accepted mechanism proposed by Havel *et al*[12] is that unbound FFAs are toxic and could produce acinar cells or capillary injury. Increased concentration of chylomicrons in pancreatic capillaries causes capillary plugging and leads to ischemia and acidosis. FFAs can induce activation of trypsinogen and initiate AP. Recently, it was reported that FFAs are toxic to pancreatic β-cells leading to diabetes and insulin resistance syndrome. The toxicity is associated with abnormalities in the insulin signaling cascade and may be mediated by FFA activation of protein kinase C (PKC)[13]. Also, there is abundant PKC in pancreatic acinar cells[14]. Other similar mechanisms of FFAs may damage acinar cells.

The aim of the present work was to determine whether endogenous hyperlipidemia aggravates *in vivo* cerulein-induced edematous AP and activates PKC in pancreas of rats.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Animals

Male Sprague-Dawley rats, weighing 250-270 g were used. Experiments were performed in accordance with the National Institutes of Health Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals. The rats were maintained at 23 ℃ in a 12 h light dark cycle, with free access to water and standard rat chow. The rats were fasted for 12 h prior to the experiment, but with free access to water. They were anesthetized with chloral hydrate (300 mg/kg intraperitoneal injection). Body temperature was monitored and maintained at 37.5 ± 1 ℃ using a heating device.

Models of hyperlipidemia, AP, and AP with hyperlipidemia

Hyperlipidemia was induced by intravenous injection of 10% Triton WR1339 solution (TyloxAPol, Sigma, USA) through the left external iliac vein. Triton WR1339, a non-ionic surface active detergent leads to an increase of endogenous TG and total cholesterol (TCH) blood concentrations[15, 16]. We determined the required amounts of Triton WR1339 with two doses of 100 mg/kg and 400 mg/kg body weight respectively. A volume of 400 mg/kg Triton WR1339 solution could induce maximal hyperlipidemia. The non-hyperlipidemic animals received an injection of physiological saline solution intravenously instead of Triton WR1339.

AP was induced by 4 h abdominal subcutaneous injection of cerulein (Sigma, American, 20 μg/kg in 0.5 mL of saline vehicle) as previously described[17].

To explore the influence of hyperlipidemia on acute experimental pancreatitis, we used five different groups of animals with 12 rats in each group. The animals of the first group [$C_{(sal)}$] received 1.0 mL saline (sal) solution, and the second group [$C_{(tri)}$] received 1.0 mL of 10% Triton WR1339 (tri) intravenously. In these two groups [$C_{(sal)}$ and $C_{(tri)}$] no pancreatitis was induced. AP was induced in the third group (AP) and the fourth group (HAP) as described above. The animals of group HAP received an injection of 1.0 mL of Triton WR1339 intravenously 6 h before pancreatitis was induced with cerulein infusion. Since albumin could effectively combine FFAs in circulation to prevent cellular damage[18], in the fifth treatment group (THAP), the rats received an injection of 1.25 g/kg albumin intravenously after pancreatitis was induced.

Analysis of serum lipid, AMY activity and histology

Blood samples were taken from all animals before and 3, 6, 9 h after induction of hyperlipidemia or AP with hyperlipidemia. The samples were used to measure TG, TCH, AMY activity.

Three and six hours after induction of AP, the rats were sacrificed by aortic puncture and blood samples taken for plasma biochemical measurements. A complete macroscopic examination of the peritoneal cavity and ascites was immediately performed, and the pancreas was removed using a standardized monobloc surgical technique. The pancreas was divided into three parts. The pancreatic head was fixed in Bouin's solution, embedded in paraffin, sliced, and stained with hematoxylin and eosin. The pancreas body was put into liquid nitrogen for PKC analysis. To better estimate the amount of edema, the remaining pancreatic tissue was weighed and dessicated for 24 h at 173 ℃ to measure its dry weight. We used the wet to dry ratio to quantify edema formation.

To quantify the histological changes, two pathologists judged the tissue samples using a point score as previously described[19,20]. Plasma AMY concentrations were determined after plasma dilution (1/20) by the colorimetric assay AMYL (Boehringer Mannhein, Germany). Plasma TG was measured using the colorimetric assay TG GPOPAP (Boehringer).

Detection of apoptosis

Recent studies indicate that mild acute pancreatitis is related to the extent of acinar cell apoptosis[21-23]. A pancreatic tissue section was prepared and assayed with the *in situ* cell death detection kit, POD (Boehringer Mannheim, Germany) following the manufacturer's instructions. Slides were counterstained with hematoxylin and viewed under a light microscope.

Activation of protein kinase C

PKC activation was determined in both cytosolic and particulate fractions as previously described[24]. Frozen pancreatic tissue(50 mg) was rapidly thawed and homogenized at 4 ℃ in lysis buffer A (mM: Tris-HCl 50; pH 7.4; NaCl 150; EDTA 2; EGTA 2; DTT 2; Na py-

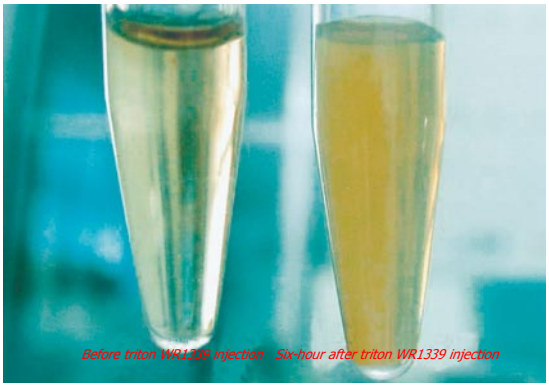


Figure 1 Development of chylomicronemia after Triton WR1339 injection.

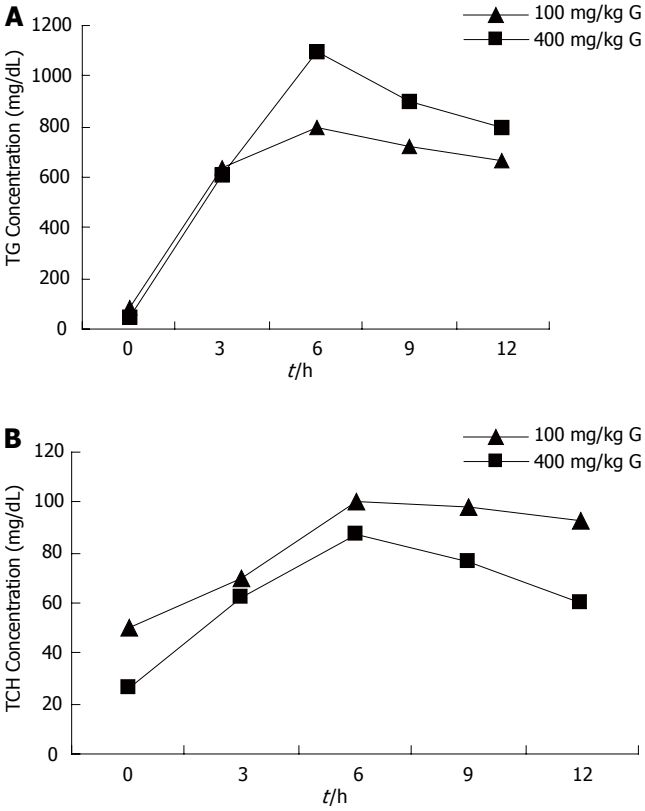


Figure 2 Curves of serum TG and TCH induced by Triton WR 1339 in rats.

rophosphate 5; KF 50; PMSF 1; 1μg/mL: Aprotinin, Leupeptin, Pepstatin A). Homogenates were centrifuged at 100 000 r/min for 30 min at 4 ℃ in an Optima TLX ultracentrifuge to yield cytosol. The pellet fractions were resuspended in 100 μL of buffer A containing 0.5% Nonidet *P*-40, sonicated and centrifuged again. The resulting supernatants taken as the particulate fractions with the cytosolic fractions were assayed for PKC immunoreactivities. Throughout the study, protein concentrations were determined by the Lowry's method with bovine serum albumin as standard. Aliquots of the cell lysates containing 100 g of total protein were resolved in 10% SDS-PAGE and transferred to PVDF membranes (Amersham Biosciences, Inc.). The membranes were blocked in TBS-Triton-X 100 (0.2% v/v, pH 7.4) containing 5% milk for 2 h at room

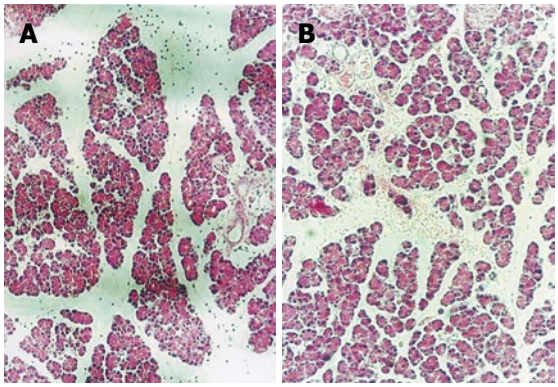


Figure 3 Microscopic pancreatic changes in rats with AP induced by cerulean (**A**) and hyperlipidemic AP induced by cerulein and Triton WR1339 (**B**) 6 h after injection (HE × 200).

temperature followed by incubation with PKC antibody at the dilution described by manufacturer's instructions at 4 ℃ overnight. The membranes were incubated with anti-goat horseradish peroxidase complex (diluted 1:2000) for 2 h at room temperature. The proteins on the membranes were exposed to X-ray films at multiple time points and visualized by ECL detection system (Amersham Biosciences, Inc.).

Statistical analysis

Data were expressed as mean ± SD and analyzed using Student's *t* test or Student's Newman Keuls-test by SPSS 11.0 software. Quantitative analysis for immunoblot was done by scanning the x-ray film and determined using the Fotodyne Gel-Pro analyzer program.

RESULTS

Changes of serum lipid, AMY and pathology of pancreas in $C_{(tri)}$ group

The animals receiving 100 mg/kg and 400 mg/kg Triton WR1339 had high TG and TCH. The serum TG increased most obviously and reached its peak 6 h after Triton WR1339 infusion with induction of chylomicronemia (Figure 1). The TG value increased 10-fold and 20-fold after 100 mg/kg and 400 mg/kg Triton WR 1339 infusion respectively, whereas the serum TCH increased only 2-fold and 3-fold (Figure 2). The serum AMY activities did not significantly increase after induction of hyperlipidemia ($P > 0.05$). The animals did not demonstrate ascites and pancreatic edema in macroscopy. Nine rats (9/12) showed mild pancreatic edema, whereas no histological changes occurred in the saline-treated animals (group $C_{(sal)}$).

Effects of hyperlipidemia on pancreatic histology in AP rats

The pancreatic changes included interstitial edema, increased interlobular interstice and infiltration of some inflammatory cells in the animals 3 h after cerulein infusion. The pancreas of AP animals 6 h after cerulein injection had serious edema with tensioned capsules and separated small lobuli. Wide lobular and acinar interstices, anamorphic acinar structure, intracytoplasmic vacuolization and

Table 1 Effects of caerulein and albumin therapy on histological pancreatic lesions, volume of ascites and ratio of pancreatic wet/dry weight (mean ± SD)

Group	Time	Histological score	Ascites(ml)	Wet/dry
C(sal)	3 h	0.33 ± 0.52	0	1.35 ± 0.09
	6 h	0.33 ± 0.52	0	1.35 ± 0.09
AP	3 h	3.50 ± 1.38[a]	0.87 ± 0.58	1.67 ± 0.05[a]
	6 h	5.33 ± 1.03[a]	1.58 ± 0.92	1.76 ± 0.14[a]
HAP	3 h	5.17 ± 1.17[c]	2.08 ± 0.58[c]	1.95 ± 0.44
	6 h	6.83 ± 1.16[c]	4.12 ± 1.58[c]	2.15 ±0.39
THAP	3 h	4.83 ± 1.16	1.87 ± 0.93	1.72 ± 0.14
	6 h	6.67 ± 1.21	3.68 ± 1.42	1.88 ± 0.33

[a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* control group, [c]P <0 .05 *vs* caerulein group.

Table 2 Effects of albumin therapy on serum TG, TCH and AMY in rats (mean ± SD)

Group	Time	TG	TCH	AMY
C(sal)	-	47.00 ± 23.38	26.25 ± 2.36	1658.50 ± 335.21
AP	3 h	63.66 ± 11.52	61.00 ± 6.00	5128.66 ± 259.65
	6 h	72.66 ± 22.65	67.00 ± 8.71	6641.00 ± 213.75
C(tri)	3 h	899.51 ± 240.52	76.03 ± 16.14	1652.55 ± 300.46
	6 h	797.07 ± 356.18	60.51 ± 33.49	1253.72 ± 254.80
HAP	3 h	1604.16 ± 248.10[a]	264.33 ± 50.33[a]	18390.00 ± 7158.77[a]
	6 h	1506.66 ± 327.72[c]	230.33 ± 31.87[c]	11611.66 ± 4513.67[c]
THAP	3 h	1396.83 ± 658.65	221.00 ± 60.46	20473.33 ± 12005.46
	6 h	1167.33 ± 228.28	211.00 ± 14.02	16524.39 ± 5273.52

[a]$P < 0.05$, [c]$P < 0.05$ *vs* triton group.

infiltrated inflammatory cells were observed (Figure 3). After 3 h, the pancreatic damage was intensified in the animals of group HAP, and some apoptotic bodies (inclusion) and more inflammatory cells appeared. There were scattered erythrocytes and inflammatory cells, distended small veins in the pancreas 6 h after HAP model was induced (Figure 3). There were no pathological changes after albumin therapy.

Pancreatic histological score, volume of ascites and pancreatic wet/dry ratio in rats

The animals receiving cerulein (group $C_{(tri)}$) had significantly ($P < 0.05$) higher pancreatic histological score, volume of ascites and pancreatic wet/dry ratio than the control group. The pancreatic histological score, volume of ascites and pancreatic wet/dry ratio were significantly higher ($P < 0.05$) in the AP animals with hyperlipidemia (group HAP) than in the animals receiving only cerulein infusion (group $C_{(tri)}$). After albumin treatment (group THAP) these parameters decreased slightly but were higher in the 6 h group than in the 3 h group ($P > 0.05$). These results suggested that hyperlipidemia could aggravate pancreatic edema of the AP animals and albumin therapy was not obviously effective (Table 1).

Serum TG, TCH and AMY in rats

The serum TG and TCH concentration increased 1-2 folds in the cerulein-induced AP animals. There were no statistical differences between group AP and group $C_{(sal)}$ ($P > 0.05$). The hyperlipidemic AP animals had significantly higher serum TG and TCH values than the rats receiving Triton WR1339 (group $C_{(tri)}$) injection. The serum TG and TCH concentration in the animals with albumin therapy (group THAP) decreased slightly. The AMY activities in the hyperlipidemic group $C_{(tri)}$ remained unchanged throughout the investigation, and increased obviously ($P < 0.05$) in the AP group. In comparison with the AP group, the AMY values of group HAP and THAP were significantly higher ($P < 0.05$). This result demonstrated that AP could induce mild hyperlipidemia. Albumin could not decrease the circulating lipid and AMY concentration (Table 2).

Apoptosis of pancreatic cell in rats

It was reported that the extent of acinar cell apoptosis is related to the severity of mild AP[22]. Careful biochemical and morphological examination of experimental models of AP has shown that severe AP is associated with necrosis, whereas mild acute pancreatitis is associated with apoptotic cell death[20,21]. In our study, the TUNEL methods was used for *in situ* apoptotic acinar cell identification. The apoptotic cells were not visible in the pancreas of control group, but a few apoptotic cells (brown) were visible in cerulein-induced AP animals. A subpopulation of apoptotic cells scattered throughout the tissue section was stained brown Figure 4, but the apoptotic cells did not markedly decrease after albumin therapy.

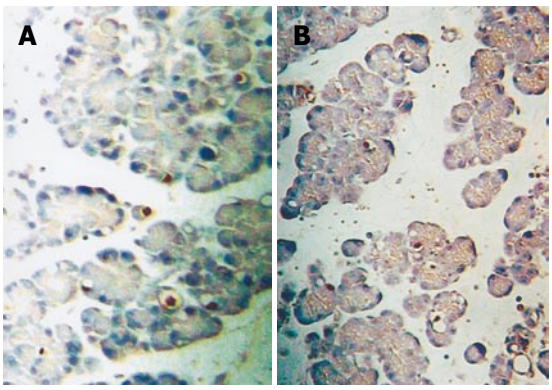


Figure 4 Detection of apoptotic cells by TUNEL in rats with AP induced by cerulein (**A**) and hyperlipidemic AP induced by cerulean and Triton WR1339 (**B**) counterstained with hematoxylin (H × 200).

Translocation of PKC in pancreatic tissue

To confirm the activation of PKC, we examined the translocation of the enzyme from the cytosol to the particulate membrane by Western blot. The cytosolic PKC gradually decreased in the control group $C_{(sal)}$, hyperlipidemic group $C_{(tri)}$, cerulein-induced AP group and HAP group. After albumin treatment the cytosolic PKC increased remarkably in group THAP. However, the particulate PKC gradually increased in the above four groups and decreased after albumin therapy (Figure 5). The degree of PKC translocation was evaluated by the proportion of particulate PKC in the total PKC as previously described[25]. The translocation rate of PKC was significantly higher ($P < 0.05$) in hyper-

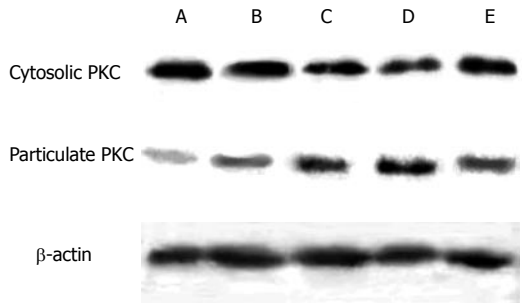


Figure 5 Effects of hyperlipidemia, AP, AP accompanying hyperlipidemia and albumin therapy on PKC membrane translocation detected by Western blot in rats of control group (A), Triton group (B), caerulein group (C), Triton+caerulein group (D), Triton+caerulein+albumin group (E).

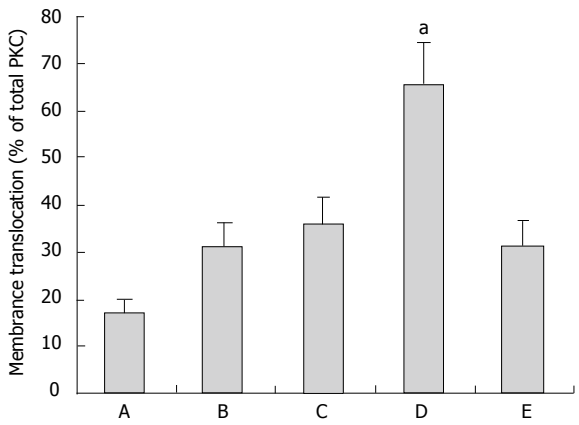


Figure 6 Effects of Triton hyperlipidemia, caerulein pancreatitis, AP with hyperlipidemia and albumin therapy on PKC membrane translocation in rats. Quantitative analysis of PKC membrane translocation level was detected by Western blot. $^aP < 0.05$ Triton+caerulein group *vs* caerulein and Triton+caerulein+albumin group ($n = 6$).

lipidemic AP animals (group HAP) than in non-hyperlipidemic AP rats (group AP)(Figure 6). In the hyperlipidemic AP group, the translocation rate of PKC was significantly decreased ($P < 0.01$) after albumin treatment. This result implied that hyperlipidemia could induce pancreatic PKC activation in normal and AP rats, which was consistent with the pancreatic injury. Albumin could reduce hyperlipidemia-induced PKC activation.

DISCUSSION

Hypertriglyceridemia is an etiological factor in patients with AP while TG level exceeding 1000 mg/dL or lactescent serum is a necessary condition for hyperlipidemic AP diagnosis[26]. Triton WR1339 could increase serum TG and is an ideal drug to establish hyperlipidemic animal model with TG elevation.

The rats without pancreatitis showed no clinical differences after Triton WR1339 infusion compared with saline infusion. Macroscopically, the pancreas of the hyperlipidemic and normal animals showed no difference. Microscopically, the animals treated with Triton WR1339 showed smooth edema, whereas no changes occurred in the non-hyperlipidemic animals, suggesting that severe hyperlipidemia may cause mild AP. The serum AMY activities were also slightly increased after hyperlipidemia induction, but there was no significant difference ($P > 0.05$). To investigate the effect of hyperlipidemia on AP, we established the AP model when the endogenous hyperlipidemia induced by Triton WR1339 reached its maximal value. Theoretically, significant influence of hyperlipidemia on AP would appear. We produced the hyperlipidemic AP animal model by injecting cerulein 6 h after Triton WR1339 infusion. It was reported that albumin could effectively alleviate the toxicity of TG to pancreatic cells[18]. A medium dose of albumin was injected through external iliac vein in the hyperlipidemia AP animals to observe the changes of pancreatic damage. As a result, hyperlipidemia aggravated pancreatic edema, volume of ascites and pancreatic cell apoptosis. The serum lipid in the hyperlipidemic AP animals increased compared with that in the hyperlipidemic animals, suggesting that hyperlipidemia may aggravate the course of AP while AP may exacerbate hyperlipidemia. There is a vicious circle between hyperlipidemia and AP. Accordingly, it is very important to decrease circulating lipid in clinical patients with AP. In our studies, the pancreatic damage aggravated by hyperlipidemia was not prevented by simultaneous perfusion of albumin, which might be due to the fact that the concentration of albumin in the inflamed pancreas may be too low or there may be other mechanisms of pancreatic injury. It was reported that FFAs could inhibit division and proliferation of pancreatic endocrine cells by activating PKC and induce apoptosis of pancreatic β-cells. As a result insulin secretion is decreased and diabetes occurs[27]. There is abundant PKC in pancreatic acinar cells[14]. Our study showed that FFAs could cause injury of pancreatic exocrine cells. PKC activity of pancreas increased in the hyperlipidemia and AP animals. The PKC activity changes were consistent with the degree of pancreatic injury, suggesting that PKC may participate in the course of hyperlipidemia inducing or aggravating pancreatic injury of AP. The PKC activity in hyperlipidemic AP animals was decreased significantly ($P < 0.01$) after albumin therapy, which implies that albumin may reduce the PKC activation through binding to FFAs. Although PKC activation decreased obviously ($P < 0.01$) after albumin therapy, the pancreatic injury was slightly relieved ($P > 0.05$), suggesting that PKC activation may be an important aspect of hyperlipidemia aggravating AP, and there may be other mechanisms of hyperlipidemia-induced AP.

REFERENCES

1 **Toouli J**, Brooke-Smith M, Bassi C, Carr-Locke D, Telford J, Freeny P, Imrie C, Tandon R. Guidelines for the management of acute pancreatitis. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2002; **17 Suppl:** S15-S39

2 **Zhu AJ**, Shi JS, Sun XJ. Organ failure associated with severe acute pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9:** 2570-2573

3 **Speck L**. Fall von lipamia. Arch Verin Wissenschaftl Heilkunde 1865;1:232. Quoted in Thannhauser SJ, ed. Lipidoses, diseases of the intracellular lipid metabolism, 3rd ed. New York: Grune & Stratton, 1958: 307

4 **Mao EQ**, Tang YQ, Zhang SD. Formalized therapeutic guideline for hyperlipidemic severe acute pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9:** 2622-2626

5 **Farmer RG**, Winkelman EI, Brown HB, Lewis LA. Hyperlipoproteinemia and pancreatitis. *Am J Med* 1973; **54:** 161-165

6 **Cameron JL,** Capuzzi DM, Zuidema GD, Margolis S. Acute pancreatitis with hyperlipemia: the incidence of lipid abnormalities in acute pancreatitis. *Ann Surg* 1973; **177:** 483-489

7 **Yadav D**, Pitchumoni CS. Issues in hyperlipidemic pancreatitis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **36:** 54-62

8 **Saharia P,** Margolis S, Zuidema GD, Cameron JL. Acute pancreatitis with hyperlipemia: studies with an isolated perfused canine pancreas. *Surgery* 1977; **82:** 60-67

9 **Kimura W**, Mössner J. Role of hypertriglyceridemia in the pathogenesis of experimental acute pancreatitis in rats. *Int J Pancreatol* 1996; **20:** 177-184

10 **Paye F**, Chariot J, Molas G, Benessiano J, Rozé C. Nonesterified fatty acids in acute cerulein-induced pancreatitis in the rat. Are they really deleterious in vivo? *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40:** 540-545

11 **Paye F**, Chariot J, Molas G, Benessiano J, Rozé C. Release of nonesterified fatty acids during cerulein-induced pancreatitis in rats. *Dig Dis Sci* 1996; **41:** 1959-1965

12 **Havel RJ.** Pathogenesis, differentiation and management of hypertriglyceridemia. *Adv Intern Med* 1969; **15:** 117-154

13 **Haber EP**, Ximenes HM, Procópio J, Carvalho CR, Curi R, Carpinelli AR. Pleiotropic effects of fatty acids on pancreatic beta-cells. *J Cell Physiol* 2003; **194:** 1-12

14 **Kim MJ**, Lee YS, Lee KH, Min DS, Yoon SH, Hahn SJ, Kim MS, Jo YH. Site-specific localization of protein kinase C isoforms in rat pancreas. *Pancreatology* 2001; **1:** 36-42

15 **Takahashi Y**, Inaba N, Kuwahara S, Kuki W. Effects of gamma-terpinene on lipid concentrations in serum using Triton WR1339-treated rats. *Biosci Biotechnol Biochem* 2003; **67:** 2448-2450

16 **Hofbauer B**, Friess H, Weber A, Baczako K, Kisling P, Schilling M, Uhl W, Dervenis C, Büchler MW. Hyperlipaemia intensifies the course of acute oedematous and acute necrotising pancreatitis in the rat. *Gut* 1996; **38:** 753-758

17 **Tani S,** Otsuki M, Itoh H, Fujii M, Nakamura T, Oka T, Baba S. Histologic and biochemical alterations in experimental acute pancreatitis induced by supramaximal caerulein stimulation. *Int J Pancreatol* 1987; **2:** 337-348

18 **Kimura W**, Meyer F, Hess D, Kirchner T, Fischbach W, Mössner J. Comparison of different treatment modalities in experimental pancreatitis in rats. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **103:** 1916-1924

19 **Schmidt J,** Lewandrowsi K, Warshaw AL, Compton CC, Rattner DW. Morphometric characteristics and homogeneity of a new model of acute pancreatitis in the rat. *Int J Pancreatol* 1992; **12:** 41-51

20 **Ding SP**, Li JC, Jin C. A mouse model of severe acute pancreatitis induced with caerulein and lipopolysaccharide. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9:** 584-589

21 **Gukovskaya AS**, Perkins P, Zaninovic V, Sandoval D, Rutherford R, Fitzsimmons T, Pandol SJ, Poucell-Hatton S. Mechanisms of cell death after pancreatic duct obstruction in the opossum and the rat. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110:** 875-884

22 **Kaiser AM**, Saluja AK, Sengupta A, Saluja M, Steer ML. Relationship between severity, necrosis, and apoptosis in five models of experimental acute pancreatitis. *Am J Physiol* 1995; **269:** C1295-C1304

23 **Bhatia M**. Apoptosis of pancreatic acinar cells in acute pancreatitis: is it good or bad? *J Cell Mol Med* 2004; **8:** 402-409

24 **Wu J**, Li J, Huang KP, Huang FL. Attenuation of protein kinase C and cAMP-dependent protein kinase signal transduction in the neurogranin knockout mouse. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277:** 19498-19505

25 **Cui XY**, Li JF, Han S, Zu PY. [Hypoxic preconditioning increases cPKCgamma membrane translocation in murine brain]. *Shengli Xuebao* 2004; **56:** 461-465

26 **Athyros VG**, Giouleme OI, Nikolaidis NL, Vasiliadis TV, Bouloukos VI, Kontopoulos AG, Eugenidis NP. Long-term follow-up of patients with acute hypertriglyceridemia-induced pancreatitis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2002; **34:** 472-475

27 **Rakatzi I**, Mueller H, Ritzeler O, Tennagels N, Eckel J. Adiponectin counteracts cytokine- and fatty acid-induced apoptosis in the pancreatic beta-cell line INS-1. *Diabetologia* 2004; **47:** 249-258

S- Editor Guo SY **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Bai SH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2914-2918
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Oxygen radical formation does not have an impact in the treatment of severe acute experimental pancreatitis using free cellular hemoglobin

Helge Kleinhans, Oliver Mann, Paulus G Schurr, Jussuf T Kaifi, Bente Hansen, Jakob R Izbicki, Tim Strate

Helge Kleinhans, Oliver Mann, Paulus G Schurr, Jussuf T Kaifi, Bente Hansen, Jakob R Izbicki, Tim Strate, Department of General-, Visceral- and Thoracic Surgery, University Medical Center Hamburg-Eppendorf, Martinistrasse 52, D-20246 Hamburg, Germany
Correspondence to: Dr. Tim Strate, Department of General-, Visceral- and Thoracic Surgery, University Medical Center Hamburg-Eppendorf, Martinistrasse 52, D-20246 Hamburg, Germany. strate@uke.uni-hamburg.de
Telephone: +49-40-428037853 Fax: +49-40-428034319
Received: 2005-11-26 Accepted: 2006-02-10

Abstract

AIM: Microcirculatory dysfunction and free oxygen radicals are important factors in the pathogenesis of severe acute pancreatitis. Additional oxygen delivery might enhance lipid peroxidation but may also improve pancreatic microcirculation. This study assesses the effect of free cellular bovine hemoglobin on the formation of oxygen radicals and microcirculation in a rodent model of severe acute pancreatitis.

METHODS: Fifteen minutes after induction of acute pancreatitis Wistar rats received either 0.8 mL bovine hemoglobin (HBOC-200), hydroxyethyl starch (HES) or 2.4 mL of normal saline to ensure normovolemic substitution. After 6 h of examination the pancreas was excised and rapidly processed for indirect measurement of lipid peroxidation products malondialdehyde (MDA) and reduced glutathione (GSH) in pancreatic tissue.

RESULTS: The single application of HBOC-200 improved pancreatic microcirculation and reduced histopathological tissue damage significantly. Tissue concentration of MDA did not differ between the groups. Also no differences in GSH levels were detected.

CONCLUSION: Though the single application of HBOC-200 and HES improve pancreatic microcirculation, no differences in lipid peroxidation products were detected. The beneficial effect of additional oxygen supply (HBOC-200) does not lead to enhanced lipid peroxidation.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Hemoglobin-based-oxygen-carrier; HBOC; Blood substitutes; Severe acute pancreatitis; Free oxygen radicals; Oxidative stress

Kleinhans H, Mann O, Schurr PG, Kaifi JT, Hansen B, Izbicki JR, Strate T. Oxygen radical formation does not have an impact in the treatment of severe acute experimental pancreatitis using free cellular hemoglobin. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2914-2918

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2914.asp

INTRODUCTION

Microcirculatory dysfunction and free oxygen radicals are important factors in the pathogenesis of acute experimental pancreatitis[1-3]. Oxygen free radicals are formed during aerobic cellular metabolism. Under physiological conditions they are eliminated by a system of enzymatic and non-enzymatic antioxidants. Under conditions of imbalance like in acute pancreatitis between antioxidants and oxidants as in hyperoxygenation, ischemia and reperfusion and tissue inflammation "oxidative stress" occurs[4-8].

Oxygen species initiate a pronounced peroxidation of membrane lipids, detectable after 30 min by a significant rise in the lipid peroxidation marker malondialdehyde (MDA), persisting up to 16 h[8,9]. At the same time a significant decrease in glutathione thiols (GSH, potent antioxidant in the pancreas) occurs[10,11]. In the human, acute pancreatitis increases the amount of lipid peroxidation products and decreases antioxidants[12-14].

It has been shown that pancreatic microcirculatory deficits can be treated with bovine haemoglobin, which improves fluidity due to its colloid effects and delivers cell free oxygen to oxygen deprived tissue[15]. However, additional application of cell free oxygen might potentially enhance detrimental O_2 radical products[16], which could limit the positive value of bovine haemoglobin in the treatment of severe acute pancreatitis.

This study assesses the relationship between free oxygen radicals and pancreatic microcirculation in a rodent model of severe acute pancreatitis after therapeutic application of a hemoglobin based oxygen carrier (HBOC).

MATERIALS AND METHODS

The experimental protocol was approved by the Ethical

Committee of the Hamburg Federal Board of Veterinary Medicine and Animal Care. After overnight fasting with free access to water containing 20% glucose, thirty female Wistar rats (230-250 g) were randomly assigned to three groups (n = 10). Anesthesia was induced by intraperitoneal pentobarbital (40 mg/kg BW) and ketamine (10 mg/kg BW) allowing spontaneous breathing by tracheostomy. Ringer lactate was infused for fluid resuscitation keeping the central venous pressure between 4 and 6 mmHg and heart rate as well as mean arterial pressure within 10% of baseline frequency throughout the experiment (Datex AS/3 monitoring system; Hoyer, Bremen, Germany).

Acute pancreatitis was induced according to a standardised regimen[17] using a combination of intravenous cerulein infusion (5 mg/kg per hour; Takus, Pharmacia, Erlangen, Germany) at a rate of 1 mL/h over 6 h and intraductal infusion of glycodeoxycholic acid (GDOC: 10 mmol/L; 1 mL/kg for 300 s; infusion pressure 25 to 30 mmHg).

Fifteen minutes after induction the animals received either 0.8 mL bovine hemoglobin (HBOC-group) (HBOC-200, Biopure MD, USA), 0.8 mL hydroxyethyl starch (HES-group 3) or 2.4 mL of normal saline (NaCl-group) to ensure normovolemic substitution. *In vivo* fluorescence microscopy was performed with an epi-illumination unit (Zeiss, Germany). Microcirculation was observed for 6 h, measurements were performed in the head of the pancreas: 0 min was defined as the intraductal infusion of GDOC. Leucocyte adherence (area of adherent leucocytes in a percentage of the vein cross section) and functional capillary density (number of perfused capillaries to the total number of capillaries) were studied. After 6 h of examination the animals were sacrificed by an intravenous injection of pentobarbital. Pancreatic tissue samples were excised for determination of tissue damage and malondialdehyde (Lipid Peroxidation Assay Kit, Calbiochem, San Diego, USA) and GSH concentrations (Glutathion Assay Kit, Calbiochem, San Diego, USA) specified in μmol/L/g protein. The samples were immediately processed and stored at -80 ℃. The Glutathione Assay Kit takes advantage of a 2-step reaction. The first step involves the formation of thioethers when a patented reagent reacts with all mercaptans (including glutathione) in the sample. The second step is an elimination reaction that takes place in alkaline conditions. This second reaction is mediated by 30% NaOH which specifically transforms the substitution product obtained with GSH into a chromophoric thione with a maximal absorbance at 400 nm. The main advantage of the method is that it does not require any enzyme as a reagent.

The Lipid Peroxidation Assay Kit takes advantage of a chromogenic reagent (10.3 mmol/L N-methyl-2-phenylindole, in acetonitrile) which reacts with MDA and 4-hydroxyalkenals at 45 ℃. Condensation of one molecule of either MDA or 4-hydroxyalkenal with 2 molecules of 10.3 mmol/L N-methyl-2-phenylindole yields a stable chromophore with maximal absorbance at 586 nm.

Tissue protein concentration was detected by using the BCA Protein Assay Reagent Kit (Pierce, Rockford, IL, USA). The BCA Protein Assay is a detergent-compatible formulation based on bicinchoninic acid (BCA) for the colometric detection and quantitation of total protein. This method combines the reduction of Cu^{+2} to Cu^{+1} by protein in an alkaline medium (the biuret reaction) with the colometric detection of the cuprous cation (Cu^{+1}) using a unique reagent containing bicinchonic acid[18].

The histopathological scoring was analyzed by light microscopy using a validated score quantifying acinar necrosis, fat necrosis and hemorrhage, leucocyte infiltration and edema[19].

Statistical analysis

Statistical analysis of the changes from baseline values in each group of animals utilized the paired Student's t-test. Significances between the groups were assessed by the unpaired t-test. $P < 0.05$ was considered significant. All data are presented as mean ± SD.

RESULTS

Results of pancreatic microcirculation and tissue damage have been reported elsewhere[15].

Microcirculation[15]

In essence pancreatic microcirculation improved in the HBOC-200-group when compared to NaCl-group [functional capillary density (fcd): 0.7 (SD 0.3) *vs* 0.33 (0.12); $P < 0.05$]; leucocyte adherence (la): 0.27 (0.14) *vs* 0.54 (0.19); $P < 0.05$). HES also improved pancreatic microcirculation when compared to NaCl-group (fcd: 0.49 (0.15) *vs* 0.33 (0.12); $P < 0.05$ and la: 0.39 (0.11) *vs* 0.54 (0.19); $P < 0.05$).

Tissue damage[15] (Figures 1-4)

The histological score showed significantly less tissue damage in HBOC-group (Figure 1) versus NaCl-group (6.25 *vs* 9.25) (range 3-8.5 *vs* 8-10.75); $P < 0.001$. The overall score is reflected within all subgroups. Comparing HES and HBOC-therapy significantly less tissue damage was found (6.25 *vs* 8) (range 3-8.5 *vs* 6.5-10.25); $P = 0.006$ in the HBOC group. When comparing HES (Figure 2) and NaCl (Figure 3) less necrosis and hemorrhaging (1.75 *vs* 2.75) (range 1.5-2.75 *vs* 2.25-3.5) was found in the HES therapy group(Figure 4).

Oxygen radicals

Tissue concentration of MDA did not differ between the groups (HBOC-200-group: 4.37 ± 1.11 μmol/L per g protein; HES-group: 3.77 ± 1.45 μmol/L per g protein; NaCl-group: 4.31 ± 1.19 μmol/L per g protein. MDA-tissue levels (n = 10) of sham operated rats were 5.41 ± 2.12 μmol/L per g protein.

Also no differences in GSH levels were detected HBOC-group: 2.93 ± 1.72 μmol/L per g; HES-group: 4.46 ± 3.55 μmol/L per g; NaCl-group: 3.7 ± 3.5 μmol/L per g. Control GSH-tissue levels (n = 10) of sham operated rats were 12.19 ± 7.04 μmol/L per g protein (Figure 5).

DISCUSSION

Clinical investigations with free hemoglobin solutions have

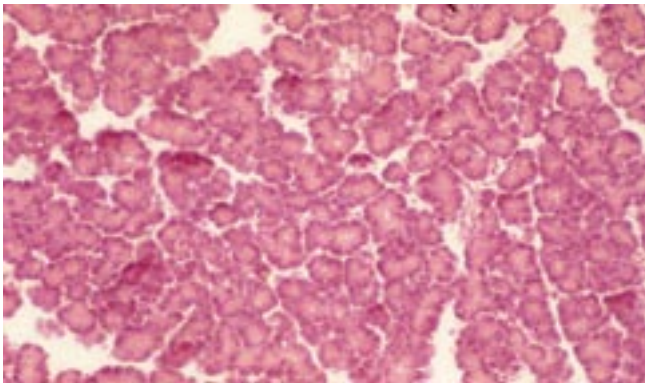


Figure 1 Light microscopy (display alternation = 200) of pacreatic tissue 6 h after induction of acute pancreatitis and traement with HBOC (score: 6 points out of 16).

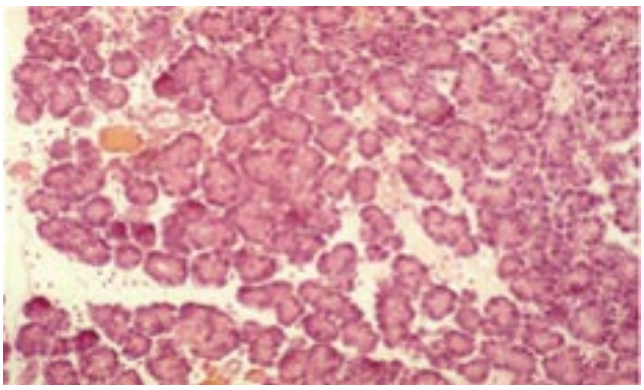


Figure 2 Light microscopy (display alternation = 200) of pacreatic tissue 6 h after induction of acute pancreatitis and traement with HES (score: 8.5 points out of 16).

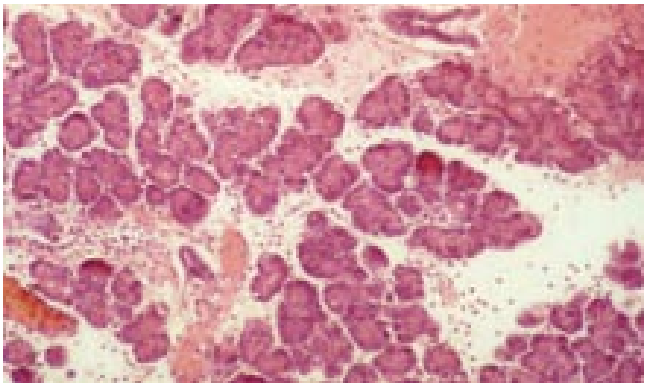


Figure 3 Light microscopy (display alternation = 200) of pacreatic tissue 6 h after induction of acute pancreatitis and treatment with NaCl (score: 10 points out of 16).

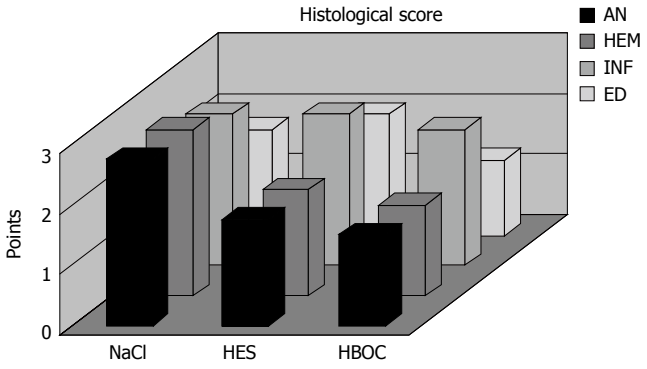


Figure 4 Histological scoring of pancreatic tissue 6 h after induction of acute pancreatitis. Values are mean ± range. (AN = acinar necrosis, HEM = hemorrhage, INF = leucocyte infiltration, ED = edema).

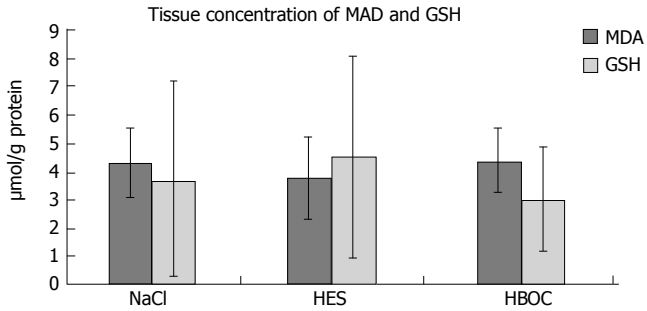


Figure 5 Tissue concentration of MDA and GSH in pancreatic tissue 6 h after induction of acute pancreatitis. Values are mean ± SD.

been performed since the late 1800 s. Over the years complications like renal toxic effects and short circulation time have been reduced. The new blood substitutes are able to replace blood, colloid and crystalloid solutions act as oxygen transporter in many experimental settings. The ability of potent oxygen transport to oxygen deprived tissue has been shown in different animal models[15,20].

Vincent *et al* investigated the influence of heme-binding proteins in heme-catalyzed oxidations. They confirmed previous studies that heme acts as a catalyst of H_2O_2-dependent lipid peroxidation[21]. It has been shown that diene conjugation caused by oxygen radicals gives an adequate assessment of lipid peroxidation in tissue extracts. Several studies emphasize the role of oxygen free radicals in the pathogenesis of experimental acute pancreatitis[1,3,22-26]. Oxygen radicals are generated by different biological systems. Sources are reperfusion injury as well as the respiratory burst of PMN-leucocytes[27-30]. Local tissue damage has successfully been treated by the use of radical scavengers[31,32]. However increased heme and oxygen availability like in HBOC-therapy might lead to higher generation of oxygen radicals and tissue damage caused by lipid peroxidation.

A single application of a hemoglobin based oxygen carrier in this model of severe acute pancreatitis reduces the tissue damage and ensures a stable microcirculation. Colloids like HES and Dextrane have also been proven to be an effective therapy for microcirculatory dysfunctions[33-36]. The superiority of HBOC[34,36,37] might be explained by the combining effect of a colloid and noncorpuscular oxygen carrier. HBOC releases oxygen in areas of poor perfundation and ensure tissue oxygenation.

However, the hypothesis that hyperoxygenation and additional oxygen supply might lead to an increased production of oxygen free radicals was not supported by this data. This study could not confirm former publications suggesting that increased heme availability promotes the enhencement of lipid peroxidation. Dunne *et al* demonstrated the reactivity of various modified hemoglobins to hydrogen peroxide in terms of free radical formation. They compared PHP hemoglobin (crosslinked between the β-subunits

and conjugated with polyoxyethylene) with DBBF hemoglobin (crosslinked between the β-subunits using dibromosalicylfumerate, and control HbA_0. All the blood substitutes generated free radicals. MDA- levels were equal in nearly all groups. When compared to sham operated animals MDA-levels in the HBOC groups reached the same levels. One explanation of this finding could be that the level of MDA and GSH might have reached their peak within the first hours of pancreatitis and decreased to normal levels after 6 h. This theory is underlined by former studies[23,32,38-39] Schoenberg *et al* determined the peroxidation products, conjugated dienes and MDA in hemorrhagic pancreatitis induced by retrograde injection of sodium-taurocholate . The tissue levels of MDA increased, reaching their highest level after 1 h. Two hours later the lipid peroxides had returned to control levels.

GSH-tissue levels also showed no statistically relevant differences in the groups. Compared to GSH-levels of sham operated rats a decrease was found which might be an indication for oxidative stress in all groups. Dabrowski *et al* were able to show a decrease in pancreatic GSH at an early stage of cerulein-induced pancreatitis in rats[40,41].

Other researchers were able to prevent local tissue damage in experimental pancreatitis by the use of radical scavenging therapy[26,31-32]. Since we could not detect differences in oxidative stress markers we would explain the reduced histopathological damage by an improved pancreatic microcirculation. An excess formation of free oxygen radicals in the setting of additional oxygen supply was not detected.

REFERENCES

1 **Dabrowski A**, Gabryelewicz A. Oxidative stress. An early phenomenon characteristic of acute experimental pancreatitis. *Int J Pancreatol* 1992; **12:** 193-199

2 **Koiwai T**, Oguchi H, Kawa S, Yanagisawa Y, Kobayashi T, Homma T. The role of oxygen free radicals in experimental acute pancreatitis in the rat. *Int J Pancreatol* 1989; **5:** 135-143

3 **Sanfey H**, Sarr MG, Bulkley GB, Cameron JL. Oxygen-derived free radicals and acute pancreatitis: a review. *Acta Physiol Scand Suppl* 1986; **548:** 109-118

4 **Sies H**, Cadenas E. Oxidative stress: damage to intact cells and organs. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 1985; **311:** 617-631

5 **Sies H**. Role of reactive oxygen species in biological processes. *Klin Wochenschr* 1991; **69:** 965-968

6 **Sies H.** Oxidative stress: oxidants and antioxidants. *Exp Physiol* 1997; **82:** 291-295

7 **Halliwel B**, Gutteridge JM. Free radicals, aging and diseases. In: Free Radicals in Biology and Medicine. ed 2.Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1989: 416-508

8 **Weber H**, Merkord J, Jonas L, Wagner A, Schröder H, Käding U, Werner A, Dummler W. Oxygen radical generation and acute pancreatitis: effects of dibutyltin dichloride/ethanol and ethanol on rat pancreas. *Pancreas* 1995; **11:** 382-388

9 **Weber H**, Roesner JP, Nebe B, Rychly J, Werner A, Schröder H, Jonas L, Leitzmann P, Schneider KP, Dummler W. Increased cytosolic Ca2+ amplifies oxygen radical-induced alterations of the ultrastructure and the energy metabolism of isolated rat pancreatic acinar cells. *Digestion* 1998; **59:** 175-185

10 **Luethen R**, Quante M, Schoepp C, Haussinger D, Niederau C. Auswirkungen der Arginin-Pankreatitis auf den Thiol- und NO. Metabolismus des Pankreas. Z Gastroenterol 1996; **34:** 624

11 **Luthen R**, Quante M, Schoepp C, Haussinger D, Niederau C. Thiolmetabolismus und oxidativer Stress in der Fruehphase einer experimentellen Pankreatitis. Hepato-Gastroenterology 1999; **46:** 2751-2756

12 **Guyan PM**, Uden S, Braganza JM. Heightened free radical activity in pancreatitis. *Free Radic Biol Med* 1990; **8:** 347-354

13 **Schoenberg MH**, Büchler M, Pietrzyk C, Uhl W, Birk D, Eisele S, Marzinzig M, Beger HG. Lipid peroxidation and glutathione metabolism in chronic pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 1995; **10:** 36-43

14 **Schoenberg MH**, Birk D, Beger HG. Oxidative stress in acute and chronic pancreatitis. *Am J Clin Nutr* 1995; **62:** 1306S-1314S

15 **Strate T,** Mann O, Kleinhans H, Schneider C, Knoefel WT, Yekebas E, Standl T, Bloechle C, Izbicki JR. Systemic intravenous infusion of bovine hemoglobin significantly reduces microcirculatory dysfunction in experimentally induced pancreatitis in the rat. *Ann Surg* 2003; **238:** 765-771

16 **Simoni J**, Feola M, Canizaro PC. Generation of free oxygen radicals and the toxicity of hemoglobin solutions. *Biomater Artif Cells Artif Organs* 1990; **18:** 189-202

17 **Bloechle C**, Kusterer K, Kuehn RM, Schneider C, Knoefel WT, Izbicki JR. Inhibition of bradykinin B2 receptor preserves microcirculation in experimental pancreatitis in rats. *Am J Physiol* 1998; **274:** G42-G51

18 **Smith PK**, Krohn RI, Hermanson GT, Mallia AK, Gartner FH, Provenzano MD, Fujimoto EK, Goeke NM, Olson BJ, Klenk DC. Measurement of protein using bicinchoninic acid. *Anal Biochem* 1985; **150:** 76-85

19 **Schmidt J**, Rattner DW, Lewandrowski K, Compton CC, Mandavilli U, Knoefel WT, Warshaw AL. A better model of acute pancreatitis for evaluating therapy. *Ann Surg* 1992; **215:** 44-56

20 **Standl T,** Horn P, Wilhelm S, Greim C, Freitag M, Freitag U, Sputtek A, Jacobs E, Schulte am Esch J. Bovine haemoglobin is more potent than autologous red blood cells in restoring muscular tissue oxygenation after profound isovolaemic haemodilution in dogs. *Can J Anaesth* 1996; **43:** 714-723

21 **Vincent SH**, Grady RW, Shaklai N, Snider JM, Muller-Eberhard U. The influence of heme-binding proteins in heme-catalyzed oxidations. *Arch Biochem Biophys* 1988; **265:** 539-550

22 **Closa D,** Bulbena O, Hotter G, Roselló-Catafau J, Fernández-Cruz L, Gelpí E. Xanthine oxidase activation in cerulein- and taurocholate-induced acute pancreatitis in rats. *Arch Int Physiol Biochim Biophys* 1994; **102:** 167-170

23 **Nonaka A,** Manabe T, Tamura K, Asano N, Imanishi K, Tobe T. Changes of xanthine oxidase, lipid peroxide and superoxide dismutase in mouse acute pancreatitis. *Digestion* 1989; **43:** 41-46

24 **Sanfey H**, Bulkley GB, Cameron JL. The role of oxygen-derived free radicals in the pathogenesis of acute pancreatitis. *Ann Surg* 1984; **200:** 405-413

25 **Schoenberg MH**, Büchler M, Helfen M, Beger HG. Role of oxygen radicals in experimental acute pancreatitis. *Eur Surg Res* 1992; **24 Suppl 1**: 74-84

26 **Steer ML**, Rutledge PL, Powers RE, Saluja M, Saluja AK. The role of oxygen-derived free radicals in two models of experimental acute pancreatitis: effects of catalase, superoxide dismutase, dimethylsulfoxide, and allopurinol. *Klin Wochenschr* 1991; **69:** 1012-1017

27 **Babior BM**. Oxygen-dependent microbial killing by phagocytes (first of two parts). *N Engl J Med* 1978; **298:** 659-668

28 **Coticchia JM**, Lessler MA, Ellison EC, Carey LC. Mitochondrial dysfunction induced by pancreatitis-associated ascitic fluid. *Proc Soc Exp Biol Med* 1983; **172:** 412-418

29 **Southorn PA**, Powis G. Free radicals in medicine. II. Involvement in human disease. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1988; **63:** 390-408

30 **Southorn PA**, Powis G. Free radicals in medicine. I. Chemical nature and biologic reactions. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1988; **63:** 381-389

31 **Poch B,** Gansauge F, Rau B, Wittel U, Gansauge S, Nüssler AK, Schoenberg M, Beger HG. The role of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and oxygen-derived free radicals in experimental acute pancreatitis: mediators of local destruction and activators of inflammation. *FEBS Lett* 1999; **461:** 268-272

32 **Schoenberg MH**, Büchler M, Gaspar M, Stinner A, Younes M, Melzner I, Bültmann B, Beger HG. Oxygen free radicals in acute pancreatitis of the rat. *Gut* 1990; **31:** 1138-1143

33 **Horn EP,** Standl T, Wilhelm S, Jacobs EE, Freitag U, Freitag M, Schulte am Esch J. [Bovine hemoglobin. HBOC-201 causes a reduction of the oxygen partial pressure in poststenotic skel-

etal muscle]. *Anaesthesist* 1998; **47:** 116-123

34 **Hotz HG,** Schmidt J, Ryschich EW, Foitzik T, Buhr HJ, Warshaw AL, Herfarth C, Klar E. Isovolemic hemodilution with dextran prevents contrast medium induced impairment of pancreatic microcirculation in necrotizing pancreatitis of the rat. *Am J Surg* 1995; **169:** 161-166

35 **Klar E**, Herfarth C, Messmer K. Therapeutic effect of isovolemic hemodilution with dextran 60 on the impairment of pancreatic microcirculation in acute biliary pancreatitis. *Ann Surg* 1990; **211:** 346-353

36 **Klar E**, Foitzik T, Buhr H, Messmer K, Herfarth C. Isovolemic hemodilution with dextran 60 as treatment of pancreatic ischemia in acute pancreatitis. Clinical practicability of an experimental concept. *Ann Surg* 1993; **217:** 369-374

37 **Horn EP,** Standl T, Wilhelm S, Jacobs EE, Freitag U, Freitag M, Schulte am Esch J. Bovine hemoglobin increases skeletal muscle oxygenation during 95% artificial arterial stenosis. *Surgery* 1997; **121:** 411-418

38 **Dabrowski A**, Konturek SJ, Konturek JW, Gabryelewicz A. Role of oxidative stress in the pathogenesis of caerulein-induced acute pancreatitis. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1999; **377:** 1-11

39 **Schoenberg MH,** Büchler M, Schädlich H, Younes M, Bültmann B, Beger HG. Involvement of oxygen radicals and phospholipase A2 in acute pancreatitis of the rat. *Klin Wochenschr* 1989; **67:** 166-170

40 **Dabrowski A**, Chwiećko M. Oxygen radicals mediate depletion of pancreatic sulfhydryl compounds in rats with caerulein-induced acute pancreatitis. *Digestion* 1990; **47:** 15-19

41 **Dabrowski A**, Gabryelewicz A, Wereszczyńska-Siemiatkowska U, Chyczewski L. Oxygen-derived free radicals in caerulein-induced acute pancreatitis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1988; **23:** 1245-1249

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Zhang JZ **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2919-2922
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

RAPID COMMUNICATION

MRCP and MRI findings in 9 patients with autoimmune pancreatitis

Terumi Kamisawa, Pong-Yui Chen, Yuyang Tu, Hitoshi Nakajima, Naoto Egawa, Kouji Tsuruta, Atsutake Okamoto, Noriko Kamata

Terumi Kamisawa, Chen-Pong Yui, Yuyang Tu, Hitoshi Nakajima, Naoto Egawa, Department of Internal Medicine, Tokyo Metropolitan Komagome Hospital, Bukyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan
Kouji Tsuruta, Atsutake Okamoto, Department of Surgery, Tokyo Metropolitan Komagome Hospital, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan
Noriko Kamata, Department of Radiology, Tokyo Metropolitan Komagome Hospital, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan
Correspondence to: Dr Terumi Kamisawa, Department of Internal Medicine, Tokyo Metropolitan Komagome Hospital, 3-18-22 Honkomagome, Bukyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan. kamisawa@cick.jp
Telephone: +81-3-38232101 Fax: +81-3-38241552
Received: 2005-11-29 Accepted: 2006-01-09

Abstract

AIM: To evaluate magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) findings in conjunction with magnetic resonance (MR) images in autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP) patients.

METHODS: Nine patients with AIP underwent MRI, MRCP, endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP), computed tomography, and ultrasonography. The MRCP and MR images taken before and after steroid therapy were reviewed and compared with other imaging modalities. The MRCP findings of the AIP cases were compared to those of 10 cases with carcinoma of the head of the pancreas.

RESULTS: On MRCP, the narrowed portion of the main pancreatic duct noted on ERCP was not visualized, while the non-involved segments of the main pancreatic duct were visualized. The degree of upstream dilatation of the proximal main pancreatic duct was milder than that seen in cases of pancreatic carcinoma. Stenosis or obstruction of the lower bile duct was detected in 8 patients. MR images showed enlargement of the pancreas with decreased signal intensity on T1-weighted MR images, increased signal intensity on T2-weighted MR images, and, in 3 patients, a hypointense capsule-like rim. After steroid therapy, the previously not visualized portion of the main pancreatic duct was seen, along with improvement of the bile duct stenosis. Pancreatic enlargement decreased, and the abnormal signal intensity on both T1- and T2-weighted MR images became isointense.

CONCLUSION: MRCP cannot differentiate irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct seen with AIP from stenosis of the main pancreatic duct seen with pancreatic carcinoma. However, MRCP findings in conjunction with MR imaging of pancreatic enlargement that shows abnormal signal intensity on T1- and T2-weighted MR images are useful in supporting a diagnosis of AIP.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Autoimmune pancreatitis; Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography; Magnetic resonance

Kamisawa T, Chen PY, Tu Y, Nakajima H, Egawa N, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Kamata N. MRCP and MRI findings in 9 patients with autoimmune pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2919-2922

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2919.asp

INTRODUCTION

Autoimmune pancreatitis (AIP) has recently been described as a peculiar type of chronic pancreatitis with underlying autoimmunity[1-5]. Patients with AIP almost always have enlargement of the pancreas[1-5], and their major presenting symptom (65%[6]-68%[7]) is obstructive jaundice due to obstruction of the bile duct. Since, pancreatic or bile duct carcinoma is suspected, pancreaticobiliary duct system is examined by endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP). The hallmark finding of AIP on direct pancreatogram is irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct; stenosis of the intra- or extrahepatic bile duct is frequently detected on cholangiography[1,2,5-7].

Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) has become popular as a non-invasive method for obtaining high quality images of the pancreaticobiliary tree[8]. Although the features of AIP on computed tomography (CT) and ERCP have been reported, the MRCP features of AIP have not been clarified. The aim of this study was to describe the MRCP findings in AIP patients before and after steroid therapy and to review the utility of MRCP for the diagnosis for AIP.

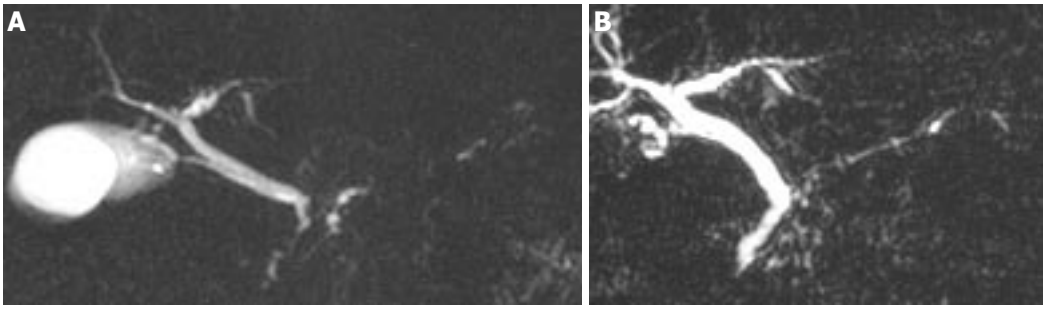


Figure 1 A: On MRCP of a patient with autoimmune pancreatitis, 2 segmentally skipped lesions of the main pancreatic duct in the head and body of the pancreas were not visualized; **B:** After steroid therapy, the entire MPD was seen on MRCP.

Table 1 ERCP and MRCP findings of patients with autoimmune pancreatitis

ERCP	MRCP
Diffuse narrowing of MPD in entire pancreas (n=1)	Non-visualized MPD in entire pancreas (n=1)
Segmental narrowing of MPD in the head of pancreas (n=3)	Non-visualized MPD in the head of pancreas (n=3)
Two skipped narrowing of MPD in the head and body of pancreas (n=3)	Two skipped non-visualized MPD lesions in the head and body of pancreas (n=3)
Segmental narrowing of MPD in the tail of pancreas (n=2)	Non-visualized MPD in the tail of pancreas (n=2)

MPD: main pancreatic duct.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Subjects

Nine patients (6 males and 3 females, average age 60.3 years) with AIP who had MRCP in the time period from 1997 to 2005 were enrolled in this study. All patients had ERCP, ultrasonography (US), and CT. ERCP showed irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct in all patients [diffuse (n = 1), segmental-head (n = 3), segmentally skipped-head and body (n = 3), segmental-tail (n = 2)]. CT and US showed enlargement of the pancreas in 8 patients [diffuse (n = 3), segmental-head (n = 3), segmental-tail (n = 2)]. Six patients had elevations of serum IgG, 7 patients had elevations of serum IgG4, and 3 patients had antinuclear autoantibody. Six patients presented with obstructive jaundice. On cholangiography, stenosis of the bile duct was detected in 8 patients [lower common bile duct (n = 5) and intrahepatic and lower common bile duct (n = 3)]. All patients were given steroid treatment and responded both morphologically and serologically. From the radiological and serological findings, in addition to effectiveness of steroid treatment, all 9 patients were diagnosed as having AIP.

Methods

MRCP was done using a 1.5 T magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) machine (INTERA, PHILIPS Co Ltd, Netherlands) by coronal heavily T2-weighted single-shot rapid acquisition with relaxation enhancement. The MRCP and MR images taken before and after steroid therapy were reviewed and compared with other imaging modalities. The MRCP findings of the AIP cases were compared to those of 10 cases with carcinoma of the head of the pancreas.

RESULTS

The narrowed portion of the main pancreatic duct seen on ERCP was not visualized on MRCP, while the non-involved segments of the main pancreatic duct were seen on MRCP. On MRCP, the entire main pancreatic duct was not seen in 1 patient in whom the main pancreatic duct showed diffuse narrowing on ERCP. In 3 patients in whom the main pancreatic duct was segmentally narrowed in the head region on ERCP, the MRCP visualized the main pancreatic duct only in the body and tail of the pancreas, but not in the head region. In 2 patients, MRCP showed the main pancreatic duct only in the head and body of the pancreas, but not in the tail region. On MRCP, 2 segmentally skipped lesions of the main pancreatic duct in the head and body of the pancreas were not visualized in 3 patients (Figure 1A and Table 1). Although upstream dilatation of the proximal main pancreatic duct was detected in 6 patients, the degree of dilatation was milder than that in cases of pancreatic carcinoma. Stenosis or obstruction of the lower bile duct was detected in 8 patients, of whom 3 patients also showed stenosis of the intrahepatic bile duct accompanied by dilatation of the proximal bile duct, similar to the findings on ERCP.

All patients showed enlargement of the pancreas with abnormal signal intensity on T1- and T2-weighted images, though the degree of abnormal intensity was different among the cases. On T1-weighted MR images, the signal intensity of the affected pancreatic lesion was decreased compared to the signal intensity in the liver (Figure 2A). T2-weighted MR images showed increased signal intensity in the pancreatic parenchyma compared to that of the liver (Figure 2B). A capsule-like rim, which was hypointense on both T1- and T2-weighted images, was detected in 3 patients.

After steroid therapy, the portion of the main pancreatic duct that was previously not visualized on MRCP was seen (Figure 1B), and an improvement of the upstream dilatation of the proximal main pancreatic duct was evident. Stenosis or obstruction of the lower or hilar bile duct was found to be improved. The enlarged pancreas became normal in size (n = 6) or atrophic (n =

Figure 2 A: On T1-weighted MR images of a patient with autoimmune pancreatitis, the signal intensity of the affected pancreatic lesion was slightly decreased compared to the signal intensity in the liver; **B:** T2-weighted MR images showed increased signal intensity in the pancreatic parenchyma than that of the liver with a capsule-like rim which was hypointense; **C:** After steroid therapy, the enlarged pancreas became atrophic on T1-weighted MR images.

3) after steroid therapy. In all patients on both T1- and T2-weighted MR images, the abnormal signal intensity improved to being isointense with that of the liver, and the capsule-like rim disappeared (Figure 2C).

DISCUSSION

Since Yoshida *et al*[9] first proposed the existence of AIP in 1995, many cases of AIP have been reported. This unique form of chronic pancreatitis appears to be a distinct disease entity. AIP occurs predominantly in elderly males and frequently presents as obstructive jaundice[1,2,5-7]. This presentation is also typical of pancreatic carcinoma. As most patients with AIP respond to oral steroid therapy, an accurate diagnosis of AIP is necessary to avoid unnecessary laparotomy or pancreatic resection. Recently, MRCP has become a viable alternative to diagnostic ERCP as a non-invasive method for obtaining high quality images of the pancreaticobiliary tree[8]. We compared MRCP findings and MR images before and after steroid therapy in AIP patients.

The characteristic radiological images of AIP include irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct on ERCP and enlargement of the pancreas on CT and US[1-3,5-7]. The irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct on direct pancreatography, which is usually longer than the stenosis of the main pancreatic duct detected in patients with pancreatic carcinoma, is one of the useful findings that differentiate AIP from pancreatic carcinoma[1,3,10]. In the present study, the narrowing of the main pancreatic duct on ERCP was not visualized on MRCP, while the other region of the main pancreatic duct was visualized. After steroid therapy, the previously unvisualized lesions of the main pancreatic duct were seen. Thus, non-visualization of the main pancreatic duct might suggest narrowing of the main pancreatic duct. MRCP cannot differentiate irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct from stenosis of the main pancreatic duct in pancreatic carcinoma; thus, ERCP is necessary to diagnose AIP. However, MRCP findings of skipped, non-visualized main pancreatic duct lesions, accompanied by a lesser degree of upstream main pancreatic duct dilatation than that seen in pancreatic carcinoma, might suggest the presence of AIP. The MRCP of AIP patients frequently showed stenosis of the intra- or extrahepatic bile duct. T1-weighted MR images of AIP patients showed enlargement of the pancreas with decreased signal intensity, while T2-weighted MR images showed increased signal intensity, sometimes associated with a hypointense capsule-like rim in the involved segments. In previous reports, a decreased signal intensity on T1-weighted MR images, reflecting fibrosis in the pancreatic parenchyma, has been reported. Irie *et al*.[11] noted the hypointense capsule-like rim in the involved segment on T2-weighted MR images; this appears to be a characteristic finding of AIP, and is thought to be related to an inflammatory process involving peripancreatic tissue.

There have been no previous reports dealing with the change in the intensity in the pancreas of patients with AIP after steroid therapy. In the present study, on both T1- and T2-weighted MR images, abnormal signal intensity of the pancreas improved to isointensity with that of the liver. The enlargement of the pancreas and the capsule-like rim disappeared. Thus, MRCP and MR images are useful for evaluating the effectiveness of steroid therapy.

In conclusion, MRCP cannot differentiate the irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct seen with AIP from the stenosis of the main pancreatic duct seen with pancreatic carcinoma. However, the MRCP findings of skipped, non-visualized main pancreatic duct lesions, accompanied by a lesser degree of upstream dilatation of the main pancreatic duct, might suggest the presence of AIP. These MRCP findings, in conjunction with MR images of pancreatic enlargement showing abnormal signal intensity on T1- and T2-weighted MR images, are useful in supporting a diagnosis of AIP.

REFERENCES

1 **Okazaki K,** Chiba T. Autoimmune related pancreatitis. *Gut* 2002; **51:** 1-4

2 **Kamisawa T,** Egawa N, Nakajima H, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A. Morphological changes after steroid therapy in autoimmune pancreatitis. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2004; **39:** 1154-1158

3 **Kamisawa T**, Tu Y, Egawa N, Nakajima H, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A. Involvement of pancreatic and bile ducts in autoimmune pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12:** 612-614

4 **Kamisawa T**, Yoshiike M, Egawa N, Nakajima H, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A. Treating patients with autoimmune pancreatitis: results from a long-term follow-up study. *Pancreatology* 2005; **5:** 234-238; discussion 234-238

5 **Kamisawa T,** Egawa N, Nakajima H, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Kamata N. Clinical difficulties in the differentiation of autoimmune pancreatitis and pancreatic carcinoma. *Am J*

Gastroenterol 2003; **98**: 2694-2699
6 **Kamisawa T,** Okamoto A, Funata N. Clinicopathological features of autoimmune pancreatitis in relation to elevation of serum IgG4. *Pancreas* 2005; **31:** 28-31
7 **Okazaki K.** Autoimmune pancreatitis is increasing in Japan. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125:** 1557-1558
8 **Vaishali MD,** Agarwal AK, Upadhyaya DN, Chauhan VS, Sharma OP, Shukla VK. Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography in obstructive jaundice. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2004; **38:** 887-890
9 **Yoshida K,** Toki F, Takeuchi T, Watanabe S, Shiratori K, Hayashi N. Chronic pancreatitis caused by an autoimmune abnormality. Proposal of the concept of autoimmune pancreatitis. *Dig Dis Sci* 1995; **40:** 1561-1568
10 **Horiuchi A,** Kawa S, Hamano H, Hayama M, Ota H, Kiyosawa K. ERCP features in 27 patients with autoimmune pancreatitis. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **55:** 494-499
11 **Irie H**, Honda H, Baba S, Kuroiwa T, Yoshimitsu K, Tajima T, Jimi M, Sumii T, Masuda K. Autoimmune pancreatitis: CT and MR characteristics. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1998; **170:** 1323-1327

S- Editor Pan BR **L- Editor** Kumar M **E- Editor** Bai SH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2923-2927
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Incidence and predictors of upper gastrointestinal bleeding in patients receiving low-dose aspirin for secondary prevention of cardiovascular events in patients with coronary artery disease

William Ng, Wai-Man Wong, Wai-Hong Chen, Hung-Fat Tse, Pui-Yin Lee, Kam-Chuen Lai, Sheung-Wai Li, Matthew Ng, Kwok-Fai Lam, Xi Cheng, Chu-Pak Lau

William Ng, Wai-Hong Chen, Hung-Fat Tse, Pui-Yin Lee, Xi Cheng, Chu-Pak Lau, Division of Cardiology, University Department of Medicine, Queen Mary Hospital, Hong Kong SAR, China
Wai-Man Wong, Kam-Chuen Lai, Matthew Ng, Division of Gastroenterology, University Department of Medicine, Queen Mary Hospital, Hong Kong SAR, China
Sheung-Wai Li, Division of Rehabilitation Medicine, University Department of Medicine, Queen Mary Hospital, Hong Kong SAR, China
Kwok-Fai Lam, Department of Statistics and Actuarial Science, University of Hong Kong, Hong Kong SAR, China
Correspondence to: Professor Chu-Pak Lau, Chief (Academic), Division of Cardiology, University Department of Medicine, 4th floor, Professorial Block, Queen Mary Hospital, Pokfulam Road, Hong Kong SAR, China. cplau@hkucc.hku.hk
Telephone: +852-28554244 Fax: +852-28186304
Received: 2005-06-22 Accepted: 2005-08-26

Abstract

AIM: The use of low-dose aspirin to prevent cardiovascular disease events is well established. However, the incidence and predictors of upper gastrointestinal bleeding (UGIB) with its use are unknown. We studied prospectively the incidence and outcome of peptic ulceration in low-dose aspirin users.

METHODS: A total of 991 patients with coronary artery disease (CAD) on low-dose aspirin were prospectively followed-up for two years for the occurrence and clinical features of first hospitalized episode of UGIB.

RESULTS: UGIB had a bimodal presentation with 45% occurring within four months of aspirin initiation and had an overall prevalence of 1.5% per year. There was no UGIB-related death. Hypertension (*OR* = 4.6, 95%CI 1.5 - 14.7, *P* = 0.009), history of peptic ulceration (*OR* = 3.1, 95%CI 1.1 - 9.0, *P* = 0.039), tertiary education (*OR* = 3.08, 95%CI 1.1 - 9.0, *P* = 0.039) and higher lean body mass (*P* = 0.016) were independent factors associated with UGIB. Use of nitrate did not reduce UGIB.

CONCLUSION: The incidence of UGIB in patients with CAD on long-term low-dose aspirin is low, but is accompanied with significant morbidity. With prolonged use of aspirin, UGIB continues to be a problem for those with risk factors and especially in patients with a history of peptic ulcers, in which UGIB tends to occur early after aspirin therapy.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Coronary artery disease; Aspirin; Gastrointestinal bleeding

Ng W, Wong WM, Chen WH, Tse HF, Lee PY, Lai KC, Li SW, Ng M, Lam KF, Cheng X, Lau CP. Incidence and predictors of upper gastrointestinal bleeding in patients receiving low-dose aspirin for secondary prevention of cardiovascular events in patients with coronary artery disease. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2923-2927

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2923.asp

INTRODUCTION

Anti-platelet therapy with low-dose aspirin (75-325 mg) reduces the risk of vascular events in patients with established coronary artery disease (CAD)[1-3]. However, the use of aspirin, even at a low dose for secondary prevention of cardiovascular events, is associated with a small but significant increase in the risk of upper gastrointestinal bleeding (UGIB). In addition, previous studies have also reported several risk factors, such as the use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) and old age, implicated in the development of UGIB in patients taking aspirin[4-8]. However, the incidence of aspirin-related UGIB in patients with CAD for the secondary prevention of cardiovascular events and the time frame of UGIB occurrence are uncertain. In addition, effects of several emerging therapies, such as the use of dual antiplatelet agents, nitrate or ulcer-protecting drugs for the development of UGIB, have not been systematically evaluated.

In a cohort of patients with established CAD recruited into a Cardiac Rehabilitation Programme, we prospectively monitored the time of occurrence of UGIB in patients taking low-dose aspirin for the secondary prevention of

cardiovascular events over two years. We also sought to determine the possible predictive factors associated with UGIB.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study population

In this prospective study, we recruited all patients with established ischemic heart disease (myocardial infarction, angina pectoris, angiographic-proven coronary artery disease) referred to a Cardiac Rehabilitation Programme in Tung Wah Hospital (an University-affiliated hospital) between September 1997 and April 2002. All the patients were started on low-dose aspirin (75-300 mg) according to referring physicians' discretion. Apart from collecting data on demographics, other parameters related to cardiac rehabilitation like education level, functional class, left ventricular function, exercise capacity, body mass index, body fat content, body lean mass content, medications used were also recorded. A database was specially designed to collect the required information prospectively. Patients were followed-up once every 3-4 mo and the occurrence of UGIB was noted. Detailed information about each UGIB event was obtained from interpretation and review of hospital records.

Upper gastrointestinal bleeding

The occurrence of UGIB was defined as the clinical presentation of hematemesis or passage of melena or unexplained drop in hemoglobin of ⩾ 20 g/L. Upper gastrointestinal endoscopy with therapeutic intervention(s) to obtain haemostasis (using epinephrine injection or heater probe application, when needed) was performed in all these patients presented with UGIB. *Helicobacter pylori* (*H pylori*) status was determined using a 24-h rapid urease test on antral biopsy specimens and histological detection of *Helicobacter*-like organisms using the haematoxylin and eosin stain, and Giemsa stain on biopsies taken from the gastric antrum and/or body. The rapid urease test at 24 h has been validated in our hospital with a sensitivity and specificity of 99% and 100%, respectively[9]. In addition, the use of histological examination of these biopsy specimens, the *H pylori* status was correctly evaluated even in patients with active UGIB, with the understanding that rapid urease test would be rendered inaccurate at those situations.

Statistical analysis

Univariate analyses were performed, using Student's *t* test and Mann-Whitney *U* test for continuous variables and Chi-square test or Fisher's exact test for categorical variables to assess the risk factors associated with UGIB. A multiple logistic regression model was designed to determine the factors (age, gender, educational level, occupation, hypertension, diabetes mellitus, renal impairment, history of peptic ulcer diseases, lean body mass, body fat, obesity, New York Heart Association (NYHA) functional class, left ventricular function, use of dual anti-platelet agents/NSAID/ulcer protective drug) associated with UGIB. To find the best model, a backward elimination stepwise procedure was carried out such that the factor would be eliminated from the analysis if the corresponding *P* value was greater than 0.15. A two-tailed *P* value of 0.05 or less was considered statistically significant.

Table 1 Baseline characteristics of 991 patients with coronary artery disease started on low-dose aspirin (mean ± SD, *n*, %)

	No UGIB (*n* = 962)	UGIB (*n* = 29)	*P* values
Age (mean ± SD)	64 ± 11	67 ± 11	0.663
Sex (M/F)	693/268	23/6	0.683
Hypertension (%)	519 (54)	22 (76)	0.008
Diabetes mellitus (%)	342 (35.5)	10 (34.5)	0.906
Renal impairment (Cr > 200 umol/L) (%)	42 (4.4)	5 (17.2)	0.001
Serum creatinine	120 ± 93	158 ± 103	0.002
History of MI (%)	536 (56)	16 (55)	0.095
History of PU (%)	74 (7.7)	9 (31.0)	0.006
LVEF < 40% (%)	388 (40.3)	11 (37.9)	0.034
NYHA (III-IV) (%)	82 (8.5)	6 (20.7)	0.048
% Body fat	34 ± 7	30 ± 7	0.036
% Lean body mass	66 ± 8	70 ± 7	0.049
Education level (tertiary) (%)	107 (11.1)	5 (17.2)	0.05
Nitrate use (%)	540 (56.1)	21 (72.4)	0.09

Cr: creatinine; MI: myocardial infarction; PU: peptic ulcer; LVEF: left ventricular ejection fraction; NYHA: New York Heart Association functional class.

RESULTS

Characteristics of patients and incidence of upper gastrointestinal bleeding (Table 1)

Between September 1997 and April 2002, a total of 991 patients with established ischemic heart disease were enrolled into the study and followed-up prospectively for two years. Of these, 716 (72.3%) were male (mean age, 64.8 ± 11 years); 552 (55.7%) had history of myocardial infarction (MI); 541 (54.8%) were hypertensive; 352 (35.5%) had diabetic mellitus; and 546 (54.7%) patients were smokers. Nitrate use was found in 561 (57.1%) patients. One hundred and twelve patients (11.3%) had received tertiary education. Twenty-nine patients developed UGIB over a follow-up period of two years, giving the incidence of 1.5% per year. For those who had a bleeding event, 72% did not have new-onset ulcer pain; 52% required blood transfusion (mean, 3.3 units; range, 1-8 units); 62% with a drop in hemoglobin of greater than 3 g/dL; 24% of these patients required more than one therapeutic upper gastrointestinal endoscopies for haemostasis. Peptic ulceration was the main cause of UGIB in our series (gastric ulcer, 38%; duodenum ulcer, 52%); aspirin-related hemorrhagic gastritis did not occur in our cohort. *H pylori* positivity status was present in 50% of patients presented with UGIB.

Of those who had UGIB, 21% of all the events occurred in the first month and 45% occurred in the first 4 mo after initiation of low-dose aspirin (early bleeders) (Figure 1). The 'late bleeders' (55%) developed UGIB at a mean of 20.8 ± 5.3 mo after initiation of therapy, with 88% (14/16) of them bled at least once after one year of aspirin therapy. In addition, about a third of those

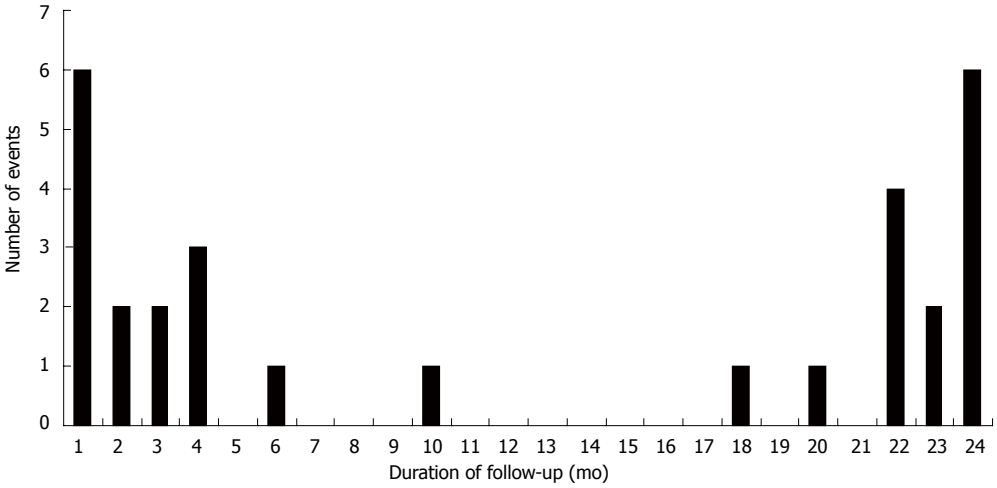


Figure 1 Bimodal presentation of upper gastrointestinal bleeding events in a two-year follow-up period.

who presented with UGIB (9/29) had a history of peptic ulcer/GIB/gastrectomy, in which 56% (5/9) of them were early bleeders. This indicates a 1:8 chance of having UGIB in patients with history of peptic ulceration while started on low-dose aspirin, which have a tendency to have early bleeding event; 97% of patients with UGIB required hospitalization. Death or myocardial infarction did not occur during the UGIB episodes and no patient required surgery for treatment of the UGIB. Nitrate use was recorded in 62% of the bleeders; 21% of those who had an UGIB were on ulcer-protecting drugs during presentation, but only 10% of them reported concurrent use of NSAID.

Predictors of UGIB

Univariate analyses showed that the presence of hypertension (*OR* = 3.1, 95%*CI* 1.3 - 7.7, *P* = 0.008), renal impairment (*OR* = 4.8, 95%*CI* 1.7 - 13.1, *P* = 0.001), history of peptic ulcer (*OR* = 4.6, 95%*CI* 2.0 - 10.7, *P* = 0.002), patients with impaired left ventricle function (EF < 40%) (*P* = 0.034) or NYHA functional class III-IV (*OR* = 3.0, 95%*CI* 1.2 - 7.6, *P* = 0.048), patients with high lean body mass (70% ± 7% *vs* 66% ± 8%, *P* = 0.049) or low body fat content (30% ± 7% *vs* 34% ± 7%, *P* = 0.036) and patients with tertiary education (*OR* = 3.1, 95%*CI* 1.1 - 9.0, *P* = 0.05) were predictors of the development of UGIB. Use of anti-ulcer therapy (in small number of patients) was not associated in prevention of UGIB. The use of nitrate did not reduce the risk of UGIB (*P* = 0.09). However, multivariate analyses using a logistic regression model demonstrated that only patients with hypertension (*OR* = 4.63, 95%*CI* 1.5 - 14.7, *P* = 0.009), history of peptic ulcer (*OR* = 3.1, 95%*CI* 1.1 - 9.0, *P* = 0.039), tertiary education (*OR* = 3.1, 95%CI 1.1 - 9.0, *P* = 0.039) or with high lean body mass (707% ± 7% *vs* 667% ± 8%, *P* = 0.0157) had a higher probability of UGIB while taking low-dose aspirin for secondary prevention of cardiovascular events (Table 2).

Table 2 Multivariate analysis of predictors of upper gastrointestinal bleeding in patients with coronary artery disease on low-dose aspirin (mean ± SD)

	95%*CI*	Odds ratio	*P* values
Education level (tertiary)	1.05 - 8.98	3.08	0.039
Hypertension	1.46 - 14.74	4.63	0.009
History of peptic ulcer	1.05 - 9.00	3.08	0.039
% Lean body mass (body fat content)			0.0157

DISCUSSION

To the best of our knowledge, this is the first prospective study for the first UGIB in patients started with low-dose aspirin for secondary prevention of cardiovascular events. UGIB occurred at a rate of 1.5% per year, and was due to peptic ulceration that required hospitalization and blood transfusion. Twenty-four percent of those with UGIB required more than one therapeutic endoscopy to secure haemostasis. On the other hand, new-onset ulcer syndrome was not present in majority of those patients that developed an UGIB. These data also showed that when patients started with low-dose aspirin and bled subsequently, 21% of them had the event in the first month of treatment, 45% of all bleeding events occurred in the first 4 mo of starting low-dose aspirin; whereas most of the other bleeding events took place after at least one year of therapy. This observation implies that not only the risk of UGIB associated with low-dose aspirin use does not decrease with time, rather, there exists a bimodal presentation of the event in our series with one peak occurring in the early phase of starting treatment and the second occurred beyond the first year. This is in contrary to previous studies, in which the rate of UGIB occurred in a constant fashion throughout the entire period of study[4,8]. There are several possible explanations for the difference. Unlike other studies, we prospectively recorded first episode of UGIB after aspirin initiation instead of recruiting those presenting with the event[5]. In addition, others reported the use of a higher-dose of aspirin for the prevention of cardiovascular events[6]. Furthermore, some animal studies reported the possibility of adaptation of the gastric mucosa to aspirin therapy with time, and this might explain why patients begin to have less bleeding after receiving several mo of aspirin therapy[14].

We demonstrated the predictors of UGIB events for patients taking low-dose aspirin. Better-educated people

were more likely to experience UGIB (*OR* = 3.1, the odds of UGIB was about 3 times more among people who received tertiary education than those who received secondary education or less). One explanation is that better educated people might be more compliant to prescribed medications, and they generally have much higher pressure/stress at work, and hence have a higher incidence of UGIB[10-11]. Consistent to previous reports, patients with a past history of peptic ulcer problems or UGIB were still at high risk of developing UGIB despite the use of low-dose aspirin[4]. Furthermore, we showed that most of them bled early on initiation of aspirin and thus deserve treatment for ulcer prophylaxis. In our study, patients with hypertension had the highest odds ratio for developing UGIB, concur with the traditional association between hypertension and the development of peptic ulcer[15]. Another interesting finding was that patients with a higher lean body mass had a higher probability for having an UGIB. A recent report suggested that obese patients are more prone to the development of aspirin resistance[12], so whether non-obese patients with slender-build (and hence a higher lean body mass content) are more susceptible to aspirin effect, including its toxicity on the stomach, will need further evaluation. Unlike a previous report[4], the use of nitrate was not linked to a reduction of UGIB in our study (P = 0.09). This may be due to a purely statistical problem as a large majority (57.1%) of the CAD patients in our cohort were on nitrate, which might mask the protective effect, if any of the latter; alternatively, other confounding factors, such as hypertension, leaner subjects in our series, might negate the effect of nitrate. The presence of renal impairment or heart failure/left ventricular dysfunction was believed to be predictors of UGIB as reported in our series using an univariate analysis, but these factors dropped out after multivariate adjustment. This might be due to the small number of events recorded in the present cohort. Our patients were younger (mean, 65 years; range, 35-87 years) compared to those in the previous study. With this age range, age appears not to be a predictive factor for UGIB.

The incidence of UGIB event in patients with CAD started on low-dose aspirin was low, and if occurred, was associated with good clinical outcome though most patients required hospitalisation. Nevertheless, with better understanding of the pathogenesis of the former and, in particular, its relation to *H pylori* status, our group has reported a possible method for the prevention of recurrence of peptic ulcer complication from long-term low-dose aspirin use[12]. On the other hand, our study showed that certain high-risk group of patients, especially those with history of peptic ulceration who tend to have early UGIB, should be target for primary prevention of peptic ulceration development and continued surveillance needed as well for these patients while on low-dose aspirin.

The small number of patients in our cohort that were on regular NSAID (1.1%) might not be able to show its deleterious effect on patients taking low-dose aspirin. Likewise, there was insufficient number of patients taking ulcer-protecting agents 21% to show a statistically significant benefit for patients taking these medications for ulcer prevention. However, the low usage of NSAID and ulcer-protecting drugs allowed us to determine the natural history of UGIB secondary to low-dose aspirin in this patient cohort, in which future therapeutic strategy can be planned. Finally, we failed to obtain the *H pylori* status for all patients, Regardless of whether they had or had not had an event, from which the value of that might be much more elicited. In addition, serological assay for *H pylori* infection was not universally available at time of our study. Nevertheless, local study reported that 55% of the population was infected with *H pylori* though symptoms and clinical disease developed in only a minority of infected individuals during their lifetime[13].

In summary, the incidence of UGIB in patients with CAD on low-dose aspirin remains low at 1.5% per year. Patients with hypertension, history of peptic ulcer problem, low body fat content (high lean body mass) and those that had received tertiary education were at risk of having an UGIB event. There exists bimodal presentation of the UGIB event with the early bleeders presenting in the first few months of starting treatment and the late bleeders after at least one year of therapy. Patients who had an event were likely to be hospitalized and required blood transfusion.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Ms Kam-Bing Lam RN and Ms Jeanette Kwok RN for their help with the data collection; and Ms Yuki Lo for preparing the manuscript.

REFERENCES

1 Collaborative overview of randomised trials of antiplatelet therapy--I: Prevention of death, myocardial infarction, and stroke by prolonged antiplatelet therapy in various categories of patients. Antiplatelet Trialists' Collaboration. *BMJ* 1994; **308:** 81-106

2 Final report on the aspirin component of the ongoing Physicians' Health Study. Steering Committee of the Physicians' Health Study Research Group. *N Engl J Med* 1989; **321:** 129-135

3 **Lorenz RL**, Schacky CV, Weber M, Meister W, Kotzur J, Reichardt B, Theisen K, Weber PC. Improved aortocoronary bypass patency by low-dose aspirin (100 mg daily). Effects on platelet aggregation and thromboxane formation. *Lancet* 1984; **1:** 1261-1264

4 **Serrano P**, Lanas A, Arroyo MT, Ferreira IJ. Risk of upper gastrointestinal bleeding in patients taking low-dose aspirin for the prevention of cardiovascular diseases. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16:** 1945-1953

5 **Lanas A**, Bajador E, Serrano P, Fuentes J, Carreño S, Guardia J, Sanz M, Montoro M, Sáinz R. Nitrovasodilators, low-dose aspirin, other nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, and the risk of upper gastrointestinal bleeding. *N Engl J Med* 2000; **343:** 834-839

6 **Hayden M**, Pignone M, Phillips C, Mulrow C. Aspirin for the primary prevention of cardiovascular events: a summary of the evidence for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Ann Intern Med* 2002; **136:** 161-172

7 **Lanas A**, Fuentes J, Benito R, Serrano P, Bajador E, Sáinz R. *Helicobacter pylori* increases the risk of upper gastrointestinal bleeding in patients taking low-dose aspirin. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2002; **16**: 779-786

8 **Kurata JH,** Abbey DE. The effect of chronic aspirin use on duodenal and gastric ulcer hospitalizations. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1990; **12**: 260-266

9 **Wong BC**, Wong WM, Wang WH, Tang VS, Young J, Lai KC, Yuen ST, Leung SY, Hu WH, Chan CK, Hui WM, Lam SK. An evaluation of invasive and non-invasive tests for the diagnosis

of Helicobacter pylori infection in Chinese. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2001; **15:** 505-511
10 **Feldman EJ,** Sabovich KA. Stress and peptic ulcer disease. *Gastroenterology* 1980; **78**: 1087-1089
11 **Maree AO**, Curtin RJ, Dooley M, Conroy RM, Crean P, Cox D, Fitzgerald DJ. Platelet response to low-dose enteric-coated aspirin in patients with stable cardiovascular disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2005; **46:** 1258-1263
12 **Lai KC**, Lam SK, Chu KM, Wong BC, Hui WM, Hu WH, Lau GK, Wong WM, Yuen MF, Chan AO, Lai CL, Wong J. Lansoprazole for the prevention of recurrences of ulcer complications from long-term low-dose aspirin use. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **346:** 2033-2038
13 **Ching CK**, Wong BC. Who should be treated for Helicobacter pylori infection? *Hong Kong Med J* 1999; **5:** 151-157
14 **St John DJ**, Yeomans ND, McDermott FT, De Boer WG. Adaptation of the gastric mucosa to repeated administration of aspirin in the rat. *Am J Dig Dis* 1973; **18**: 881-885
15 **Sonnenberg A**. Concordant occurrence of gastric and hypertensive diseases. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **95**: 42-48

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Kumar M **E- Editor** Bai SH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2928-2931
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Relationship between IFN-γ gene polymorphism and susceptibility to intrauterine HBV infection

Hui Yu, Qi-Rong Zhu, Shao-Qing Gu, Lin-E Fei

Hui Yu, Qi-Rong Zhu, Shao-Qing Gu, Lin-E Fei, Department of Infectious Disease, Children's Hospital of Fudan University, Shanghai 200032, China
Supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China, No.30271365
Correspondence to: Dr. Yu Hui, Department of Infectious Disease, Children's Hospital of Fudan University, Shanghai 200032, China. yuhui4756@sina.com.cn
Telephone: +86-21-54524666-3003 Fax: +86-21-64038992
Received: 2005-11-14 Accepted: 2005-11-14

Abstract

AIM: To explore the susceptibility of children to intrauterine HBV infection by studying the relationship between IFN-γ gene polymorphism, including IFN-γ+874A/T single nucleotide polymorphism(SNP) and CA repeat microsatellite polymorphism and intrauterine HBV infection.

METHODS: A TaqMan fluorescence polymerase chain reaction in the IFN-γ+874A/T single nucleotide polymorphism was tested in the intrauterine HBV infection group(group I) and the normal immune children group(group II). Capillary electrophoresis was performed in the above two groups to assay the IFN-γ CA repeat microsatellite polymorphism.

RESULTS: Frequencies of AA, AT and TT genotypes were 67.4%, 19.6% and 13.0% in the intrauterine HBV infection group, and 45.2%, 30.1% and 24.7% in the normal immune children group, respectively. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution of IFN-γ+874 genotype between the two groups (χ^2 = 5.102, P = 0.02389). In the intrauterine HBV infection group the AA genotype was more common than in the normal immune group. Frequency of IFN-γ+874A allele was 77.17% in the intrauterine HBV infection group, and 60.27% in the normal immune children group. In the intrauterine HBV infection group the IFN-γ+874A allele was more common than in normal immune group. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution between the two groups (χ^2 = 7.238, P = 0.02389, OR = 2.228, 95% CI = 1.244-3.992). $(CA_{12})^+/(CA_{12})^+$ of IFN-γ CA microsatellite polymorphism was 11.90% in the intrauterine HBV infection group and 26.47% in the normal immune children group. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution between the two groups (χ^2 = 5.64, P = 0.0176). Frequency of IFN-γ CA repeat was 25% in the intrauterine HBV infection group and 43.38% in the normal immune children group. The frequency of IFN-γ CA repeat was less in the intrauterine HBV infection group than in normal immune group. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution between the two groups (χ^2 = 7.548, P = 0.0060).

CONCLUSION: There is a relationship between IFN-γ+874A/T SNP and intrauterine HBV infection as well as between IFN-γ CA microsatellite polymorphism and intrauterine HBV infection. IFN-γ gene polymorphism might be important in determining individual's susceptibility to intrauterine HBV infection.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Interferon-γ; Gene polymorphism; Hepatitis B virus; Intrauterine

Yu H, Zhu QR, Gu SQ, Fei LE. Relationship between IFN-γ gene polymorphism and susceptibility to intrauterine HBV infection. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2928-2931

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2928.asp

INTRODUCTION

IFN-γ+874A/T SNP within the first intron can increase or decrease the binding of a particular transcription factor and ultimately the export of cytokine product[1-2]. The registered DNA sequences of the human IFN-γ gene deposited in Genbank show the presence of a CA repeat element in the first intron, 875 bp downstream from the start of the first exon. There are seven CA repeats of variable lengths In a consecutive study, 12 CA repeats are confirmed its role as a marker of high IFN-γ production[2]. We have reported in a previous study that higher IFN-γ secretion than spontaneous secretion could be found in the intrauterine HBV infection group and the normal immune children group with HBsAg stimulation, but the increase in the intrauterine HBV infection group is strikingly lower than that in the normal immune children group[3]. IFN-γ production is positively associated with IFN-γmRNA expression[3]. In the present study, we studied the IFN-γ+874 SNP and CA repeat microsatellite polymorphism in the intrauterine HBV infection group and the normal immune children group in order to explore the association between IFN-γ gene polymorphisms and susceptibility to intrauterine HBV infection.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Subjects

The subjects were selected from outpatients who were in our hepatitis B (HB) vaccine follow up clinics. These subjects whose mothers were HBV carriers were inoculated with HB vaccine or HB vaccine plus hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HBIg) and followed up for serum alanine transaminase (ALT) and HBV marker. Intrauterine HBV-infected children were defined based on their positive HBsAg and/or HBV-DNA at birth and lasting for six months (group I). Normal immune children were defined based on their negative HBV marker after birth and high HBsAb titers (group II). ALT of all subjects was normal.

TaqMan fluorescence polymerase chain reaction

Genomic DNA was extracted from peripheral blood using the kits supplied by Sangon Bioengineering Company (Shanghai, China). Polymorphisms at +874 were identified using the ABI Prism 7700 fluorescent automatic sequencer. PCR products were obtained after amplification in a 10 μL volume containing 1×Taqman buffer A, 200 μmmol/L(each) dATP, dCTP, dGTP, 400 μmmol/LdUTP, 3.5 mmol/L $MgCl_2$, 300 μmmol/Lβ-actin forward primer, 300 μmmol/L β-actin reverse primer, 200 μmmol/Lβ-actin probe, AmpliTaq Gold, 0.025 U/μL DNA polymerase, 0.01 U/μL AmpErase UNG, 900 nmmol/L(each) forward & reverse primers, 250 nmol/L TaqMan MGB probe, 20ng DNA template. The forward primer sequence is 5'-ACA TTC CAC AAT TGA TTT TAT TCT TAC AAC A-3'. The reverse primer sequence is 5'-ACG AGC TTT AAA AGA TAG TTC CAA ACA-3'. The TaqMan MGB probe sequences are as follows: Fam: AAA TCA AAT CtC ACA CAC ACA C; Vic: AAA TCA AAT CaC ACA CAC ACA C. Forty-five cycles of PCR amplification were performed at 50 ℃ for 2 min, at 95 ℃ for 10 min, at 95 ℃ for 30 s and at 60 ℃ for 30 s.

Capillary electrophoresis

DNA was amplified in a 7.5 μL reaction volume containing 0.75 μL of 10 × buffer, 0.75 μL 25 mmol/L $MgCl_2$, 0.75 μL 2.5 μmmol/LdNTP, 2.5 U/μL Taq Gold, 0.06 μL DNA polymerase, 1 μL (each) forward & reverse primers, 2 μL DNA template, 1.19 μL ddH_2O. The forward primer sequence is CTT CGT TGC TCA CTG GGA TT-6-FAM. The reverse primer sequence is GCA AAG CCA CCC CAC TAT AA. The microsatellite region in the first intron of the IFN-γ gene was amplified on a PTC-100 thermal cycler. Following an initial denaturation (12 min at 95 ℃), samples were subjected to 10 cycles of PCR amplification, for each cycle, the sample was amplified at 94 ℃ for 30 s, at 53 ℃ for 30 s, at 75 ℃ for 45 s, followed by 30 cycles at 89 ℃ for 30 s, at 53 ℃ for 30 s, at 75 ℃ for 45 s, and a final extension at 4 ℃. The IFN-γ CA repeat microsatellite polymorphisms were monitored by ABI PRISM 3700 capillary electrophoresis automatic analysis.

Statistical analysis

IFN-γ+874A/T allele frequencies and IFN-γ CA microsatellite frequencies were evaluated by gene count. Allelic frequency was calculated with the following equation: allelic frequency = $n/2N$ (n represents the number of alleles, and N represents the total number of subjects). Allelic frequencies were compared using the chi-square test. A P value less than 0.05 was considered statistically significant. The strength of an association was expressed as odds ratio (OR) with 95% confidence interval. STATA 6.0 software was used to determine the statistical significance.

Table 1 Clinical characteristics of patients and controls

Subjects	*n*	Sex		HBV marker of mother		HBIg injection in pregnancy	
		Male	Female	$HBsAg^+$	$HBsAg^+$ and $HBeAg^+$	Yes	No
Group I	46	26	20	15	31	10	30
Group II	73	41	32	25	48	16	47
χ^2		0.0015		0.0339		0.0020	
P		0.9695		0.8539		0.9640	

Group I: the intrauterine HBV infection group; Group II: the normal immune children group.

Table 2 Frequencies of IFN-γ+874 genotype in patients and controls

Subjects	*n*	Number of subjects and percentage of IFN-γ+874 genotype (%)		
		AA	AT	TT
Group I	46	31 (67.4)	9 (19.6)	6 (13.0)
Group II	73	33 (45.2)	22 (30.1)	18 (24.7)
χ^2		5.102		
P		0.02389		

Group I: the intrauterine HBV infection group; Group II: the normal immune children group.

RESULTS

General clinical characteristics

No significant difference was found in sex, HBeAg positivity of mother and HBIg injection to pregnant women between the two groups (Table 1).

IFN-γ+874A/T SNP

The distribution of IFN-γ+874A/T allele frequencies in two groups was in accordance with Hardy-Weinberg hereditary equilibrium law. Frequencies of AA, AT and TT genotypes were 67.4%, 19.6% and 13.0% in the intrauterine HBV infection group and 45.2%, 30.1% and 24.7% in the normal immune children group, respectively. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution of IFN-γ+874 genotype between the two groups (χ^2 = 5.102, P = 0.02389). In the intrauterine HBV infection group, the AA genotype was more common than in normal immune group (Table 2). Frequency of IFN-γ+874A allele was 77.17% in the intrauterine HBV infection group and 60.27% in the normal immune children group. In the intrauterine HBV infection group, the IFN-γ+874A allele was more common than in normal immune group. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution between the two groups (χ^2 = 7.238, P = 0.02389, OR = 2.228, 95%CI1.244-3.992)(Table 3).

Table 3 +874T and +874A IFN-γ allele frequencies in patients and controls

	Allele (*n*)	IFN-γ+874A/T allele frequencies (%)		OR (95% confidence interval)	χ^2	*P*
		+874A	+874T			
Group I	46 (92)	71 (77.17)	21 (22.83)	3.228 (1.244-3.992)	7.238	0.0071
Group II	73 (146)	88 (60.27)	58 (39.73)			

Group I: the intrauterine HBV infection group; Group II: the normal immune children group.

Table 4 IFN-γCA microsatellite morphisms in patients and controls

	n	Number and percentage of genotype of IFN-γCA (%)		
		$(CA_{12})+/(CA_{12})^+$	$(CA_{12})+/(CA_{12})^-$	$(CA_{12})^-/(CA_{12})^-$
Group I	42	5 (11.90)	11 (26.19)	26 (61.91)
Group II	68	18 (26.47)	23 (33.82)	27 (39.71)
χ^2			5.640	
P			0.0176	

Group I: the intrauterine HBV infection group; Group II: the normal immune children group.

IFN-γ CA microsatellite polymorphism

$(CA_{12})^+/(CA_{12})^+$ of IFN-γ CA microsatellite polymorphism was 11.90% in the intrauterine HBV infection group and 26.47% in the normal immune children group. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution between the two groups (χ^2 = 5.64, *P* = 0.0176)(Table 4). Frequency of IFN-γ CA repeat was 25% in the intrauterine HBV infection group and 43.38% in the normal immune children group. In the intrauterine HBV infection group, the frequency of IFN-γ CA repeat was less than in normal immune group. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution between the two groups (χ^2 = 7.548, *P* = 0.0060)(Table 5, Figure 1).

Table 5 IFN-γ CA repeat times in patients and control

IFN-γ CA repeat	Group 1 (84) % (*n*)	Group II (136) % (*n*)	χ^2	*P*
11	1.19 (1)	0.74 (1)	0.119	0.7302
12	25 (21)	43.38 (59)	7.548	0.0060[1]
13	13.10 (11)	8.82 (12)	1.008	0.3155
14	40.48 (34)	33.82 (46)	0.989	0.3201
15	13.10 (11)	7.35 (10)	1.974	0.1600
16	4.76 (4)	3.68 (5)	0.155	0.6936
17	2.38 (2)	2.21 (3)	0.007	0.9327

[1] Significant difference between patients and controls.
Group I: the intrauterine HBV infection group; Group II: the normal immune children group.

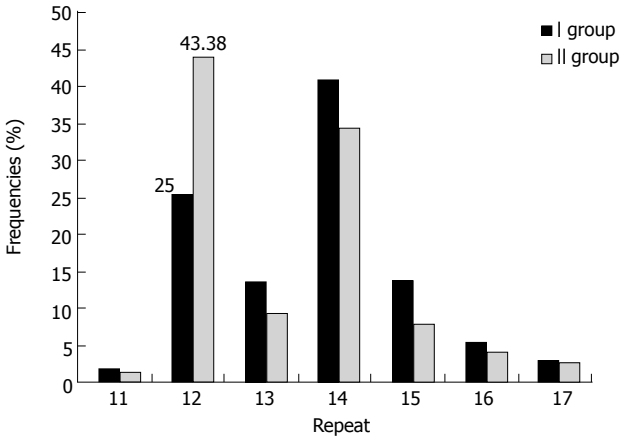


Figure 1 IFN-γ CA microsatellite polymorphisms in patients and controls. Group I: the intrauterine HBV infection group; Group II: the normal immune children group.

DISCUSSION

The clinical features of HBV infection depend on the activities of the host immune response and the virus. The cell-mediated immune response to HBV-encoded antigen is responsible both for viral clearance and for disease pathogenesis during this infection. T-helper lymphocyte response mediated through secretion of IFN-γ plays an important role in inducing viral clearance[4]. During the early aspecific phase of host defence, production of IFN-γ by natural killer(NK) cells plays an important role in bringing about acute inflammation. In the subsequent antigen-specific phase of the immune response, IFN-γ acts as a regulator of antigen presentation and proliferation as well as differentiation of lymphocytes. High-level production of IFN-γ during this phase plays an important role in viral clearance[5-6].

Cytokine production is genetically controlled. The cytokine genes SNPs in cis-acting regions can alter transcriptional activity and are associated with the production of cytokine[7]. Genetic susceptibility to diseases is likely influenced by common DNA variants in the form of SNPs[8-9]. Pravica *et al*[2] described a variable length CA repeat sequence in the first intron of the human IFN-γ gene and showed that 12 CA repeat is associated with high *in vitro* IFN-γ production. In a further study, a SNP T to A at the end of the CA repeat region in the first intron of the human IFN-γ gene(+874A/T) was described, showing an absolute correlation between the T allele and the high IFN-γ microsatellite polymorphism. The +874T allele is associated with the high production of genotype and the +874A allele is associated with the low production of genotype[10]. *In vitro* production of IFN-γ has a significant correlation with the CA microsatellite polymorphism. Twelve CA repeats have been shown to have a higher expression of IFN-γ[11-12]. Japanese researchers[13] have reported the frequencies of 13 CA repeats are significantly greater in patients with IgA nephropathy than in the healthy control group (43% versus 23%, *P*<0.05). High production of genotype (12 CA repeats) for IFN-γ may have an influence on acute rejection of kidney transplants[14]. The frequency of the IFN-γ12 CA repeats is significantly greater in WHO class V lupus nephritis patients than in WHO class IV patients[15]. Susceptibility to and severity of rheumatoid arthritis are related to a microsatellite polymorphism

within the first intron of the IFN-γ gene[16]. There is a highly significant increase in the low-production of IFN-γ genotype(13 CA repeats) in patients with type 1 diabetes compared with normal healthy controls[17]. This result suggests that polymorphisms of the IFN-γ gene may modify the function of this proinflammatory mediator and the response to pancreatic islet βcells. This +874A/T polymorphism coincides with a putative NF-Kappa B binding site, which might have functional consequences for transcription of human IFN-γ gene. Therefore, the T to A polymorphism might directly influence the level of IFN-γ production associated with the CA microsatellite polymorphism[18]. Patients with tuberculosis have a lower frequency of +874TT genotype than the controls, suggesting that genetically determined variability in IFN-γ and expression might be important for the development of tuberculosis[19]. A significant correlation has been detected between the presence of high-expression polymorphisms of the IFN-γ genes and bronchiolitis obliteration syndrome(BOS) after lung transplantation(P = 0.039). +874TT of the IFN-γ gene significantly increases the risk of BOS after lung transplantation[20]. There is no report on the relationship between IFN-γ gene polymorphism and susceptibility to intrauterine HBV infection.

In this study, the frequency of the +874AA genotype of the IFN-γ was greater in the intrauterine HBV infection group than in normal immune group, the $(CA_{12})^+/(CA_{12})^+$ of IFN-γ CA microsatellite polymorphism was 11.90% in the intrauterine HBV infection group and 26.47% in the normal immune children group. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution between the two groups(χ^2 = 5.640, P = 0.0176). The frequency of IFN-γ CA repeat was less in the intrauterine HBV infection group than in the normal immune group. A significant difference was found in the frequency distribution between the two groups(χ^2 = 7.548, P = 0.0060). The findings suggest that the presence of low-expression polymorphism at +874 of the IFN-γ gene significantly increases susceptibility to intrauterine HBV infection. IFN-γ gene polymorphism might be important in determining an individual's susceptibility to intrauterine HBV infection and might result in viral persistence.

REFERENCES

1 **Billiau A**, Heremans H, Vermeire K, Matthys P. Immunomodulatory properties of interferon-gamma. An update. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1998; **856:** 22-32

2 **Pravica V,** Asderakis A, Perrey C, Hajeer A, Sinnott PJ, Hutchinson IV. In vitro production of IFN-gamma correlates with CA repeat polymorphism in the human IFN-gamma gene. *Eur J Immunogenet* 1999; **26**: 1-3

3 **Wang JS**, Zhu QR. [Interruption of the transmission of hepatitis B virus from mother to babies]. *Zhonghua Ganzangbing Zazhi* 2002; **10:** 308-310

4 **Chisari FV**, Ferrari C. Hepatitis B virus immunopathogenesis. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1995; **13**: 29-60

5 **Hilleman MR**. Overview of the pathogenesis,prophylaxis and therapeusis of viral hepatitis B,with focus on reduction to practical applications. *Vaccine* 2001; **19**: 1837-1848

6 **Guidotti LG**, Ishikawa T, Hobbs MV, Matzke B, Schreiber R, Chisari FV. Intracellular inactivation of the hepatitis B virus by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. *Immunity* 1996; **4**: 25-36

7 **Mullikin JC**, Hunt SE, Cole CG, Mortimore BJ, Rice CM, Burton J, Matthews LH, Pavitt R, Plumb RW, Sims SK, Ainscough RM, Attwood J, Bailey JM, Barlow K, Bruskiewich RM, Butcher PN, Carter NP, Chen Y, Clee CM, Coggill PC, Davies J, Davies RM, Dawson E, Francis MD, Joy AA, Lamble RG, Langford CF, Macarthy J, Mall V, Moreland A, Overton-Larty EK, Ross MT, Smith LC, Steward CA, Sulston JE, Tinsley EJ, Turney KJ, Willey DL, Wilson GD, McMurray AA, Dunham I, Rogers J, Bentley DR. An SNP map of human chromosome 22. *Nature* 2000; **407:** 516-520

8 **Bidwell J,** Keen L, Gallagher G, Kimberly R, Huizinga T, McDermott MF, Oksenberg J, McNicholl J, Pociot F, Hardt C, D'Alfonso S. Cytokine gene polymorphism in human disease: on-line databases. *Genes Immun* 1999; **1:** 3-19

9 **Bidwell J**, Keen L, Gallagher G, Kimberly R, Huizinga T, McDermott MF, Oksenberg J, McNicholl J, Pociot F, Hardt C, D'Alfonso S. Cytokine gene polymorphism in human disease: on-line databases, supplement 1. *Genes Immun* 2001; **2:** 61-70

10 **Pravica V,** Perrey C, Stevens A, Lee JH, Hutchinson IV. A single nucleotide polymorphism in the first intron of the human IFN-gamma gene: absolute correlation with a polymorphic CA microsatellite marker of high IFN-gamma production. *Hum Immunol* 2000; **61:** 863-866

11 **Pravica VP**, Borreiro LF, Hutchinson IV. Genetic regulation of interferon-gamma production. *Biochem Soc Trans* 1997; **25:** 176S

12 **Sica A**, Dorman L, Viggiano V, Cippitelli M, Ghosh P, Rice N, Young HA. Interaction of NF-kappaB and NFAT with the interferon-gamma promoter. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272**: 30412-30420

13 **Masutani K**, Miyake K, Nakashima H, Hirano T, Kubo M, Hirakawa M, Tsuruya K,Fukuda K, Kanai H, Otsuka T, Hirakata H, Iida M. Impact of interferon-gamma and interleukin-4 gene polymorphisms on development and progression of IgA nephropathy in Japanese patients. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2003; **41**: 371-379

14 **Asderakis A**, Sankaran D, Dyer P, Johnson RW, Pravica V, Sinnott PJ, Roberts I,Hutchinson IV. Association of polymorphisms in the human interferon-gamma and interleukin-10 gene with acute and chronic kidney transplant outcome: the cytokine effect on transplantation. *Transplantation* 2001; **71**: 674-677

15 **Miyake K**, Nakashima H, Akahoshi M, Inoue Y, Nagano S, Tanaka Y, Masutani K, Hirakata H, Gondo H, Otsuka T, Harada M. Genetically determined interferon-gamma production influences the histological phenotype of lupus nephritis. *Rheumatology (Oxford)* 2002; **41:** 518-524

16 **Khani-Hanjani A,** Lacaille D, Hoar D, Chalmers A, Horsman D, Anderson M, Balshaw R, Keown PA. Association between dinucleotide repeat in non-coding region of interferon-gamma gene and susceptibility to, and severity of, rheumatoid arthritis. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 820-825

17 **Jahromi M**, Millward A, Demaine A. A CA repeat polymorphism of the IFN-gamma gene is associated with susceptibility to type 1 diabetes. *J Interferon Cytokine Res* 2000; **20:** 187-190

18 **Sica A**, Tan TH, Rice N, Kretzschmar M, Ghosh P, Young HA. The c-rel protooncogene product c-Rel but not NF-kappa B binds to the intronic region of the human interferon-gamma gene at a site related to an interferon-stimulable response element. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1992; **89**: 1740-1744

19 **Lio D**, Marino V, Serauto A, Gioia V, Scola L, Crivello A, Forte GI, Colonna-Romano G, Candore G, Caruso C. Genotype frequencies of the +874T-->A single nucleotide polymorphism in the first intron of the interferon-gamma gene in a sample of Sicilian patients affected by tuberculosis. *Eur J Immunogenet* 2002; **29:** 371-374

20 **Lu KC,** Jaramillo A, Lecha RL, Schuessler RB, Aloush A, Trulock EP, Mendeloff EN, Huddleston CB, Alexander Patterson G, Mohanakumar T. Interleukin-6 and interferon-gamma gene polymorphisms in the development of bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome after lung transplantation. *Transplantation* 2002; **74:** 1297-1302

S- Editor Guo SY **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 28; 12(18): 2932-2935
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Diverticulitis in the young patient-Is it different ?

Adi Lahat, Yoram Menachem, Benjamin Avidan, Henit Yanai, Emad Sakhnini, Eytan Bardan, Simon Bar-Meir

Adi Lahat, Yoram Menachem, Benjamin Avidan, Henit Yanai, Emad Sakhnini, Eytan Bardan, Simon Bar-Meir, Department of Gastroenterology, Chaim Sheba Medical Center and Sackler School of Medicine, Tel Aviv University, Tel Aviv, Israel
Correspondence to: Simon Bar-Meir, MD, Department of Gastroenterology, Chaim Sheba Medical Center, Tel Hashomer 52651, Israel. barmeirs@yahoo.com
Telephone: +972-3-5302679 Fax: +972-3-5303070
Received: 2005-09-28 Accepted: 2006-01-14

Abstract

AIM: To prospectively study the incidence and the natural history of acute diverticulitis in young patients.

METHODS: A total of 207 patients hospitalized at our hospital between January 2000 to February 2005 with the diagnosis of acute diverticulitis were included. Their demographic characteristics, medical history, physical, radiographic and endoscopic findings as well as therapy were recorded. Patients were followed every 6 mo for the first year and later annually.

RESULTS: The mean patients' age was 61 (range 27-92) years. Twenty- five patients (12%) were younger than 45 years. Acute diverticulitis was significantly more prevalent among male in the young age group as compared to the older age group (19/25, 76% *vs* 61/182, 33%, respectively, P = 0.0001). Complications occurred more often in the young age group; 32% *vs* 13%, (P = 0.002). During follow-up, 6 patients (28%) remained asymptomatic in the young age group as compared to 87 patients (55%) in the older age group (P = 0.024). As a result, sigmoidectomies were performed twice as often in the young age group (38% *vs* 13%, P = 0.002).

CONCLUSION: Diverticulitis in young patients has a male predominance, a more aggressive course with a higher rate of complications and a higher recurrence rate. An earlier surgical approach might be considered in young patients with acute diverticulitis.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Diverticulitis; Young patient; Complications; Sigmoidectomy

Lahat A, Menachem Y, Avidan B, Yanai H, Sakhnini E, Bardan E, Bar-Meir S. Diverticulitis in the young patient-Is it different? *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2932-2935

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2932.asp

INTRODUCTION

Diverticular disease of the colon is a common disease in Western countries. The development of colonic diverticula is associated with a low fiber diet, which is common in the developed countries[1,2]. The incidence of diverticular disease rises with age, and by the age of 85 about 65% of the population would have diverticuli[3,4]. It is much less frequent in the younger age group and less than 10% of the population under the age of 40 years would have diverticuli[5] . Most of the patients will remain asymptomatic, and only 10%-25% will become inflamed and evolve into diverticulitis[4,6-9]. The clinical presentation of acute diverticulitis varies widely from mild inflammation to full-blown perforation and peritonitis. In most patients however, the disease is mild and responds to antibiotic therapy[10] .

In recent years, there has been conflicting information regarding the incidence and natural history of diverticulitis in young patients. While earlier studies found the incidence to range between 2%-7%[11-15] , more recent studies reported a higher incidence ranging between 18%-34%[16,17]. The natural course and outcome of diverticulitis in the young patient has also been a matter of debate. While earlier studies reported a more severe course with a higher rate of complications in young patients with diverticulitis[1,2,11-14,18], recent reports suggested a milder course, not different from that in the general population[10,16]. All those studies, however, were retrospective. We performed a prospective study in which all patients with acute diverticulitis were enrolled and followed for a period of up to 5 years. We compared the natural history and the course of acute diverticulitis in the young age group to that of the older population.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients

All patients with acute diverticulitis who were hospitalized at the Chaim Sheba Medical Center between January 2000 and February 2005 were enrolled. In fact, our patients' population included all patients who were diagnosed with acute diverticulitis in the emergency room, since the general policy of our institution is to hospitalize these patients regardless the severity of the disease.

Methods

The diagnosis of acute diverticulitis was based on lower

abdominal pain (usually on the left side), fever and leukocytosis. All patients underwent abdominal CT and only those with characteristic findings on CT were included. CT criteria for acute diverticulitis included the presence of colonic diverticuli with thickening of the colonic wall at the site of the diverticuli and peri-colonic fat infiltration. In some of the patients extra colonic air or fluid was seen as well. Patients with a lesion suspicious of colonic cancer on CT scan were excluded. Demographic characteristics of all patients and their medical history, concomitant use of medications, physical, laboratory, radiographic and endoscopic findings and their therapy were recorded.

Patients were followed up during their hospitalization and later by regular phone calls every 6 mo for the first year and then annually. Follow-up was conducted by a specialized study coordinator who was unaware of the patients' course of disease. At their follow-up visits or phone calls, patients were asked about the occurrence of attacks of lower abdominal pain with or without fever, hospitalizations and operations. Based on their reports, patients were classified into 4 major categories: patients who had undergone sigmoidectomy following their discharge, patients who had another episode of acute diverticulitis which required hospitalization and antibiotic therapy, patients who had LLQ abdominal pain for more than twice a week and for at least one hour's duration and patients who had not experienced symptoms suggestive of diverticulitis.

Data was analyzed for the whole group of patients and then for the two subgroups based on their age (older than and younger than 45 years). The age of 45 years was chosen as the average between the different ages used in the literature to define the young age group with acute diverticulitis (40 *vs* 50 years).

Statistical analysis

Patients' demography and other characteristics were analyzed by the Student's *t*-test for continuous variables and χ^2- test (with Yates correction) or Fisher's exact test for categorical variables. Statistical analyses were conducted by using Statsoft software (Tulsa, OK, USA).

RESULTS

Two-hundred and seven patients with acute diverticulitis were hospitalized between January 2000 and February 2005. Eighty were males and 127 were females. Their age ranged between 27-92 (mean 62 ± 12) years. Twenty-five patients (12%) were younger than 45 years. Their demography and co-morbidities are shown in Table 1. There was a striking male predominance in the young age group with a male: female ratio of 3:1. The older age group showed a female predominance with a female: male ratio of 2:1. As expected, the associated co-morbidities were far more common in the older age group, though only hypertension and ischemic heart disease reached statistical significance. The younger age group had almost no co-morbidities. However, twice as many abdominal operations had been performed in the young age group; 16% appendectomy and 12% inguinal hernioplasty as compared to 8.8% and 6%, respectively.

Table 1 Demographic data and co-morbidities of study subjects

Age (yr)	< 45 *n* = 25 (%)	>45 *n* = 182 (%)	*P* value
Gender (M/F)	19/6	61/121	0.0001
Co-morbidities			
Hypertension	1(4)	57 (31)	0.004
Hypothyroidism	0(0)	19 (10)	0.185
COPD	0(0)	10 (5.5)	0.481
Diabetes mellitus	0(0)	19 (10)	0185
Ischemic heart disease	0(0)	36 (20)	0.030
Hyperlipidemia	0(0)	17 (9)	0.227
Cholelithiasis	1(4)	11 (6)	0.682
Post appendectomy	4(16)	16 (8.8)	0.253
Post inguinal hernioplasty	3(12)	11 (6)	0.266
Malignancy	0(0)	7 (3)	0.684
Crohn's disease	1(4)	1 (0.5)	0.100
Chronic renal failure	0(0)	4 (2.2)	0.979

COPD: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

Table 2 Patients' complications during hospitalization

Age (yr)	< 45 *n* = 25 (%)	>45 *n* = 182 (%)	*P* value
Peri-diverticular air on CT	5 (20)	15 (8)	0.063
Abdominal abscess	2 (8)	4 (2)	0.150
Free perforation	1 (4)	5 (3)	0.540
Death	0 (0)	2 (1)	0.598
Total complication rate	8 (32)	24 (13)	0.030

Clinical course during hospitalization

All patients were followed during hospitalization and their clinical outcome was recorded. One-hundred and seventy-five patients (85%) had a mild course with no complications. The other 32 patients had a more severe and complicated course (Table 2). The most common complication was peri-diverticular air on CT which resolved in all patients by keeping patients fasting and on IV fluids and antibiotics. Six patients (2.8%) developed an abdominal abscess and 3 required CT guided percutaneous drainage. The abscesses resolved in all patients with no need for further intervention. There were 6 patients (2.8%) who developed free perforation and all were operated on. Two patients (0.1%) died during hospitalization, one from sepsis and another from multi-organ failure. Both were older than 80 years and had several co-morbidities. Their deaths were related to the diverticulitis.

The majority of the complications were more common in the young age group (Table 2). Abdominal abscess (8% in the young group *vs* 2% in the old group, $P = 0.155$) and peri-diverticular air on CT (20% in the young *vs* 8% in the old, $P = 0.063$) were the most common. The presence

Tables 3 Patients' follow-up after discharge

Age (yr)	<45 *n* = 21(%)	>45 *n* = 159 (%)	*P* value
Operations following discharge	8 (38)	20 (13)	0.002
Recurrent diverticulitis (not operated)	2 (10)	20 (13)	0.688
Abdominal pain[1]	5 (24)	27 (17)	0.442
No further symptoms	6 (28)	87 (55)	0.024

[1]Abdominal pain- pain more than 2 times per week that lasts for at least one hour.

of free perforation, however, was almost equal in both groups; 4% in the young and 3% in the old age group. The overall complication rate was higher in the young age group ($P = 0.03$).

Follow-up

Patients were contacted by telephone every 6 mo for the first year and yearly thereafter. The range of follow up was between 6 and 60 mo, mean: 30 ± 14 mo. Four patients in the young age group (16%) and 23 patients in the old age group (13%) were lost to follow up. Three of the patients in the old age group (2%) died during the follow-up period, all of whom were older than 75 years and their deaths were not related to the diverticular disease.

Data on patients in whom complete follow up was achieved is shown in Table 3. Sigmoidectomy was significantly more often performed in the young age group (38% *vs* 13%, $P = 0.002$). Most of the patients in the older age group, unlike the younger one, were asymptomatic during their follow up (55% *vs* 28%, respectively, $P = 0.024$).

DISCUSSION

Our prospective study showed that patients younger than 45 years comprised 12% of all patients who presented to our hospital with acute diverticulitis. The younger age group was male predominant and tended to have a more severe course with a higher complication rate, mainly peri-diverticular air and intra-abdominal abscess. Their recurrence rate during follow-up was higher and as a result their rate of sigmoidectomy was higher also. In 1986, Freischlag *et al*[13] found that in young patients, the first onset of diverticulitis was often severe and required urgent operation. Other retrospective studies supported this impression[1,2,18] and described a high recurrence rate and a high complication rate in their young patients with diverticulitis[19,20]. It was therefore recommended that an elective operation should be performed following the first episode of diverticulitis[17,19,21]. This policy was even further supported by Chautems *et al* who followed patients with acute diverticulitis under the age of 50 years for nearly 10 years. They found that in the young age group patients experienced a more aggressive disease[22]. However, other studies published in the last decade, failed to support this finding[10,16,23-26]. These studies reported a course of disease in young patients not different from the older age group and with a similar rate of complications. The conclusion of those recent studies was that elective surgery after one episode of acute diverticulitis in young patients is not advocated and such patients should be managed in a similar way to the older ones[25,26]. The explanation for the difference between studies that either support or reject a severe course in young patients is not clear. A possible explanation might be the difference in the study populations. Studies that found a similar course in both age groups had in their young age group a high proportion of Latino originated patients[10,16,23]. Young Latinos were reported to have an increased tendency to develop acute diverticulitis[27]. On the other hand, studies that described a severe course in young patients with acute diverticulitis did not include the Latino originated population. In fact, some of the studies were performed in Europe where Latino origin is quite rare[19,20,22]. Our study population also did not have patients of Latino origin. Thus, we speculate that young Latino patients with acute diverticulitis have a more benign course similar to that of older patients. The reason for this is not clear.

As a group, our young patients were more prone to recurrent symptoms. Our data is consistent with earlier studies that reported a higher recurrence rate of diverticulitis among young patients[2,20].The total complication rate was significantly higher in the young age group. None of the specific complications (free perforation, abdominal abscess or peri-diverticular air) reached statistical significance, probably because of the relative small number of patients in the young age group. Death occurred only in the older age group probably as a result of their higher co-morbidity rates.

In our study, the young patients with acute diverticulitis underwent significantly more sigmoidectomies as compared to our older patients. All those who underwent a sigmoidectomy had recurrent episodes of diverticulitis. The high rate of sigmoidectomies in the young age group was, therefore, the result of a more severe course of the disease in patients who were otherwise in good general condition.

Of interest is that the young age group underwent twice as many appendectomies and inguinal hernioplasties as compared to the older age group. Acute appendicitis in the young age group was even more prevalent than the life time risk for acute appendicitis in the general population (estimated 8.6% in men and 6.7% in women)[28]. The significance, if at all, of this observation is unclear. Misdiagnosis of previous attacks of acute diverticulitis is a possible explanation.

In conclusion, our prospective, long-term follow-up study shows that acute diverticulitis in general is a mild disease with a low complication rate. In young patients there is male predominance and the disease tends to be more aggressive with a high recurrence rate. An earlier surgical approach might be considered in young patients with acute diverticulitis.

REFERENCES

1 **Schauer PR**, Ramos R, Ghiatas AA, Sirinek KR. Virulent diverticular disease in young obese men. *Am J Surg* 1992; **164**: 443-446; discussion 443-446

2 **Ambrosetti P**, Robert JH, Witzig JA, Mirescu D, Mathey P,

Borst F, Rohner A. Acute left colonic diverticulitis in young patients. *J Am Coll Surg* 1994; **179**: 156-160
3 **Hughes LE**. Postmortem survey of diverticular disease of the colon. I. Diverticulosis and diverticulitis. *Gut* 1969; **10**: 336-344
4 **Garcia G**. Diverticulitis. In: Blaser MT, Smith DD, Ravdin JI. Infections of the gastrointestinal tract. 2 nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2002: 306-316
5 **Painter NS**, Burkitt DP. Diverticular disease of the colon: a deficiency disease of Western civilization. *Br Med J* 1971; **2**: 450-454
6 **Parks TG**. Natural history of diverticular disease of the colon. *Clin Gastroenterol* 1975; **4**: 53-69
7 **Painter NS**, Burkitt DP. Diverticular disease of the colon, a 20th century problem. *Clin Gastroenterol* 1975; **4**: 3-21
8 **Farrell RJ**, Farrell JJ, Morrin MM. Diverticular disease in the elderly. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2001; **30**: 475-496
9 **Wong WD**, Wexner SD, Lowry A, Vernava A 3rd, Burnstein M, Denstman F, Fazio V, Kerner B, Moore R, Oliver G, Peters W, Ross T, Senatore P, Simmang C. Practice parameters for the treatment of sigmoid diverticulitis--supporting documentation. The Standards Task Force. The American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2000; **43**: 290-297
10 **Kaiser AM**, Jiang JK, Lake JP, Ault G, Artinyan A, Gonzalez-Ruiz C, Essani R, Beart RW Jr . The management of complicated diverticulitis and the role of computed tomography. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2005; **100**: 910-917
11 **Ouriel K**, Schwartz SI. Diverticular disease in the young patient. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1983; **156**: 1-5
12 **Rodkey GV**, Welch CE. Changing patterns in the surgical treatment of diverticular disease. *Ann Surg* 1984; **200**: 466-478
13 **Freischlag J**, Bennion RS, Thompson JE Jr. Complications of diverticular disease of the colon in young people. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1986; **29**: 639-643
14 **Chappuis CW**, Cohn I Jr. Acute colonic diverticulitis. *Surg Clin North Am* 1988; **68**: 301-313
15 **Simonowitz D**, Paloyan D. Diverticular disease of the colon in patients under 40 years of age. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1977; **67**: 69-72
16 **Schweitzer J**, Casillas RA, Collins JC. Acute diverticulitis in the young adult is not "virulent.". *Am Surg* 2002; **68**: 1044-1047
17 **Guzzo J**, Hyman N. Diverticulitis in young patients: is resection after a single attack always warranted? *Dis Colon Rectum* 2004; **47**: 1187-1190; discussion 1187-1190;
18 **Minardi AJ Jr**, Johnson LW, Sehon JK, Zibari GB, McDonald JC. Diverticulitis in the young patient. *Am Surg* 2001; **67**: 458-461
19 **Anderson DN**, Driver CP, Davidson AI, Keenan RA. Diverticular disease in patients under 50 years of age. *J R Coll Surg Edinb* 1997; **42**: 102-104
20 **Mäkelä J**, Vuolio S, Kiviniemi H, Laitinen S. Natural history of diverticular disease: when to operate? *Dis Colon Rectum* 1998; **41**: 1523-1528
21 **Konvolinka CW**. Acute diverticulitis under age forty. *Am J Surg* 1994; **167**: 562-565
22 **Chautems RC**, Ambrosetti P, Ludwig A, Mermillod B, Morel P, Soravia C. Long term follow- up after first acute episode of sigmoid diverticulitis: is surgery mandatory?: a prospective study of 118 patients. *Dis Colon Rectum* 2002; **45**: 962-966
23 **West SD**, Robinson EK, Delu AN,Ligon RE, Kao LS, Mercer DW. Diverticulitis in the younger patient. *Am J Surg* 2003; **186**: 743-746
24 **Biondo S**, Parés D, Martí Ragué J, Kreisler E, Fraccalvieri D, Jaurrieta E. Acute colonic diverticulitis in patients under 50 years of age. *Br J Surg* 2002; **89**: 1137-1141
25 **Spivak H**, Weinrauch S, Harvey JC, Surick B, Ferstenberg H, Friedman I. Acute colonic diverticulitis in the young. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1997; **40**: 570-574
26 **Vignati PV**, Welch JP, Cohen JL. Long-term management of diverticulitis in young patients. *Dis Colon Rectum* 1995; **38**: 627-629
27 **Simmany CL**, Shires GT III. Diverticular disease of the colon. In: Feldman M, Friedman LS, Sleisenger MH eds. Gastrointestinal and Liver disease. 7th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2002: 2100-2112
28 **Addiss DG**, Shaffer N, Fowler BS, Tauxe RV. The epidemiology of appendicitis and appendectomy in the United States. *Am J Epidemiol* 1990; **132**: 910- 925

S- Editor Pan BR **L-Editor** Zhu LH **E- Editor** Zhang Y

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2936-2940
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Effects of ischemic preconditioning on cyclinD1 expression during early ischemic reperfusion in rats

Fang-Gang Cai, Jian-Sheng Xiao, Qi-Fa Ye

Fang-Gang Cai, Department of General Surgery, The First Affiliated Hospital, Fujian Medical University, Fuzhou 350004, Fujian Province, China
Jian-Sheng Xiao, Department of General Surgery, First Affiliated Hospital, Jiangxi Medical College, Nanchang 330000, Jiangxi Province, China
Qi-Fa Ye, Xiangya Medical Transplantation Academy of Central South University, Changsha 410013, Hunan Province, China
Supported by Youth Foundation of Health Bureau of Fujian Province, No. 2003-1-19
Correspondence to: Dr. Fang-Gang Cai, Department of General Surgery, The First Affiliated Hospital, Fujian Medical University, Fuzhou 350004, Fujian Province, China. cfg453@163.com
Telephone: +86-951-87982550
Received: 2005-09-09 Accepted: 2005-10-26

Abstract

AIM: To observe the effect of ischemic preconditioning on cyclinD1 expression in rat liver cells during early ischemic reperfusion.

METHODS: Fifty-four SD rats were randomly divided into ischemic preconditioning group (IP), ischemia/reperfusion group (IR) and sham operation group (SO). The IP and IR groups were further divided into four sub-groups (n = 6). Sham operation group (SO) served as the control group (n = 6). A model of partial liver ischemia/reperfusion was used, in which rats were subjected to liver ischemia for 60 min prior to reperfusion. The animals in the IP group underwent ischemic preconditioning twice for 5 min each time prior to the ischemia/reperfusion challenge. After 0, 1, 2, and 4 h of reperfusion, serum and liver tissue in each group were collected to detect the level of serum ALT, liver histopathology and expression of cyclinD1 mRNA and protein. Flow cytometry was used to detect cell cycle as the quantity indicator of cell regeneration.

RESULTS: Compared with IR group, IP group showed a significantly lower ALT level in 1 h to 4 h sub-groups (P < 0.05). Proliferation index(PI) indicated by the S-phase and G_2/M-phase ratio [(S+G_2/M)/(G_0/G_1+S+G_2/M)] was significantly increased in IP group at 0 and 1 h (26.44 ± 7.60% *vs* 18.56 ± 6.40%,41.87 ± 7.27% *vs* 20.25 ± 6.70%, P < 0.05). Meanwhile, cyclinD1 protein expression could be detected in IP group. But in IR group, cyclinD1 protein expression occurred 2 h after reperfusion. The expression of cyclinD1 mRNA increased significantly in IP group at 0 and 1 h (0.568 ± 0.112 *vs* 0.274 ± 0.069, 0.762 ± 0.164 *vs* 0.348 ± 0.093, P < 0.05).

CONCLUSION: Ischemic preconditioning can protect liver cells against ischemia/reperfusion injury, which may be related to cell proliferation and expression of cyclinD1 during early ischemic reperfusion.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Liver; Ischemic preconditioning; CyclinD1; Proliferation

Cai FG, Xiao JS, Ye QF. Effects of ischemic preconditioning on cyclinD1 expression during early ischemic reperfusion in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2936-2940

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2936.asp

INTRODUCTION

Hepatic ischemia/reperfusion (IR) injury is an important clinical problem occurring in hepatic resection or liver transplantation. Ischemic preconditioning (IP) has been proven to be an effective method protecting the liver against ischemia/reperfusion injury[1-3]. Many mechanisms are associated with this phenomenon[4-8], but some are still unclear. Previous studies showed that the analogous conditioning phenomenon induced by carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4) is related to hepatocellular proliferation[9]. Whether IP promotes hepatocellular regeneration remains unknown. Changes in cell proliferation can be determined by cell cycle analysis. S-phase and G_2/M-phase ratio is an indication the proliferation index (PI). Furthermore, cyclin and cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs) are related to cell cycle regulation[10]. CyclinD1 is an important cyclin, which controls liver cell proliferation[11]. This study was to assess the effects of IP on cell regeneration and expression of cyclinD1 and to explore the possible mechanisms of IP protection.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Experimental animals and grouping

Fifty-four male SD rats weighing 200-250 g, were randomly divided into ischemia group (IR group), ischemia preconditioning group (IP group) and sham operation group (SO). In IP group, each rat was subjected to 5 min

ischemia, followed by 5 min reperfusion, twice, prior to 1 h hepatic ischemia. Specimens were taken after 0, 1, 2, and 4 h of reperfusion, respectively (n = 6). Before the experiment, all rats were fasted for 12 h and housed in a 12 h dark/12 h light cycle.

Experimental animal model

A 70% partial liver ischemia/reperfusion model was established according to the method reported by Ohmori *et al*[12]. After anesthesia with ketamine (40 mg/kg), the belly of each rat was cut open from the center. The portal vein and hepatic artery supplying the left and median lateral hepatic lobes were dissected and clamped with a small artery clamp. After 1 h ischemia, blood flow was restored by unclamping the vessels. After 0, 1, 2, and 4 h of reperfusion, serum and liver tissue of each group were collected to assess the level of serum ALT, liver histopathology, expression of cyclinD$_1$ mRNA and protein. Liver tissue samples were homogenized and washed with PBS. The solution was filtered and centrifuged at 1000 r/min for 5 min. The cell pellet was resuspended in ice-cold ethanol to a final concentration of 80%. Flow cytometer was used to detect liver cell S-phase and G$_2$/M-phase ratio as the quantity indicator of cell regeneration. In IP group, each rat was subjected to 5 min ischemia followed by 5 min reperfusion, twice, prior to 1 h hepatic ischemia. The other procedure was the same as in IR group. In SO group, each rat was only cut open from the center without any other procedure.

Histological examination of liver

Liver tissue specimens were procured from the left lateral hepatic lobe, fixed with 10% neutral formaldehyde solution and embedded with paraffin. Sections were made and stained with H&E and observed under microscope.

Measurement of blood concentrations of ALT

Three mL of blood was withdrawn from the vena cava at certain time points, coagulated at room temperature, then centrifuged at 3000 r/min for 5 min for detecting the levels of alanine transaminase (ALT) with an automatic biochemistry analyzer (AU800, Olympus, Japan).

Detection of cell cycle

Single cell suspensions of hepatocytes were washed three times in PBS. RNase (1% w/v) was then added for 30 min at 37 ℃ and 50 mg/L PI (Sigma Company, Danmark) for 20 min. Samples were detected with a FACSORT flow cytometer (Becton Dickinson Company, USA), 10 000 cells were obtained by Cell Quest software and cell cycle was analyzed by Modfit software.

CyclinD$_1$ mRNA detection by reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR)

Primers synthesized according to the GenBank of Bioya Biotechnology Limited Company(Shanghai, China) included cyclinD1 sense primer (5' -TGGAGCCCCTGA AGAAGAG) cyclinD1 anti-sense primer (5'- AAGTGCGTTGTGCGGTAGC -3') amplified products (424bp), GAPDH sense primer (5'-GGCTGAGAATGGGAAGCTG-GTCAT-3') and GAPDH anti-sense primer (5'-CAGCCTTCTCCATGGTGGTGAA- GA-3) amplified products (152bp).

Total RNA was extracted from the frozen liver specimens with Trizol (GibcoBrl Company, USA). Reverse transcription synthesis of cDNA was carried out according to the instructions of SuperScript One-Step RT-PCR with Platinum Taq kit (Invitrogen Company, USA). PCR was performed with a Gene Amp PCR System 2400 (PE Company, USA). The reaction system was composed of a cDNA template (1.0 μL), 2×buffer (12.5 μL), 5 mmol/L $MgCl_2$(2.5 μL), cyclin D1, GAPDH sense and anti-sense primer (0.5 μL respectively), SSRT polymerase (0.5 μL) and deionized water (6.5 μL). The reaction system was put into a PCR machine for amplification. Cyclin D1 and GAPDH were amplified for 35 cycles of PCR. The amplification conditions were at 55 ℃ for 30 min, at 94 ℃ for 2 min, at 94 ℃ for 30s, at 55 ℃ for 30 s, at 72 ℃ for 45 s, a final extension at 72 ℃ for 7min. The amplified products were preserved at 4 ℃. Ten μL of PCR products was electrophoresed on 1.5% agarose gel containing 5 μg/mL ethidium bromide (Sigma Company, USA). Marker was DL-2000 DNA marker. The results were detected by GeneSnap (SynGene, England) and analyzed by GeneTools (SynGene, England).

CyclinD$_1$ protein detection

Liver tissues were homogenized in 10 volumes of ice-cold buffer containing 50 mmol/L Tris–HCl (pH7.5), 150mmol/L NaCl, 1%Triton-X 100, 1 mmol/L EDTA,1mmol/L DTT,10μg/mL pepstatin,10μg/mL leupeptin, 10 μg/mL aprotinin, 1mM PMSF. The homogenates were centrifuged at 12 000 r/min for 15 min at 4 ℃. The supernatant was frozen and stored at -80 ℃ for further analysis. After measurement of the supernatant sample concentration, the sample was mixed with an equal volume buffer containing 0.1mol/LTris (pH 6.8), 100 mmol/L DTT, 2% SDS, 10% glycerin, 0.01% bromophenol blue and put in water bath to boil for 3-5 min. Fifty micrograms of protein was separated by sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (SDS-PAGE). The stacking and resolving gels were composed of 4% and 10% polyacrylamide, respectively. After SDS-PAGE, the gels were electroblotted onto nitro-cellulose (NC) membranes at 100 mA for 2 h. The membranes were blocked for 1 h in blocking solution at room temperature, which contained 1 mL/L Tween 20 (PBS-T) and 50 g/L non-fat dry milk. Then they were immunolabeled with the primary antibody (1:500 rabbit anti-rat Santa Cruz Company, USA) in blocking solution for 1 h at room temperature and was washed three times with TBST for 15 min. The NC membranes were incubated with a horseradish peroxidase-conjugated secondary antibody (1:1000 goat anti-rabbit Santa Cruz Company, USA) for 1 h at room temperature and washed three times with TBST for 15 min again. Color solution of diaminobenzidine (DAB) was prepared according to the manufacturer's directions (Maxim Company, China). After incubation with this color solution, the protein bands were visible on the NC membranes.

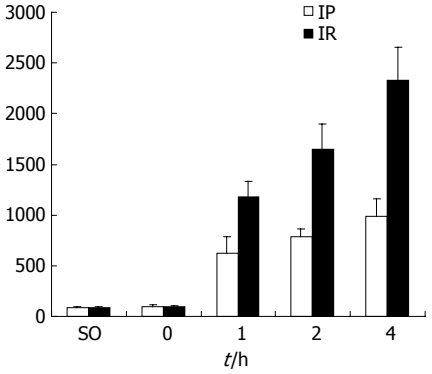


Figure 1 Serum ALT levels SO, IP and IR groups.

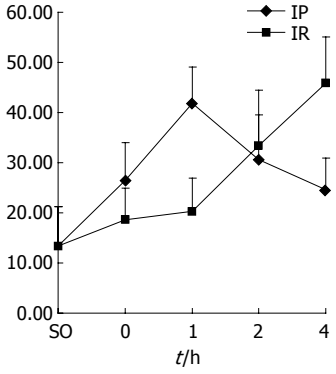


Figure 2 PI in SO, IP and IR groups.

Table 1 CyclinD1 mRNA relative activity in different groups (mean ± SD)

Group	IR	IP
SO	0.256 ± 0.042	0.256 ± 0.042
0 h	0.274 ± 0.069	0.568 ± 0.112[a,b]
1 h	0.348 ± 0.093	0.762 ± 0.164[a,b]
2 h	0.521 ± 0.157[b]	0.574 ± 0.172[b]
4 h	0.709 ± 0.178[b]	0.474 ± 0.144[a,b]

[a]$P < 0.05$ *vs* IR, [b]$P < 0.05$ *vs* SO.

Statistical analysis

The results were presented as mean ± SD. Multivariate analysis of variance and *t* test were performed by SPSS11.5 for window. $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Morphology

Swelling of hepatocytes and structural derangement were observed in IR group during the early period of reperfusion. Spot necrosis, hemorrhage and inflammatory cell infiltration could be seen in hepatic lobes or around central veins, with extended reperfusion time. Compared with IR group, IP group showed moderate hepatocyte swelling and less necrotic area.

ALT

The levels of serum ALT increased gradually as reperfusion time was extended in both groups. Compared with IR group, the level of serum ALT in IP group was significantly lower at all time points after reperfusion ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 1).

Hepatocellular proliferation

PI increased significantly at 0 and 1 h of reperfusion in IP group compared with IR group. There was a statistically significant difference ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 2).

Expression of cyclinD1 mRNA and protein

The RT-PCR results showed that cyclinD1 mRNA was expressed in SO, IR and IP groups. The expression of cyclinD1 mRNA in IP group increased at 0-1 h after reperfusion. Compared with IP group, the expression of cyclinD1 mRNA in IR group was significantly lower at 0-1 h after reperfusion ($P < 0.05$). No significant difference in the expression of cyclinD1 mRNA was found between SO and IR groups at 0-1 h after reperfusion ($P > 0.05$, Table 1, Figure 3A).

CyclinD1 protein was not detectable until 2 h after reperfusion in IR and SO groups. Whereas cyclinD1 protein was expressed in IP group soon after the reperfusion was begun (Figure 3B).

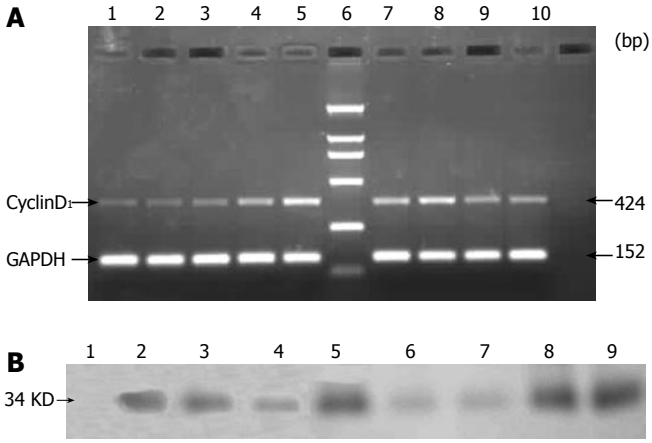


Figure 3 Expression of cyclin D1 mRNA (**A**) and cyclin D1 protein (**B**) at different time points in SO, IP and IR groups.

DISCUSSION

It is widely accepted that IP protects organs against IR injury. It has been reported that IR injury is related with many mechanisms, such as suppression of inflammatory reaction[13], improvement of local microcirculation[14], diminution of cell apoptosis and decreased production of local active oxygen-derived free radicals[15,16]. But some of the mechanisms remain uncertain. To probe into the mechanisms of IP protection may help to find an effective method against IR injury. In this study, we adopted the rat model of ischemic preconditioning against subsequent hepatic IR injury and confirmed that it could reduce the levels of serum ALT and the extent of liver necrosis.

Application of flow cytometry to cell cycle analysis makes it possible to analyze cell proliferation. Cell cycle can discriminate cells at the G_0/G_1-phase, S-phase and G_2/M-phase. It is considered that cells at the S-phase and G_2/M-phase can proliferate. S-phase and G_2/M-phase ratio could indicate the proliferation index (PI).The finding of the present work is that IP could promote liver cell proliferation during early ischemic reperfusion, which is possibly related to IP protection. Zhang *et al*[17] showed that proliferating liver cells can resist IR injury. The mechanisms of cellular proliferation involved in IP are still obscure, but

may be related to reactive oxygen species (ROS) and tumor necrosis facter-α (TNF-α).The liver underlying IP could generate ROS and TNF-α during early reperfusion[18,19]. ROS could stimulate cell mitosis and proliferation[20]. TNF-alpha is a known mitogen for hepatocytes and an important factor for liver cell proliferation. In the presence of anti-TGF-alpha neutralizing Abs, the mitogenic activity of TNF-alpha is abrogated[21].

Breakthrough in cell cycle regulation is the understanding of cyclin and cyclin-dependent kinase, which regulates cell cycle progression. Mitotic cellular division requires cells to leave the resting state (G_0/G_1) and proceed through the phase of DNA synthesis (S) and mitosis (G_2/M). There is a check point between G_0/G_1-phase and S-phase. CyclinD$_1$ is an important cyclin which can make cells pass through the check point and enter S-phase and G_2/M-phase. Higher expression of cyclinD$_1$ could promote cell proliferation in rat liver[11]. Our data showed that IP could stimulate cyclinD$_1$ mRNA and protein expression during the early reperfusion in IP group and not in IR group. The mechanisms may be related to the fact that IP activates the p38MAPK pathway[22], leading to activation of regulatory proteins and production of DNA synthetic proteins, such as cyclinD$_1$ and interleukin-6(IL-6)[23]. The p38MAPK pathway is an important signaling pathway involved in IP. Blockade of the p38MAPK pathway can lead to loss of protection of IP[24]. When the p38MAPK pathway is activated, the p38kinase transfers to cell nuclei and induces the production of cyclinD$_1$[25]. In our study, the cyclinD$_1$ protein was expressed in IR group 2 h after reperfusion, although cyclinD$_1$ mRNA was expressed during the early reperfusion. In SO group, cyclinD$_1$ mRNA was expressed but cyclinD$_1$ protein was not expressed. These data suggest that cyclinD$_1$ expression is posttranscriptionally regulated. Awad and Gruppuso[26] showed that a posttranscriptional mechanism regulating cyclin D1 content is involved in temporary hepatocyte growth arrest. They speculated that this posttranscriptional regulation may be downstream from the p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway. The posttranscriptional regulation could keep adult hepatocytes in a quiescent state, but the mechanism is not completely clear.

In conclusion, IP could promote cyclinD$_1$ expression and lead to hepatocellular proliferation during early ischemic reperfusion, which is possibly one of the protective mechanisms against IR injury. However their underlying regulatory pathway and biological role remain unclear.

REFERENCES

1 **Lloris-Carsí JM,** Cejalvo D, Toledo-Pereyra LH, Calvo MA, Suzuki S. Preconditioning: effect upon lesion modulation in warm liver ischemia. *Transplant Proc* 1993; **25:** 3303-3304

2 **Clavien PA,** Yadav S, Sindram D, Bentley RC. Protective effects of ischemic preconditioning for liver resection performed under inflow occlusion in humans. *Ann Surg* 2000; **232:** 155-162

3 **Peralta C,** Prats N, Xaus C, Gelpí E, Roselló-Catafau J. Protective effect of liver ischemic preconditioning on liver and lung injury induced by hepatic ischemia-reperfusion in the rat. *Hepatology* 1999; **30:** 1481-1489

4 **Sawaya DE Jr,** Brown M, Minardi A, Bilton B, Burney D, Granger DN, McDonald JC, Zibari GB. The role of ischemic preconditioning in the recruitment of rolling and adherent leukocytes in hepatic venules after ischemia/reperfusion. *J Surg Res* 1999; **85:** 163-170

5 **Koti RS,** Yang W, Dashwood MR, Davidson BR, Seifalian AM. Effect of ischemic preconditioning on hepatic microcirculation and function in a rat model of ischemia reperfusion injury. *Liver Transpl* 2002; **8:** 1182-1191

6 **Peralta C,** Bartrons R, Riera L, Manzano A, Xaus C, Gelpí E, Roselló-Catafau J. Hepatic preconditioning preserves energy metabolism during sustained ischemia. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2000; **279:** G163-G171

7 **Peralta C,** Perales JC, Bartrons R, Mitchell C, Gilgenkrantz H, Xaus C, Prats N, Fernández L, Gelpí E, Panés J, Roselló-Catafau J. The combination of ischemic preconditioning and liver Bcl-2 overexpression is a suitable strategy to prevent liver and lung damage after hepatic ischemia-reperfusion. *Am J Pathol* 2002; **160:** 2111-2122

8 **Peralta C,** Hotter G, Closa D, Prats N, Xaus C, Gelpí E, Roselló-Catafau J. The protective role of adenosine in inducing nitric oxide synthesis in rat liver ischemia preconditioning is mediated by activation of adenosine A_2 receptors. *Hepatology* 1999; **29:** 126-132

9 **Cai ZW,** Mehendale HM. Protection from CCl_4 toxicity by prestimulation of hepatocellular regeneration in partially hepatectomized gerbils. *Biochem Pharmacol* 1991; **42:** 633-644

10 **Hunter T,** Pines J. Cyclins and cancer. II: Cyclin D and CDK inhibitors come of age. *Cell* 1994; **79:** 573-582

11 **Albrecht JH,** Hansen LK. Cyclin D$_1$ promotes mitogen-independent cell cycle progression in hepatocytes. *Cell Growth Differ* 1999; **10:** 397-404

12 **Ohmori M,** Miyashita F, Uchida H, Kitoh Y, Tsuruoka S, Harada K, Sugimoto K, Fujimura A, Kobayashi E. Effect of erythromycin on ischemia-reperfusion injury of liver in rats. *Transplant Proc* 2000; **32:** 811-814

13 **Choukèr A,** Martignoni A, Schauer R, Dugas M, Rau HG, Jauch KW, Peter K, Thiel M. Beneficial effects of ischemic preconditioning in patients undergoing hepatectomy: the role of neutrophils. *Arch Surg* 2005; **140:** 129-136

14 **Vajdová K,** Heinrich S, Tian Y, Graf R, Clavien PA. Ischemic preconditioning and intermittent clamping improve murine hepatic microcirculation and Kupffer cell function after ischemic injury. *Liver Transpl* 2004; **10:** 520-528

15 **Carini R,** Albano E. Recent insights on the mechanisms of liver preconditioning. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125:** 1480-1491

16 **Yuan GJ,** Ma JC, Gong ZJ, Sun XM, Zheng SH, Li X. Modulation of liver oxidant-antioxidant system by ischemic preconditioning during ischemia/reperfusion injury in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2005; **11:** 1825-1828

17 **Zhang BH,** Gong DZ, Mei MH. Protection of regenerating liver after partial hepatectomy from carbon tetrachloride hepatotoxicity in rats: role of hepatic stimulator substance. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1999; **14:** 1010-1017

18 **Rüdiger HA,** Graf R, Clavien PA. Sub-lethal oxidative stress triggers the protective effects of ischemic preconditioning in the mouse liver. *J Hepatol* 2003; **39:** 972-977

19 **Teoh N,** Leclercq I, Pena AD, Farrell G. Low-dose TNF-alpha protects against hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury in mice: implications for preconditioning. *Hepatology* 2003; **37:** 118-128

20 **Martindale JL,** Holbrook NJ. Cellular response to oxidative stress: signaling for suicide and survival. *J Cell Physiol* 2002; **192:** 1-15

21 **Gallucci RM,** Simeonova PP, Toriumi W, Luster MI. TNF-alpha regulates transforming growth factor-alpha expression in regenerating murine liver and isolated hepatocytes. *J Immunol* 2000; **164:** 872-878

22 **Schauer RJ,** Gerbes AL, Vonier D, op den Winkel M, Fraunberger P, Bilzer M. Induction of cellular resistance against Kupffer cell-derived oxidant stress: a novel concept of hepatoprotection by ischemic preconditioning. *Hepatology* 2003; **37:** 286–295

23 **Mohammed FF,** Pennington CJ, Kassiri Z, Rubin JS, Soloway

PD, Ruther U, Edwards DR, Khokha R. Metalloproteinase inhibitor TIMP-1 affects hepatocyte cell cycle via HGF activation in murine liver regeneration. *Hepatology* 2005; **41:** 857-867

24 **Carini R,** De Cesaris MG, Splendore R, Vay D, Domenicotti C, Nitti MP, Paola D, Pronzato MA, Albano E. Signal pathway involved in the development of hypoxic preconditioning in rat hepatocytes. *Hepatology* 2001; **33:** 131–139

25 **Ono K,** Han J. The p38 signal transduction pathway: activation and function. *Cell Signal* 2000; **12:** 1-13

26 **Awad MM,** Gruppuso PA. Cell cycle control during liver development in the rat: evidence indicating a role for cyclin D1 posttranscriptional regulation. *Cell Growth Differ* 2000; **11:** 325-334

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Liu WF

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2941-2944
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Lymph node micrometastasis and its correlation with MMP-2 expression in gastric carcinoma

Ze-Yu Wu, Jing-Hua Li, Wen-Hua Zhan, Yu-Long He

Ze-Yu Wu, Wen-Hua Zhan, Yu-Long He, Department of Gastrointestinal and Pancreatic Surgery, the First Affiliated Hospital, Sun Yat-sen University, Guangzhou 510080, Guangdong Province, China
Jing-Hua Li, Zhong Shan Medical College, Sun Yat-sen University, Guangzhou 510089, Guangdong Province, China
Ze-Yu Wu, Department of General Surgery, Guangdong Provincial People's Hospital, Guangzhou 510080, Guangdong Province, China
Supported by the National Nature Science Foundation of China, No. 30271276
Correspondence to: Dr. Wen-Hua Zhan, Department of Gastrointestinal and Pancreatic Surgery, the First Affiliated Hospital, Sun Yat-sen University, Guangzhou 510080, Guangdong Province, China. rainy1977@21cn.com
Telephone: +86-20-87755766-8211 Fax: +86-20-87335945
Received: 2005-11-16 Accepted: 2005-12-22

Abstract

AIM: To examine matrix metalloproteinase-2 (MMP-2) expression in gastric cancer tissues and to evaluate its relationship with lymph node micrometastasis.

METHODS: The authors studied 850 lymph nodes resected from 30 patients with gastric carcinoma who underwent gastrectomy with lymphadenectomy using reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) assay in addition to H-E staining. MMP-2 expression of the tumor tissues was detected by immunohistochemical technique (EliVision™ plus).

RESULTS: MMP-2 expression was positive in 21 (70%) cases and negative in 9 (30%) cases. No significant correlations were found between MMP-2 expression and other variables such as age, gender, tumor location, tumor diameter, Lauren classification and lymphatic invasion. In contrast, MMP-2 expression correlated significantly with depth of tumor infiltration (P = 0.022), lymph node metastasis (P = 0.030) and tumor differentiation (P = 0.043). Lymph node micrometastases were detected in 77 (12.5%) lymph nodes of 14 (46.7%) gastric carcinoma patients. MMP-2 expression was positive in 12 (85.7%) of the 14 patients with lymph node micrometastasis, and in 9 (56.3%) of the 16 patients without lymph node micrometastasis (P = 0.118).

CONCOUSION: Our results demonstrate that MMP-2 expression has significant correlation with tumor invasion, tumor differentiation and lymph node metastases. MMP-2 expression may be an important biological characteristics and significant prognostic parameter of gastric carcinoma. We also conclude that MMP-2 may participate in the development of lymph node micrometastasis of gastric carcinoma. Further investigations are needed to draw a conclusion.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Gastric carcinoma; Lymph node micrometastasis; MMP-2; RT-PCR; Immunohistochemistry

Wu ZY, Li JH, Zhan WH, He YL. Lymph node micrometastasis and its correlation with MMP-2 expression in gastric carcinoma. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2941-2944

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2941.asp

INTRODUCTION

Lymph node metastasis is the most important prognostic factor of gastric carcinoma. Many clinical studies demonstrate that the existence of lymph node micrometastasis is often overlooked by conventional histopathological examination (H-E staining)[1-10]. However, the mechanisms of lymph node micrometastasis remain unclear heretofore. MMP-2 has been reported to be associated with tumor invasion and lymph node metastasis of gastric carcinoma by mediating the degradation of extracellular matrix components[11-14]. However, the relationships between MMP-2 expression in cancer tissues and lymph node micrometastasis have not yet been explored. Therefore, the aim of this study was to investigate correlations between MMP-2 expression and clinicopathologic characteristics of gastric carcinoma and possible relationships between lymph node micrometastasis and MMP-2 expression.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients and specimens

A total of 850 lymph nodes resected from 30 patients with gastric carcinoma who underwent gastrectomy at the Department of Gastrointestinal and Pancreatic Surgery at Sun Yat-sen University of Medical Sciences were studied. There were 17 men and 13 women, ranging in age from 26 to 82 years, with a mean age of 56.8 years. None of these patients had received preoperative chemotherapy or radiotherapy. Total gastrectomy was performed in

16 patients, distal subtotal gastrectomy in 13 patients, and proximal subtotal gastrectomy in 1 patient. One patient underwent D1 lymphadenectomy, 22 patients underwent D2 lymphadenectomy, 4 patients underwent D3 lymphadenectomy, and 3 patients underwent palliative resection. According to the Lauren' criteria, 19 tumors were classified as diffusive type carcinomas, and 11 tumors were intestinal type carcinomas. Depth of tumor invasion and extent of lymph node metastasis were classified according to UICC TNM classification.

Half of each resected lymph node was fixed in 10% formalin and embedded in paraffin for routine histopathological examination. The other half was stored in 1ml RNA later (Sigma, USA) at 4 ℃ overnight, then transferred to a clean freezing tube and stored at -70 ℃ for RNA extraction. The resected primary tumors were also fixed in 10% formaldehyde and embedded in paraffin. Consecutive 4 μm sections were cut and stained with hematoxylin and eosin (H-E) staining and immunohistochenistry with anti-MMP-2 antibody.

RNA extraction

Lymph node samples were homogenized in 1 mL of Trizol Reagent (Invitrogen) per 50-100 mg of tissue using a power homogenizer. RNA extraction was carried out according to the protocol recommended by the manufacturer. Total RNA was dissolved in diethylpyrocarbonate-treated water and the volume and quality of the RNA then assessed by the ultraviolet spectrophotometer.

RT-PCR

Complementary DNA (cDNA) was synthesized and amplified from total RNA using the Access RT-PCR system (Promega). The primer sequences used for CK-20 detection were 5'-ggtcgcgactacagtgcatattaca-3' (sense) and 5' -cctcagcagccagtttagcattatc-3' (anti-sense)[15]. cDNA synthesis was monitored by beta-actin RT-PCR using the following primers: 5'- caaatgcttctaggcggact -3' (sense) and 5' - atgctatcacctcccctgtg -3' (anti-sense). The RT-PCR was performed in a 25 μL reaction mixture containing 11 μL nuclease-free water, 5 μL 5 × Reacton Buffer, 0.5 μL dNTP (10 mmol/L), 0.5 μL each of beta-actin primers (20 μmol/L), 1.25 μL each of CK-20 primers (10 μmol/L), 1 μL MgSO4 (25 mmol/L), 0.5 μL AMV reverse transcriptase (5 u/μL), 0.5 μL Tfl DNA polymerase (5 u/μL), and 3 μL RNA sample. The Access RT-PCR condition was set up as follows: 1 cycle at 48 ℃ for 45 min (reverse transcription), 1 cycle at 94 ℃ for 2 min (AMV RT inactivation), followed by 40 cycles at 94 ℃ for 30 s (denaturation) and at 62 ℃ for 1 min (annealing) and at 68 ℃ for 1.5 min (extension), followed by a final extension at 68 ℃ for 7 min. The resultant cDNA products of CK-20 and beta-actin were 121 base pairs and 381 base pairs, respectively. The RT-PCR products were analyzed by electrophoresis on 2% agarose gels stained with ethidium bromide.

In this report, "micrometastasis" in the regional lymph nodes was defined as metastasis that was detected only by the RT-PCR assay but not by routine H-E staining (Figure 1).

Immunohistochemistry

MMP-2 immunohistochemical staining was performed using EliVision™ plus IHC Kit (Maixin Biological, Fuzhou, China). After the sections were deparaffinized with xylene and dehydrated with ethanol, they were placed in 10 mmol/L citrate buffer and heated in a microwave at 700 W for 5 min for the retrieval of antigens in the specimens. Endogenous peroxidase activity was blocked by incubation of the slides in 3% hydrogen peroxide in absolute methanol at room temperature for 10 min. The sections were then incubated sequentially with 50 μL of mouse monoclonal antibody against MMP-2 (Maixin Biological, Fuzhou, China) overnight at 4 ℃, with 50 μL of polymer enhancer for 20 min, and 50 μL of polymerized HRP-anti mouse IgG for 30 min. The reaction products were visualized with diaminobenzidine (DAB Kit, Maixin Biological, Fuzhou, China), and sections were counterstained with hematoxylin, dehydrated, and evaluated under light microscope. Tris-buffered saline (TBS) solution was used instead of the primary antibody for negative controls.

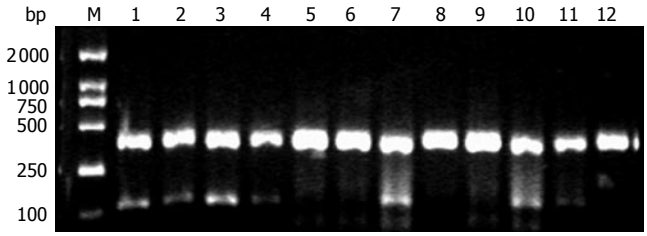


Figure1 Comparison of the results of RT-PCR and H-E staining. M: DL 2000 Marker; Lanes1-12: dissected lymph nodes. Lymph nodes of Lane 7, Lane 10, and Lane 11 were diagnosed lymph node micrometastasis.

For the purpose of data analysis, MMP-2 expression was graded according to the proportion of positive tumor cells. If more than 25% of the tumor cells were positively stained for MMP-2, the tumor was classified as positive MMP-2 expression. In contrast, if 25% or less of the tumor cells were positively stained, the tumor was classified as negative MMP-2 expression (Figure 2). The stained sections were observed independently by two pathologists who had no knowledge of the clinicopathological data.

Statistical analysis

Statistical analysis was performed by the Fisher's exact test to examine the association of MMP-2 expression of tumor tissues with the clinicopathologic characteristics of gastric carcinoma, and the relationship between MMP-2 expression of tumor tissues and lymph node micrometastasis was evaluated. Statistical significance was defined as $P < 0.05$.

RESULTS

Correlations between MMP-2 expression and clinicopathologic characteristics of gastric carcinoma

MMP-2 expression was positive in 21 (70%) cases and negative in 9 (30%) cases. No significant correlations were found between MMP-2 expression and other variables such as age, gender, tumor location, tumor diameter, Lauren classification and lymphatic invasion. In contrast, MMP-2 expression correlated significantly with depth of tumor infiltration ($P = 0.022$), lymph node metastasis ($P = 0.03$) and tumor differentiation ($P = 0.043$) (Table 1).

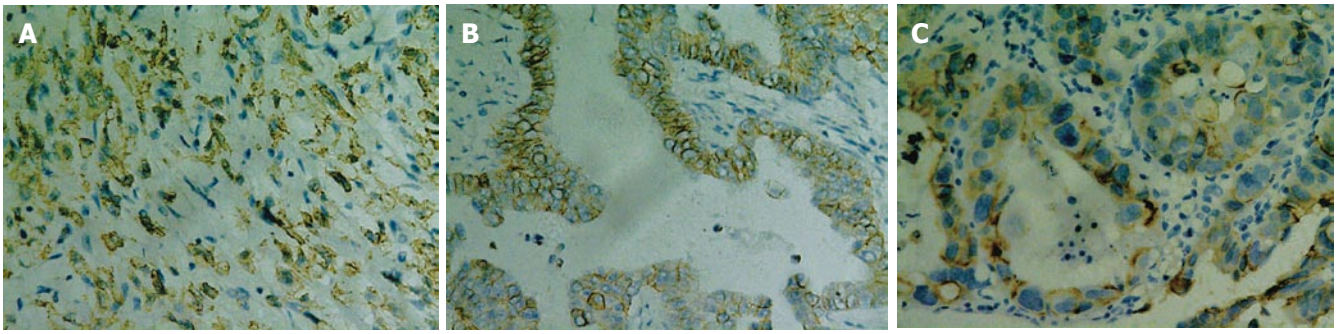


Figure 2 Expression of MMP-2 in gastric carcinoma. **A:** poorly-differentiated gastric carcinoma (× 400); **B:** moderately -differentiated gastric carcinoma (× 400); **C:** well-differentiated gastric carcinoma (× 400).

Table1 Correlation between MMP-2 expression and clinicopathologic characteristics of gastric carcinoma

Variable	Patients (*n*)	MMP-2 expression		
		Negative (%)	Positive (%)	*P* value
Gender				
Male	17	6 (35.3)	11 (64.7)	
Female	13	3 (23.1)	10 (76.9)	*P* = 0.691
Age				
< 50 yr	10	1 (10)	9 (90)	
⩾ 50 yr	20	8 (40)	12 (60)	*P* = 0.204
Superficial diameter				
< 5 cm	17	7 (41.2)	10 (58.8)	
⩽ 5 cm	13	7 (15.4)	6 (84.6)	*P* = 0.229
Tumor location				
Upper/Middle third	17	5 (29.4)	12 (70.6)	
Lower third	13	4 (30.8)	9 (69.2)	*P* = 1.000
Histologic type				
Intestinal	11	5 (45.5)	6 (54.5)	
Diffuse	19	4 (21.1)	15 (78.9)	*P* = 0.225
Depth of invasion				
T1	5	4 (80)	1 (20)	
T2	16	4 (25)	12 (75)	
T3/T4	9	1 (11.1)	8 (88.9)	*P* = 0.022
Histologic differentiation				
Well	7	4 (57.1)	3 (42.9)	
Moderate	6	3 (50)	3 (50)	
Poorly	17	2 (11.8)	15 (88.2)	*P* = 0.043
Lymph node metastasis				
Positive	20	3 (15)	17 (85)	
Negative	10	6 (60)	4 (40)	*P* = 0.030
Lymphatic invasion				
Positive	18	3 (16.7)	15 (83.3)	
Negative	12	6 (50)	6 (50)	*P* = 0.102

Table 2 Correlation between MMP-2 expression of tumor tissues and lymph node micrometastasis

Micrometastasis	Patients (*n*)	MMP-2 expression		
		Negative (%)	Positive (%)	*P* value
Positive	4	2 (14.3)	12 (85.7)	
Negative	16	7 (43.7)	9 (56.3)	*P* = 0.118

Relationships between lymph node micrometastasis and MMP-2 expression

Lymph node micrometastases were detected in 77 (12.5%) lymph nodes of 14 (46.7%) gastric carcinoma patients. MMP-2 expression was positive in 12 (85.7%) of the 14 patients with lymph node micrometastasis, and in 9 (56.3%) of the 16 patients without lymph node micrometastasis. However, the difference between these two groups was not statistically significant ($P = 0.118$) (Table 2).

DISCUSSION

The protein MMP-2 (type IV collagenase) belongs to the family of metalloproteinases. Its function is related to cellular matrix degradation including basement membrane type IV collagen. MMP-2 has been reported to play an important role in the metastatic process and tumor invasion of gastric carcinoma[16-19].

Monig *et al*[13] investigated correlations between MMP-2 immunoreactivity and currently used classification systems and possible relationships between lymph node metastasis and MMP-2 expression in a prospective study. MMP-2 expression correlated significantly with depth of tumor infiltration, lymph node metastasis, distant metastasis, and UICC stage. In contrast, no significant correlations were found between MMP-2 expression and other variables such as age, tumor differentiation, WHO, Lauren, Goseki, and Ming classifications. Sundblad *et al*[12] also reported that MMP-2 expression showed significant correlations with parietal depth of infiltration ($P = 0.03$) and with metastases in regional lymph nodes ($P = 0.05$). However, Ko *et al*[20] reported that MMP-2 expression was not correlated significantly with lymph node micrometastasis or depth of invasion ($P > 0.05$). They also reported that TIMP-2 expression (MMP-2 inhibitor) showed a strong relationship with lymph node micrometastasis and depth of tumor infiltration ($P < 0.05$).

In the present study, MMP-2 expression was observed in 70% (21 of 30 cases) of gastric carcinoma. MMP-2 expression increased in accordance with the depth of tumor invasion. MMP-2 expression was more frequent in T3/T4 tumors (8 of 9 cases, 88.9%) and T2 tumors (12 of16 cases, 75%), as compared with T1 tumors (1 of 5 cases, 20%). The difference was statistically significant ($P = 0.022$). In 20 gastric carcinomas with lymph node metastasis 17 (85%) showed positive MMP-2 expression, while in 10 gastric carcinomas without lymph node metastasis only 4 showed positive MMP-2 expression ($P = 0.030$). In addition, we also found that there was a significant correlation between MMP-2 expression and tumor differentiation. 88.2% (15 of 17 cases) poorly differentiated gastric carcinomas showed MMP-2 expression, while positive MMP-2 expres-

sion of moderately- and well-differentiated gastric carcinomas were only 50% (3 of 6 cases) and 42.9% (3 of 7 cases) respectively. The difference was also statistically significant ($P = 0.043$).

Our results demonstrate that MMP-2 expression has significant correlation with tumor invasion, tumor differentiation and lymph node metastasis. For gastric carcinoma, MMP-2 expression may be an important biological characteristic and a significant prognostic parameter.

Recent advances in immunohistochemistry and molecular biology techniques have made it possible to detect lymph node micrometastasis not evidenced by routine H-E staining. 28%-68.1% of patients with gastric carcinoma were reportedly identified micrometastases in regional lymph nodes[21-25]. However, the mechanism of lymph node micrometastasis is still not completely known now. Therefore, the main objective of this study was to examine MMP-2 expression in the tumor tissues and explore its relationship with lymph node micrometastasis. Totally, 77 (12.5%) lymph nodes of 14 (46.7%) patients with gastric carcinoma were detected lymph node micrometastases. In 14 gastric carcinoma patients with lymph node micrometastases 12 (85.7%) showed positive MMP-2 expression, while in 16 gastric carcinoma patients without lymph node micrometastases only 9 (56.3%) were examined MMP-2 expression. The results indicate that MMP-2 may participate in the development of lymph node micrometastasis of gastric carcinoma, however, the difference was not statistically significant ($P = 0.118$). This may be explained by the fact that the cases in our study were comparatively few. To draw a further conclusion, a large-scale investigation is needed.

REFERENCES

1 **Harrison LE**, Choe JK, Goldstein M, Meridian A, Kim SH, Clarke K. Prognostic significance of immunohistochemical micrometastases in node negative gastric cancer patients. *J Surg Oncol* 2000; **73: 153**-157

2 **Saragoni L**, Gaudio M, Morgagni P, Folli S, Bazzocchi F, Scarpi E, Saragoni A. Identification of occult micrometastases in patients with early gastric cancer using anti-cytokeratin monoclonal antibodies. *Oncol Rep* 2000; **7**: 535-539

3 **Nakajo A**, Natsugoe S, Ishigami S, Matsumoto M, Nakashima S, Hokita S, Baba M, Takao S, Aikou T. Detection and prediction of micrometastasis in the lymph nodes of patients with pN0 gastric cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2001; **8**: 158-162

4 **Morgagni P**, Saragoni L, Folli S, Gaudio M, Scarpi E, Bazzocchi F, Marra GA, Vio A. Lymph node micrometastases in patients with early gastric cancer: experience with 139 patients. *Ann Surg Onco*l 2001; **8:** 170-174

5 **Lee E**, Chae Y, Kim I, Choi J, Yeom B, Leong AS. Prognostic relevance of immunohistochemically detected lymph node micrometastasis in patients with gastric carcinoma. *Cancer* 2002; **94**: 2867-2873

6 **Choi HJ**, Kim YK, Kim YH, Kim SS, Hong SH. Occurrence and prognostic implications of micrometastases in lymph nodes from patients with submucosal gastric carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2002; **9**: 13-19

7 **Yasuda K**, Adachi Y, Shiraishi N, Inomata M, Takeuchi H, Kitano S. Prognostic effect of lymph node micrometastasis in patients with histologically node-negative gastric cancer. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2002; **9**: 771-774

8 **Ajisaka H**, Miwa K. Micrometastases in sentinel nodes of gastric cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2003; **89**: 676-680

9 **Higashi H**, Natsugoe S, Ishigami S, Uenosono Y, Matsumoto M, Nakajo A, Miyazono F, Hokita S, Takao S, Aikou T. Distribution of lymph node metastasis including micrometastasis in gastric cancer with submucosal invasion. *World J Surg* 2003; **27**: 455-459

10 **Karube T**, Ochiai T, Shimada H, Nikaidou T, Hayashi H. Detection of sentinel lymph nodes in gastric cancers based on immunohistochemical analysis of micrometastases. *J Surg Onco*l 2004; **87**: 32-38

11 **Nomura H**, Fujimoto N, Seiki M, Mai M, Okada Y. Enhanced production of matrix metalloproteinases and activation of matrix metalloproteinase 2 (gelatinase A) in human gastric carcinomas. *Int J Cancer* 1996; **69**: 9-16

12 **Sundblad A,** Ricci L. [MMP-2 expression (type IV collagenase) in gastric cancer]. *Acta Gastroenterol Latinoam* 1998; **28**: 287-290

13 **Mönig SP**, Baldus SE, Hennecken JK, Spiecker DB, Grass G, Schneider PM, Thiele J, Dienes HP, Hölscher AH. Expression of MMP-2 is associated with progression and lymph node metastasis of gastric carcinoma. *Histopathology* 2001; **39**: 597-602

14 **Takahashi Y**, Kitadai Y, Ellis LM, Bucana CD, Fidler IJ, Mai M. Multiparametric in situ mRNA hybridization analysis of gastric biopsies predicts lymph node metastasis in patients with gastric carcinoma. *Jpn J Cancer Res* 2002; **93**: 1258-1265

15 **Okada Y**, Fujiwara Y, Yamamoto H, Sugita Y, Yasuda T, Doki Y, Tamura S, Yano M, Shiozaki H, Matsuura N, Monden M. Genetic detection of lymph node micrometastases in patients with gastric carcinoma by multiple-marker reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction assay. *Cancer* 2001; **92**: 2056-2064

16 **Murray GI**, Duncan ME, Arbuckle E, Melvin WT, Fothergill JE. Matrix metalloproteinases and their inhibitors in gastric cancer. *Gut* 1998; **43**: 791-797

17 **Parsons SL,** Watson SA, Collins HM, Griffin NR, Clarke PA, Steele RJ. Gelatinase (MMP-2 and -9) expression in gastrointestinal malignancy. *Br J Cancer* 1998; **78**: 1495-1502

18 **Matsuoka T**, Yashiro M, Sawada T, Ishikawa T, Ohira M, Chung KH. Inhibition of invasion and lymph node metastasis of gastrointestinal cancer cells by R-94138, a matrix metalloproteinase inhibitor. *Anticancer Res* 2000; **20**: 4331-4338

19 **Yashiro M**, Murahashi K, Matsuoka T, Nakazawa K, Tanaka H, Osaka H, Koyama T, Ohira M, Chung KH. Tranilast (N-3,4-dimethoxycinamoyl anthranilic acid): a novel inhibitor of invasion-stimulating interaction between gastric cancer cells and orthotopic fibroblasts. *Anticancer Res* 2003; **23**: 3899-3904

20 **Ko BK**, Cho HR, Choi DW, Nam CW, Park CJ, Kim GY, Kim SS, Woo YJ, Huh J, Kim MY. Reduced expression of tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase in nodal metastasis of stomach cancer. *J Korean Med Sci* 1998; **13**: 286-290

21 **Matsumoto M**, Natsugoe S, Ishigami S, Nakashima S, Nakajo A, Miyazono F, Hokita S, Takao S, Eizuru Y, Aikou T. Lymph node micrometastasis and lymphatic mapping determined by reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction in pN0 gastric carcinoma. *Surgery* 2002; **131**: 630-635

22 **Ishida K**, Katsuyama T, Sugiyama A, Kawasaki S. Immunohistochemical evaluation of lymph node micrometastases from gastric carcinomas. *Cancer* 1997;**79**: 1069-1076

23 **Cai J**, Ikeguchi M, Maeta M, Kaibara N, Sakatani T. Clinicopathological value of immunohistochemical detection of occult involvement in pT3N0 gastric cancer. *Gastric Cancer* 1999; **2**: 95-100

24 **Cai J**, Ikeguchi M, Tsujitani S, Maeta M, Kaibara N. Micrometastasis in lymph nodes of mucosal gastric cancer. *Gastric Cancer* 2000; **3**: 91-96

25 **Ikeguchi M**, Cai J, Oka S, Gomyou Y, Tsujitani S, Maeta M, Kaibara N. Nuclear profiles of cancer cells reveal the metastatic potential of gastric cancer. *J Pathol* 2000; **192**: 19-25

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Zhang JZ **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2945-2948
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

RAPID COMMUNICATION

Clinical value of CT three-dimensional imaging in diagnosing gastrointestinal tract diseases

Shao-Yin Duan, Dan-Tong Zhang, Qing-Chi Lin, Yan-Huan Wu

Shao-Yin Duan, Dan-Tong Zhang, Qing-Chi Lin, Medical Imaging Department, Zhongshan Hospital, Xiamen University, Xiamen 361004, Fujian Province, China
Yan-Huan Wu, Gastroenterology and Endocrinology Department, Zhongshan Hospital, Xiamen University, Xiamen 361004, Fujian Province, China
Supported by the Social Development Program of Xiamen City, No. 3502Z20034018
Correspondence to: Shao-Yin Duan, Medical Imaging Department, Zhongshan Hospital, Xiamen University, Xiamen 361004, Fujian Province, China. xmdsy@xmzsh.com
Telephone: +86-592-2292366 Fax: +86-592-2212328
Received: 2005-10-18 Accepted: 2006-01-14

Key words: Gastrointestinal tract, disease; X-ray computed, Tomograph; Image processing; Computer-assisted

Duan SY, Zhang DT, Lin QC, Wu YH. Clinical value of CT three-dimensional imaging in diagnosing gastrointestinal tract diseases. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2945-2948

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2945.asp

Abstract

AIM: To discuss the clinical value of CT three-dimensional (3-D) imaging in diagnosing gastrointestinal tract diseases.

METHODS: Three-D imaging findings of 52 patients were retrospectively analyzed. Three-D imaging methods included shaded surface display (SSD), volume rendering (VR), virtual endoscopy (VE) and multiplanar reformatting (MPR). The diagnosis results of CT 3-D were evaluated by comparison with those of endoscopy and/or surgical finding.

RESULTS: Fifty-two patients with gastrointestinal tract diseases were diagnosed by CT 3-D imaging, of whom 50 cases were correctly diagnosed and 2 were misdiagnosed. There were 33 cases of gastric diseases (27 with carcinoma, 5 with peptic ulcer and 1 with leiomyoma) and 19 large intestinal diseases (10 with colon carcinoma, 2 with carcinoma of the rectum, 5 with colon polypus and 2 with tuberculosis of the ileocecal junction). Twenty-two cases with prominent lesions (9 with subsequent hollow lesions), 20 with stenosis of cavity (8 with concomitant prominent lesions) and 10 with hollow lesions (5 with concomitant prominent lesions) were shown in 3-D images. The minimal lesion shown was 1.0 cm × 0.8 cm × 0.5 cm.

CONCLUSION: CT 3-D imaging, a non-invasive examination without pain, can display clearly and directly the lesions of gastrointestinal tract with accurate location and high diagnosis accuracy. It is an important complementary technique to endoscopy.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

INTRODUCTION

Barium studies and endoscopy are two conventional examinations of gastrointestinal tract diseases. In recent years, with the advancement of spiral CT (single-detector row spiral CT, SDCT) and multi-detector row spiral CT (MDCT) scanner, CT three-dimensional (3-D) imaging has gained wide application and high diagnosis accuracy in gastrointestinal tract diseases[1-4]. Here we report the results of CT 3-D imaging in diagnosing gastrointestinal tract diseases in our hospital, and evaluate its clinical application.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

General information

From Jan 2000 to Oct 2005, 52 patents with complete clinical data were examined by 3-D imaging (From Aug 2001 to Oct 2003, due to short supply of effervescent granules, no such examination was carried out), among whom 30 cases were males and 22 females. The average age of the patients was 57.3 years (range, 20-85 years). Thirty-three patients were examined in stomach and 19 in large intestine.

Examination instrument

SDCT scanner (Somatom plus/4, Siemens, Germany) and workstation with 3-D imaging software (SUN magicview 1000) were used in 28 cases (18 in stomach and 10 in large intestine). MDCT scanner (LightSpeed/16, GE, America) and workstation with 3-D imaging software (Advantage Workstation 4.2) were used in 24 cases (15 in stomach and 9 in large intestine).

Examination methods

All the patients were required to fast for 12 h. The patient examined in the stomach took one pack (3 g) of efferves-

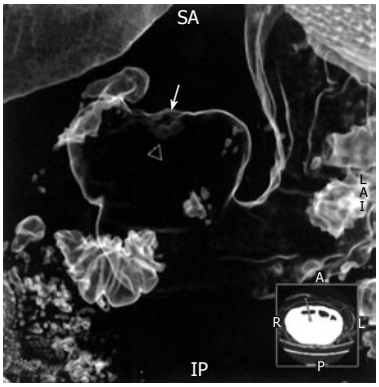


Figure 1 The ulcero carcinoma of stomach (on the anterosuperior wall of gastric antrum): the anterior-view of stomach on the VR image shows clearly the hollow lesion (↑) and the concomitant prominent lesion (△), with gas filling the stomach.

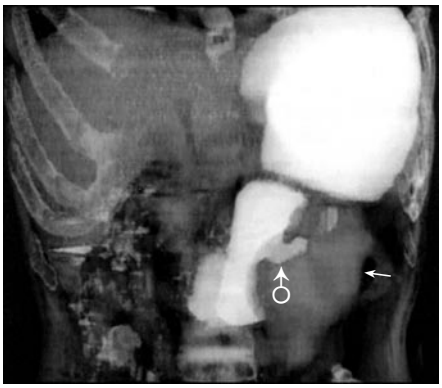


Figure 2 The ulcero carcinoma of stomach (on the greater curvature of stomach): the anterior-view of stomach on VR image shows the prominent lesion (↑) and the subsequent hollow lesion (♂), with 2% - 3% Omnipaque 300 filling the stomach.

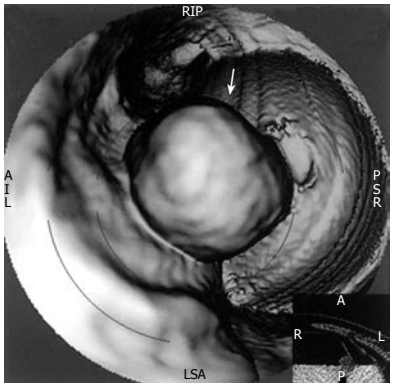


Figure 3 The leiomyoma of stomach (on the greater curvature of stomach): the axial-view of gastric cavity on VE image shows the prominent lesion (↑), with gas filling the stomach.

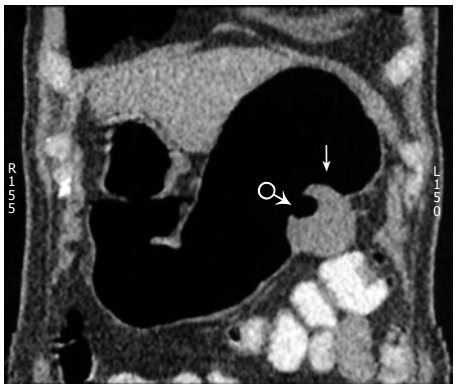


Figure 4 The same patient of **Figure 3**: the gastric coronal plane on MPR image shows the prominent lesion (↑) and the subsequent hollow lesion (♂).

cent granules (malu，Shanghai，China), lay in scanning bed and rolled to spread gas in stomach. A scout projection in supine position was made to confirm whether stomach was distended by gas. If distention was insufficient , another pack of effervescent granules (10 such cases in this study) or 500-1000 mL of 2%-3% Omnipaque 300 (Amersham, Shanghai，China) was added as an oral contrast agent to increase the contrasting effect and distending extent (8 such cases in this study). Another scout projection was scanned again. Holding breath for 10 s to 30 s, the patient was scanned with collimation of 5 mm (or 1.25 mm), pitch of 1.5 (or 1.375), increment of 2.4 mm (or 0.6 mm), scanning voltage of 120 kVp and a scanning current of 100-150 mA(the parameters in the brackets were used in scanning by MDCT). Another position of prone or lateral decubitus was often selected to better show some lesions (8 such cases in this study). The patients examined in the large intestines were asked to have a cleaning enema the night before and 30 min prior to the examination. A total of 600-1000 mL of air was infused through the anal canal as the contrasting agent. The following steps were the same as that used in stomach.

Image processing

Three-dimensional imaging methods included surface display (SSD), volume rendering (VR), virtual endoscopy (VE) and multiplanar reformatting (MPR). By selecting reconstruction thresholds of gastrointestinal walls from 15 Hu to 40 Hu and gastrointestinal cavities from -200 Hu to -1500 Hu, and necessary cutting technique, we obtained satisfactory 3-D images on the workstation. The exhibition of gastrointestinal tract lesions on the 3-D images was analyzed and measured, and the diagnosis results of CT 3-D imaging were evaluated by comparison with those of endoscopy and/or surgical finding.

RESULTS

Diseases diagnosed

Fifty-two patients with gastrointestinal tract diseases were histologically proven, of whom 33 cases had gastric diseases (27 with carcinoma, 5 with peptic ulcer and 1 with leiomyoma) and 19 had intestinal diseases (10 with colon carcinoma, 2 with carcinoma of rectum, 5 with colon polypus and 2 with tuberculosis of ileocecal junction). Fifty cases were correctly diagnosed (Figure 1, Figure 2, Figure 3, Figure 4, Figure 5, Figure 6) and 2 misdiagnosed (1 with leiomyoma in stomach and 1 with tuberculosis in ascending colon).

Lesions shown

Prominent lesions (Figures 2-5) were shown in 3-D images in 22 cases (9 with subsequent hollow lesions, with maximal size of 5.4 cm × 6.0 cm × 2.1 cm and minimal of 1.5 cm × 1.2 cm × 0.8 cm), stenosis lesions (Figure 6) in 20 (8 with concomitant prominent lesions) and hollow lesions (Figure 1) in 10 (5 with concomitant prominent lesions, maximal of 2.0 cm × 1.8 cm × 1.1 cm, minimal of 1.0 cm × 0.8 cm × 0.5 cm). The locations, sizes and shapes of lesions in the 3-D images were close to that seen under endoscopy and/or in surgery.

Characteristics of imaging methods

Three-D images with VR, VE, SSD and MPR could

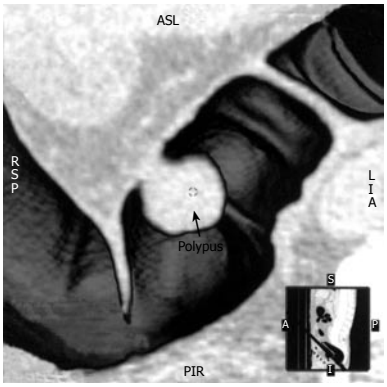


Figure 5 The polypus of colon: the anterior-view of colon on SSD image, by using the cutting technique, shows the prominent lesion (↑), with air filling the large intestine.

Figure 6 The carcinoma of descending colon: the anterior-view of large intestine on VR image shows the stenosis of intestinal cavity (↑), with air filling the large intestine.

show gastrointestinal tract lesions (Table 1), each with its own characteristics. SSD-imaging should be made with necessary cutting technique (Figure 5). VE-imaging could only show the extraluminal lesions. MPR-imaging had no perception of 3-D, but it could show clearly wall invasion (Figure 4). VR-imaging could show both extraluminal and intraluminal lesions (Figures 2, 6).

Table 1 Gastrointestinal tract lesions by3-D imaging with SSD, VR, VE and MPR

Methods	Prominence ($n=22$)			Hollow ($n=10$)			Stenosis ($n=20$)		
	G	M	B	G	M	B	G	M	B
SSD, cutting	18	4	0	7	2	1	19	1	0
V R	20	2	0	9	1	0	19	1	0
V E	20	2	0	6	3	1	17	3	0
MPR	18	4	0	4	4	2	18	2	0

G-good, indicates the sign was clear; M-medium, identifiable; B-bad, unclear.

DISCUSSION

Characteristics in showing lesions

Gastrointestinal tract lesions could be clearly shown by 3-D imaging, and the exact location and accurate size of a lesion could be obtained when it was more than 5 mm. In our study, the minimal lesion shown by 3-D image was 1.0 cm × 0.8 cm × 0.5 cm. This result is accordant with that reported by Zhang and Gluecker[3,5]. The main advantages of 3-D imaging over two-dimensional (2-D) multiplanar reformatting are added perspective and enhanced depth perception. The relationship between the lesion and adjacent structures can be better appreciated. It is often helpful to use the combinations of different 3-D imaging methods in different lesions, and to start with 2-D multiplanar reformatting and then to proceed to 3-D imaging[6]. Therefore in order to increase the diagnostic accuracy, we suggest several 3-D images be observed as well as the original axial images.

Influence of examination techniques on 3-D image

Theoretically, the quality of 3-D images is related to slice thickening, pitch and tube current[7]. Our study found that a satisfactory 3-D image of increased spatial resolution and decreased moving artificial shadows was obtained with thinner collimations and appropriate tube current and pitch. Interference of the contents in the gastrointestinal tract was avoided and adequate distention was obtained by using gas from effervescent granules of air as the contrasting agent of gastrointestinal tract, or by setting the patient in the prone, lateral decubitus and left posterior oblique position[8]. If gastrointestinal tract is not well distended or gastrointestinal wall has collapsed, some lesions may be overlooked and some similar disease may appear[9]. Traditionally, low or high attenuation contrasting agent can both be taken to enhance and distend the gastrointestinal tract. As to whether to take low or high attenuation contrasting agent, we think low-attenuation, e.g. gas, should be the first choice, as the agents are safer, well tolerated, and always result in good gastrointestinal tract distention. 2%-3% Omnipaque 300 may be optimal when stomach cannot be well distended. Horton *et al*[1,10] reported low-attenuation agents, e.g. oil-based oral contrast agents, whole milk and water, resulted in satisfactory evaluation of detection of subtle diseases of the gastric wall, and did not interfere with the manipulation of 3-D data sets. It is necessary to conduct further study on the clinical application of oral contrast agents.

Comparisons among 3-D imaging methods

All the 3-D imaging methods could show the lesions of gastrointestinal tracts, each with its own characteristics: MPR image could show the lesion in any section, e.g. sagittal or oblique. Though it could not get 3-D perception, it could remedy the defects of transverse-images, with the advantages of showing the gastrointestinal lesions of wall invasion. Images of VE and SSD with cutting techniques can show the size and shape of the lesions[6], especially intraluminal prominent lesions, and show the structure of gastrointestinal tracts, e.g. semilunar fold and ileocecal valve, from any directions without being influenced by a narrow cavity. They can better show the base and pedicel of lesions, but cannot discern surface coloration of lesion and extraluminal tumor invading [11]. VR images can be made translucent, similar to those of double contrast barium studies, and can demonstrate the overall contour changes of gastrointestinal tracts, but with poor mucosal information[12].

Clinical value of 3-D imaging

Accurate staging of gastrointestinal cancer is essential because surgical resection is the treatment only for local-

ized disease. Endoscopy and conventional barium study can only detect intraluminal lesions, but cannot evaluate extraluminal lesions. Traditional CT images can show anatomic structure and lesions of the gastrointestinal tract, but lack continuity and three dimensions. CT 3-D imaging has many advantages in the staging of primary tumor, assessing for local spread and detecting nodal involvement and distant metastases. It can provide valuable additional information and improve the detection and staging of both early and advanced gastric tumors and the detection of colorectal cancer and polypus[1,13,14]. CT 3-D imaging, with the same volume data obtained by spiral CT, especially by MDCT, can be repeatedly made with different reconstruction methods and avoid leakage of the section and moving artificial shadows. It has a high accuracy, sensitivity and specificity in showing prominent lesions and stenosis lesions, and in diagnosing gastric carcinoma and colon carcinoma[15]. 3-D imaging is a non-invasive examination without pain, and can easily be accepted by patients[14]. It may be used as an important complementary technique to endoscopy, particularly when the cavity is too narrow for endoscopy to go through. However, 3-D imaging examination has its limitations, e.g. it cannot show the color of lesions or make bioscopy[2].

Summary

CT 3-D imaging can clearly and directly show lesions of gastrointestinal tract. Diagnostic accuracy can be improved by observing different 3-D images together with original 2-D images. Three-D imaging is a non-invasive examination without pain, with characteristics of accurate localization of lesions and comprehensive observation of shapes. It is an important complementary technique to endoscopy.

REFERENCES

1 **Horton KM,** Fishman EK. Current role of CT in imaging of the stomach. *Radiographics* 2003; **23:** 75-87

2 **Ba-Ssalamah A**, Prokop M, Uffmann M, Pokieser P, Teleky B, Lechner G. Dedicated multidetector CT of the stomach: spectrum of diseases. *Radiographics* 2003; **23:** 625-644

3 **Zhang XP,** Xu G, Xu Z, Sun YS. Evaluation of clinical application of three-dimensional CT in gastrointestinal tract. *Zhonghua Fangshexue Zazhi* 2000; **34(5)**: 308-312

4 **Patak MA**, Mortele KJ, Ros PR. Multidetector row CT of the small bowel. *Radiol Clin North Am* 2005; **43:** 1063-1077, viii

5 **Gluecker TM**, Fletcher JG, Welch TJ, MacCarty RL, Harmsen WS, Harrington JR, Ilstrup D, Wilson LA, Corcoran KE, Johnson CD. Characterization of lesions missed on interpretation of CT colonography using a 2D search method. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2004; **182:** 881-889

6 **Zhu Q**, Shen L, Li J, Shan J, Song ZH, Li J, Yang BQ, Jin ML. [Three-dimensional spiral CT in advanced gastric cancer]. *Zhonghua Zhongliu Zazhi* 2004; **26:** 234-238

7 **McFarland EG**, Brink JA, Loh J, Wang G, Argiro V, Balfe DM, Heiken JP, Vannier MW. Visualization of colorectal polyps with spiral CT colography: evaluation of processing parameters with perspective volume rendering. *Radiology* 1997; **205:** 701-707

8 **Kim SH**, Lee JM, Han JK, Lee JY, Yang HK, Lee HJ, Shin KS, Choi BI. Effect of adjusted positioning on gastric distention and fluid distribution during CT gastrography. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2005; **185:** 1180-1184

9 **Park SH,** Ha HK, Kim MJ, Kim KW, Kim AY, Yang DH, Lee MG, Kim PN, Shin YM, Yang SK, Myung SJ, Min YI. False-negative results at multi-detector row CT colonography: multivariate analysis of causes for missed lesions. *Radiology* 2005; **235:** 495-502

10 **Horton KM**, Fishman EK. Helical CT of the stomach: evaluation with water as an oral contrast agent. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1998; **171:** 1373-1376

11 **Chen F**, Ni YC, Zheng KE, Ju SH, Sun J, Ou XL, Xu MH, Zhang H, Marchal G. Spiral CT in gastric carcinoma: comparison with barium study, fiberoptic gastroscopy and histopathology. *World J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9:** 1404-1408

12 **Ogata I**, Komohara Y, Yamashita Y, Mitsuzaki K, Takahashi M, Ogawa M. CT evaluation of gastric lesions with three-dimensional display and interactive virtual endoscopy: comparison with conventional barium study and endoscopy. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1999; **172:** 1263-1270

13 **Röttgen R**, Fischbach F, Plotkin M, Herzog H, Freund T, Schröder RJ, Felix R. Colon dissection: a new three-dimensional reconstruction tool for computed tomography colonography. *Acta Radiol* 2005; **46**: 222-226

14 **You YT,** Chang Chien CR, Wang JY, Ng KK, Chen JS,Tang R, Chiang JM, Yeh CY, Hsieh PS. Evaluation of contrast-enhanced computed tomographic colonography in detection of local recurrent colorectal cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12:** 123-126

15 **Inamoto K,** Kouzai K, Ueeda T, Marukawa T. CT virtual endoscopy of the stomach: comparison study with gastric fiberscopy. *Abdom Imaging* 2005; **30:** 473-479

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Zhu LH **E- Editor** Bai SH

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2949-2954
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

CASE REPORT

Successful aspiration and ethanol sclerosis of a large, symptomatic, simple liver cyst: Case presentation and review of the literature

Wojciech C Blonski, Mical S Campbell, Thomas Faust, David C Metz

Wojciech C Blonski, Division of Gastroenterology, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, United States and Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Wroclaw Medical University, Poland
Mical S Campbell, Thomas Faust, David C Metz, Division of Gastroenterology, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, PA, United States
Correspondence to: Dr. David C Metz, 3400 Spruce Street, 3 Ravdin Building, Gastroenterology Division, University of Pennsylvania Health System, Philadelphia, PA 19104, United States. david.metz@uphs.upenn.edu
Telephone: +1-215-6623541 Fax: +1-215-3495915
Received: 2005-03-13 Accepted: 2005-07-20

Abstract

Simple liver cysts are congenital with a prevalence of 2.5%-4.25%. Imaging, whether by US, CT or MRI, is accurate in distinguishing simple cysts from other etiologies, including parasitic, neoplastic, duct-related, and traumatic cysts. Symptomatic simple liver cysts are rare, and the true frequency of symptoms is not known. Symptomatic simple liver cysts are predominantly large (> 4 cm), right-sided, and more common in women and older patients. The vast majority of simple hepatic cysts require no treatment or follow-up, though large cysts (> 4 cm) may be followed initially with serial imaging to ensure stability. Attribution of symptoms to a large simple cyst should be undertaken with caution, after alternative diagnoses have been excluded. Aspiration may be performed to test whether symptoms are due to the cyst; however, cyst recurrence should be expected. Limited experience with both laparoscopic deroofing and aspiration, followed by instillation of a sclerosing agent has demonstrated promising results for the treatment of symptomatic cysts. Here, we describe a patient with a large, symptomatic, simple liver cyst who experienced complete resolution of symptoms following cyst drainage and alcohol ablation, and we present a comprehensive review of the literature.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Simple hepatic cyst; Alcohol sclerosis; Laparoscopic deroofing

Blonski WC, Campbell MS, Faust T, Metz DC. Successful aspiration and ethanol sclerosis of a large, symptomatic, simple liver cyst: Case presentation and review of the literature. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2949-2954

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2949.asp

INTRODUCTION

Liver cysts are classified as true or false, depending on the presence of an epithelial lining[1]. True cysts include congenital cysts (simple cysts and polycystic liver disease), parasitic (hydatid) cysts caused by *Echinococcus granulosis* and *multilocularis* tapeworms, neoplastic cysts (including cystadenoma, cystadenocarcinoma, cystic sarcoma, squamous cell carcinoma, and metastatic ovarian, pancreatic, colon, renal and neuroendocrine cancers), and biliary duct-related cysts (Caroli's disease, bile duct duplication, and peribiliary cysts)[1]. False cysts may be caused by spontaneous intrahepatic hemorrhage, post-traumatic hematoma, or intrahepatic biloma[1].

The pathogenesis of liver cysts is not clear. Simple liver cysts are congenital[2]. They are lined by cuboidal epithelium and originate from the abnormal development of intrahepatic ducts *in utero*. They are generally stable in size over time, but may slowly enlarge and occasionally become symptomatic due to mass effect, rupture, hemorrhage, or infection[3]. However, an enlarging cyst should prompt consideration of diagnosis other than simple cysts. Although simple cysts are generally solitary, more than one cyst may be present ("several solitary"), even in the absence of polycystic liver disease, as is the case with the patient described below.

We report herein a case of a patient with a large, symptomatic, simple hepatic cyst with resolution of symptoms immediately after therapy. In addition, we present a comprehensive literature review of diagnosis and treatment options of symptomatic hepatic cysts.

CASE REPORT

A 59-year-old African-American woman was referred to the Division of Gastroenterology at the University of Pennsylvania for evaluation of abdominal pain for 2 years. The patient described frequent, intermittent epigastric pain and bloating not associated with meals or bowel movements. Typically, pain would last for one-half hour before spontaneously resolving. She had twice presented to the emergency room with abdominal pain

Figure 1 Enhanced abdominal CT scan showing large, simple hepatic cyst.

Table 1 Rare complications of simple liver cysts

Obstructive jaundice
Infection
Intracystic haemorrhage
Spontaneous rupture
Inferior vena cava obstruction
Neoplastic transformation
Primary squamous cell carcinoma
Cystadenocarcinoma
Adenosquamous carcinoma
Adenocarcinoma
Hepatocellular carinoma
Cholangiocarcinoma

and was discharged without definitive diagnosis. She also complained of early satiety and occasional nausea without weight loss.

The patient was taking daily fiber supplements and had regular, daily bowel movements. Reflux symptoms were well controlled with esomeprazole. Hypertension was treated with metoprolol and amlodipine. Other chronic medications were progesterone and estrogen. She denied non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug usage. Physical examination was unremarkable.

Laboratory evaluation showed normal liver-associated enzymes, metabolic panel, complete blood count, and urinalysis. Screening colonoscopy, performed two years prior to presentation, revealed internal hemorrhoids and melanosis. Upon presentation, she underwent double contrast upper gastrointestinal examination, which suggested antral gastritis and a hiatal hernia. On subsequent upper gastrointestinal endoscopy, the mucosa appeared normal, and a medium-sized hiatal hernia was present. Treatment with a proton pump inhibitor, fiber, and hyoscyamine failed to improve symptoms by six months.

The patient underwent abdominal CT scan with intravenous and oral contrast, which showed a large (7.7 cm) hepatic cyst in the lateral segment of the left lobe, as well as several other smaller cysts (Figure 1). Gallstones without gallbladder wall thickening or pericholecystic fluid were also visualized. On ultrasonography, tenderness was elicited specifically over the site of the cyst, which measured 10.3 cm in its longest dimension.

After several months of expectant management, the patient was referred to interventional radiology for drainage of the large hepatic cyst. Under ultrasonographic guidance, an 8-gauge French catheter was placed into the cyst, serous non-bilious fluid was aspirated, and the catheter was placed to gravity drainage. One week later, after drainage had ceased, the patient underwent ethanol sclerosis. At 4 mo follow-up, the patient was completely symptom-free. Follow-up ultrasound showed complete cyst resolution.

DISCUSSION

Previous studies, based on autopsy and surgical series, estimated a very low prevalence of simple non-parasitic hepatic cysts (0.14%-0.17%)[4]. More recently, among patients referred for abdominal ultrasonography, the prevalence of simple hepatic cysts has been reported 2.5%-4.65%[5,6]. Liver cysts have been recognized increasingly as the routine use of imaging studies becomes more widespread. Hepatic cysts may be more common in women[5] and in patients older than 40 years[6]. Symptoms, though quite rare, may be related to the space-occupying effect of large cysts[7] and may be more common in right-sided cysts[8]. Symptoms may include abdominal discomfort, chronic right upper quadrant or epigastric abdominal pain, early satiety, dyspnea, increasing abdominal girth, nausea, and vomiting[7,9]. Sanfelippo *et al*[4] reported that among 15 symptomatic patients with solitary non-parastic liver cysts, abdominal mass was present in 54%, hepatomegaly in 40%, abdominal pain in 33% and jaundice in 9% patients.

Although the natural history of simple hepatic cysts is not well known, complications appear to be quite rare (Table 1). Obstructive jaundice caused by solitary non-parasitic liver cyst is rare[11-15], and such cysts are usually large and located centrally in the liver, causing compression of the hepatic hilum[13]. However, sometimes even small hepatic cysts (3 cm in diameter) may cause common bile duct stenosis and intrahepatic biliary dilatation[15].

Liver cysts may also cause obstruction of the inferior vena cava, which may lead to massive edema of the legs[16,17] and scrotum[16]. Infections of simple hepatic cysts with *Klebsiella pneumoniae*[18] and *Escherichia coli*[19], presenting with acute onset of right upper quadrant abdominal pain, diarrhea, and fever have also been reported. Other documented complications include intracystic haemorrhage[19-23] and spontaneous rupture[23]. Neoplasms arising from solitary non-parasitic liver cysts, including primary squamous cell carcinoma[24-26], cystadenocarcinoma, adenosquamous carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, hepatocellular carinoma, and cholangio carcinoma[27-29], have been reported, but appear to be very rare. A possible association with Peutz-Jeghers syndrome has also been suggested[30].

Imaging modalities (ultrasound, CT, and MRI) are highly accurate for diagnosing simple cysts (Table 2). Large differences in echogenicity between hepatic parenchyma and cyst fluid allow for easy recognition of simple cysts by ultrasound[31]. The ultrasonographic appearance of simple cyst is characterized by well-defined, echo-free lesions with

Table 2 Radiologic features of simple hepatic cysts

Features supporting diagnosis of a simple cyst	Features not supporting diagnosis of a simple cyst
Anechoic lesion	Echoic lesion
Thin wall	Thick wall
Absence of septations	Presence of septations
No peripheral enhancement on CT/MRI	Peripheral enhancement on CT/MRI
Homogeneous appearance	Heterogeneity within the cyst
	Hydatid sand
	Presence of daughter cysts
	Heavy wall calcifications

Table 3 Alternative explanations for symptoms in patients with simple hepatic cysts

Diagnosis
Biliary colic
Gastroesophageal reflux
Peptic ulcer
Non-ulcer dyspepsia
Irritable bowel syndrome
Chronic pancreatitis
Abdominal wall pain syndrome

good through transmission and an imperceptible wall[3,32]. The presence of acoustic enhancement results from relative lack of absorption and reflection of sound by cyst fluid, as compared with hepatic parenchyma[32]. On CT scan, simple cysts appear as well-demarcated, water-density sacs, which do not demonstrate peripheral enhancement after intravenous contrast [3]. The presence of septations suggests that a cyst is not simple. Occasionally, large simple cysts may have "septations" due to hemorrhage. MRI shows simple cysts as hypointense lesions on T1-weighted and hyperintense on T2-weighted images[32,33]. Simple cysts differ from cavernous hemangiomas in that they are more hypointense on T1-weighted and of equal hyperintensity on T2-weighted images[33]. Radiologic characteristics which would argue against a cyst being simple include a thick wall, peripheral enhancement on CT or MRI, heterogeneity within the cyst, and an increase in size over time. Hepatic cysts should be differentiated from hepatic abscesses, hematomas, necrotic metastases, an intrahepatic gallbladder, biliary cystadenoma, and echinococcal (hydatid) cysts[32].

Radiologic imaging can accurately identify hydatid cysts, with an accuracy of 96% in one series[34]. Presence of hydatid sand, internal sepatations, daughter cysts, and heavy wall calcifications argue for *Echinococcus granulosis* infection, instead of a simple cyst. Epidemiologic features and serology in combination with radiologic imaging generally lead to the correct diagnosis non-invasively.

Distinction between cystic and solid hepatic lesions can be made accurately by ultrasonography, though CT or MR imaging may be more sensitive for the detection of focal hepatic masses[35]. The presence of any peripheral enhancement or thick-walled component suggests the possibility of hepatic abscess or neoplasm[32]. Small hepatic lesions with diameter < 1 cm are difficult to classify[36]. Such lesions should be differentiated from benign cysts, hepatic metastases with central necrosis, and microabscesses[36]. In order to differentiate small cysts from small metastases, follow-up imaging may be considered in selected cases[36].

The vast majority of simple hepatic cysts require no treatment. Large cysts (diameter of 4 cm or more) can be followed for stability with repeated imaging[37]. If the cyst remains unchanged for 2 years, further monitoring may be discontinued[37]. Symptomatic or enlarging cysts require consideration of alternative diagnoses, including cystadenoma, cystadenocarcinoma, and hepatic metastases. It should be stressed that attribution of symptoms to simple cysts should be undertaken with caution after excluding alternative diagnoses. Epigastric or right upper quadrant abdominal pain provoked by eating may indicate biliary colic, if gallstones are present. A successful trial of acid suppression therapy points to gastroesophageal reflux disease. Selected patients may undergo upper gastrointestinal endoscopy to diagnose erosive esophagitis or peptic ulcer disease. Esophageal pH monitoring can confirm the diagnosis of gastroesophageal reflux. If symptoms fluctuate in concert with changes in stool frequency or form, a diagnosis of irritable bowel syndrome should be suspected. Finally, a diagnosis of non-ulcer dyspepsia may be entertained in patients with unremarkable upper gastrointestinal endoscopy who have continued prominent upper abdominal pain, possibly in association with nausea and vomiting (Table 3). If the preceding diagnoses can be confidently excluded, then treatment of a large, symptomatic hepatic cyst may be undertaken. Treatment options include needle aspiration with or without injection of sclerosing solution, internal drainage with cystojejunostomy, wide deroofing, and different degrees of liver resection[37].

Percutaneous US- or CT-guided needle aspiration of hepatic cysts is associated with high recurrence rates (78%-100%)[38,39]. Several small case series have demonstrated efficacy for the performance of US- or CT-guided needle aspiration of hepatic cysts combined with alcohol injection[40-44]. Because US-guided aspiration with ethanol sclerosis is generally safe, effective, and relatively non-invasive, it may be a first-line treatment for selected symptomatic congenital hepatic cysts, especially in patients with high surgical risk or polycystic liver disease[15]. The 95%, 96% and 99% alcohol solutions are equally safe and effective[15,42,45]. Enough alcohol should be instilled to replace 25% of the aspirated cyst fluid volume[46]. For larger cysts (> 400 mL), multiple alcohol injections in the same sitting have been proposed[46]. Alcohol fixes the cells lining the cyst cavity, disabling their ability to secrete fluid and promote cyst enlargement[46]. Recurrence may occur if alcohol does not come in contact with all cells lining the cyst cavity[46] and may be more common in uncooperative patients[47]. Combinations of percutaneous aspiration with other sclerosing substances, such as iophendylate (pantopaque)[48], tetracycline chloride[49-52], doxycycline[52], minocycline chloride[53-56], and hypertonic saline solution[8] have also achieved good outcomes.

Several recent series have demonstrated good results for laparoscopic deroofing procedures. Widest possible excision of the cystic wall and concomitant argon beam

Table 4 Comparison of treatment options for symptomatic simple liver cysts

Treatment options	Advantages	Disadvantages
Observation alone	- Because most cysts are asymptomatic, intervention is unlikely to be helpful and may be harmful	- Only effective cyst treatment can prove whether symptoms are related to the cyst
US-guided aspiration	- Simple procedure - May be used as a diagnostic test to assess whether symptoms are related to the cyst	- High recurrence rate
US-guided aspiration with sclerotherapy	- Relatively non-invasive - Complications are rare - Effective - Possible in poor surgical candidates	- Less effective for uncooperative patients - Can not be performed if cyst communicates with biliary tree
Laparoscopic unroofing	- Technically feasible and effective in > 80% cases - Improved results with extensive fenestration and argon beam coagulation or electrocoagulation - Low recurrence rate (0%-20%) - Visualization of cyst interior (exclude other diagnoses)	- More invasive - Morbidity in up to 25% - Less effective for cysts which are superior, posterior, or deep within hepatic parenchyma - Less effective if prior surgery has been attempted
Laparotomy (resection, fenestration, or excision)	- Effective - Allows treatment of laparoscopically inaccessible cysts - Useful for cysts with complications - May perform cystojejunostomy at time of laparotomy for cysts with biliary communication	- Most invasive - Larger scars - Longer hospital stays compare to laparoscopy - Significant post-surgical morbidity

coagulation or electrocoagulation may improve the durability of results[57-61]. Recurrence has ranged from 0% to 20% with morbidity in 0% to 25%[57-60,62]. In one series, laparoscopic fenestration of simple hepatic cysts was found to be technically feasible in 90% with symptomatic relief in 95% during 38.5 mo follow-up[61]. Careful selection of patients who have not previously undergone surgical treatment and have large, symptomatic, superficial, and anterior cysts may improve outcomes[63]. US- or CT-guided cyst aspiration can be performed prior to laparoscopic fenestration in selected cases to assess whether symptoms are truly referable to the cyst[63]. Reported complications associated with laparoscopic deroofing include wound infection, bile leak, chest infection, subphrenic hematoma, and prolonged post-procedure drainage[37]. In selected cases, an open surgical procedure (fenestration, excision, or resection) may be preferred, despite longer recovery times and larger surgical scar, because of cyst location, surgeon expertise, or the presence of complicating factors[8,39,61,63,64].

Laparoscopic deroofing and cyst aspiration, followed by sclerosis, are both reasonable approaches for the majority of symptomatic simple liver cysts (Table 4)[64]. Whereas sclerosis may be less invasive and associated with lower rates of complications, laparoscopy is effective and provides the opportunity to directly examine the cyst interior to rule out etiologies other than a simple hepatic cyst[64,65].

It is important to rule out biliary communication before sclerosing a cyst, as irreversible sclerosing cholangitis has been reported as a complication[7,16,46,52,66]. The presence of cystobiliary communication may be established by endoscopic retrograde cholangiography or aspiration of bile-stained cystic fluid and is often treated by open cystojejunostomy[39], although the cystobiliary communication may be closed laparoscopically[67].

In summary, we present the case of a large, symptomatic simple hepatic cyst. We established that the cyst was the cause of symptoms only after systematically excluding alternative diagnoses through testing and empiric therapy. The usual standard of care for patients with large, simple hepatic cysts is observation, but our case demonstrates that large cysts can occasionally be responsible for symptoms. In selected cases, symptoms may respond to cyst treatment. Our treatment approach was ultrasound-guided aspiration and ethanol sclerotherapy. We believe that aspiration alone is associated with unacceptably high rates of recurrence. In our patient, excellent symptomatic and radiologic responses were achieved. In the case of cyst recurrence laparoscopic deroofing may be considered, though complications may occur in up to 25% of cases.

REFERENCES

1 **Taylor BR,** Langer B. Current surgical management of hepatic cyst disease. *Adv Surg* 1997; **31:** 127-148

2 **Cowles RA,** Mulholland MW. Solitary hepatic cysts. *J Am Coll Surg* 2000; **191:** 311-321

3 **Nisenbaum HL,** Rowling SE. Ultrasound of focal hepatic lesions. *Semin Roentgenol* 1995; **30:** 324-346

4 **Sanfelippo PM,** Beahrs OH, Weiland LH.Cystic disease of the liver. *Ann Surg* 1974; **179:** 922-925

5 **Gaines PA,** Sampson MA. The prevalence and characterization of simple hepatic cysts by ultrasound examination. *Br J Radiol* 1989; **62:** 335-337

6 **Caremani M,** Vincenti A, Benci A, Sassoli S, Tacconi D. Ecographic epidemiology of non-parasitic hepatic cysts. *J Clin Ultrasound* 1993; **21:** 115-118

7 **Lai EC,** Wong J. Symptomatic nonparasitic cysts of the liver. *World J Surg* 1990; **14:** 452-456

8 **Sanchez H,** Gagner M, Rossi RL, Jenkins RL, Lewis WD, Munson JL, Braasch JW. Surgical management of nonparasitic cystic liver disease. *Am J Surg* 1991; **161:** 113-118; discussion 113-118

9 **Karavias DD,** Tsamandas AC, Payatakes AH, Solomou E, Salakou S, Felekouras ES, Tepetes KN. Simple (non-parasitic) liver cysts: clinical presentation and outcome. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2000; **47:** 1439-1443

10 **Azar GM,** Kutin N, Kahn E. Unusual hepatic tumor with

features of mesenchymal hamartoma and congenital solitary nonparasitic cyst. *Pediatr Dev Pathol* 2003; **6:** 265-269
11 **Spivey JR,** Garrido JA, Reddy KR, Jeffers LJ, Schiff ER. ERCP documentation of obstructive jaundice caused by a solitary, centrally located, benign hepatic cyst. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1990; **36:** 521-523
12 **Terada N,** Shimizu T, Imai Y, Kobayashi T, Terashima M, Furukawa K, Kumazawa S, Kiyosawa K. Benign, non-parasitic hepatic cyst causing obstructive jaundice. *Intern Med* 1993; **32:** 857-860
13 **Kanai T,** Kenmochi T, Takabayashi T, Hangai N, Kawano Y, Suwa T, Yonekawa H, Miyazawa N. Obstructive jaundice caused by a huge liver cyst riding on the hilum: report of a case. *Surg Today* 1999; **29:** 791-794
14 **Cappell MS.** Obstructive jaundice from benign, nonparasitic hepatic cysts: identification of risk factors and percutaneous aspiration for diagnosis and treatment. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1988; **83:** 93-96
15 **Inaba T,** Nagashima I, Ogawa F, Tomioka M, Okinaga K. Diffuse intrahepatic bile duct dilation caused by a very small hepatic cyst. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2003; **10:** 106-108
16 **Frisell J,** Röjdmark S, Arvidsson H, Lundh G. Compression of the inferior caval vein--a rare complication of a large non-parasitic liver cyst. *Acta Med Scand* 1979; **205:** 541-542
17 **Kairaluoma MI,** Leinonen A, Ståhlberg M, Päivänsalo M, Kiviniemi H, Siniluoto T. Percutaneous aspiration and alcohol sclerotherapy for symptomatic hepatic cysts. An alternative to surgical intervention. *Ann Surg* 1989; **210:** 208-215
18 **Yoshida H,** Onda M, Tajiri T, Mamada Y, Taniai N, Mineta S, Hirakata A, Futami R, Arima Y, Inoue M, Hatta S, Kishimoto A. Infected hepatic cyst. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2003; **50:** 507-509
19 **Yoshida H,** Tajiri T, Mamada Y, Taniai N, Kawano Y, Mizuguchi Y, Shimizu T, Takahashi T, Uchida E, Watanabe M, Uchida E. Infected solitary hepatic cyst. *J Nippon Med Sch* 2003; **70:** 515-518
20 **Hanazaki K**, Wakabayashi M, Mori H, Sodeyama H, Yoshizawa K, Yokoyama S, Sode Y, Kawamura N, Miyazaki T. Hemorrhage into a simple liver cyst: diagnostic implications of a recent case. *J Gastroenterol* 1997; **32:** 848-851
21 **Kitajima Y,** Okayama Y, Hirai M, Hayashi K, Imai H, Okamoto T, Aoki S, Akita S, Gotoh K, Ohara H, Nomura T, Joh T, Yokoyama Y, Itoh M. Intracystic hemorrhage of a simple liver cyst mimicking a biliary cystadenocarcinoma. *J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38:** 190-193
22 **Yoshida H,** Onda M, Tajiri T, Mamada Y, Taniai N, Uchida E, Arima Y, Akimaru K, Yamashita K. Intracystic hemorrhage of a simple hepatic cyst. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2002; **49:** 1095-1097
23 **Yamaguchi M,** Kuzume M, Matsumoto T, Matsumiya A, Nakano H, Kumada K. Spontaneous rupture of a nonparasitic liver cyst complicated by intracystic hemorrhage. *J Gastroenterol* 1999; **34:** 645-648
24 **Pliskin A,** Cualing H, Stenger RJ. Primary squamous cell carcinoma originating in congenital cysts of the liver. Report of a case and review of the literature. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 1992; **116:** 105-107
25 **Monteagudo M,** Vidal G, Moreno M, Bella R, Díaz MJ, Colomer O, Santesmasses A. Squamous cell carcinoma and infection in a solitary hepatic cyst. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1998; **10:** 1051-1053
26 **Banbury J,** Conlon KC, Ghossein R, Brennan MF. Primary squamous cell carcinoma within a solitary nonparasitic hepatic cyst. *J Surg Oncol* 1994; **57:** 210-212
27 **Jones WL,** Mountain JC, Warren KW. Symptomatic non-parasitic cysts of the liver. *Br J Surg* 1974; **61:** 118-123
28 **Tomioka T,** Tsunoda T, Harada N, Tsuchiya R, Kajiwara Y, Tokunaga S, Matsuo T, Ikeda T. Adenosquamous carcinoma of the liver. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1987; **82:** 1203-1206
29 **Iwatsuki S,** Starzl TE. Personal experience with 411 hepatic resections. *Ann Surg* 1988; **208:** 421-434
30 **Thrasher S,** Adelman S, Chang CH. Hepatic cyst associated with Peutz-Jeghers syndrome. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 1990; **114:** 1278-1280
31 **Marn CS,** Bree RL, Silver TM. Ultrasonography of liver. Technique and focal and diffuse disease. *Radiol Clin North Am* 1991; **29:** 1151-1170
32 **Mergo PJ**, Ros PR. Benign lesions of the liver. *Radiol Clin North Am* 1998; **36:** 319-331
33 **Kanzer GK,** Weinreb JC. Magnetic resonance imaging of diseases of the liver and biliary system. *Radiol Clin North Am* 1991; **29:** 1259-1284
34 **Munzer D.** New perspectives in the diagnosis of Echinococcus disease. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1991; **13:** 415-423
35 **Schwartz JH,** Ellison EC. Focal liver lesions. Evaluation of simple and complex cysts. *Postgrad Med* 1994; **95:** 149-152
36 **Foley WD,** Jochem RJ. Computed tomography. Focal and diffuse liver disease. *Radiol Clin North Am* 1991; **29:** 1213-1233
37 **Regev A**, Reddy KR. Benign solid and cystic tumors of the liver. In: The requisities in gastroenterology. Volume 3: Hepatobiliary tract and pancreas. Reddy KR, Long WB, eds. Edinburgh: Mosby, 2004: 189-214
38 **Saini S,** Mueller PR, Ferrucci JT Jr, Simeone JF, Wittenberg J, Butch RJ. Percutaneous aspiration of hepatic cysts does not provide definitive therapy. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1983; **141:** 559-560
39 **Koperna T,** Vogl S, Satzinger U, Schulz F. Nonparasitic cysts of the liver: results and options of surgical treatment. *World J Surg* 1997; **21:** 850-854; discussion 850-854
40 **Montorsi M,** Torzilli G, Fumagalli U, Bona S, Rostai R, De Simone M, Rovati V, Mosca F, Filice C. Percutaneous alcohol sclerotherapy of simple hepatic cysts. Results from a multicentre survey in Italy. *HPB Surg* 1994; **8:** 89-94
41 **Tikkakoski T,** Mäkelä JT, Leinonen S, Päivänsalo M, Merikanto J, Karttunen A, Siniluoto T, Kairaluoma MI. Treatment of symptomatic congenital hepatic cysts with single-session percutaneous drainage and ethanol sclerosis: technique and outcome. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 1996; **7:** 235-239
42 **Larssen TB,** Viste A, Jensen DK, Søndenaa K, Røkke O, Horn A. Single-session alcohol sclerotherapy in benign symptomatic hepatic cysts. *Acta Radiol* 1997; **38:** 993-997
43 **Okano A,** Hajiro K, Takakuwa H, Nishio A. Alcohol sclerotherapy of hepatic cysts: its effect in relation to ethanol concentration. *Hepatol Res* 2000; **17:** 179-184
44 **Furuta T,** Yoshida Y, Saku M, Honda H, Muranaka T, Oshiumi Y, Kanematsu T, Sugimachi K. Treatment of symptomatic non-parasitic liver cysts--surgical treatment versus alcohol injection therapy. *HPB Surg* 1990; **2:** 269-277; discussion 277-279
45 **McCullough KM.** Alcohol sclerotherapy of simple parenchymal liver cysts. *Australas Radiol* 1993; **37:** 177-181
46 **Bean WJ,** Rodan BA. Hepatic cysts: treatment with alcohol. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1985; **144:** 237-241
47 **Horsmans Y,** Laka A, Gigot JF, Geubel AP. Serum and cystic fluid CA 19-9 determinations as a diagnostic help in liver cysts of uncertain nature. *Liver* 1996; **16:** 255-257
48 **Goldstein HM,** Carlyle DR, Nelson RS. Treatment of symptomatic hepatic cyst by percutaneous instillation of Pantopaque. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 1976; **127:** 850-853
49 **Lopes HM,** Portela FA, e Silva Pontes JM, Leitão MJ, Ribeiro JC, Freitas DS. Treatment of benign hepatic cysts by instillation of tetracycline hydrochloride. *Hepatogastroenterology* 1998; **45:** 496-499
50 **McFarlane ME,** Venugopal R, McDonald A, Ewing R, Newnham MS, Johnson L. Management of hepatic cysts by percutaneous drainage and instillation of tetracycline hydrochloride. *West Indian Med J* 2001; **50:** 230-233
51 **Davies CW,** McIntyre AS. Treatment of a symptomatic hepatic cyst by tetracycline hydrochloride instillation sclerosis. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1996; **8:** 173-175
52 **vanSonnenberg E,** Wroblicka JT, D'Agostino HB, Mathieson JR, Casola G, O'Laoide R, Cooperberg PL. Symptomatic hepatic cysts: percutaneous drainage and sclerosis. *Radiology* 1994; **190:** 387-392
53 **Hagiwara H,** Kasahara A, Hayashi N, Kono M, Suzuki K, Kashio S, Fusamoto H, Kamada T. Successful treatment of a hepatic cyst by one-shot instillation of minocycline chloride. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **103:** 675-677

54 **Yamada N,** Shinzawa H, Ukai K, Makino N, Matsuhashi T, Wakabayashi H, Togashi H, Takahashi T. Treatment of symptomatic hepatic cysts by percutaneous instillation of minocycline hydrochloride. *Dig Dis Sci* 1994; **39:** 2503-2509
55 **Cellier C,** Cuenod CA, Deslandes P, Auroux J, Landi B, Siauve N, Barbier JP, Frija G. Symptomatic hepatic cysts: treatment with single-shot injection of minocycline hydrochloride. *Radiology* 1998; **206:** 205-209
56 **Yoshida H,** Onda M, Tajiri T, Arima Y, Mamada Y, Taniai N, Akimaru K. Long-term results of multiple minocycline hydrochloride injections for the treatment of symptomatic solitary hepatic cyst. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2003; **18:** 595-598
57 **Zacherl J,** Scheuba C, Imhof M, Jakesz R, Függer R. Long-term results after laparoscopic unroofing of solitary symptomatic congenital liver cysts. *Surg Endosc* 2000; **14:** 59-62
58 **Regev A,** Reddy KR, Berho M, Sleeman D, Levi JU, Livingstone AS, Levi D, Ali U, Molina EG, Schiff ER. Large cystic lesions of the liver in adults: a 15-year experience in a tertiary center. *J Am Coll Surg* 2001; **193:** 36-45
59 **Fiamingo P,** Tedeschi U, Veroux M, Cillo U, Brolese A, Da Rold A, Madia C, Zanus G, D'Amico DF. Laparoscopic treatment of simple hepatic cysts and polycystic liver disease. *Surg Endosc* 2003; **17:** 623-626
60 **Tagaya N,** Nemoto T, Kubota K. Long-term results of laparoscopic unroofing of symptomatic solitary nonparasitic hepatic cysts. *Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech* 2003; **13:** 76-79
61 **Gigot JF,** Metairie S, Etienne J, Horsmans Y, van Beers BE, Sempoux C, Deprez P, Materne R, Geubel A, Glineur D, Gianello P. The surgical management of congenital liver cysts. *Surg Endosc* 2001; **15:** 357-363
62 **Diez J,** Decoud J, Gutierrez L, Suhl A, Merello J. Laparoscopic treatment of symptomatic cysts of the liver. *Br J Surg* 1998; **85:** 25-27
63 **Gigot JF,** Legrand M, Hubens G, de Canniere L, Wibin E, Deweer F, Druart ML, Bertrand C, Devriendt H, Droissart R, Tugilimana M, Hauters P, Vereecken L. Laparoscopic treatment of nonparasitic liver cysts: adequate selection of patients and surgical technique. *World J Surg* 1996; **20:** 556-561
64 **Moorthy K,** Mihssin N, Houghton PW. The management of simple hepatic cysts: sclerotherapy or laparoscopic fenestration. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 2001; **83:** 409-414
65 **Katkhouda N,** Mavor E. Laparoscopic management of benign liver disease. *Surg Clin North Am* 2000; **80:** 1203-1211
66 **Klingler PJ,** Gadenstätter M, Schmid T, Bodner E, Schwelberger HG. Treatment of hepatic cysts in the era of laparoscopic surgery. *Br J Surg* 1997; **84:** 438-444
67 **Masatsugu T,** Shimizu S, Noshiro H, Mizumoto K, Yamaguchi K, Chijiiwa K, Tanaka M. Liver cyst with biliary communication successfully treated with laparoscopic deroofing: a case report. *JSLS* 2003; **7:** 249-252

S- Editor Guo SY **L- Editor** Kumar M **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2955-2957
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

CASE REPORT

Autoimmune pancreatitis metachronously associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis with IgG4-positive plasma cell infiltration

Terumi Kamisawa, Pong Yui Chen, Yuyang Tu, Hitoshi Nakajima, Naoto Egawa

Terumi Kamisawa, Pong Yui Chen, Yuyang Tu, Hitoshi Nakajima, Naoto Egawa, Department of Internal Medicine, Tokyo Metropolitan Komagome Hospital, Tokyo, Japan
Correspondence to: Terumi Kamisawa, MD, PhD, Department of Internal Medicine, Tokyo Metropolitan Komagome Hospital, 3-18-22 Honkomagome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-8677, Japan. kamisawa@cick.jp
Telephone: +81-3-38232101 Fax: +81-3-38241552
Received: 2006-02-08 Accepted: 2006-02-28

Abstract

Retroperitoneal fibrosis is an uncommon disorder characterized by the formation of a dense plaque of fibrous tissue in the retroperitoneum, and its etiology remains unknown. Autoimmune pancreatitis is a rare type of chronic pancreatitis characterized by fibrosis with abundant infiltration of IgG4-positive plasma cells and lymphocytes and obliterative phlebitis in the pancreas. We present a case of autoimmune pancreatitis that developed 10 mo after the occurrence of retroperitoneal fibrosis. Histological findings of the resected retroperitoneal mass were marked periureteral fibrosis with abundant infiltration of IgG4-positive plasma cells and lymphocytes and obliterative phlebitis. These findings suggest a common pathophysiological mechanism for retroperitoneal fibrosis and autoimmune pancreatitis in this case. Some cases of retroperitoneal fibrosis might be a retroperitoneal lesion of IgG4-related sclerosing disease.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Autoimmune pancreatitis; Retroperitoneal fibrosis; IgG4

Kamisawa T, Chen PY, Tu Y, Nakajima H, Egawa N. Autoimmune pancreatitis metachronously associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis with IgG4-positive plasma cell infiltration. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2955-2957

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2955.asp

INTRODUCTION

Retroperitoneal fibrosis is an uncommon disorder characterized by the formation of a dense plaque of fibrous tissue in the retroperitoneum. Although retroperitoneal fibrosis leads to ureteral encasement and consequently hydronephrosis in most cases, it may also involve other structures in the retroperitoneum as well as in multiple unattached sites. Retroperitoneal fibrosis may be part of a systemic fibrosing disease[1,2]. Although the exact etiology of retroperitoneal fibrosis remains unknown, some cases respond well to steroid therapy[2,3].

Autoimmune pancreatitis is a recently noted clinical entity and a rare group of pancreatitis in which autoimmunity is suspected as a pathogenic mechanism. It is characterized by enlargement of the pancreas, irregular narrowing of the main pancreatic duct, elevated serum IgG4 concentrations, favorable response to steroid therapy and lymphoplasmacytic infiltration with fibrosis in the pancreas[4,5]. Recent studies have revealed occasional coexistence of autoimmune pancreatitis with other systemic exocrinopathy, such as sclerosing cholangitis[6] or sclerosing sialadenitis[7]. We have previously reported 2 other cases of autoimmune pancreatitis associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis[8]. Here, we report a case of autoimmune pancreatitis that occurred 10 mo after retroperitoneal fibrosis. We also focus on the common histopathological features with abundant IgG4-positive plasma cell infiltration in both the pancreas and retroperitoneal mass.

CASE REPORT

A 75-year-old male was admitted to another hospital with a complaint of back pain. Abdominal computed tomography (CT) showed left hydronephrosis (Figure 1A) caused by a retroperitoneal mass with encasement of the ureter (Figure 1B), which was highly suggestive of a ureteral tumor. Resection of the left lower ureter and ureterostomy were performed. Histological examination of the retroperitoneal mass revealed marked periureteral fibrosis with dense perivascular infiltration of lymphocytes and plasma cells (Figure 2A) and obliterative phlebitis (Figure 2B). These findings were compatible with retroperitoneal fibrosis. Ten months later, jaundice with abdominal pain appeared, and he was referred to our hospital for further examination.

Laboratory studies on admission were as follows: total serum bilirubin 10.4 mg/dL (normal range: 0.2-1.1 mg/dL), alkaline phosphatase 1418 IU/L (115-359 IU/L), γ-glutamyl trasnpeptidase 558 IU/L (9-70 IU/L), glutamic-

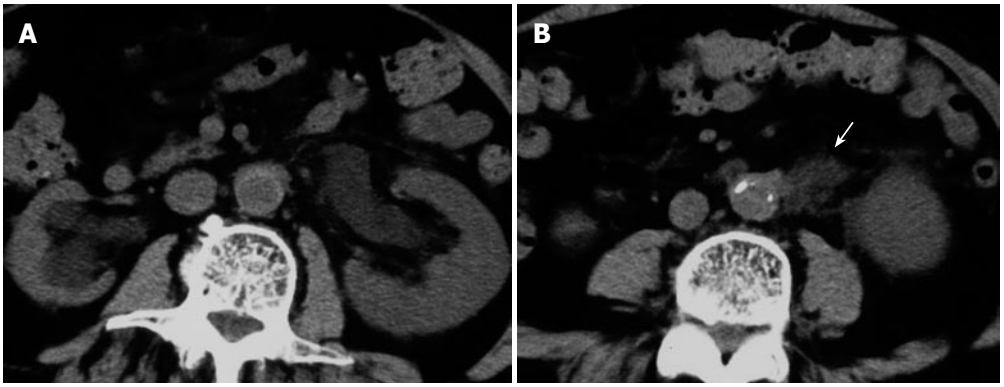


Figure 1 CT performed performed in another hospital showing left hydronephrosis (**A**) caused by a retroperitoneal mass (arrow) (**B**).

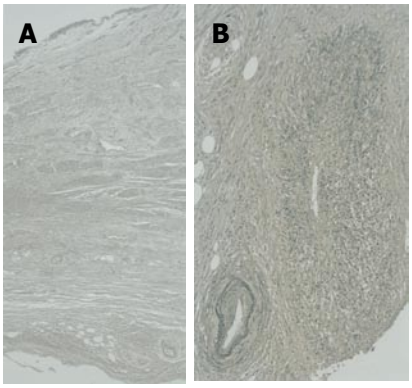


Figure 2 Histological findings of the retroperitoneal mass showing marked periureteral fibrosis with dense perivascular infiltration of lymphocytes and plasma cells (**A**, H&E) and obliterative phlebitis (**B**, Elastica Van Gienson stain).

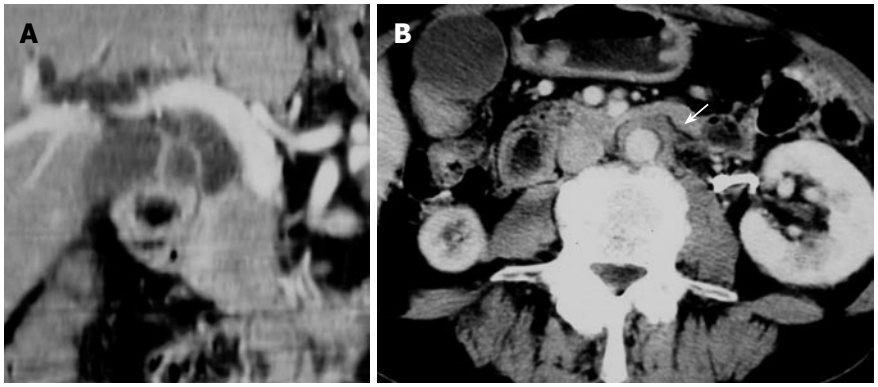


Figure 3 CT performed in our hospital showing the lower common bile duct obstructed with focally swollen pancreatic head (**A**) and soft tissue surrounding the aorta (arrow) (**B**).

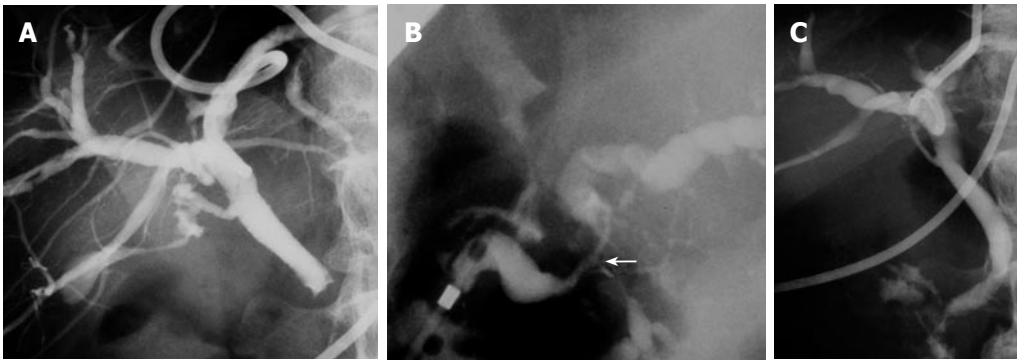


Figure 4 Percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography showing complete obstruction of the lower common bile duct (**A**) and resolution of the bile duct after steroid therapy (**C**). Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography demonstrating segmental narrowing of the main pancreatic duct in the pancreatic head (arrow) (**B**).

oxaloacetic transaminase 277 IU/L (12-32 IU/L), amylase 79 IU/L (45-155 IU/L), and elastase-1 1313 ng/mL (72-432 ng/mL). Tumor marker levels were within normal range. Although serum IgG level was 1380 mg/dL (870-1 700 mg/dL), serum IgG4 levels was elevated to 240 mg/dL (< 70 mg/dL). Antinuclear antibody and rheumatoid factor were negative. CT showed the lower common bile duct obstructed with focally swollen pancreatic head (Figure 3A) and soft tissue surrounding the aorta (Figure 3B). Magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) showed the stricture of the lower common bile duct with dilatation of the upper common bile duct, but the pancreatic duct was not visualized. Percutaneous transhepatic biliary drainage was performed, and the common bile duct was completely obstructed in the lower portion (Figure 4A). Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) demonstrated segmental narrowing of the main pancreatic duct in the pancreatic head (Figure 4B). Biopsy specimen taken from the major duodenal papilla during duodenoscopy revealed severe lymphoplasmacytic infiltration. Immunohistochemical studies using anti-IgG4 antibody (Binding Site, Birmingham, UK) with avidin-biotin-peroxidase complex (ABC) revealed abundant infiltration of IgG4-positive plasma cells in tissue specimens of both resected retroperitoneal mass (Figure 5A) and biopsied major duodenal papilla (Figure 5B). We diagnosed autoimmune pancreatitis and treated him with 30 mg predonisolone daily for 2 wk. The dose was

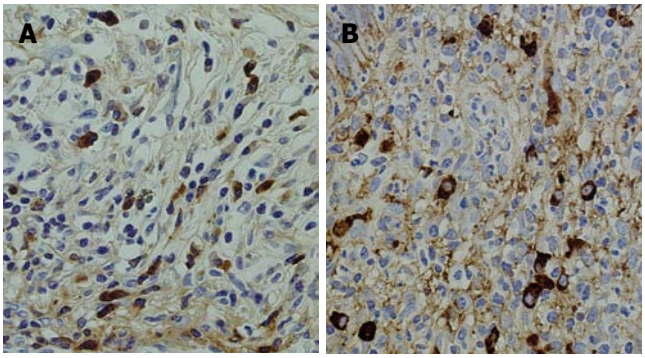


Figure 5 IgG4 immunostaining showing abundant infiltration of IgG4-positive plasma cells in tissue specimens of resected retroperitoneal mass (**A**) and biopsied major duodenal papilla (**B**).

tapered by 2.5-5 mg every 1-2 wk until a daily maintenance dose of 5 mg. After steroid therapy, findings on cholangiopancreatography and CT improved (Figure 4C), and the biliary drainage tube could be withdrawn. Serum IgG4 lowered to 83 mg/dL.

DISCUSSION

We have previously reported 2 other cases of autoimmune pancreatitis associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis[8]. A total of 9 cases including the present case have been reported[8-12]. All were middle-aged or elderly males. Autoimmune pancreatitis was synchronous to retroperitoneal fibrosis in 4 cases, and metachronous to retroperitoneal fibrosis in 3 cases. Retroperitoneal fibrosis was metachronous to autoimmune pancreatitis in 2 cases. Steroid therapy was effective for both pancreatic and retroperitoneal lesions.

Histological findings characteristic to autoimmune pancreatitis are dense lymphoplasmacytic infiltration with fibrosis and obliterative phlebitis in the pancreas[3,4]. We have reported that this lymphoplasmacytic infiltration with fibrosis is observed in the peripancreatic retroperitoneal tissue, biliary tract, and salivary glands, as well as in the pancreas of patients with autoimmune pancreatitis. Furthermore, an abundant infiltration of IgG4-positive plasma cells was observed in the various organs of patients with autoimmune pancreatitis, including the peripancreatic retroperitoneal tissue, biliary tract, salivary glands, gastric mucosa, lymph nodes, and pancreas, but an abundant infiltration of IgG4-positive plasma cells was not detected in the organs of patients with other diseases[13,14]. Major duodenal papilla also showed fibrosis with abundant infiltration of IgG4-positive plasma cells[15]. We proposed the existence of a novel clinicopathological entity, an IgG4-related systemic disease characterized by a preponderance for elderly male, and extensive IgG4-positive plasma cell and T lymphocyte infiltration of organs[14]. We also suggest that autoimmune pancreatitis is not simply a pancreatitis but that, in fact, it is a pancreatic lesion reflecting an IgG4-related systemic disease, and that in some cases only organs other than the pancreas might be clinically involved[14].

In the present case, the retroperitoneal mass, that occurred 10 mo prior to autoimmune pancreatitis, histologically showed marked periureteral fibrosis with abundant infiltration of IgG4-positive plasma cells and lymphocytes and obliterative phlebitis, which were similar findings to those in the pancreas and peripancreatic retroperitoneal tissues of patients with autoimmune pancreatitis. These findings suggest a common pathophysiological mechanism for retroperitoneal fibrosis and autoimmune pancreatitis in this case. Although the exact etiology of retroperitoneal fibrosis remains unknown, some cases might be a retroperitoneal lesion of IgG4-related sclerosing disease.

REFERENCES

1 **Koep L**, Zuidema GD. The clinical significance of retroperitoneal fibrosis. *Surgery* 1977; **81**: 250-257
2 **Mitchinson MJ**. Some clinical aspects of idiopathic retroperitoneal fibrosis. *Br J Surg* 1972; **59**: 58-60
3 **Moody TE**, Vaughan ED Jr. Steroids in the treatment of retroperitoneal fibrosis. *J Urol* 1979; **121**: 109-111
4 **Okazaki K**, Chiba T. Autoimmune related pancreatitis. *Gut* 2002; **51**: 1-4
5 **Kamisawa T**, Egawa N, Nakajima H, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Kamata N. Clinical difficulties in the differentiation of autoimmune pancreatitis and pancreatic carcinoma. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: 2694-2699
6 **Nakazawa T**, Ohara H, Sano H, Ando T, Aoki S, Kobayashi S, Okamoto T, Nomura T, Joh T, Itoh M. Clinical differences between primary sclerosing cholangitis and sclerosing cholangitis with autoimmune pancreatitis. *Pancreas* 2005; **30**: 20-25
7 **Dooreck BS**, Katz P, Barkin JS. Autoimmune pancreatitis in the spectrum of autoimmune exocrinopathy associated with sialoadenitis and anosmia. *Pancreas* 2004; **28**: 105-107
8 **Kamisawa T**, Matsukawa M, Ohkawa M. Autoimmune pancreatitis associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis. *JOP* 2005; **6**: 260-263
9 **Hamano H**, Kawa S, Ochi Y, Unno H, Shiba N, Wajiki M, Nakazawa K, Shimojo H, Kiyosawa K. Hydronephrosis associated with retroperitoneal fibrosis and sclerosing pancreatitis. *Lancet* 2002; **359**: 1403-1404
10 **Fukukura Y**, Fujiyoshi F, Nakamura F, Hamada H, Nakajo M. Autoimmune pancreatitis associated with idiopathic retroperitoneal fibrosis. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2003; **181**: 993-995
11 **Uchida K**, Okazaki K, Asada M, Yazumi S, Ohana M, Chiba T, Inoue T. Case of chronic pancreatitis involving an autoimmune mechanism that extended to retroperitoneal fibrosis. *Pancreas* 2003; **26**: 92-94
12 **Fukui T**, Okazaki K, Yoshizawa H, Ohashi S, Tamaki H, Kawasaki K, Matsuura M, Asada M, Nakase H, Nakashima Y, Nishio A, Chiba T. A case of autoimmune pancreatitis associated with sclerosing cholangitis, retroperitoneal fibrosis and Sjögren's syndrome. *Pancreatology* 2005; **5**: 86-91
13 **Kamisawa T**, Funata N, Hayashi Y, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Amemiya K, Egawa N, Nakajima H. Close relationship between autoimmune pancreatitis and multifocal fibrosclerosis. *Gut* 2003; **52**: 683-687
14 **Kamisawa T**, Funata N, Hayashi Y, Eishi Y, Koike M, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Egawa N, Nakajima H. A new clinicopathological entity of IgG4-related autoimmune disease. *J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38**: 982-984
15 **Kamisawa T**, Chen PY, Tu Y, Nakajima H, Egawa N, Tsuruta K, Okamoto A, Kamata N. MRCP and MRI findings in 9 patients with autoimmune pancreatitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 2919-2922

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Kumar M **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2958-2961
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

CASE REPORT

Gastric signet-ring adenocarcinoma presenting with breast metastasis

Anastasios L Boutis, Charalambos Andreadis, Frideriki Patakiouta, Despina Mouratidou

Anastasios L Boutis, Charalambos Andreadis, Despina Mouratidou, 3rd Department of Clinical Oncology, Theagenion Cancer Hospital, Thessaloniki, Greece
Frideriki Patakiouta, Division of Pathology, Theagenion Cancer Hospital, Thessaloniki, Greece
Correspondence to: Dr. Anastasios Boutis, 3rd Department of Clinical Oncology, Theagenion Cancer Hospital, 54007, Thessaloniki, Greece. tboutis@otenet.gr
Telephone: +30-231-898720 Fax: +30-231-256909
Received: 2205-11-17 Accepted: 2006-01-18

Abstract

Breast metastases from gastric cancer are extremely rare. A case report of a 37-year-old female with breast inflammatory invasion and ascites is described. Breast biopsy revealed carcinomatous invasion of the lymphatics from adenocarcinoma cells with signet-ring features. Estrogen (ER) and progesterone receptors (PR) and c-erb-B2 were negative. Upper gastrointestinal endoscopy revealed a prepyloric ulcerative mass. Histopathologic examination of the lesion showed infiltration from a high-grade adenocarcinoma, identical with that of the breast. Immunostaining was positive for cytokeratins CK-7 and CK-20 and CEA and negative for ER and PR. Ascitic fluid cytology was positive for adenocarcinoma cells. Mammography was not diagnostic. Abdominal CT scanning revealed large ovarian masses suggestive of metastases (Krukenberg's tumor). A cisplatin-based regimen was given but no objective response was observed. The patient died six months after initial diagnosis. A review of the literature is performed.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Gastric adenocarcinoma; Signet-ring; Breast metastasis; Ovarian metastasis

Boutis AL, Andreadis C, Patakiouta F, Mouratidou D. Gastric signet-ring adenocarcinoma presenting with breast metastasis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2958-2961

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2958.asp

INTRODUCTION

Breast metastases from extra-mammary neoplasms are extremely rare. The incidence ranges between 1%-2% in clinical and 1.7%-6.6% in autopsy series[1-2]. Less than 500 cases of secondary breast tumors have been reported so far in the English speaking literature[3]. The most common primary malignancies metastasizing to the breast are malignant melanoma, lung cancer, carcinoid tumors, ovarian cancer, renal cancer, gastrointestinal carcinomas and a variety of other primaries[2-4]. Herein, a case of a woman with gastric signet-ring adenocarcinoma presenting with breast metastasis is described.

CASE REPORT

A 37-year-old female presented to our department in September 2003 with abdominal distention and painful and edematous left breast. Her medical history was unremarkable except for three attempts of *in vitro* fertilization during the last two years. Physical examination revealed ascites and marked left breast inflammation. Neither discrete tumor nodules in the breast nor any enlarged axillary nor supraclavicular lymph nodes were palpable. Mammography showed diffuse increased density and skin thickening, without evidence of mass or microcalcifications. Abdominal ultrasonography established the presence of bilateral cystic adnexal masses with thickened walls and ascitic fluid. Abdominal CT confirmed the presence of large ovarian masses suggestive of metastases (Krukenberg's tumor); however, there was no evidence of lung, liver or bone metastases. Serum tumor markers CEA, CA 15-3 and CA 19-9 were within normal limits and CA 125 was slightly elevated (63.6 U/L). Ascitic fluid cytology was found positive for adenocarcinoma. Core needle biopsy of the left breast revealed diffuse infiltration of the lymphatics in form of tumor emboli from neoplastic cells with signet-ring features (Figure 1). Immunohistochemical studies for estrogen receptor (ER) and progesterone receptor (PR) as well as for c-erb-B2 were negative. Upper gastrointestinal endoscopy demonstrated a large prepyloric ulcerative mass. Biopsy of the lesion revealed infiltration from a diffuse-type high-grade gastric adenocarcinoma with signet-ring features (Figure 2 and Figure 3). Malignant cells were positive for cytokeratins 7 and 20 (CK7, CK20) and CEA, and negative for ER and PR. Subsequent study of the breast biopsy revealed similar findings (positive staining for CK7, CK20 and CEA). The patient was treated with cisplatin-based chemotherapy; but she showed no objective response and died six months after the initial diagnosis.

DISCUSSION

Metastatic breast involvement from extra-mammary

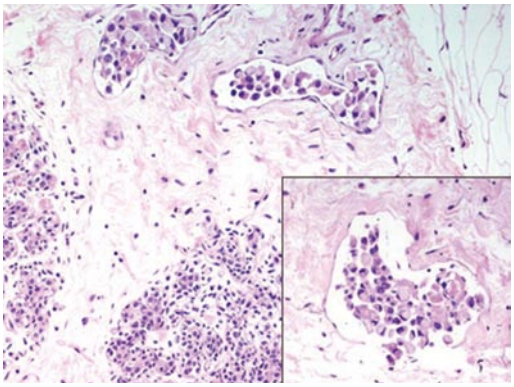


Figure 1 Breast biopsy showing breast lymphatic invasion from neoplastic cells with signet-ring features (Hematoxylin & eosin, 200 ×, 400 ×).

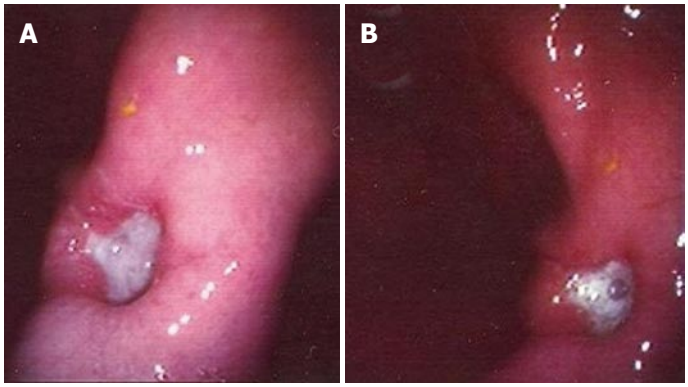


Figure 2 (**A** & **B**) Upper GI endoscopy of the patient, showing a large ulcerative lesion in the prepyloric region.

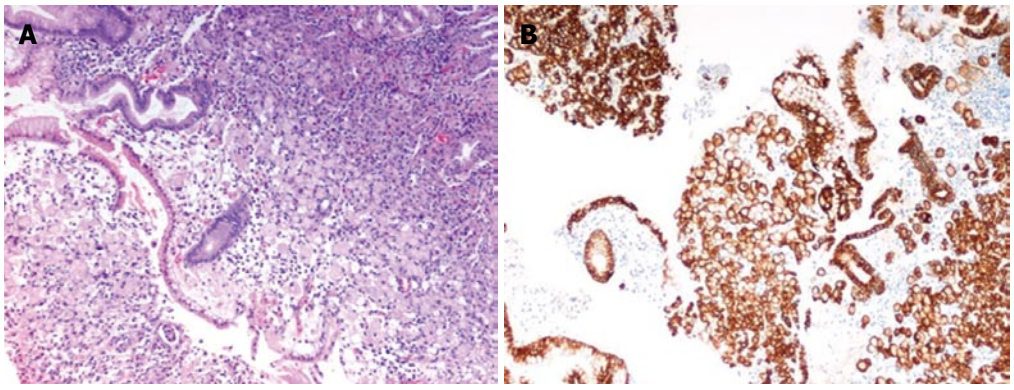


Figure 3 Gastric biopsy showing infiltration from neoplastic cells with signet-ring features (Hematoxylin & eosin, 100 ×). Right picture shows immunohistochemical stain for CK-7 (Hematoxylin & eosin, 100 ×).

primaries is unusual. Most cases are related with extensive disease burden and carry an unfavorable prognosis[5]. Breast invasion is the initial manifestation of the disease in 25%-40% of the cases[2]. Mammographically, metastatic tumors in the breast present as well-circumscribed nodules without microcalcifications, mimicking benign breast lesions[5]. Calcifications may be seen in metastatic deposits from ovarian carcinoma with psammoma bodies[6]. The most common localization of metastatic lesions is the upper-outer quadrant of the left breast. Breast involvement is bilateral in 25% of the cases, and there is concomitant axillary lymph node enlargement in up to 15%[5]. The occurrence of multiple tumor nodules is unusual and diffuse involvement mimicking inflammatory breast carcinoma is rare[7,8]. The latter clinical manifestation, due to lymphatic invasion, is rapidly progressive, and may produce clinical signs of breast involvement before a firm metastatic nodule is formed, which is even more common in hematological malignancies (leukemias, lymphomas).

Breast metastases from gastric cancer are extremely rare. To date, only 25 cases have been reported in the English speaking literature and are mentioned in Table 1. Signet-ring features have been reported in 13 cases. From reports with available data, it seems that breast involvement usually follows the detection of gastric carcinoma. Breast metastasis as initial manifestation of a primary gastric tumor, as in our case, has been reported in 10 cases. In half of these cases breast involvement had the clinical appearance of inflammatory breast cancer.

Breast metastases from gastric carcinoma differ from primary breast cancer in their histopathologic characteristics. Immunostaining is usually negative for estrogen and progesterone receptors[9,10] as well as for c-erbB-2[3]. GCDFP-15 (gross cystic disease fluid protein-15) is also absent[10]. There is no evidence of an *in situ* component[3,5] and a lack of desmoplastic response[3]. On the contrary, lymphatic tumor emboli and epithelial markers like CK7, CK20 and CEA are usually present[3,5].

In our case, the presence of signet-ring cells within breast lymphatics, the absence of mass or microcalcifications in the mammography, the lack of an *in situ* component and hormone receptor negativity strongly suggested an extra-mammary primary. It is of noted interest that Steinbrecher and Silverberg in 1976[11] first described primary signet-ring carcinoma of the breast, as a subtype of lobular carcinoma, with aggressive biological behavior and an increased tendency to metastasize in the abdomen and in the gastrointestinal tract compared to other histological subtypes[9,10]. Signet-ring carcinoma of the breast metastatic to the stomach has also been reported[12,13].

The presence of cystic ovarian masses suggested metastatic ovarian involvement (Krukenberg's tumor). Unfortunately, the patient's unfavorable clinical condition did not allow histological confirmation. Metastatic involvement of the breast and the ovaries is extremely rare and has been reported in only 5 cases so far. Selective invasion of hormone-dependent organs seems quite intriguing, especially in pre-menopausal women. Increased blood supply of the breast has been proposed as the

Table 1 Patients' characteristics[1] in reported cases of breast metastasis from gastric cancer

n	Reference[2]	Age	Histology	Presentation after initial diagnosis (mo)	Clinical presentation	Localization	Other metastatic sites
1	Reitmann 1908	33	Scirhous	-	-	R+L[3]	-
2	Kreibich 1909	65	Scirhous	-	-	R	Skin
3	Mourier 1910	31	Mucinous	-	-	L	Liver, pancreas
4	Stahr 1922	46	Anaplastic	-	-	R+L	-
5	Dawson 1936	25	Mucinous	-	-	R+L	Ovaries
6	Abrams 1949	-	-	-	-	-	-
7	Sandison 1959	56	Signet-ring cell	-	-	L	-
8	Hajdu 1972	-	Adenocarcinoma	-	-	L	-
9	Silverman 1974	-	Mucin-producing	Concomitant[4]	-	-	-
10	Toombs 1977	-	-	-	-	-	-
11	Satake 1980	39	Signet-ring cell	Concomitant	Nodule	L	-
12	Togo 1980	70	Signet-ring cell	Concomitant	Nodule	L	-
13	Nielsen 1981	59	Mucinous	Concomitant	Nodule	L	-
14	Champault 1982	65	Adenocarcinoma	Concomitant	Nodule	L	-
15	Kasuga 1986	48	Signet-ring cell	31	Nodules	R+L	-
16	Alexander 1989	28	Mucinous differentiation	Concomitant	Nodules	R+L	Lymph nodes
17	Hamby 1991	31	Signet-ring cell	Concomitant	Nodule	R	Lymph nodes, ovaries
18	Cavazzini 1993	-	Signet-ring cell	-	Inflammatory	-	-
19	Domanski 1996	48	Signet-ring cell	Concomitant	Nodule	L upper-outer	L supraclavicular
20	de la Cruz Mera 1998	61	Signet-ring cell	13	Nodule	L upper-outer	Pleura
21	Briest 1999	46	Signet-ring cell	2	Inflammatory	R+L	Bilateral axillary nodes
22	Kwak 2000	41	Signet-ring cell	Concomitant	Inflammatory	L	Ovaries[5]
23	Kwak 2000	23	Signet-ring cell	Concomitant	Inflammatory	R	Axillary nodes
24	Madan 2002	39	Signet-ring cell	3	Nodule	R	Ovaries, peritoneum
25	Di Cosimo 2003	39	Signet-ring cell	1	Nodules	R+L	Ovaries, peritoneum, skin
26	Boutis 2005	37	Signet-ring cell	Concomitant	Inflammatory	L	Ovaries[5], ascites

[1] Clinical information is mentioned in the table only if available by the authors.
[2] References Reitmann 1908, Kreibich 1909, Mourier 1910, Stahr 1922, Dawson 1936, Satake 1980, Togo 1980 are included in Hamby 1991[2].
[3] R: right; L: left.
[4] Breast metastasis was the initial manifestation of disease.
[5] No histological confirmation.

mechanism for the increased incidence of breast metastasis in pre-menopausal women[14-15]. On the other hand, gastric cancer seems to have a more aggressive biologic behavior in younger age groups, where hormonal factors are implicated[16]. The appearance of breast metastases in men with gynecomastia supports the latter hypothesis[17]. In our patient, hormonal therapy for the induction of ovulation may have influenced the natural history of the disease[1]. However, no conclusions about the pathogenesis of the phenomenon can be drawn.

Metastatic disease of the breast is rare, and usually has atypical clinical and mammographic presentation. In cases of breast inflammation or lumps, biopsy should be performed, even in the presence of an extra-mammary neoplasm. Likewise, peculiar histological features from malignant breast lesions should be co-estimated with other clinical parameters toward the diagnosis of metastatic disease. Thus, avoidance of unnecessary radical surgical procedures and an adequate treatment is more probable to be given in these patients.

REFERENCES

1 **Di Cosimo S,** Ferretti G, Fazio N, Mandalà M, Curigliano G, Bosari S, Intra M, Latronico A, Goldhirsch A. Breast and ovarian metastatic localization of signet-ring cell gastric carcinoma. *Ann Oncol* 2003; **14:** 803-804

2 **Hamby LS**, McGrath PC, Cibull ML, Schwartz RW. Gastric carcinoma metastatic to the breast. *J Surg Oncol* 1991; **48**: 117-121

3 **Madan AK**, Ternovits C, Huber SA, Pei LA, Jaffe BM. Gastrointestinal metastasis to the breast. *Surgery* 2002; **132**: 889-893

4 **Vizcaíno I,** Torregrosa A, Higueras V, Morote V, Cremades A, Torres V, Olmos S, Molins C. Metastasis to the breast from extramammary malignancies: a report of four cases and a review of literature. *Eur Radiol* 2001; **11:** 1659-1665

5 **Alexander HR**, Turnbull AD, Rosen PP. Isolated breast metastases from gastrointestinal carcinomas: report of two cases. *J Surg Oncol* 1989; **42**: 264-266

6 **Barai S**, Kumar R, Haloi AK, Dhanpati, Banopadhyaya G, Malhotra A. Bone scan demonstrating metastasis to the breast from an ovarian carcinoma and a review of the literature. *Clin Nucl Med* 2004; **29**: 167-170

7 **Domanski HA**. Metastases to the breast from extramammary neoplasms. A report of six cases with diagnosis by fine needle aspiration cytology. *Acta Cytol* 1996; **40**: 1293-1300

8 **Kwak JY**, Kim EK, Oh KK. Radiologic findings of metastatic signet ring cell carcinoma to the breast from stomach. *Yonsei Med J* 2000; **41**: 669-672

9 **Raju U,** Ma CK, Shaw A. Signet ring variant of lobular carcinoma of the breast: a clinicopathologic and immunohistochemical study. *Mod Pathol* 1993; **6:** 516-520

10 **Merino MJ**, Livolsi VA. Signet ring carcinoma of the female breast: a clinicopathologic analysis of 24 cases. *Cancer* 1981; **48**: 1830-1837

11 **Steinbrecher JS**, Silverberg SG. Signet-ring cell carcinoma of the breast. The mucinous variant of infiltrating lobular carcinoma? *Cancer* 1976; **37**: 828-840

12 **Yim H,** Jin YM, Shim C, Park HB. Gastric metastasis of mammary signet ring cell carcinoma--a differential diagnosis with primary gastric signet ring cell carcinoma. *J Korean Med Sci* 1997; **12:** 256-261

13 **Park CH**, Whang HS, Park HB. Bilateral signet-ring cell carcinoma of the breast: scintigraphic findings. *Clin Nucl Med* 1996; **21**: 115-117
14 **Howarth CB**, Caces JN, Pratt CB. Breast metastases in children with rhabdomyosarcoma. *Cancer* 1980; **46**: 2520-2524
15 **Kwan WH**, Choi PH, Li CK, Shing MK, Chik KW, Yuen P, Chow LT. Breast metastasis in adolescents with alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma of the extremities: report of two cases. *Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 1996; **13**: 277-285
16 **Maeta M**, Yamashiro H, Oka A, Tsujitani S, Ikeguchi M, Kaibara N. Gastric cancer in the young, with special reference to 14 pregnancy-associated cases: analysis based on 2,325 consecutive cases of gastric cancer. *J Surg Oncol* 1995; **58**: 191-195
17 **Cappabianca S,** Grassi R, D'Alessandro P, Del Vecchio A, Maioli A, Donofrio V. Metastasis to the male breast from carcinoma of the urinary bladder. *Br J Radiol* 2000; **73:** 1326-1328

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Kumar M **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2962-2963
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

CASE REPORT

Multiple pyogenic liver abscess

Mabrouk Bahloul, Anis Chaari, Nadia Bouaziz-Khlaf, Hatem Kallel, Leila Herguefi, Hedi Chelly, Chokri Ben Hamida, Mounir Bouaziz

Mabrouk Bahloul, Anis Chaari, Nadia Khlaf Bouaziz, Hatem Kallel, Leila Herguefi, Hedi Chelly, Chokri Ben Hamida, Mounir Bouaziz, Service de Réanimation médicale CHU Habib Bourguiba Route el Ain Km 1 3029 Sfax, Tunisie
Correspondence to: Dr. Mabrouk Bahloul, Service de Réanimation médicale, Hôpital Habib Bourguiba, Route el Ain Km 1 3029 Sfax, Tunisie. bahloulmab@yahoo.fr
Telephone: +21-69-8698267 Fax: +21-67-4243427
Received: 2005-05-13 Accepted: 2005-06-02

Abstract

Multiple pyogenic liver abscesses have been rarely described. We report a fatal case of multiple pyogenic liver abscesses affecting a 38-year-old woman requiring surgical drainage. Evolution was marked by occurrence of a septic shock with multi-organ system failure. The patient died 48 h after surgery. Causes, therapeutics and outcome of the disease are discussed.

© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Key words: Liver abscess; Septic shock; Outcome

Bahloul M, Chaari A, Bouaziz-Khlaf N, Kallel H, Herguefi L, Chelly H, Ben Hamida C, Bouaziz M. Multiple pyogenic liver abscess. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; 12(18): 2962-2963

http://www.wjgnet.com/1007-9327/12/2962.asp

INTRODUCTION

The mortality rate of pyogenic liver abscess is 11%-31%[1]. The overall mortality is high in patients with multiple liver abscesses[2]. However, multiple pyogenic liver abscesses are not frequently reported in the literature. We report a fatal case of multiple and gigantic liver abscess affecting a 38-year-old woman.

CASE REPORT

A 38-year-old woman was admitted to our hospital for abdominal pain in the right upper quadrant, fever, vomiting and anorexia as well as chills and jaundice. On examination she had marked tenderness in the right upper quadrant. The temperature was 40.1 ℃, the pulse was 119, and the respiratory rate was 30/min. The blood pressure was 80/30 mmHg. The patient did not drink alcohol.

Laboratory tests performed on admission revealed 41.5% hematocrit, 26 300 white-cell count (per mm^3), 62 000 platelet count (per mm^3), 30% prothrombin time, 269 μmol/L total bilirubin, 170 μmol/L conjugated bilirubin, 11 mmol/L urea nitrogen, 42 μmol/L creatinine, 4.5 mmol/L glucose, 117 mmol/L sodium, 4 mmol/L potassium, 87mmol/L chloride, 16 mmol/L carbon dioxide, 51U/L aspartate aminotransferase, 21 U/L alanine aminotransferase and 208 U/L creatine kinase.

Ultrasonography of the abdomen revealed that the hepatic parenchyma appeared diffusely heterogeneous, with hypoechoic foci in the right lobe, suggesting the presence of abscess or multiple hydatid cysts.

CT scan of the abdomen (Figures 1A-B) before and after intravenous injection of contrast material confirmed the presence of multiple irregular abscesses varying in size, predominantly in the right lobe of the liver.

Microbiological culture was performed (hemoculture) and the patient received intravenously cefotaxime, gentamicin, metronidazole, omeprazole, fluid, and electrolytes. Surgical drainage was performed 48 h after hospital admission. *Escherichia coli, Bacteroides fragilis and prevotella oralis* were found in cultures of the pus.

Evolution was marked by occurrence of septic shock with multi-organ system failure. The patient died 48 h after surgery.

DISCUSSION

Pyogenic liver abscesses are found in 0.3%-1.4% of autopsies[3]. Patients with diabetes mellitus, immune deficiency, sickle cell anemia, malignancy, and liver transplants are at a greater risk for developing liver abscess[1]. The majority of pyogenic liver abscesses are caused by infection originating in the biliary or intestinal tracts[4]. About 10% of pyogenic liver abscesses develop as a result of bacteria entering the liver via the hepatic artery[5]. In the majority of cases, more than one organism has been isolated from their abscesses[6]. The most commonly infecting organisms are Gram-negative aerobes and *Escherichia coli* is the most frequently encountered[7]. In our case three organisms were identified, suggesting that pyogenic liver abscesses are caused by infection originating in the intestinal tract. Without appropriate diagnosis and treatment, pyogenic liver abscesses are almost uniformly fatal[2,4]. Early diagnosis as well as treatment with appropriate antibiotics and selective drainage can substantially reduce mortality. Our observation has confirmed this hypothesis.

Antibiotic therapy should include penicillin, which is

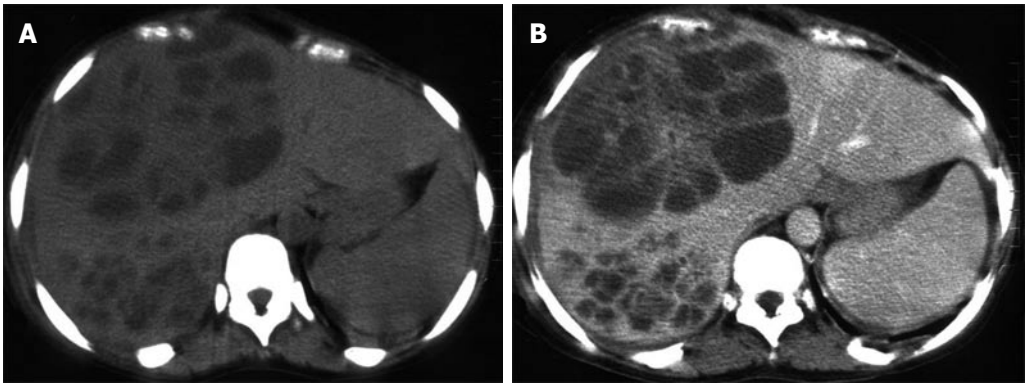


Figure 1 CT scan without (**A**) and with (**B**) contrast injection of the abdomen showing multiple irregular liver abscesses in the right hepatic lobe.

effective against *E coli*, *K pneumonia*, *bacteroides*, *enterococcus*, and *anaerobic streptococci*[1]. Antibiotics alone are effective for only a few patients and most patients require percutaneous aspiration or catheter drainage guided by ultrasonography or computed tomography[1]. In our case open surgery was performed because the patient suffered from multiple liver abscesses and septic shock.

The overall mortality may be as high as 30%-40% in patients with multiple liver abscesses, malignant biliary obstruction, inadequate drainage, and immunodeficiency[1,2]. In our case no pathological antecedent was found, however we cannot exclude immunodeficiency in this woman.

REFERENCES

1 **Rahimian J,** Wilson T, Oram V, Holzman RS. Pyogenic liver abscess: recent trends in etiology and mortality. *Clin Infect Dis* 2004; **39:** 1654-1659

2 **Schiff E,** Pick N, Oliven A, Odeh M. Multiple liver abscesses after dental treatment. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **36:** 369-371

3 **Greenstein AJ,** Lowenthal D, Hammer GS, Schaffner F, Aufses AH Jr. Continuing changing patterns of disease in pyogenic liver abscess: a study of 38 patients. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1984; **79:** 217-226

4 **Pitt HA.** Pyogenic hepatic abscesses. In: Schiff ER, Sorrell MF, Maddrey WC, eds. Schiff's Diseases of the Liver, 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1999: 1515-1526

5 **Huang CJ,** Pitt HA, Lipsett PA, Osterman FA Jr, Lillemoe KD, Cameron JL, Zuidema GD. Pyogenic hepatic abscess. Changing trends over 42 years. *Ann Surg* 1996; **223:** 600-607; discussion 607-607

6 **Pitt HA.** Liver abscess. In: Zuidema GD, ed. Surgery of the Alimentary Tract, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders 1997: 443-465

7 **Sherlock S,** Dooley J. Diseases of the Liver and Biliary System, 10th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Scientific, 1997: 497-501

S- Editor Wang J **L- Editor** Wang XL **E- Editor** Bi L

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2964
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Acknowledgments to Reviewers of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*

Many reviewers have contributed their expertise and time to the peer review, a critical process to ensure the quality of *World Journal of Gastroenterology*. The editors and authors of the articles submitted to the journal are grateful to the following reviewers for evaluating the articles (including those were published and those were rejected in this issue) during the last editing period of time.

Yusuf Bayraktar, Professor
Department of Gastroenterology, School of Medicine, Hacettepe University, Ankara 06100, Turkey

Markus W Büchler, MD
Department of General Surgery, University of Heidelberg, Im Neuenheimer Feld 110, Heidelberg D-69120, Germany

Michael F Byrne , MD
Clinical Associate Professor, Division of Gastroenterology Vancouver General Hospital, 100-2647 Willow Street Vancouver BC V5Z 3P1, Canada

Wang-Xue Chen, Dr
Institute for Biological Sciences, National Research Concil Canada, 100 Sussex Drive, Room 3100, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0R6, Canada

Chi-Hin Cho, Chair and Professor
Departmentof Pharmacology, The University of Hong Kong, 21 Sassoon Road, Hong Kong, China

Zong-Jie Cui, PhD, Professor
Institute of Cell Biology, Beijing Normal University, 19 XinJieKouWaiDaJie, Beijing 100875, China

Christoph F Dietrich, MD
Innere Medizin 2, Caritas-Krankenhaus, Uhlandstr. 7, Bad Mergentheim97980, Germany

Paul Enck, Dr, Professor
Department of Internal Medicine VI: Psychosomatic Medicine and Psychotherapy, University Hospitals Tuebingne, Schaffhausen Str 113, Tuebingen 72072, Germany

Kazuma Fujimoto, Professor
Department of Internal Medicine, Saga Medical School, Nabeshima, Saga, Saga 849-8501, Japan

Mitsuhiro Fujishiro, Dr
Department of Gastroenterology, Faculty of Medicine, University of Tokyo, 7-3-1 Hongo, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo, Japan

Kazuhiro Hanazaki, MD
Department of Surgery, Shinonoi General Hospital, 666-1 Ai, Shinonoi, Nagano 388-8004, Japan

Johannes Herkel, Dr
I. Department of Medicine University Medical Centre Hamburg-Eppendorf Martinistr. 52,Hamburg 20246, Germany

Fumio Imazeki, MD
Department of Medicine and Clinical Oncology, Chiba University, 1-8-1 Inohana, Chuo-ku, Chiba 260-8670, Japan

Aydin Karabacakoglu, Dr, Assistant Professor
Department of Radiology, Meram Medical Faculty, Selcuk University, Konya 42080, Turkey

Serdar Karakose, Dr, Professor
Department of Radiology, Meram Medical Faculty, Selcuk University, Konya 42080, Turkey

Mototsugu Kato, MD
Department of Endoscopy, HokkaIDo University Hospital, Nishi-5, Kita-14, Kita-ku, Sapporo 060-8648, Japan

Min-Liang Kuo, PhD
Laboratory of Molecular and Cellular Toxicology, Institute of Toxicology, College of Medicine, National Taiwan University, No. 1, Section 1, Jen-Ai Road, Taipei, Taiwan, China

Katsunori Iijima, Dr
Division of Gastroenterology, Tohoku University Graduate School of Medicine, 1-1 Seiryo-machi, Aobaku, Sendai 980-8574, Japan

Giovanni Maconi, MD
Department of Gastroenterlogy, 'L.Sacco' University Hospital, Via G.B. Grassi, 74, Milan 20157, Italy

Yoshiharu Motoo, Professor
Department of Medical Oncology, Kanazawa Medical University, 1-1 Daigaku, Uchinada, Ishikawa 920-0293, Japan

James Neuberger, Professor
Liver Unit, Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Birmingham B15 2TH, United Kingdom

Johann Ockenga, Dr
Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Endocrinology, Charite-Universitatsmedizin Berlin, Schumannstrasse 20/21, 10117 Berlin, Germany

Bo-Rong Pan, Professor
Departmant of Oncology, Xijing Hospital, Fourth Military Medical University, No.1, F. 8, Bldg 10, 97 Changying East Road, Xi'an 710032, Shaanxi Province,China

Tobias Schroeder, Dr
Department of Diagnostic and Interventional Radiology, University Hospital Essen, Hufelandstrasse 55, D-45122 Essen, Germany

Michael Steer, Professor
Department of Surgery, Tufts-Nemc, 860 Washington St, Boston, Ma 02111, United States

Manfred Stolte, Professor
Institute of Pathology, Klinikum Bayreuth, Preuschwitzer Str. 101, Bayreuth 95445, Germany

Jia-Yu Xu, Professor
Shanghai Second Medical University, Rui Jin Hospital, 197 Rui Jin Er Road, Shanghai 200025, China

Takayuki Yamamoto, MD
Inflammatory Bowel Disease Center, Yokkaichi Social Insurance Hospital, 10-8 Hazuyamacho, Yokkaichi 510-0016, Japan

Zhi Zhong, MD, PhD
Department of Cell and Developmental Biology, UNC, CB# 7090, Chapel Hill, NC 27599, United States

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Meetings

MAJOR MEETINGS COMING UP

Digestive Disease Week
107th Annual of AGA, The American Gastroenterology Association
20-25 May 2006
Loas Angeles Converntion Center, California

American College of Gastroenterology Annual Scientific
20-25 October 2006
Las Vegas, NV

14th United European Gastroenterology Week, UEGW
21-25 October 2006
Berlin, Germany

APDW 2006: Asian Pacific Digestive Week 2006
26-29 November 2006
Lahug Cebu City, Philippines

EVENTS AND MEETINGS IN THE UPCOMING 6 MONTHS

Falk Symposium 151: Emerging Issues in Inflammatory Bowel Diseases
24-25 March 2006
Sydney - NSW
Falk Foundation e.V.
symposia@falkfoundation.de

10th International Congress of Obesity
3-8 September 2006
Sydney
Event Planners Australia
enquiries@ico2006.com
www.ico2006.com

Easl 2006 - the 41st annual
26-30 April 2006
Vienna, Austria
Kenes International

Prague hepatology 2006
14-16 September 2006
Prague
Foundation of the Czech Society of Hepatology
veronika.revicka@congressprague.cz
www.czech-hepatology.cz/phm2006

12th International Symposium on Viral Hepatitis and Liver Disease
1-5 July 2006
Paris
MCI France
isvhld2006@mci-group.com
www.isvhld2006.com

Falk Symposium 152: Intestinal Disease Part I, Endoscopy 2006 - Update and Live Demonstration
4-5 May 2006
Berlin
Falk Foundation e.V.
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Falk Symposium 153: Intestinal Disease Part II, Immunoregulation in Inflammatory Bowel Disease - Current Understanding and Innovation
6-7 May 2006
Berlin
Falk Foundation e.V.
symposia@falkfoundation.de

ILTS 12th Annual International Congress
3-6 May 2006
Milan
ILTS
www.ilts.org

Internal Medicine: Gastroenterology
22 July 2006-1 August 2006
Amsterdam
Continuing Education Inc
jbarnhart@continuingeducation.net

6th Annual Gastroenterology And Hepatology
15-18 March 2006
Rio Grande
Office of Continuing Medical Education
cmenet@jhmi.edu
www.hopkinscme.net

World Congress on Gastrointestinal Cancer
28 June 2006-1 July 2006
Barcelona, Spain
c.chase@imedex.com

International Conference on Surgical Infections, ICSI2006
6-8 September 2006
Stockholm
European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases
icsi2006@stocon.se
www.icsi2006.se/9/23312.asp

7th World Congress of the International Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Association
3-7 September 2006
Edinburgh
Edinburgh Convention Bureau
convention@edinburgh.org
www.edinburgh.org/conference

Society of American Gastrointestinal Endoscopic Surgeons
26-29 April 2006
Dallas - TX
www.sages.org

Digestive Disease Week 2006
20-25 May 2006
Los Angeles
www.ddw.org

Annual Postgraduate Course
25-26 May 2006
Los Angeles, CA
American Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy
www.asge.org/education

American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons
3-7 June 2006
Seatlle - Washington
www.fascrs.org

EVENTS AND MEETINGS IN 2006

10th World Congress of the International Society for Diseases of the Esophagus
22-25 February 2006
Adelaide
isde@sapmea.asn.au
www.isde.net

Falk Symposium 151: Emerging Issues in Inflammatory Bowel Diseases
24-25 March 2006
Sydney - NSW
Falk Foundation e.V.
symposia@falkfoundation.de

10th International Congress of Obesity
3-8 September 2006
Sydney
Event Planners Australia
enquiries@ico2006.com
www.ico2006.com

Easl 2006 - the 41st annual
26-30 April 2006
Vienna, Austria
Kenes International

VII Brazilian Digestive Disease Week
19-23 November 2006
www.gastro2006.com.br

International Gastrointestinal Fellows Initiative
22-24 February 2006
Banff, Alberta
Canadian Association of Gastroenterology
cagoffice@cag-acg.org
www.cag-acg.org

Canadian Digestive Disease Week
24-27 February 2006
Banff, Alberta
Digestive Disease Week Administration
cagoffice@cag-acg.org
www.cag-acg.org

Prague Hepatology 2006
14-16 September 2006
Prague
Foundation of the Czech Society of Hepatology
veronika.revicka@congressprague.cz
www.czech-hepatology.cz/phm2006

12th International Symposium on Viral Hepatitis and Liver Disease
1-5 July 2006
Paris
MCI France
isvhld2006@mci-group.com
www.isvhld2006.com/

Falk Seminar: XI Gastroenterology Seminar Week
4-8 February 2006
Titisee
Falk Foundation e.V.
symposia@falkfoundation.de

European Multidisciplinary Colorectal Cancer Congress 2006
12-14 February 2006
Berlin
Congresscare
info@congresscare.com
www.colorectal2006.org

Falk Symposium 152: Intestinal Disease Part I, Endoscopy 2006 - Update and Live Demonstration
4-5 May 2006
Berlin
Falk Foundation e.V.
symposia@falkfoundation.de

Falk Symposium 153: Intestinal Disease Part II, Immunoregulation in Inflammatory Bowel Disease - Current Understanding and Innovation
6-7 May 2006
Berlin
Falk Foundation e.V.
symposia@falkfoundation.de

14th United European Gastroenterology Week
21-25 October 2006
Berlin
United European Gastroenterology Federation
www.uegw2006.de

World Congress on Controversies in Obesity, Diabetes and Hypertension
25-28 October 2006
Berlin
comtec international
codhy@codhy.com
www.codhy.com

Asia Pacific Obesity Conclave
1-5 March 2006
New Delhi
info@apoc06.com
www.apoc06.com/

ILTS 12th Annual International Congress
3-6 May 2006
Milan
ILTS
www.ilts.org

XXX Panamerican Congress of Gastroenterology
11-16 November 2006
Cancun
www.panamericano2006.org.mx

Internal Medicine: Gastroenterology
22 July 2006-1 August 2006
Amsterdam
Continuing Education Inc
jbarnhart@continuingeducation.net

6th Annual Gastroenterology And Hepatology
15-18 March 2006
Rio Grande
Office of Continuing Medical Education
cmenet@jhmi.edu
www.hopkinscme.net

Hepatitis 2006
25 February 2006-5 March 2006
Dakar
hepatitis2006@mangosee.com
mangosee.com/mangosteen/hepatitis2006/hepatitis2006.htm

World Congress on Gastrointestinal Cancer
28 June 2006-1 July 2006
Barcelona, Spain
c.chase@imedex.com

International Conference on Surgical Infections, ICSI2006
6-8 September 2006
Stockholm
European Society of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases
icsi2006@stocon.se
www.icsi2006.se/9/23312.asp

5th International Congress of The African Middle East Association of Gastroenterology
24-26 February 2006
Sharjah
InfoMed Events
infoevent@infomedweb.com
www.infomedweb.com

7th World Congress of the International Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Association
3-7 September 2006
Edinburgh
Edinburgh Convention Bureau
convention@edinburgh.org
www.edinburgh.org/conference

13th International Symposium on Pancreatic & Biliary Endoscopy
20-23 January 2006
Los Angeles - CA
laner@cshs.org

2006 Gastrointestinal Cancers Symposium
26-28 January 2006
San Francisco - CA
Gastrointestinal Cancers Symposium Registration Center
giregistration@jspargo.com

Society of American Gastrointestinal Endoscopic Surgeons
26-29 April 2006
Dallas - TX
www.sages.org

Digestive Disease Week 2006
20-25 May 2006
Los Angeles
www.ddw.org

Annual Postgraduate Course
25-26 May 2006
Los Angeles, CA
American Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy
www.asge.org/education

American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons
3-7 June 2006
Seatlle - Washington
www.fascrs.org

71st ACG Annual Scientific and Postgraduate Course
20-25 October 2006
Venetian Hotel, Las Vegas, Neveda
The American College of Gastroenterology

AASLD 57th Annual - The Liver Meeting™
27-31 October 2006
Boston, MA
AASLD

New York Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy
13-16 December 2006
New York
www.nysge.org

EVENTS AND MEETINGS IN 2007

9th World Congress on Gastrointestinal Cancer
20-23 June 2007
Barcelona
Imedex
meetings@imedex.com

Gastro 2009, World Congress of Gastroenterology and Endoscopy London, United Kingdom 2009

PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
www.wjgnet.com
wjg@wjgnet.com

World J Gastroenterol 2006 May 14; 12(18): 2966-2968
World Journal of Gastroenterology ISSN 1007-9327
© 2006 The WJG Press. All rights reserved.

Instructions to authors

GENERAL INFORMATION

World Journal of Gastroenterology (*WJG, World J Gastroenterol* ISSN 1007-9327 CN 14-1219/R) is a weekly journal of more than 48 000 circulation, published on the 7th, 14th, 21st and 28th of every month.

Original Research, Clinical Trials, Reviews, Comments, and Case Reports in esophageal cancer, gastric cancer, colon cancer, liver cancer, viral liver diseases, *etc*., from all over the world are welcome on the condition that they have not been published previously and have not been submitted simultaneously elsewhere.

Published by

The WJG Press

SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed double-spaced on A4 (297 mm×210 mm) white paper with outer margins of 2.5 cm. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page , Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the Publisher is responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of The WJG Press, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part without the written permission of both the authors and the Publisher. We reserve the right to put onto our website and copy-edit accepted manuscripts. Authors should also follow the guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations, as rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for the loss or damage to photographs and illustrations in mailing process.

Online submission

Online submission is strongly advised. Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: http://www.wjgnet.com/index.jsp. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS (http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/instructions.jsp) before attempting to submit online. Authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email you describing the problem to wjg@wjgnet.com for assistance. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. A repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

Postal submission

Send 3 duplicate hard copies of the full-text manuscript typed double-spaced on A4 (297 mm×210 mm) white paper together with any original photographs or illustrations and a 3.5 inch computer diskette or CD-ROM containing an electronic copy of the manuscript including all the figures, graphs and tables in native Microsoft Word format or *.rtf format to:

Editorial Office

World Journal of Gastroenterology
Editorial Department: Apartment 1066, Yishou Garden,
58 North Langxinzhuang Road,
PO Box 2345, Beijing 100023, China
E-mail: wjg@wjgnet.com
http: //www.wjgnet.com
Telephone: +86-10-85381901
Fax: +86-10-85381893

MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using a word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and in word size 12 with ample margins. The letter font is Tahoma. For authors from China, one copy of the Chinese translation of the manuscript is also required (excluding references). Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

Title page

Full manuscript title, running title, all author(s) name(s), affiliations, institution(s) and/or department(s) where the work was accomplished, disclosure of any financial support for the research, and the name, full address, telephone and fax numbers and email address of the corresponding author should be included. Titles should be concise and informative (removing all unnecessary words), emphasize what is new, and avoid abbreviations. A short running title of less than 40 letters should be provided. List the author(s)' name(s) as follows: initial and/or first name, middle name or initial(s) and full family name.

Abstract

An informative, structured abstract of no more than 250 words should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts for original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM: Only the purpose should be included. METHODS: The materials, techniques, instruments and equipments, and the experimental procedures should be included. RESULTS: The observatory and experimental results, including data, effects, outcome, *etc*. should be included. Authors should present *P* value where necessary, and the significant data should accompany. CONCLUSION: Accurate view and the value of the results should be included.

The format of structured abstracts is at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/11.doc

Key words

Please list 3-10 key words that could reflect content of the study mainly from *Index Medicus*.

Text

For most article types, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include in appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the body text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3 and so on, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. No detailed legend should be involved under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Digital images: black and white photographs should be scanned and saved in TIFF format at a resolution of 300 dpi; color images should be saved as CMYK (print files) but not as RGB (screen-viewing files). Place each photograph in a separate file. Print images: supply images of size no smaller than 126 mm×76 mm printed on smooth surface paper; label the image by writing the Figure number and orientation using an arrow. Photomicrographs: indicate the original magnification and stain in the legend. Digital Drawings: supply files in EPS if created by freehand and illustrator, or TIFF from photoshops. EPS files must be accompanied by a version in native file format for editing purposes. Existing line drawings should be scanned at a resolution of 1200 dpi and as close as possible to the size where they will appear when printed. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes of atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: ...

Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered as 1, 2, 3 and so on, and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. No detailed legend should be included under the tables. This part should be added into the text where the tables are applicable. The information should complement but not duplicate that contained in the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a second under the column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. $^{a}P<0.05$, $^{b}P<0.01$ should be noted ($P>0.05$ should not be noted). If there are other series of *P* values, $^{c}P<0.05$ and $^{d}P<0.01$ are used. Third series of *P* values can be expressed as $^{e}P<0.05$ and $^{f}P<0.01$. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as ^{1}F, ^{2}F, ^{3}F; or some other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, *etc*. in a certain sequence.

Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscripts and who endorse the data and conclusions are included.

Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

REFERENCES

Coding system

The author should code the references according the citation order in text in Arabic numerals, put references codes in square brackets, superscript it at the end of citation content or the author name of the citation. For those citation content as the narrate part, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability[1,2]. If references are directly cited in the text, they would be put together with the text, for example, from references [19,22-24], we know that...

When the authors code the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in reference part and also insure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not code the same citation twice.

PMID requirement

PMID roots in the abstract serial number indexed by PubMed (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?db=PubMed). The author should supply the PMID for journal citation. For those references that have not been indexed by PubMed, a printed copy of the first page of the full reference should be submitted.

The accuracy of the information of the journal citations is very important. Through reference testing system (http://www.aushome.cn/cgi-bin/index.pl), the authors and editor could check the authors name, title, journal title, publication date, volume number, start page, and end page. We will interlink all references with PubMed in ASP file so that the readers can read the abstract of the citations online immediately.

Style for journal references

Authors: the first author should be typed in bold-faced letter. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized and followed by their name in abbreviation (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). Title of the cited article and italicized journal title (Journal title should be in its abbreviation form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634]

Note: The author should test the references through reference testing system (http://www.aushome.cn/cgi-bin/index.pl)

Style for book references

Authors: the first author should be typed in bold-faced letter. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized and followed by their name in abbreviation (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

Format

Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

1 **Grover VP**, Dresner MA, Forton DM, Counsell S, Larkman DJ, Patel N, Thomas HC, Taylor-Robinson SD. Current and future applications of magnetic resonance imaging and spectroscopy of the brain in hepatic encephalopathy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 2969-2978 [PMID: 000000]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaohua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2006; In press

Organization as author

4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764]

No author given

6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303]

Volume with supplement

7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325]

Issue with no volume

8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; (**401**): 230-238 [PMID: 12151900]

No volume or issue

9 Outreach: bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRSA Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

Books

Personal author(s)

10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and billiary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wieczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ Cell Tumour Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: http//www.cdc.gov/ncidod/EID/eid.htm

Patent (list all authors)

16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

Inappropriate references

Authors should always cite references that are relevant to their article, and avoid any inappropriate references. Inappropriate references include those that are linked with a hyphen and the difference between the two numbers at two sides of the hyphen is more than 5. For example, [1-6], [2-14] and [1, 3, 4-10, 22] are all considered as inappropriate references. Authors should not cite their own unrelated published articles.

Statistical data

Present as mean ± SD or mean ± SE.

Statistical expression

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as χ^2 (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as γ (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

Units

Use SI units. For example: body mass, m (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, *p*(B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, t (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, c (glucose) 6.4 ± 2.1 mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, p (CEA) = 8.6 24.5 μg/L; CO_2 volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO_2 not 5% CO_2; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc*. Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23 243 641.

The format about how to accurately write common units and quantum is at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/15.doc

Abbreviations

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used

abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further mention.

Italics

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.

Genotypes: *gyr*A, *arg* 1, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*

Restriction enzymes: *Eco*RI, *Hin*dI, *Bam*HI, *Kbo* I, *Kpn* I, *etc.*

Biology: *H pylori, E coli, etc.*

SUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS AFTER ACCEPTED

Please revise your article according to the revision policies of *WJG*. The revised version including manuscript and high-resolution image figures (if any) should be copied on a floppy or compact disk. Author should send the revised manuscript, along with printed high-resolution color or black and white photos, copyright transfer letter, the final check list for authors, and responses to reviewers by a courier (such as EMS) (submission of revised manuscript by e-mail or on the *WJG* Editorial Office Online System is NOT available at present).

Language evaluation

The language of a manuscript will be graded before sending for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing; (4) Grade D: rejected. The revised articles should be in grade B or grade A.

Copyright assignment form

Please downloaded CAF from http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/9.doc.

We certify that the material contained in this manuscript:

Ms:

Title:

is original, except when appropriately referenced to other sources, and that written permission has been granted by any existing copyright holders. We agree to transfer to WJG all rights of our manuscript, including: (1) all copyright ownership in all print and electronic formats; (2) the right to grant permission to republish or reprint the stated material in whole or in part, with or without a fee; (3) the right to print copies for free distribution or sale; (4) the right to republish the stated material in a collection of articles or in any other format. We also agree that our article be put on the Internet.

Criteria for authorship: The WJG requests and publishes information about contributions of each author named to the submitted study. Authorship credit should be based on (1)direct participation in the study, including substantial contributions to conception and design of study, or acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) manuscript writing, including drafting the article, or revising it critically for important intellectual content; (3)supportive work, including statistical analysis of data, or acquisition of funding, or administration, technology and materials support, or supervision, or supportive contributions. Authors should meet at least one of the three conditions. The WJG does not publish co-first authors and co-corresponding authors.

We hereby assign copyright transfer to WJG if this paper is accepted.

Author Name in full (Full names should be provided, with first name first, followed by middle names and family name at the last, eg, Eamonn MM Quigley). Handwritten names are not accepted.

_____

Author Name in abbreviation (Family names are put first in full, followed by middle names and first name in abbreviation with first letter in capital, eg, Quigley EMM). Handwritten names are not accepted.

_____

1 Signed_____ Date_____

2 Signed_____ Date_____

3 Signed_____ Date_____

4 Signed_____ Date_____

5 Signed_____ Date_____

6 Signed_____ Date_____

7 Signed_____ Date_____

8 Signed_____ Date_____

9 Signed_____ Date_____

10 Signed_____ Date_____

Final check list for authors

The format is at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/13.doc

Responses to reviewers

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions of reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments is at: http://www.wjgnet.com/wjg/help/10.doc

Proof of financial support

For paper supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the document and serial number of the foundation.

Publication fee

Authors of accepted articles must pay publication fee.

EDITORIAL and LETTERS TO THE EDITOR are free of change.